

NEETU SINGH ENGLISH CLASS

CLASS NOTES
(Bilingual)



NEETU SINGH ENGLISH

UPDATED
2025

CLASS NOTES (Bilingual)



These ebooks are free of cost, Join our telegram channel: @apna_pdf

SUBSCRIBE NOW

KD Live Youtube Channel

Download Now!

KD LIVE App

Visit us: <http://www.kdpublication.com/>

Follow: www.facebook.com/nsingh202



SYLLABUS

Download Now!



Email: online@kdcampus.org

Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746



Pattern for All Objective Exams

- **Detecting Error**
- **Sentence Improvement**
- **Fill in the blanks**
- **Sentence Arrangement**
- **Passages**
- **Cloze Test**
- **Synonyms**
- **Antonyms**
- **Homonyms**
- **One Word Substitution**
- **Idioms and Phrases**
- **Spellings**

Only the level and framing of questions are different. All objective exams have more or less the similar syllabus



Syllabus

Grammar

- Introduction
- Basic concept
- Verb
- Tense
- Question Tag
- Subject Verb Agreement/ Syntax
- Causative Verb
- Mood
- Inversion
- Infinitive
- Gerund

- Participle
- Passive Voice
- Narration
- Noun
- Pronoun
- Adjective
- Adverb
- Article
- Parallelism
- Preposition
- Conjunction

- Modals
- Superfluous Expression
- Spellings
- Proverbs
- Legal Terms

These ebooks are free of cost, Join our telegram channel: @apna_pdf

S.No.	CHAPTER NAME	PAGE NO.
1.	BASIC	001 - 006
2.	VERB	007 - 058
3.	SENTENCE & TYPES	059 - 063
4.	TENSE	064 - 094
5.	QUESTION TAG	095 - 105
6.	CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	106 - 115
7.	SUBJECT VERB AGREEMENT	116 - 142
8.	CAUSATIVE VERBS	143 - 146
9.	MOOD	147 - 149
10.	INVERSION	150 - 157
11.	INFINITIVE & GERUND	158 - 169
12.	PARTICIPLE	170 - 176
13.	PASSIVE VOICE	177 - 193
14.	NARRATION	194 - 209
15.	NOUN	210 - 252
16.	PRONOUN	253 - 265
17.	ADJECTIVE	266 - 291
18.	ADVERB	292 - 303
19.	CONFUSING ADVERBS & ADJECTIVES	304 - 321
20.	ARTICLE	322 - 330
21.	DETERMINERS	331 - 332
22.	PREPOSITION	333 - 352
23.	FIXED PREPOSITION AND EXERCISE	353 - 406
24.	PHRASAL VERB	407 - 440
25.	CONJUNCTION	441 - 460
26.	PARALLELISM	461 - 463
27.	MODALS	464 - 473
28.	SUPERFLUOUS EXPRESSION	474 - 477
29.	SPELLINGS	478 - 501
30.	PROVERB	502 - 504
31.	LEGAL TERMS	505 - 512

Pattern for All Objective Exams

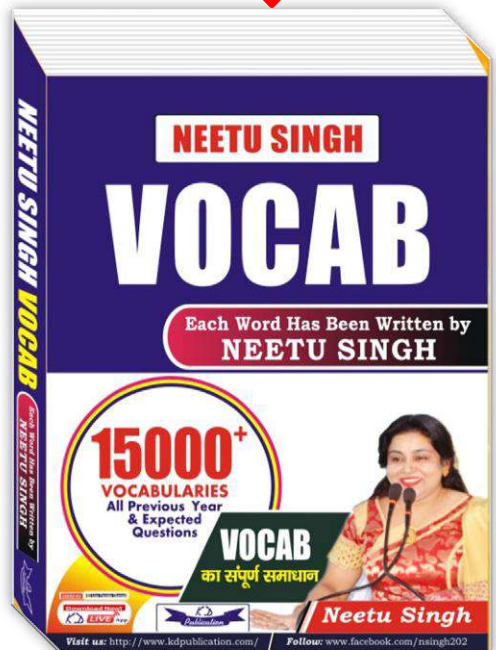
- Detecting Error
- Sentence Improvement
- Fill in the blanks
- Sentence Arrangement
- Passages
- Cloze Test
- Synonyms
- Antonyms
- Homonyms
- One Word Substitution
- Idiom and Phrases
- Spellings

Only the level and framing of questions are different. All objective exams have more or less the similar syllabus

These ebooks are free of cost, Join our telegram channel: @apna_pdf

Syllabus : Grammar & Vocabulary

❖ Basic Concept	❖ Pronoun
❖ Verb	❖ Adjective
❖ Tense	❖ Adverb
❖ Question Tag	❖ Article
❖ Subject Verb Agreement/ Syntax	❖ Determiners
❖ Causative Verb	❖ Parallelism
❖ Mood	❖ Preposition
❖ Inversion	❖ Conjunction
❖ Infinitive	❖ Modals
❖ Gerund	❖ Superfluous Expression
❖ Participle	❖ Spellings
❖ Passive Voice	❖ Proverbs
❖ Narration	❖ Legal Terms
❖ Noun	



ENGLISH ALPHABET

- ❖ There are 26 letters in English Alphabet.
- ❖ There are 5 Vowels – (a, e, i, o, u)
- ❖ The remaining letters are consonant.
- ❖ These 26 letters have 44 sounds out of which 20 are vowel sounds.

CAPITAL LETTERS

A B C D E F G H I J K L M
N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

SMALL LETTERS

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o
p q r s t u v w x y z



A sentence starts with a Capital Letter.

(एक वाक्य की शुरुआत 'Capital Letter' से होती है)



E.g:- Once upon a time, there lived a king.



'Proper Noun' starts with a Capital Letter.

('Proper Noun' की शुरुआत 'Capital Letter' से होती है)



E.g:- Ram, Delhi, Yamuna etc.



'I' is always in Capital Letter.

'I' (मैं) हमेशा Capital Letter में होता है



Acronyms are in 'Capital Letters'.

(Acronyms 'Capital Letters' में होते हैं)



E.g:- PM, MLA



The first word of the sentence with double Inverted Commas start with Capital Letters.



(Double Inverted Comma के अन्दर के वाक्य के पहले शब्द की शुरुआत 'Capital Letter' से होती है)



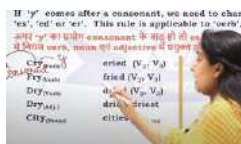
E.g:- He said, "He and I went to Delhi." There we met the SHO of Mukherjee Nagar.

Structure of a sentence in English

English में वाक्य की बनावट

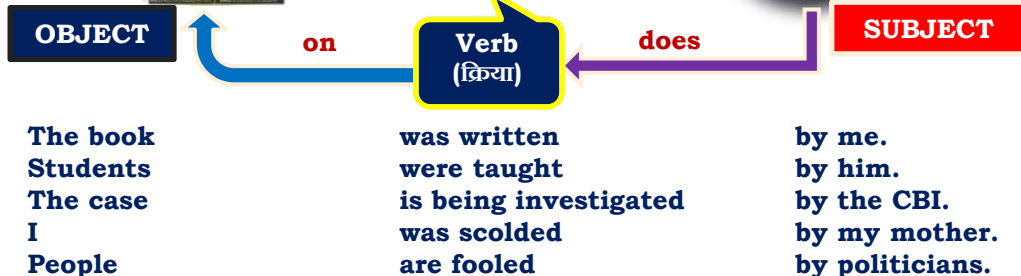
Active Voice

जब कर्ता (Doer) सबसे आगे हो, तो वाक्य Active Voice कहलाता है।



Subject does Verb on Object. (कर्ता किया को कर्म पर करता है)

After Verb two questions arise — 'whom' and 'what'. The answer to 'whom' and 'what' is the object. / (Object Verb के बाद उत्पन्न 'वया' और 'किसको' का जवाब होता है)



Parts of Speech

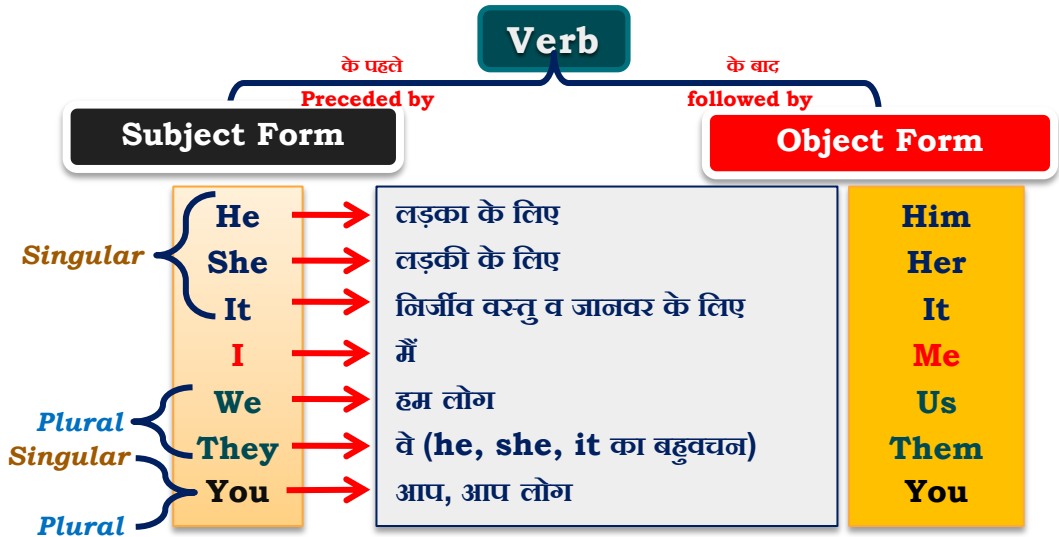
1. Noun (संज्ञा)	→ Naming word. It comes in the place of
Subject & Object.	
2. Pronoun (सर्वनाम)	→ Replaces Noun. It comes in place of
Subject & Object.	
3. Verb (किया)	→ Action/ state word
4. Adjective (विशेषण)	→ Qualifies Noun/ Pronoun
5. Conjunction (समुच्चयबोधक)	→ Joining word
6. Article	→ Precedes Noun
7. Preposition (सम्बंधसूचक अव्यय)	→ Determines position
8. Adverb (क्रियाविशेषण)	→ Qualifies the nearest word
9. Interjection (विरम्यादिभोदक)	→ Expresses surprise, pain etc.

- Noun is a Naming word. (संज्ञा 'नाम' है)
- Comes in the place of subject and object. / (Subject एवं object के स्थान पर आता है)
- Article and other determiners should take a noun after them. / (Article और अन्य Determiners (no, one, many etc) के बाद Noun का होना अनिवार्य है)

1. Ram is a good boy.
2. Teachers teach students.
3. Reading is a good habit.
4. We prohibit smoking.
5. To err is human, to forgive divine.
6. I did my best.
7. I went for a walk.
8. I am fond of music.

PRONOUN

Replace Noun (संज्ञा के स्थान पर आता है)



1. He is a good boy.
2. It is a useful book.
3. Before giving the medicine to the child, shake it properly. (Shake what!)
4. I bought some books. They are useful.

VERB

Action / state word (क्रिया और अवस्था बताने वाला शब्द)

1. I run.
 2. They teach.
 3. You go.
 4. I know you.
 5. I am a teacher.
- Run, Teach & Go → **Action Word**
- know & am → **state word**

We cannot make a sentence without a verb. (Verb के बिना वाक्य नहीं बन सकता)

ADJECTIVE

Qualifies Noun or Pronoun. / (संज्ञा या सर्वनाम के बारे में कुछ बताता है)

1. He is a good boy.
2. She is suffering from lung cancer.
3. It is a five-star hotel.
4. India is a developing country.
5. This is the revised edition.

CONJUNCTION

Joining word. / (जोड़ने वाला शब्द)

1 Sentence 1 He is rich.

Sentence 2 He is happy.

2 Sentence 1 He is intelligent.

Sentence 2 He is lazy.

Sentence 1

+

Sentence 2

He is rich and happy.

Sentence 1

+

Sentence 2

He is intelligent but lazy.

ARTICLE

- Comes before Noun (Noun के पहले आता है)

Indefinite

A / An

- Means 'One'
- Comes with Singular Countable Noun.
(S.C.N. के साथ आता है)
- Do not come with Plural Countable Noun and Uncountable Noun.
(P.C.N. एवं U.N. के साथ नहीं आता है)
- Come with Nouns which are getting introduced.
(जिन संज्ञा का परिचय हो रहा है उसके साथ आता है)

Definite

The

- Can come with Countable as well as Uncountable Noun.
(C.N. एवं U.N. दोनों के साथ आता है)
- Comes with Nouns that have already been introduced.
(जिन संज्ञा का परिचय दिया जा चुका है उसके साथ 'the' आता है)
- Comes with Nouns that are definite, that can be visualised or pointed out.
(Noun के साथ होता है, जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं या जिसकी छवि दिमाग में बन चुकी है)

Eg.

1. He is a singer.
2. They are a singers. [×]
3. She gave an advice. [×]
4. Once upon a time, there lived a king.
5. He is a very good dancer.
6. Once upon a time, there lived a saint, nearby the place of the king.

Use of 'A' / 'An'

A With Consonant Sound

An With Vowel Sound

Vowels a, e, i, o, u

Vowels Sound 'अ' से 'औ' तक

Fill in the blanks with A/An

1. _____ orange	9. _____ year
2. _____ eagle	10. _____ MP
3. _____ umbrella	11. _____ DCP
4. _____ European	12. _____ ewe
5. _____ university	13. _____ honorary lecturers
6. _____ one-rupee Coin	14. _____ honesty
7. _____ honest man	15. _____ police.
8. _____ ear	

Answers

1. An	9. A
2. An	10. An
3. An	11. A
4. A	12. A
5. A	13. x
6. A	14. x
7. An	15. x
8. An	

PREPOSITION

• **Determines Position** (स्थान बताता है)

1. The book is on the table.	4. This book added feather to my cap.
2. They insisted on going home.	5. Don't pick up a fight.
3. India will take on Pakistan tomorrow.	

ADVERB

Qualifies the nearest word (निकटतम शब्द के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है)

1. I work hard .	→ Hard (Adv.) qualifies work (Verb)
2. I work very hard.	→ Very (Adv.) qualifies hard (Adv.)
3. He is very smart.	→ Very (Adv.) qualifies smart (Adj.)
4. Only Rahul came to meet me.	→ Only (Adv.) qualifies Rahul (Noun)
5. Even she knows the truth.	→ Even (Adv.) qualifies she (APronoun)
6. The fan is exactly over your bed.	→ Exactly (Adv.) qualifies over (Prep.)
7. I like him simply because he is honest.	→ Simply (Adv.) qualifies because (Conj.)
8. Sadly , all were dead.	→ Sadly (Adv.) qualifies the whole sentence

INTERJECTION

Interjection is used to express one's feelings. Any emotion such as sorrow, happiness, nervousness, resentment, surprise, consent, mistake etc. is expressed through an interjection. These sentences always end with an exclamation mark (!). / यानि विस्मयादिबोधक का प्रयोग अपनी भावनाओं को व्यक्त करने हेतु किया जाता है। कोई भी भावना जैसे दुःख, सुख, घबराहट, नाराजगी, आश्चर्य, सहमति, गलती आदि को विस्मयादिबोधक वाक्य के माध्यम से ही व्यक्त किया जाता है। इन वाक्यों के अंत में हमेशा विस्मयादिबोधक चिन्ह (!) आते हैं।

1. Wow! It's really a great idea.	3. Alas! I failed
2. Hurray! We have won the match.	4. Oh! I am sorry.

Doing / State word (कार्य/ अवस्था दर्शाता है)

Auxiliary Verbs

Main Verbs

Linking Verbs

Transitive Verbs

Intransitive Verbs

- **Helps M.V**
(**Main verb** की सहायता करता है)
- **Comes before the M.V**
(**M.V.** के पहले आता है)
- **May or May not be present in the sentence.**
(वाक्य में हो भी सकता है और नहीं भी)

- **Denotes the main action/state.**
(मुख्य कार्य/ अवस्था दर्शाता है)
- **Must come in a sentence**
(एक वाक्य में जरूर आएगा)

Eg:-

1. He is sleeping.
A.V M.V

2. He works. (No A.V.)
M.V

3. I teach.
M.V

4. I am teaching.
A.V M.V

Auxiliary Verbs

Primary Auxiliary Verbs

Modals

- **Work as Helping Verb as well as Main Verb.**
(**Helping Verb** व **Main verb** दोनों का काम करें)

Eg:- Do, Be, Have.

- **Work as only Helping Verb**
(सिर्फ **H.V** का कार्य करता है)
- **They need a Main verb after them.**
(इनको एक **Main verb** की जरूरत पड़ती है)
- **Modals are immediately followed by base form of verb.**
(**Modals** को तुरंत बाद **Vb.f** आता है)

Eg:-

'May', 'Might', 'Can', 'Could', 'Should', 'Must', 'Ought to', 'will', 'shall', 'Would' are complete modals. 'Need', 'dare', 'used to' are partial modals.

Main Verbs

Stative verbs

Denotes state
(अवस्था दर्शाता है)

Dynamic verbs

Denotes Action
(कार्य दर्शाता है)

Eg:-

1. I was ill.
2. I have a car.
3. I know you.
4. I love you.
5. I am a doctor.

Eg:-

1. I have lunch at 1 pm.
2. I teach English.
3. He goes to school.

- Stative verbs generally do not come in 'ing' form.

(Stative verbs सामान्यतः 'ing' form में नहीं आते)

- They are called linking verbs too. (ये linking verbs भी कहलाते हैं)

because they link the subject and Noun/ Adj. (क्योंकि ये Sub. एवं Noun/ Adj. के बीच link का काम करता है)

Main Verbs

Transitive Verbs/ सकर्मक क्रिया

Verbs that need an object for the sentence to express a complete thought.

(जिन verb के बाद एक object का आना जरूरी होता है वरना वाक्य का सम्पूर्ण अर्थ नहीं निकलता)

Eg:-

1. I completed the work.

T.V what
क्या

2. He killed the man.

T.V whom
किसको

Intransitive Verbs/ अकर्मक क्रिया

Verbs that do not need an object for the sentence to express a complete thought.

(जिन verbs के बाद object की जरूरत नहीं और object के बिना भी वाक्य सार्थक है।)

Eg:-

1. Birds fly.

It. V

2. Babies cry.

It. V

Verbs

Finite Verbs

Non-finite verbs

Gerund
Infinitive &
Participle

Eg:-

Change
according to
tense, person
& number

1. I love watching movies.
2. She loves watching movies.
3. She loved watching movies.
4. I want to help him.
5. He wants to help him.
6. I wanted to help him.

Gerund

Infinitive

Verbs that show tense, person and number. (जो **verbs tense**, व्यक्ति व संख्या दर्शाता है)

for eg- love, loves, loved want, wants, wanted etc.

Verbs that do not show tense, person and number. (जो **verbs tense**, व्यक्ति व संख्या नहीं दर्शाता है)

for eg- Watching, to help.

Main Verbs

Regular verbs

Regular verbs form past and past participle forms by adding 'ed'. (जो **verbs** को **V₂ & V₃ forms** बनाने के लिए सिर्फ 'ed' की जरूरत होती है)

Eg:-

V₁

V₂

V₃

walk	walked	walked
Talk	talked	talked
paint	painted	painted

Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs form their past and past participle forms in different ways. (जो **verbs** को **V₂ & V₃ forms** अलग तरीके से बनाता है)

All these forms are the same.

(सभी **forms** एक ही हैं)

Two of three forms are the same.

(दो **forms** समान हैं)

All three forms are different.

(सभी **forms** अलग-अलग हैं)

Eg:-

put	—	sit	—	go	—	V ₁
put	—	sat	—	went	—	V ₂
put	—	sat	—	gone	—	V ₃

FORMS OF VERBS, GROUP-I (IRREGULAR VERBS)

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Arise	उठना	arose	arisen	arising	arises
Awake	जागना	awoke	awoken	awaking	awakes
Be (b.f), are, am → V ₁	होना	was, were	been	being	is

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Bet	शर्त लगाना	bet	bet	betting	bets
Bear	सहन करना	bore	borne	bearing	bears
Bear	जन्म देना	bore	born	bearing	bears
Become	बनना	became	become	becoming	becomes
Begin	आरंभ करना	began	begun	beginning	begins
Bid	बोली लगाना/ कहना	bid	bid	bidding	bids
Bind	बाँधना	bound	bound	binding	binds
Bite	दाँत से काटना	bit	bitten	biting	bites
Blow	हवा का चलना	blew	blown	blowing	blows
Break	तोड़ना/टूटना	broke	broken	breaking	breaks
Bring	लाना	brought	brought	bringing	brings
Build	बनाना/निर्माण करना	built	built	building	builds
Burst	फटना	burst	burst	bursting	
Burn	जलना/ जलाना	burnt	burnt	burning	burns
Buy	खरीदना	bought	bought	buying	buys
Cast	फेंकना/डालना	cast	cast	casting	casts
Catch	पकड़ना	caught	caught	catching	catches
Choose	चुनना	chose	chosen	choosing	chooses
Cost	मूल्य लगाना	cost	cost	costing	costs
Come	आना	came	come	coming	comes
Creep	रेगना	crept	crept	creeping	creeps
Cut	काटना	cut	cut	cutting	cuts
Dig	खोदना	dug	dug	digging	digs
Do	करना	did	done	doing	does
Draw	खींचना	drew	drawn	drawing	draws
Dream	स्वप्न देखना	dreamt	dreamt	dreaming	dreams
Drink	पीना	drank	drunk/drunken	drinking	drinks
Drive	चलाना	drove	driven	driving	drives
Eat	खाना	ate	eaten	eating	eats
Fall	गिरना	fell	fallen	falling	falls
Feel	महसूस/अनुभव करना	felt	felt	feeling	feels
Fight	लड़ना	fought	fought	fighting	fight
Find	पाना	found	found	finding	finds
Fly	उड़ना, उड़ाना	flew	flown	flying	flies

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Forbid	मना करना	forbade	forbidden	forbidding	forbids
Forget	भूल जाना	forgot	forgotten	forgetting	forgets
Freeze	जमाना/जमना	froze	frozen	freezing	freezes
Get	पाना	got	got	getting	gets
Give	देना	gave	given	giving	gives
Grind	पीसना	ground	ground	grinding	grinds
Grow	बढ़ना, उगना	grew	grown	growing	grows
Hang	लटकाना	hung	hung	hanging	hangs
Have	खाना/रखना/प्राप्त करना	had	had	having	has
Hide	छिपाना/छिपना	hid	hidden	hiding	hides
Hold	थामना	held	held	holding	holds
Hurt	पीड़ा पहुँचाना	hurt	hurt	hurting	hurts
Keep	रखना	kept	kept	keeping	keeps
Kneel	घुटनों के बल झुकना	knelt	knelt	kneeling	kneels
Know	जानना	knew	known	knowing	knows
Let	करने देना	let	let	letting	lets
Lead	मार्ग दिखाना	led	led	leading	leads
Learn	याद करना, सीखना	learnt	learnt	learning	learns
Leave	छोड़ना	left	left	leaving	leaves
Lend	उधार देना	lent	lent	lending	lends
Lie	लेटना/किसी स्थान या अवस्था में होना	lay	lain	lying	lies
Lose	खोना/हारना	lost	lost	losing	loses
Make	बनाना	made	made	making	makes
Mean	अर्थ निकलना	meant	meant	meaning	means
Meet	मिलना	met	met	meeting	meets
Put	रखना	put	put	putting	puts
Quit	छोड़ना	quit	quit	quitting	quits
Read	पढ़ना *	read	read	reading	reads
Ride	सवारी करना	rode	ridden	riding	rides
Ring	बजना/बजाना	rang	rung	ringing	rings
Rise	उठना/उगना	rose	risen	rising	rises
See	देखना	saw	seen	seeing	sees
Set	अस्त होना	set	set	setting	sets
Send	भेजना	sent	sent	sending	sends
Shake	हिलाना	shook	shaken	shaking	shakes
Shed	बहाना/त्याग देना	shed	shed	shedding	sheds
Sing	गाना	sang	sung	singing	sings

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Sink	डूबना	sank	sunk	sinking	sinks
Shine	चमकना	shone	shone	shining	shines
Shoot	फोटो निकालना/गो ली मारना	shot	shot	shooting	shoots
Shrink	सिकुड़ना	shrank	shrunk/ shrunken	shrinking	shrinks
Shut	बंद करना	shut	shut	shutting	shuts
Sit	बैठना	sat	sat	sitting	sits
Sleep	सोना	slept	slept	sleeping	sleeps
Stand	खड़ा होना	stood	stood	standing	stands
Steal	चुराना	stole	stolen	stealing	steals
Stick	चिपकना	stuck	stuck	sticking	sticks
Stand	खड़ा होना	stood	stood	standing	stands
Strike	चोट मारना/ प्रहार करना	struck	struck	striking	strikes
Speak	बोलना	spoke	spoken	speaking	speaks
Spend	खर्च करना	spent	spent	spending	spends
Spit	थूकना	spat	spat	spitting	spits
Spread	फैलाना	spread	spread	spreading	spreads
Swear	शपथ लेना	swore	sworn	swearing	swears
Sweep	आड़ू देना	swept	swept	sweeping	sweeps
Swim	तैरना	swam	swum	swimming	swims
Swing	झूलना	swung	swung	swinging	swings
Take	लेना	took	taken	taking	takes
Teach	पढ़ाना/ सिखाना	taught	taught	teaching	teaches
Tear	फाड़ना	tore	torn	tearing	tears
Think	सोचना	thought	thought	thinking	thinks
Understand	समझना	understood	understood	understanding	understands
Wear	पहनना	wore	worn	wearing	wears
Weave	बुनना	wove	woven	weaving	weaves
Weep	रोना	wept	wept	weeping	weeps
Win	जीतना	won	won	winning	wins
Wind	चाबी लगाना	wound	wound	winding	winds
Wring	निचोड़ना	wrung	wrung	wringing	wrings
Write	लिखना	wrote	written	writing	writes

FORMS OF VERBS, GROUP-II (REGULAR VERBS)

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Abuse	गाली देना/ दुपयोंग करना	abused	abused	abusing	abuses
Act	काम करना/ अभिनय करना	acted	acted	acting	acts
Add	जोड़ना	added	added	adding	adds
Admire	पसंद करना	admired	admired	admiring	admires
Advise	उपदेश देना	advised	advised	advising	advises
Allow	अनुमति देना	allowed	allowed	allowing	allows
Answer	उत्तर देना	answered	answered	answering	answers
Appoint	नियुक्त करना	appointed	appointed	appointing	appoints
Appear	प्रकट होना	appeared	appeared	appearing	appears
Arrive	पहुँचना	arrived	arrived	arriving	arrives
Arrest	गिरफ्तार करना	arrested	arrested	arresting	arrests
Ask	पूछना/कहना	asked	asked	asking	asks
Attack	आक्रमण करना	attacked	attacked	attacking	attacks
Bark	भौंकना	barked	barked	barking	barks
Bathe	स्नान करना	bathed	bathed	bathing	bathes
Beg	भीख माँगना	begged	begged	begging	begs
Believe	विश्वास करना	believed	believed	believing	believes
Behave	व्यवहार करना	behaved	behaved	behaving	behaves
Bleed	खून बहना	bled	bled	bleeding	bleeds
Bless	आशीर्वाद देना	blessed	blessed	blessing	blesses
Boil	उबालना	boiled	boiled	boiling	boils
Boast	डींगें मारना	boasted	boasted	boasting	boasts
Borrow	उधार लेना	borrowed	borrowed	borrowing	borrow
Call	पुकारना	called	called	calling	calls
Carry	ले जाना	carried	carried	carrying	carries
Clean	साफ करना	cleaned	cleaned	cleaning	cleans
Close	बंद करना	closed	closed	closing	closes
Change	बदलना	changed	changed	changing	changes
Check	रोकना/जाँच करना	checked	checked	checking	checks
Climb	चढ़ना	climbed	climbed	climbing	climbs
Clap	ताली बजाना	clapped	clapped	clapping	claps
Copy	नकल करना	copied	copied	copying	copies

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	– ing Form	s/es Form
Collect	इकट्ठा करना	collected	collected	collecting	collects
Complain	शिकायत करना	complained	complained	complaining	complains
Cook	पकाना	cooked	cooked	cooking	cooks
Count	गिनना	counted	counted	counting	counts
Confuse	उलझन में डाल देना	confused	confused	confusing	confuses
Consult	सलाह देना	consulted	consulted	consulting	consults
Cover	ढकना	covered	covered	covering	covers
Crow	बांग लगाना	crowed	crowed	crowing	crowds
Cross	पार करना	crossed	crossed	crossing	crosses
Cry	विल्लाना/विल्ला कर रोना	cried	cried	crying	cries
Decorate	सजाना	decorated	decorated	decorating	decorates
Dance	नाचना	danced	danced	dancing	dances
Deceive	धोखा देना	deceived	deceived	deceiving	deceives
Defeat	हराना	defeated	defeated	defeating	defeats
Decide	निर्णय करना	decided	decided	deciding	decides
Desire	इच्छा करना	desired	desired	desiring	desires
Discover	खोज करना	discovered	discovered	discovering	discovers
Dip	डुबोना	dipped	dipped	dipping	dips
Die	मरना	died	died	dying	dies
Divide	बाँटना	divided	divided	dividing	divides
Dry	सुखना/सुखाना	dried	dried	drying	dries
Drown	डुबाना	drowned	drowned	drowning	drowns
Dye	रंगना	dyed	dyed	dyeing	dyes
Earn	कमाना	earned	earned	earning	earns
Enter	प्रवेश करना	entered	entered	entering	enters
Employ	काम पर रखना	employed	employed	employing	employs
Explain	समझाना	explained	explained	explaining	explains
Face	सामना करना	faced	faced	facing	faces

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Fail	असफल होना	failed	failed	failing	fails
Fear	डरना	feared	feared	fearing	fears
Feed	खिलाना	fed	fed	feeding	feeds
Fell	गिराना	felled	felled	felling	fells
Flee	भागना	fled	fled	fleeing	flees
Finish	समाप्त करना	finished	finished	finishing	finishes
Fine	जुर्माना लगाना	fined	fined	fining	fines
Float	तैरना (सतह पर)	floated	floated	floating	floats
Grazed	चरना	grazed	grazed	grazing	grazes
Gather	इकट्ठा करना/होना	gathered	gathered	gathering	gathers
Hate	घृणा करना	hated	hated	hating	hates
Hang	फांसी लगाना	hanged	hanged	hanging	hangs
Hear	सुनना	heard	heard	hearing	hears
Help	सहायता करना	helped	helped	helping	helps
Improve	सुधारना/बेहतर होना	improved	improved	improving	improves
Invite	निमंत्रण देना	invited	invited	inviting	invites
Join	साथ में होना,	joined	joined	joining	joins
Jump	कूदना	jumped	jumped	jumping	jumps
Kill	जान से मारना	killed	killed	killing	kills
Knit	बुनना	knitted	knitted	knitting	knits
Lay	रखना/(अंडा) देना, न्योछावर करना	laid	laid	laying	lays
Lie	झूठ बोलना	lied	lied	lying	lies
Laugh	हंसना	laughed	laughed	laughing	laughs
Like	वाहना	liked	liked	liking	likes
Listen	सुनना (ध्यान से)	listened	listened	listening	listens
Look	देखना	looked	looked	looking	looks
Live	रहना	lived	lived	living	lives
Love	प्रेम करना	loved	loved	loving	loves
Marry	विवाह करना	married	married	marrying	marries
Move	हिलना	moved	moved	moving	moves
Melt	पिघलना, पिघलाना	melted	melted/ molten	melting	melts
Mend	सुधारना	mended	mended	mending	mends
Mix	मिलाना, मिलना	mixed	mixed	mixing	mixes
Name	नाम रखना	named	named	naming	names

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Need	आवश्यकता होना	needed	needed	needing	needs
Nip	सख्ती से कुचलना	nipped	nipped	nipping	nips
Obey	आज्ञा मानना	obeyed	obeyed	obeying	obeys
Open	खोलना	opened	opened	opening	opens
Order	आदेश देना	ordered	ordered	ordering	orders
Oppose	विरोध करना	opposed	opposed	opposing	opposes
Pay	चुकाना	paid	paid	paying	pays
Play	खेलना	played	played	playing	plays
Pray	प्रार्थना करना	prayed	prayed	praying	prays
Praise	प्रशंसा करना	praised	praised	praising	praises
Preach	उपदेश करना	preached	preached	preaching	preaches
Peep	झाँकना	peeped	peeped	peeping	peeps
Plant	पौधा लगाना	planted	planted	planting	plants
Pluck	तोड़ना (जैसे फूल तोड़ते हैं)	plucked	plucked	plucking	plucks
Prepare	तैयार करना	prepared	prepared	preparing	prepares
Pull	खींचना	pulled	pulled	pulling	pulls
Prevent	रोकना	prevented	prevented	preventing	prevents
Punish	दण्ड देना	punished	punished	punishing	punishes
Prove	सिद्ध करना	proved	proved	proving	proves
Promise	वचन देना	promised	promised	promising	promises
Push	धक्का देना	pushed	pushed	pushing	pushes
Quarrel	झगड़ना	quarrelled	quarrelled	quarrelling	quarrels
Rain	वर्षा होना	rained	rained	raining	rains
Reply	जबाब देना	replied	replied	replying	replies
Reach	पहुँचना	reached	reached	reaching	reaches
Receive	पाना, प्राप्त करना	received	received	receiving	receives
Refuse	इंकार करना	refused	refused	refusing	refuses
Rest	आराम करना	rested	rested	resting	rests
Resign	त्यागपत्र देना	resigned	resigned	resigning	resigns
Repair	मरम्मत करना	repaired	repaired	repairing	repairs
Remember	याद करना	remembered	remembered	remembering	remembers
Return	लौटाना, लौटना	returned	returned	returning	returns
Roar	गरजना	roared	roared	roaring	roars
Say	कहना	said	said	saying	says

Present (1st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2nd Form)	3rd Form	- ing Form	s/es Form
Sell	बेचना	sold	sold	selling	sells
Save	बचाना	saved	saved	saving	saves
Saw	आरी से चीरना	sawed	sawed	sawing	saws
Select	चुनना (छांटकर)	selected	selected	selecting	selects
Stay	ठहरना	stayed	stayed	staying	stays
Stop	रोकना	stopped	stopped	stopping	stops
Study	पढ़ना	studied	studied	studying	studies
Slip	फिसलना	slipped	slipped	slipping	slips
Talk	बात करना	talked	talked	talking	talks
Tell	कहना	told	told	telling	tells
Tie	बांधना	tied	tied	tying	ties
Touch	छूना	touched	touched	touching	touches
Try	प्रयत्न करना	tried	tried	trying	tries
Trust	विश्वास करना	trusted	trusted	trusting	trusts
Use	इस्तेमाल करना	used	used	using	uses
Walk	चलना	walked	walked	walking	walks
Wash	धोना	washed	washed	washing	washes
Wait	प्रतीक्षा करना	waited	waited	waiting	waits
Work	काम करना	worked	worked	working	works
Watch	निगरानी करना	watched	watched	watching	watches
Wish	चाहना	wished	wished	wishing	wishes
Wander	भटकना	wandered	wandered	wandering	wanders
Waste	नष्ट करना	wasted	wasted	wasting	wastes
Wed	विवाह करना	wedded	wedded	wedding	weds
Wound	घायल करना	wounded	wounded	wounding	wounds
Worship	पूजा करना	worshipped	worshipped	worshipping	worships
Wonder	हैरान होना	wondered	wondered	wondering	wonders
Wrap	लपेटना	wrapped	wrapped	wrapping	wraps
Yield	पैदावार करना	yielded	yielded	yielding	yields

*** Read एवं Study में अंतर है। Study का अर्थ अध्ययन करना है जबकि Read हम Magazine, Newspaper इत्यादि को करते हैं।**

VERB (TASK – I)

Learn the forms of verbs and then take the following test-

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃
1.	Swing	.....	.....
2.	.....	wrung	.....
3.	Find	.....	.....
4.	.....	.....	Founded
5.	Fall	.....	.....
6.	.....	Felled	.....
7.	Befall	.....	.....
8.	Fly	.....	.....
9.	Flow	.....	.....
10.	Blow	.....	.....
11.	Stick	.....	.....
12.	Strike	.....	.....
13.	Affect	.....	.....
14.	Effect	.....	.....
15.	Flee	.....	.....
16.	.....	Rent	.....
17.	.....	Rented	.....
18.	.....	.....	Lied
19.	.....	Lay	.....
20.	Lay	.....	.....
21.	.....	.....	Hung
22.	.....	.....	Hanged
23.	Cast	.....	.....
24.	Telecast	.....	.....
25.	Broadcast	.....	.....
26.	Rise	.....	.....
27.	Arise	.....	.....
28.	.....	Raised	.....
29.	.....	Bound	.....
30.	.....	Bounded	.....

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃
31.	Grind	.....	.....
32.	Ground	.....	.....
33.	Bear	.....	.....
34.	.....	.....	Borne
35.	Forgo	.....	.....
36.	.....	.....	Bidden
37.	.....	Bid	.....
38.	Forbid	.....	.....
39.	Awake	.....	.....
40.	Learn	.....	.....
41.	Bleed	.....	.....
42.	Buy	.....	.....

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	V ₁ +ing
43.	Die	.....	.....	.....
44.	Feed	.....	.....	.....
45.	Vie	.....	.....	.....
46.	Carry	.....	.....	.....
47.	Marry	.....	.....	.....
48.	Say	.....	.....	.....
49.	Read	.....	.....	.....
50.	Cut	.....	.....	.....
51.	Quit	.....	.....	.....
52.	Bet	.....	.....	.....
53.	Dye	.....	.....	.....
54.	Clap	.....	.....	.....
55.	Admire	.....	.....	.....
56.	Bathe	.....	.....	.....
57.	Dry	.....	.....	.....
58.	Wed	.....	.....	.....
59.	Shed	.....	.....	.....
60.	Thrust	.....	.....	.....

Note: There are 135 blanks. What is your score?
Now honestly check what is the meaning of all the verbs. If you do not know the meaning, deduct half mark (0.5) for each of them.
Final Score—

Answers (VERB, TASK – I)

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃
1.	Swing	swung	swung	20.	Lay	Laid	Laid
2.	Wring	wrung	wrung	21.	Hang	Hung	Hung
3.	Find	found	found	22.	Hang	Hanged	Hanged
4.	Found	founded	founded	23.	Cast	Cast	Cast
5.	Fall	fell	fallen	24.	Telecast	Telecast	Telecast
6.	Fell	felled	felled	25.	Broadcast	Broadcast	Broadcast
7.	Befall	befell	befallen	26.	Rise	Rose	Risen
8.	Fly	flew	flown	27.	Arise	Arose	Arisen
9.	Flow	flowed	flowed	28.	Raise	Raised	Raised
10.	Blow	blew	blown	29.	Bind	Bound	Bound
11.	Stick	Stuck	Stuck	30.	Bound	Bounded	Bounded
12.	Strike	Struck	Struck	31.	Grind	Ground	Ground
13.	Affect	Affected	Affected	32.	Ground	Grounded	Grounded
14.	Effect	Effected	Effected	33.	Bear	Bore	Born
15.	Flee	Fled	Fled	34.	Bear	Bore	Borne
16.	Rend	Rent	Rent	35.	Forgo	forwent	Forgone
17.	Rent	Rented	Rented	36.	Bid	Bade	Bidden
18.	Lie	Lied	Lied	37.	Bid	Bid	Bid
19.	Lie	Lay	Lain				

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	V ₁ +ing
38.	Forbid	Forbade	Forbidden	Forbidding
39.	Awake	Awoke	Awoken	Awaking
40.	Learn	Learnt	Learnt	Learning
41.	Bleed	Bled	Bled	Bleeding
42.	Buy	Bought	Bought	Buying
43.	Die	Died	Died	Dying
44.	Feed	Fed	Fed	Feeding
45.	Vie	Vied	Vied	Vying
46.	Carry	Carried	Carried	Carrying
47.	Marry	Married	Married	Marrying
48.	Say	Said	Said	Saying
49.	Read	Read	Read	Reading
50.	Cut	Cut	Cut	Cutting
51.	Quit	Quit	Quit	Quitting
52.	Bet	Bet	Bet	Betting
53.	Dye	Dyed	Dyed	Dyeing
54.	Clap	Clapped	Clapped	Clapping
55.	Admire	Admired	Admired	Admiring
56.	Bathe	Bathed	Bathed	Bathing
57.	Dry	Dried	Dried	Drying

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	V ₁ +ing
58.	Wed	Wedded	Wedded	Wedding
59.	Shed	Shed	Shed	Shedding
60.	Thrust	Thrust	Thrust	Thrusting

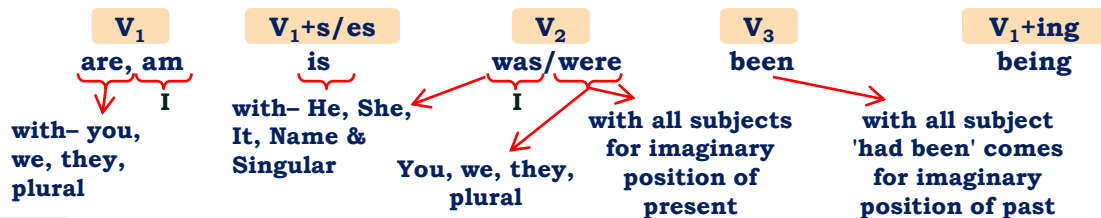
Three Primary Auxiliary Verbs

1 Be

2 Do

3 Have

1 Be V_{b.f} (Base form of verb)



Eg:- 1. I was a doctor
M.V

2. I was treating the patients.
H.V M.V

3. I wish, I were the PM of India.
M.V

4. Would that, he were in my shoes.
for Present Imaginary Position

5. I wish, Modi had been the PM in 1990s.
for Past Imaginary Position

6. I am to leave for the station now.

7. She is going to deliver a speech.

8. He was about to board the bus when he slipped.

6, 7, 8 → for planned action of near future, we have the following structures:-

6. Be + to + Vb.f.

7. Be + going to + Vb.f.

8. Be + about to + Vb.f.

is, am, are, was, were

2 Do V_{b.f} (Base form of verb)

V₁

Do

with- I , We, They,
You & Plural

V₁+s/es

Does

with- He , she, it,
name & singular

V₂

Did

V₃

Done

V₁+ing

Doing

Eg:-

1. I do not do any work.

H.V M.V

2. I do understand your problems.

H.V V₁

Emphasises/ जोर देता है

3. I did make a mistake.

H.V V₁

Emphasises/ जोर देता है

~~works~~

4. I work as hard as she does.

Replaces action verb to avoid repetition

6. The second pigeon flew as soon as _____.

(1) the first pigeon had flown.

(2) the first one had flown

(3) the first one had done.

SSC CGL, Aug.-2015

Ans. (3)

7. I do¹ the dishes.

8. I did² the laundry.

9. I did³ my hair.

10. The cake is done.

11. I am done with⁴ you.

12. She is up and doing⁵ now.

1. to 'wash'

2. to 'wash',

3. बनाना (set, arrange),

4. done with → fed up (परेशान होना)

5. up and doing → active (चुस्त)

4 & 5. We use pronoun to avoid repetition of Noun.

Similarly we use 'do' to avoid repetition of verb (except forms of 'be'.)

3 Have V_{b.f} (Base form of verb)

V₁

Have

with- I , We, They,
You & Plural

V₁+s/es

Has

with- He , she, it,
name & singular

V₂

Had

V₃

Had

V₁+ing

Having

Eg:-

1. I have a car.

possess or own

2. I have lunch at 1 pm.

eat

3. I had a dream last night.

dreamt

experienced

4. I had a strange experience last night.

5. We have fun on Sunday.

Most appropriate
verb with fun — have fun → मजे करना

6. I have met them.
H.V V₃
7. I had rather stay at home.
Idiomatic modal V_{b.f}
8. I have had lunch just now.
H.V M.V (V₃)
(खाने)
9. I had had lunch before you came.
H.V M.V (V₃)
10. I am having a car. (×)
I have a car. (✓)
11. I am having lunch. (✓)
12. We are having fun. (✓)

6. Has
Have + V₃
Had
H.V
7. Had rather
Had sooner } + V_{b.f}
Had better }
for strong
recommendation
(हद सलाह)

Have

denotes state } to possess
to own
Having (×)

Have → to eat
Have fun → to enjoy } Denote
Having (✓) action

13. Madhuri Dixit _____ a large fan following.
(i) has (ii) is having Ans. (i)

Forced Action

'Have' as a Modal denotes Forced Action too.

(Modal के रूप में 'have' किसी कार्य के लिए बाध्यता भी दर्शा सकता है)

Action done under pressure, threat or force come in forced action.

जो कार्य दबाव या धमकी में किया जाए वह **Forced Action** के अंतर्गत आते हैं

PRESENT

Have to + V_{b.f}
Has to + V_{b.f}

1. He has to come here every day.
2. I have to see the doctor every week.

PAST

Had to + V_{b.f}

1. The government had to make tough decisions.
2. She had to flee to save her life.

FUTURE

will have to + V_{b.f}

1. She will have to go to Mumbai for checkup.
2. We will have to be cautious in future.

Correct the following sentences if necessary:-

1. I will happy if you attend the party. 2. I am agree with you. 3. I am ready to take the responsibility. 4. You will success provided that you work hard. 5. I am quite intelligent, amn't I? 6. He must sad as he has lost his wife recently. 7. I am having two cars and a house. 8. She is having many friends. 9. I am having lunch now. 10. I have had my breakfast just now. 11. She and her friends are having fun. 12. He is owning a farm house. 13. I am possessing a gun. 14. I do understand your problems. 15. He did sent me a letter to my address but I didn't received any. 16. I had to left my job due to some problems. 17. We has to perform our duty. 18. He will has to come on time every day. 19. She has tore the letters. 20. I am to leave for Mumbai tonight. 21. He was to leave for the station when someone came.	22. I am going to wrote a letter now. 23. He was about to start his speech when the bomb exploded. 24. God, have mercy on us. 25. I won't has this nonsense any more. 26. My cow had a calf last night. 27. We have already have enough of problems. 28. Society discriminates (भेद-भाव करना) between the haves and have nots. 29. I am done. 30. The cake is done. 31. He is gone. 32. I did the dishes. 33. He did well in the exam. 34. After a short break, he is now up and doing. 35. I love you as much as she is loving. 36. I work as hard as you do. 37. We will have to do away with social evils. 38. Here is a list of do's and don'ts. 39. He has his eyes on the most coveted post. 40. Your project must has to do with real people.

1. Change 'will' into 'will be'
2. Change 'am agree' into 'agree'
3. No correction
4. Change 'success' into 'succeed'
5. Change 'amn't I' into 'aren't I'
6. Change 'must' into 'must be'
7. Change 'am having' into 'have'
8. Change 'is having' into 'has'
9. No correction
10. No correction
11. No correction
12. Change 'is owning' into 'owns'
13. Change 'am possessing' into 'possess'
14. No correction
15. Change 'sent' into 'send' and change 'received' into 'receive'
16. Change 'left' into 'leave'
17. Change 'has' into 'have'.
18. Change 'has' into 'have'
19. Change 'tore' into 'torn'
20. No correction
21. No correction
22. Change 'wrote' into 'write'.
23. No correction
24. No correction
25. Change 'has' into 'have'.
26. No correction
27. Change 'already have' into 'already had'.
28. Change 'haves not' into 'have not'
Haves means have nots means.
29. No correction
30. No correction
31. No correction
32. No correction
33. No correction
34. No correction
35. Change 'is loving' into 'does'.
36. No correction
37. No correction, 'Do away with' means 'to get ride of'.
38. Change do's into dos.
39. No correction
40. Change 'must has to' into 'must have to'

There are certain main verbs with two V3 forms. Out of the two forms, one is usually a verb and the other an Adjective.

(कुछ verbs के दो V₃ forms होते हैं जिसमें से सामान्यतः एक verb होता है और दूसरा Adjective)

V ₁	अर्थ	V ₂	V ₃	Adjective
Melt	पिघलना/ पिघलाना	Melted	Melted	Molten
Load	लादना	Loaded	Loaded	Laden
Prove	साबित करना	Proved	Proved	Proven
Shrink	सिकुड़ना	Shrank	Shrunk	Shrunken
Shear	मुड़ना	Sheared	Sheared	Shorn
Shave	दाढ़ी बनाना	Shaved	Shaved	Shaven
Get	पाना	Got	Got	Gotten
Sink	डुबना (निर्जीव का)	Sank	Sunk	Sunken
Drink	पीना	Drank	Drunk	Drunken
Bend	मोड़ना	Bent	Bent	Bended

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate form of verb given below:-

- The chocolate has _____.
- The _____ lava is flowing down the hill.
- They have _____ the trucks.
- The fruit _____ trucks are standing at the border.
- I have _____ him wrong.
- It is a _____ fact that even insects communicate.
- Her dress has _____.
- They have _____ the sheep.
- They visit Tirupati temple with _____ head.
- I have _____ some information.
- She is wearing a newly- _____ saree.
- He has _____ a lot.
- _____ driving is a punishable offence.
- The ship has _____.
- They found the _____ ship after a decade.
- He has _____ the rod.
- He begged for mercy on his _____ knee.

- melted
- molten
- loaded
- laden
- proved
- proven
- shrunk
- sheared/
shaved
- shaven/
shorn
- got
- gotten
- drunk
- Drunken
- sunk
- sunken
- bent
- bended

There are certain Adjectives that take 'en' and turn into verbs.

(कुछ Adjective में 'en' लगाकर verb बनाये जा सकते हैं)

Adjective	अर्थ	V ₁	V ₂ / V ₃
Less	कम (मात्र में)	Lessen	Lessened
Worse	बदतर	Worsen	Worsened
Loose	ढीला	Loosen	Loosened
Red	लाल	Redden	Reddened
Black	काला	Blacken	Blackened
White	सफेद	Whiten	Whitened
Bright	चमकीला	Brighten	Brightened
Dark	अंधेरा	Darken	Darkened
Quiet	शांत	Quieten	Quietened
Wide	विस्तृत	Widen	Widened
Broad	चौड़ा, विस्तृत	Broaden	Broadened
Hard	सख्त	Harden	Hardened
Fast	तेज, कसा हुआ	Fasten (बांधना)	Fastened
Straight	सीधा	Straighten	Straightened
Light	हल्का	Lighten	Lightened
Tight	कसा हुआ	Tighten	Tightened
Thick	गाढ़ा	Thicken	Thickened
Soft	मुलायम	Soften	Softened
Sad	दुखी	Sadden	Saddened
Glad	खुश	Gladden	Gladdened

Did you note 'Red', 'glad' and 'sad' have their last consonant doubled? These verbs end in consonant and are preceded by a single vowel. In such cases the consonant is doubled and then 'en' is added.

क्या आपने इस बात पर ध्यान दिया कि ये 'Red', 'glad' और 'sad' में आखिरी Consonant double हो रहे हैं? ये Verbs consonant में खत्म होते हैं जिसके पहले एक vowel आता है। ऐसे verbs में consonant double होता है तब 'en' लगता है।

Certain nouns take 'en' and form verbs./ (कुछ Noun में 'en' लगाकर verb बनाये जाते हैं)

Noun	अर्थ	V ₁	V ₂ / V ₃
Height	ऊँचाई / लम्बाई	Heighten	Heightened
Strength	ताकत	Strengthen	Strengthened
Fright	डर	Frighten	Frightened
Haste	हड़बड़ी	Hasten	Hastened
Length	लम्बाई	Lengthen	Lengthened
Threat	धमकी	Threaten	Threatened

Fill in the blanks with the verbs formed from Adjectives/ Nouns given above.

- The medicine will _____ your pain.
- _____ your seat belt.
- Constant rubbing has _____ his eyes.
- Such rumours can _____ your reputation.
- _____ the circle.
- Optimism can _____ your life.
- She has _____ her hair.
- We need to _____ our outlook.
- Cease-fire violations have _____ the tension at LOC.
- Your ferocious dog _____ us last night.
- We need to _____ now else we will get late.
- He _____ us of dire consequences yesterday.
- This cream will _____ your skin.
- Talks _____ our relationship.
- Nothing can _____ the chirpy birds.

Answers

- lessen
- Fasten/ Tighten
- reddened
- blacken/ tarnish
- Darken/ Blacken
- brighten
- straightened/
blackened/loosened
- broaden
- heightened
- frightened
- hasten
- threatened
- brighten/ soften/
lighten
- strengthen
- quieten

In the three verbs given below either 't' or 'ed' can be used for V2 and V3 forms but in British English 't' form is preferred./ (नीचे दिए गये तीन verbs के 'V₂' एवं 'V₃' में 'ed' अथवा 't' दोनों लग सकता है परन्तु British English में Verb के रूप में 't' वाले forms ज्यादा प्रचलित हैं।)

Confusing verbs

V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	Adjective
Learn	Learnt	Learnt	Learned
Dream	Dreamt	Dreamt	Dream
Burn	Burnt	Burnt	Burnt, Burning

1. I have learnt it by heart. (have is followed by V₃)
2. Learned judge. (Learned is an Adjective)
3. Burnt leaves. ('burnt' is used as Adj. as well as 'verb')
4. Dream house. (Dream is V_{b.f.} as well as Adjective)
5. Burning train

Confusing Main Verbs

We get confused in forms and meaning of certain verbs. / (हम कई Verbs के forms अथवा अर्थ में confuse कर जाते हैं)

Eg:-

1

Complete

Finish

V-(पूर करना)

Adj-(पूर्ण)

Finish
(खत्म करना)

1. He is _____ and bankrupt now.
2. I have _____ the work.
3. A woman feels _____ after becoming a mother.

Answers

1. finished
2. completed or finished
3. complete

Eg:-

2

(i) Adopt

— गोद लेना (to legally take as one's child)
to take up and practise (अपनाना)

(ii) Adapt

— ढालना (to change accordingly)

(iii) Adept

— निपुण (efficient)

1. They _____ a baby.
2. We _____ ourselves to the climate.
3. He is _____ in painting.
4. _____ some good habits.

Answers

1. adopted
2. adapt
3. adept
4. Adopt

NOW SEE MORE EXAMPLES

1. CONFUSING FORMS OF CERTAIN VERBS:

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	अर्थ
1.	Bid	Bid	Bid	बोली लगाना
	Bid	Bade	Bidden	आदेश देना, अभिवादन करना
2.	Hang	Hung	Hung	टांगना
	Hang	Hanged	Hanged	फाँसी पे चढ़ाना
3.	Lie	Lied	Lied	झूठ बोलना
	Lie	Lay	Lain	लेटना, पड़ा होना
	Lay	Laid	Laid	देना (अंडा)/क्षेतिज रखना (to keep horizontally)/ न्योछावर करना (To sacrifice)
4.	Rend	Rent	Rent	टुकड़े-टुकड़े कर देना/ चीरना / फाड़ना
	Rent	Rented	Rented	किराये पे चढ़ाना

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	अर्थ
5.	Fall	Fell	Fallen	गिरना
	Fell	Felled	Felled	गिराना

EXERCISE

1. He has _____ the highest price.
2. He has _____ good bye to all.
3. He _____ me go out immediately
4. He has _____ the picture.
5. They _____ Saddam Hussain after a brief trial.
6. He _____ about his past.
7. Bhagat Singh _____ his life for his country.
8. _____ your books aside and _____ down to rest.
9. He has _____ the house.
10. His cries _____ the silence of the night.
11. He _____ down and sprained his ankle.
12. Small strokes _____ great oaks.
13. The blanket is _____ in the closet.

Answers

1. bid
2. bidden
3. bade
4. hung
5. hanged
6. lied
7. laid
8. Lay, lie
9. rented
10. rent/rend
11. fell
12. fell
13. lying

2. CONFUSING FORMS OF CERTAIN VERBS:

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	अर्थ
1.	See	Saw	Seen	देखना
	Saw	Sawed	Sawed	आरी से काटना
	Sew	Sewed	Sewed/Sewn	सिलना
	Sow	Sowed	Sowed/Sown	बोना
	Sue	Sued	Sued	किसी पर मुकदमा करना
2.	Grind	Ground	Ground	पीसना
	Ground	Grounded	Grounded	जमीन पर उतारना/उड़ने नहीं देना
3.	Rise	Rose	Risen	उगना/उठना/ तरक्की करना
	Raise	Raised	Raised	उठाना
	Raze	Razed	Razed	(गिराना/ध्वस्त करना)
4.	Fly	Flew	Flown	उड़ना
	Flow	Flowed	Flowed	बहना (liquid का)
	Blow	Blew	Blown	बहना (wind का)
5.	Find	Found	Found	पाना
	Found	Founded	Founded	नींव रखना

EXERCISE

1. I have _____ this document.
2. He _____ the wood.
3. He _____ the spices and sold them.
4. They have _____ all the flights due to a hoax call.
5. The sun has already _____ .
6. I _____ up late today.
7. May you _____ in your life.
8. _____ your hand if you agree to my proposal.
9. They _____ the dilapidated building.
10. They _____ him alive.
11. They _____ the university in 1950.
12. Much water has _____ under the bridge.
13. He _____ into a rage when she abused him.

*To fly into a rage -to get angry suddenly.

Answers

1. seen
2. sawed, saws
3. ground
4. grounded
5. risen
6. rose
7. rise
8. Raise
9. razed, raze
10. found
11. founded
12. flowed
13. *flew

3. CONFUSING FORMS OF CERTAIN VERBS:

SN	V ₁	V ₂	V ₃	अर्थ
1.	Stick	Stuck	Stuck.	चिपकना, लगे रहना
	Strike	Struck	Struck	प्रहार करना
2.	Ring	Rang	Rung	घंटी बजाना, फोन करना
	Wring	Wrung	Wrung	निचोड़ना
	Swing	Swung	Swung	झूलना (हरकत में आना - swing into action)
3.	Bear	Bore	Born	पैदा करना
	Bear	Bore	Borne	to carry/बर्दाश्त करना
4.	Wind	Wound	Wound	घूमना या लपेटना
	Wound	Wounded	Wounded	जरूमी करना
5.	Forgo	Forwent	Forgone	त्याग देना
	Forego	Forewent	Foregone	के पहले जाना
6.	Bind	Bound	Bound	बाँधना
	Bound	Bounded	Bounded	दायर बनाना

EXERCISE

1. _____ to your lane.
2. _____ the iron when it is hot.
3. _____ the bell.
4. He has _____ the clothes.
5. Mangoes are _____ from the branches.

6. The police _____ into action when the riot broke out.
7. He was _____ in 1990.
8. I have _____ the pain with courage.
9. Cholera is a water- _____ disease.
10. _____ the watch.
11. The robbers _____ him.
12. _____ desserts if you want to lose weight.
13. His past _____ wherever he approached for a job.
14. Roots _____ the soil.
15. The court's decision has _____ us to pay the penalty.
16. Seas _____ India on three sides.

Answers

1. Stick
2. Strike
3. Ring
4. wrung
5. swinging
6. swung
7. born
8. borne
9. borne
10. Wind
11. wounded
12. forgo
13. forewent
14. bind
15. bound
16. bound

4. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Desert _(N)	रेगिस्तान
	Deserted _(Adj)	वीरान
	Desert _(V)	छोड़ देना
	Dessert _(N)	Sweet dish after a meal
2.	Affect _(V)	असर करना, प्रभाव डालना
	Effect _(N)	परिणाम
	Effect _(V)	प्रभाव में लाना
3.	Practice _(N)	अभ्यास/ चलन
	Practise _(V)	अभ्यास करना
4.	Advice _(N)	सलाह
	Advise _(V)	सलाह देना
5.	Loose _(Adj.)	ढीला
	Loss _(N)	हानि
	Lose _(V)	खोना/हारना

EXERCISE

1. He _____ his family.
2. The Sahara is a _____ .
3. Skip _____ if you want to _____ weight.
4. Bad weather _____ your health and the _____ is cold and cough.
5. They soon _____ the ST/SC Act as untouchability was a common _____ then.
6. _____ makes a man perfect.
7. _____ these questions.
8. Don't _____ your temper.
9. He is wearing a _____ shirt.
10. Pakistan _____ the match.
11. It is your _____, not mine.
12. Don't _____ me.
13. I need your _____ .

Answers

1. lost, deserted	2. desert.	3. dessert, lose
4. affects, effect	5. effected, practice	6. Practice
7. Practise	8. lose	9. loose
11. Loss	12. advise	10. lost
	13. advice	

5. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Wear _(V)	पहने हुए होना
	Put on _(Phrasal verb)	पहनना
2.	Stand _(V)	खड़े रहना
	Stand _(N)	खड़ी करने की जगह
	Stand up _(Phrasal verb)	बैठे से उठना
3.	Wander _(V)	भटकना
	Wonder _(V)	सोचना/ आश्चर्य करना
	Wonder _(N)	अजूबा
4.	Employ _(V)	to give a job (नौकरी देना)
	Appoint _(V)	to give a post (नियुक्त करना)
5.	Overtake _(V)	to surpass (से आगे निकल जाना)
	Take over _(Phrasal verb)	to take command or control of (अपने अधीन लेना)

EXERCISE

- He is _____ a sweater.
- _____ your sweater. It is getting cold.
- _____ in a queue.
- He _____ amid heavy round of applause when his name was called.
- I _____ what to cook.
- He _____ here and there for water.
- We don't _____ women in this boys' college.
- They _____ him secretary to the principal.
- Soon Jet Airways _____ all its competitors and became the most prestigious airways.
- The new CEO will soon _____ the charges.

Answers

- wearing
- Put on
- Stand
- stood up
- wondered
- wandered
- employ
- appointed
- overtook
- take over

6. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Breed _(N)	नस्ल
	Breed _(V)	to give birth (जन्म देना)
	Brood _(N)	a group of young birds. (नन्हे पंखियों का समूह)
	Brood _(V)	to think a lot about something in an unhappy way.
2.	Sell _(V)	बेचना
	Sale _(N)	बिक्री
3.	Complain _(V)	शिकायत करना
	Complaint _(N)	शिकायत

SN	Words	अर्थ
4.	Assure _(V)	तसल्ली देना
	Insure _(V)	to protect against loss (बीमा करना)
	Ensure _(V)	To confirm (सुनिश्चित करना)
5.	Deny _(V)	to refuse to accept the truth (खंडन करना)
	Refuse _(V)	इंकार करना
	Rebut/refute _(V)	to deny with the help of evidence (सबूत के साथ खंडन करना)
	Decline _(V)	पतन होना/ अस्वीकार करना
	Decline _(N)	पतन

EXERCISE

- The dog is of good _____ .
- Familiarity _____ contempt.
- Don't _____ over the past.
- See the _____ of eaglets sitting there.
- Good books _____ like hot cakes.
- The _____ of woolen clothes dips in summer.
- He _____ against them.
- He has lodged a _____ against them.
- I _____ that all the doors were locked.
- I _____ you of my help.
- He _____ his car against theft and accident.
- He _____ to have stolen my watch.
- He _____ to help me.
- He _____ our offer.
- His fame _____ due to his misconduct.
- He _____ the charges with concrete proofs.

Answers

- breed.
- breeds
- brood
- brood
- sell
- sale
- complained
- complaint
- ensured
- assure
- insured
- denied
- refused
- declined
- declined
- refuted/ rebutted

7. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Compliment _(N/V)	प्रशंसा, प्रशंसा करना
	Complement _(N/V)	पूरक, पूरा करना
2.	Envelop _(V)	to cover
	Envelope _(N)	लिफाफा
3.	Comprise	Consist of (बनाना)/ से बना होना
	Contain	के अंदर होना
	Compose	बनाना
4.	Avoid/ Shun	से बचना
	Spurn	to ignore because he doesn't deserve your attention or love.
5.	Canvas _(N)	मोटा कपड़ा
	Canvass _(V)	घूम-घूमकर वोट मांगना

EXERCISE

- I _____ him on his success.
- I extend my _____ .
- The couple _____ each other.
- The atmosphere _____ the earth.
- Put the letter in an _____ .
- The atmosphere _____ many gases.
- The box _____ ten bottles of milk.
- This block _____ of ten chambers.
- Gulzar _____ many songs.
- He _____ meeting me.
- You should _____ bad company.
- She _____ the advances of the stalker.
- She _____ for the BJP.
- Draw it on the _____ .
- A cup of coffee is an excellent _____ to smoked salmon.
- Change sentence (6) into Passive Voice.

Answers

- complimented
- compliments.
- complement
- envelops
- envelope.
- comprises
- contains
- consists
- composed
- avoided/avoids
- avoid/ shun
- spurned
- canvassed
- canvas.
- complement
- The atmosphere is comprised of many gases

8. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Cease _(V)	to stop
	Seize _(V)	confiscate (जब्त करना)
	Commandeer _(V)	जब्त करना (किसी मिलिट्री काम के लिए)
2.	Prosecute _(V)	to try for any offence in the court.
	Persecute _(V)	to treat wrongly (गलत व्यवहार करना)
3.	Recover _(V)	to get back to the same condition (ठीक होना/ बरामद करना)
	Recuperate _(V)	to get well (ठीक होना)
4.	Censor _(V/N)	ban
	Censure _(V)	to officially and strictly criticise
5.	Elicit _(V)	to draw out response/ emotion.
	Illicit _(Adj)	socially not acceptable (अवैध)
	Illegal _(Adj)	legally unacceptable (गैरकानूनी)

EXERCISE

- Such customs now _____ to exist.
- _____ the golden opportunities.
- They have _____ his car to take the injured to hospital.
- We _____ the trespassers.
- The British _____ the freedom fighters.
- He is _____ after brief illness.

7. The police have _____ the stolen statues.
8. They have _____ the vulgar song.
9. The committee _____ him for his misconduct.
10. Marriage within the same gotra is _____ but not _____.
11. Good teachers can _____ responses from the students.

Answers

1. cease	5. persecuted	8. censored
2. Seize	6. recovering/	9. censured
3. commandeered	recuperating	10. illicit, illegal.
4. prosecute	7. recovered	11. elicit

9. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Retire _(V)	to be superannuated (सेवानिवृत्त होना), to rest (आराम करना)
	Resign _(V)	to give up one's post officially, to accept something as inevitable (त्यागपत्र देना/ पीछे हट जाना)
	Collapse _(V)	टूट कर गिर जाना, बेहोश हो कर गिरना
2.	Console _(V)	चुप करना या तसल्ली देना (सेते हुए को)
	Comfort _(V/N)	आराम पहुँचाना, आराम की वस्तु
	Sympathise	सहानुभूती देना
3.	Intercept _(V)	to receive a communication or signal directed elsewhere usually secretly
	Intervene _(V)	to interfere (दखल देना)
	Interrupt _(V)	टोकना, रोकना
4.	Burst _(V)	फटना
	Bust _(N/V)	part from head to chest, to break or smash (something) especially with force
5.	Sight _(N)	दृश्य, नजारा
	Site _(N)	Place of construction (निर्माण स्थल)
	Cite _(V)	to mention (उल्लेख करना)

EXERCISE

1. He _____ at the age of 70.
2. He _____ from his post.
3. It's 11 p.m. now. Let us _____ for the day.
4. In deserts, living beings _____ before the merciless Sun.
5. The farmers _____ themselves to their fate when the monsoon failed.
6. He _____ due to excessive heat.
7. The wall _____ killing three people.
8. They _____ the crying woman.
9. I _____ with the victim's family.
10. He _____ the injured bird.
11. The police _____ the signals and traced the accused.

12. Don't _____ when I speak.
13. If you don't _____, the matter will aggravate.
14. The water pipe _____.
15. They _____ the myth regarding dragon.
16. The _____ of the gruesome murder shocked us.
17. _____ an example.
18. He went to the _____ and inspected the building.

Answers

1. retired	7. collapsed	13. intervene
2. resigned	8. consoled	14. burst.
3. retire	9. sympathise	15. busted
4. resign	10. comforted	16. sight
5. resigned	11. intercepted	17. Cite
6. collapsed	12. interrupt	18. site

10. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Tow_(V)	to drag and take away
	Toe_(N)	पैर की उँगली
	Tiptoe_(V)	to walk on toes (पैरों की उँगलियों पर चलना)
2.	Allude_(V)	to mention indirectly
	Elude_(V)	to escape (बचना), evade
3.	Success_(N)	सफलता
	Succeed_(V)	सफल होना
	Successful_(Adj.)	सफल
4.	Assess_(V)	आंकलन करना
	Access_(N/V)	पहुँच, तक पहुँच होना
	Excess_(Adj.)	in plenty
5.	Bestow_(V)	नवाज़ना, confer
	Beset_(V)	to fill with something negative (से भरना)

EXERCISE

1. They will _____ away your car.
2. He hurt his _____.
3. He _____ into the house.
4. When the PM said, 'Shehjade', we understood to whom he was _____.
5. The thief _____ arrest.
6. Nothing _____ like _____.
7. He is a _____ businessman.
8. Facebook can _____ our personal data.
9. He has _____ breathing problem.
10. They _____ him with the title of 'Sir'.
11. My life is _____ with difficulties.

Answers

1. tow
2. toe.
3. tiptoed
4. alluding
5. eluded
6. succeeds, success.
7. successful
8. access
9. excess
10. bestowed
11. beset

11. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Declare _(V)	to announce (घोषणा करना)
	Propose _(V)	to give as an offer (प्रस्तावित करना)
2.	Tamper _(V)	to change something (in instrument)
	Temper _(N)	heat of mind or emotion
	Doctor _(N/V)	a medical practitioner, to change (accounts, data, CD etc)
	Tease _(V)	तंग करना
3.	Mitigate _(V)	to lessen so that you feel better, alleviate
	Militate _(V)	to hinder/obstruct
4.	Lesson _(N)	पाठ
	Lessen _(V)	कम करना
5.	Pray _(V)	प्रार्थना करना
	Prey _(N/V)	शिकार/शिकार करना

EXERCISE

- Indira Gandhi _____ an emergency.
- The Apex Court _____ Section 303 of IPC null and void.
- They _____ with the EVM.
- They _____ the accounts.
- Don't _____ the dog.
- This medicine will _____ your pain.
- Your careless attitude _____ against your promotion.
- I will teach him a _____.
- Meditation _____ your tension.
- I will _____ for you.
- Lions _____ on deer.

Answers

- proposed
- declared
- tampered
- doctored
- tease
- mitigate
- militated
- lesson.
- lessens
- pray
- prey

12. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Invent _(V)	to create or produce for the first time (आविष्कार करना)
	Discover _(V)	to find that already existed (खोज करना)
2.	Postpone _(V)	to put off for a later date
	Adjourn _(V)	to suspend something for a period of time
	Cancel _(V)	to decide that something will not happen
3.	Cry _(N/V)	चिल्लाहट, चिल्ला कर रोना
	Weep _(V)	रोना (बिना आवाज के)
	Plead _(V)	गिड़गिड़ाना/ याचना करना
4.	Show _(V/N)	दिखाना, प्रदर्शनी, शो
	Exude _(V)	to show with confidence and clarity
	Epitomise _(V)	to be the perfect example

SN	Words	अर्थ
5.	Flout _(V)	to violate (उल्लंघन करना)
	Flaunt _(V)	to show off (दिखावा करना)

EXERCISE

- Graham Bell _____ the telephone.
- Columbus _____ America.
- _____ your mettle.
- They _____ the meeting for two days.
- They _____ the show and refunded our money.
- The case has been _____ .
- Don't _____ .
- Babies _____ .
- Don't _____ over spilt milk.
- Don't _____ for the moon.
- He _____ for mercy.
- She _____ confidence when she pleads her case
- Dhirubhai Ambani _____ from rags to riches success story.
- Don't _____ the traffic rules.
- He _____ his luxury cars.

Answers

- invented
- discovered
- Discover
- postponed
- cancelled
- adjourned.
- weep.
- cry.
- cry
- cry
- pleaded
- exudes
- epitomised
- flout
- flaunts

13. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Lend _(V)	उधार देना
	Borrow _(V)	उधार लेना
	Owe _(V)	उधार होना
2.	Except _(Prep)	को छोड़कर
	Accept _(V)	अपनाना
	Expect _(V)	hope (उम्मीद करना)
	Suspect _(V)	आशंका होना
	Aspect _(N)	पहलू
3.	Remember _(V)	याद करना
	Reminisce _(V)	अतीत की सुखद बातों की चर्चा करना
	Remind _(V)	याद कराना
	Recall _(V)	फिर से याद करना, वापस बुलाना
4.	Revenge _(N/V)	बदला/बदला लेना (गुर्रसे के भावना से)
	Avenge _(V)	बदला लेना (न्याय करने के लिए)
5.	Rout _(V/N)	बुरी तरह से पराजित करना, बहुत बुरी हार
	Route _(N)	रास्ता
	Root _(N)	जड़
	Uproot _(V)	जड़ से उखाड़ना

EXERCISE

- Please _____ some money to your servant.
- He _____ Rs. 1 cr. to the bank.
- He has _____ Rs. 1 cr. from the bank.
- This book is good _____ for some typographical mistakes.
- He _____ my offer.
- The sky is overcast.
(i) We _____ good rain.
(ii) We _____ a storm.
- Do you _____ me?
- His looks _____ me of my brother.
- The police asked the victim to _____ the incident.
- Do you know the negative _____ of your conduct?
- _____ is best served cold.
- Our army _____ our soldiers' martyrdom.
- Which is the shortest _____ to Noida?
- India _____ Pakistan in the world cup.
- Greed is the _____ cause of corruption.
- _____ evil practices which are prevalent.

Answers

- lend
- owed
- borrowed
- except
- accepted
- (i) expect
(ii) suspect
- remember/
suspect
- remind
- recall
- aspects
- Revenge
- avenged
- route
- routed
- root
- Uproot

14. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Cast (V)	to give (a vote), देना (वोट), बनाना, ढालना, रोल देना (नाटक व फिल्म में), give (a glance) डालना (नजर)
2.	Overcast (V)	ऊपर से छा जाना
3.	Broadcast (V)	प्रसारित करना
4.	Forecast (V)	पहले से बताना
5.	Telecast (V)	TV पर प्रसारित करना
6.	Caste (N)	जाति

$\underbrace{V_1}_{\text{Cast}}$
 $\underbrace{V_2}_{\text{Cast}}$
 $\underbrace{V_3}_{\text{Cast}}$

EXERCISE

- We must _____ our votes judiciously.
- He _____ a glance at his watch.
- They _____ Salman Khan in the movie.
- Toys are _____ from plastic.
- The programme was _____ on Zee news.
- The weather is _____.
- The sky is _____.

Answers

- cast
- cast
- cast
- cast
- telecast
- forecast
- overcast

15. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Sever (V)	काट कर अलग करना (forcibly)
	Severe (Adj.)	तीव्र, बहुत तेज
	Sewer (N)	नाला

15. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
2.	Prescribe _(V)	सलाह देना
	Proscribe _(V)	to ban
3.	Loath _(Adj.)	reluctant, unwilling (बेमन)
	Loathe _(V)	to dislike or hate
4.	Sever _(V)	to cut and remove forcibly and suddenly
	Amputate _(V)	to remove by surgical operations (of limbs)
	Maim _(V)	to injure so that a part of body becomes permanently damaged (अपंग बनाना)
	Mutilate _(V)	to inflict a violent disfiguring injury (क्षत-विक्षत करना)
	Cripple _(V)	to make something unable to work normally
5.	Hoard _(V)	to hide and collect
	Horde _(N)	A group (of people etc)

EXERCISE

- I have a _____ headache.
- The _____ has overflowed.
- He has _____ his ties with his in-laws.
- The doctors have _____ his thumb.
- They _____ children and force them to beg.
- Heavy rain _____ life in cities.
- The terrorists _____ the dead bodies of the hostages.
- The doctor has _____ bed rest.
- They _____ carrying lighters in planes.
- _____ of people come to see the Taj Mahal.
- They _____ sugar and sell it in the black market.
- She is _____ to accept her mistakes.
- I _____ getting up early.

Answers

- severe
- sewer
- severed
- amputated
- maim
- cripples
- mutilated
- prescribed
- proscribe
- Horde
- hoard
- loath
- loathe

16. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Catch _(N/V)	पकड़ना
	Hold _(N/V)	थामना
2.	Deprecate _(V)	to criticize (निंदा करना)
	Depreciate _(V)	decreasing of value
3.	Peddle _(V)	धूम-धूमकर समान बेचना
	Pedal _(N/V)	साईकिल का भाग (जिस पर पैर रखते हैं), Pedal चलाना
4.	Waive _(V)	to refrain from pressing or enforcing
	Wave _(N/V)	लहर/लहराना

SN	Words	अर्थ
5.	Diffuse _(V)	फैलना
	Defuse _(V)	to make non-functional, to reduce tension.

EXERCISE

- Dhoni took a good _____ .
- _____ your tongue.
- She will _____ the 8 o'clock bus.
- _____ the receiver for a moment.
- We _____ the act of some journalists as childish.
- The price of my car has _____ .
- They _____ drugs.
- He will _____ fast when he returns home.
- The government has _____ off the loan of the farmers.
- He _____ his hands.
- Sea _____ look beautiful.
- They _____ the bomb but the smell of gun powder _____ into the air.

Answers

- catch.
- Hold
- catch
- hold
- deprecate
- depreciated.
- peddle
- pedal
- waived
- waved
- waves
- defused, diffused

17. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Rein _(N/V)	लगाम/ लगाम लगाना
	Reign _(N)	शासन
	Rain _(N/V)	बारिश, बारिश होना
2.	Bridle _(N/V)	लगाम/ लगाम लगाना
	Bridal _(Adj.)	विवाह या दुल्हन संबंधित
3.	Board _(V/N)	सवार होना, गत्ता
	On board	सवार
4.	Write	लिखना
	Write off _(Phrasal Verb)	to eliminate from some list (to regard as lost or conceded)
	Right _(N/Adj)	अधिकार/ सही
	Rite _(N)	a part of religious ceremony
	Riot _(N)	दंगा
5.	Pore _(N)	छेद
	Pour _(V)	उड़ेलना
	Pore over (Phrasal verb)	to read carefully

EXERCISE

1. Buddhism flourished during the _____ of Ashoka.
2. It is _____ cats and dogs.
3. We have booked a _____ suite.
4. He has _____ the bus.
5. 50 passengers _____ were killed in the air crash.
6. His last _____ were performed in Varanasi.
7. _____ broke out in Gujarat.
8. We have six fundamental _____.
9. They had _____ Amitabh Bachchan who returned to the same glory with KBC.
10. We have several _____ through which we sweat.
11. _____ the court's order.
12. _____ the tea into the cup.

Answers

1. reign
2. raining
3. bridal
4. boarded
5. on board
6. rites
7. Riot
8. rights
9. written off
10. pores
11. Pore over
12. Pour

18. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Burn _(N/V)	फफोला/ जलना/ जलाना
	Scald _(V)	to burn with steam or hot water
	Scorch _(V)	to burn the upper layer that changes colour but it is not destroyed
	Singe _(V)	to burn slightly
	Char _(V)	जलकर काला हो जाना
2.	Found _(V)	नींव रखना
	Establish _(V)	to make something that is expected to last for longer period of time or is widely accepted
	Compose _(V)	to assemble and make/to make poem or song
	Set up	to assemble machines etc. in order to make them operational
3.	Deflect _(V)	to cause something to change direction
	Deviate _(V)	to do something which is different from usual
	Reflect _(V)	to hit something and move in different directions.
	Divert _(V)	to change direction
4.	Proceed _(V)	आगे बढ़ना
	Precede _(V)	से पहले आना
	Succeed _(V)	to be successful (सफल होना), के बाद आना (वंशज के रूप में)

EXERCISE

- _____ the papers.
- Steam _____ her arms.
- The Sun rays have _____ my skin.
- The flame of the candle has _____ the wall.
- They _____ the university in 1950.
- I have _____ my business.
- Laxmikant has _____ this song.
- They have
(i) _____ a factory.
(ii) _____ a commission.
- The bullet hit the wall and _____ from its normal course.
- The traffic police have _____ the heavy vehicles.
- Light _____ from smooth surface.
- Teachers shouldn't _____ from the topic.
- Silence _____ the storm.
- Aurangzeb _____ Shah Jahan.
- Akbar _____ to the throne at the age of 13.
- Can I _____ with this chapter now?
- He _____ in his motive.

Answers

- Burn
- scalded
- scorched
- singed
- founded
- established
- composed
- (i) set up
(ii) set up
- deflected
- diverted
- reflects
- deviate
- precedes
- succeeded
- succeeded
- proceed
- succeeded

19. CONFUSING VERBS/ NOUNS/ ADJECTIVES:

SN	Words	अर्थ
1.	Smash	to break into pieces, to hit very hard
	Mash	to make soft pulpy thing
	Grind	पीसना
	Stir	हिलाना (जैसे चीनी चाय में)
	Whip	फेटना, चाबुक, चाबुक से मारना
	Knead	गूँथना
	Churn	मँथना
	Chop	छोटे-छोटे टुकड़े करना
	Grate	कट्टकश करना
	Sprinkle	छिड़कना
	Add	मिलाना
	Shake	हिलाना (जैसे ढक्कन बंद करके)

SN	Words	अर्थ
2.	Speak	बोलना
	Tell	say to (बताना) (Questions given in narration)
	Talk_(N/V)	बात/ बात करना
	Say	कहना
	Ask	कहना/पूछना
	Stammer	stutter (हकलाना)
	Fumble for word	दिमाग में शब्दों का न आना
3.	Walk_(V/N)	चलना, सैर
	Amble_(V)	टहलना
	Stroll_(V/N)	टहलना / सेर
	Stagger_(V)	लड़खड़ाना
	Stumble_(V)	to walk or speak in an awkward (बेतुका) manner.
	Gait_(N)	चलने का तरीका
	Flutter_(V)	फड़फड़ाना
	Fluster_(V)	to move in a confused manner
	Fumble_(V)	to reach for things by moving hands here and there
4.	See_(V)	देखना
	Look_(V)	देखना, दिखना
	Looks_(N)	the way one looks
	Look_(N)	facial expression (चेहरे का भाव)
	Seem/ look	दिखना
	Glance_(N/V)	एक झलक, नजर डालना
	Blink_(V)	आखें झपकाना
	Wink_(V)	आँख मारना
	Peep_(V)	झँकना
	Stare_(V)	घूरना
	Gaze_(V/N)	लंबे समय तक देखते रहना, एकटक दृष्टि
	Watch_(V/N)	नजर रखना, देखना (TV), घड़ी, निगरानी
	Glower_(V)	गुरसे से देखना
	Glimpse_(N/V)	एक झलक, एक झलक देखना

SN	V ₁	अर्थ	V ₂	V ₃
5.	Rise	(उगना / जागना / जगाना)	rose	risen
	Arise	(जागना / जगाना)	arose	arisen
	Awake	(जागना / जगाना)	awoke	awoken
	Wake	(जागना / जगाना)	woke	woken
	Rouse	(जागना / जगाना)	roused	roused
	Awaken	(जागना / जगाना)	awakened	awakened
	Waken	(जागना / जगाना)	wakened	wakened

- Arise** • problems and questions arise
 • to get up
 • to spring to action

EXERCISE

- The burglar _____ his head against the wall.
- _____ the boiled potatoes.
- _____ some chillies.
- _____ some spices.
- _____ some salt and _____ the mixture.
- _____ the dough.
- _____ the eggs.
- _____ the buttermilk.
- She was not prepared and _____ for words.
- I had a _____ with him.
- He _____ and can't speak fluently.
- I will _____ to you.
- The bilateral _____ between India and Pakistan failed.
- He _____ that he was busy.
- Don't _____ a lie.
- He _____ me to stay at home.
- He _____ as he got up. He is too weak to walk.
- The girl was lost in her thoughts and _____ around.
- Pigeons _____ when we peeped into their roost.
- He cast a _____ at his watch.
- People line up to have a _____ of the idol.
- Her _____ bagged her a movie with Shahrukh.
- _____ the confused _____ on her face.
- He _____ at his son's photograph every night.

Answers

- smashed
- Mash
- Chop
- Grind
- Add/ Sprinkle, stir.
- Knead
- Whip
- Churn
- fumbled
- talk.
- stammers
- talk, speak
- talks
- said
- tell
- asked/told/instructed
- staggered
- flustered
- fluttered
- glance
- glimpse
- looks
- See, look
- gazed

25. He _____ through the window.
26. You _____ sad.
27. He _____ at us which sent shivers down our spine.
28. We _____ up to the sound of drums.
29. _____, our motherland needs us.
30. "At the stroke of midnight hour when the world sleeps, India will _____ to light and freedom.

Lines of '30' have been taken from "Tryst with Destiny", a famous speech delivered by Jawahar Lal Nehru. The speech was delivered around mid-night on 14th August.

COLLOCATION

Certain actions are best expressed when a certain verb comes with them. Let us see some examples.

(कुछ **Actions** के साथ कुछ निश्चित **verb** ही सर्वाधिक उपयुक्त होते हैं।)

1. I **made** a decision.
2. I **delivered** a speech.
3. I **narrated** a story.
4. I **express** my ideas.
5. I **recited** a poem.
6. He **made** a fuss.

Answers

25. peeped
26. look/seem
27. glowered
28. rose/woke
29. Arise
30. awake



अंग्रेजी बोलना अब हुआ और भी आसान

क्योंकि हम किताबी बातें नहीं रटवाते।
आपके रोजमर्रा की बातों को हम आसान
वाक्य में व्यक्त करना सिखाते हैं।

Download Now!



NEETU SINGH

Subscribe Now

KD LIVE YOUTUBE CHANNEL

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 9555108888 / 9555208888

MOST APPROPRIATE VERBS

Now see the following 100+ examples. (अब आगे ऐसे ही 100 से अधिक उदाहरण देखें।)

1. **Donate** blood
2. **Pacify**¹ / **mollify**² / **aggravate**³ anger
3. **Furnish**⁴ / **Enclose**⁵ / **Annex**⁶ / **peruse**⁷ documents
4. **Take** test (when you are a student)
5. **Give** test (when you are a teacher)
6. **Take** bath/risk/an action/advantage/shower
7. **Fall** asleep/ **stay** awake
8. **Make** a decision/ a noise/fun/ a mistake/ a choice /a plan/a suggestion/ a call/ an effort /progress/ a promise/ some one angry
9. **Express** ideas/feelings
10. **Narrate**² stories/ incidents
11. **Recite**³ poem
12. **Devote**⁴/ **Spend**⁵/ **Waste**⁶ time
13. **Set up** committee /factory
14. **Establish** a business/ company
15. **Found/Establish** university
16. **Take/lose/win** heart
17. **Play** role
18. **Demand/Exercise**¹ rights²
19. **Chant**³ hymn⁴/ mantra⁴
20. **Earn/Waste/Spend/Invest/Mint**⁵ money
21. **Expose**⁶ corruption/scam
22. **Reveal**⁷ the truth
23. **Have**⁷ a dream/ nightmare⁹/ lunch / dinner etc /a conversation/ fun
24. **Levy**⁸/ **Impose**¹⁰/ **Pay** tax
25. **Impose/Pay** fine

1. शांत करना
2. शांत करना
3. भड़काना
4. उपलब्ध करना (to make available)
5. to put one thing inside another.
6. संलग्न करना
7. पढ़ना (ध्यान से)

1. **Make fun** – मजाक उड़ाना
Have fun – मजे करना
2. **to tell** (a story)
3. **to say aloud** a piece of writing especially a poem from memory.
4. समर्पित करना
5. खर्चना
6. बर्बाद करना
 - **take heart** – to be encouraged
 - **lose heart** – हिम्मत हारना
 - **take to heart** – take something seriously

1. **to make use of** (power, rights etc)
2. अधिकार
3. **To sing or shout** a word or phrase many times (जाप करना)
4. मंत्र
5. छापना(प)/ टकसाल (N)
6. पर्दाफाश करना
7. उजागर करना
8. **officially demand and collect money** (for eg-tax)
9. बुरा सपना
10. **to make a law etc. to be accepted by using power.**

26. **Bear** fruits¹
27. River **flows**
28. Wind **blows**
29. **Meet with**² an accident
30. **Launch**³ a scheme/ rocket/ satellite/ a new car etc
31. **Impart**⁴ education
32. **Level/ Frame**⁵ charges
33. **Level**⁶ allegation
34. **Tell** a lie
35. **Speak /Tell** the truth
36. **Deliver** a speech/ a baby/ a lecture
37. **Break** monotony¹/ the ice
38. **Make/ Break** promises
39. **Pay** homage²/respect/tribute³
40. Days **pass**
41. Morning **arrives**
42. Night **falls**
43. Thought **occurs /crosses one's mind**
44. **Ponder over**⁴ /**upon** an issue
45. Incident **occurs**⁵
46. **Recall**¹ an incident
47. **Redress**² grievances³
48. **Commit**⁴ a crime
49. **Attend** class
50. **Attend to**⁵ / **attend on** a patient
51. Head/Stomach **aches**
52. Wound⁶ **pains**
53. **Avert**⁷ /**Prevent** bloodshed⁸
54. **Causes /Results in** an accident
55. **Hope /Expect** good things

1. to produce result.
2. to encounter something usually unpleasant
3. to start something new.
4. to pass information, knowledge etc to other people
5. formally recognize an offence.
6. to place (लगाना) (a charge, blame etc)

• Break the ice — चुप्पी तोड़ना

1. निरसता
2. something that is said or done to show respect.
3. say or do something to show respect for someone who has died.
4. to think carefully for a long time.
5. takes place

1. to remember— फिर से याद करना
2. to correct something that is wrong or unfair.
3. शिकायत
4. to do (something bad or illegal)
5. deal with
6. जख्म
7. to prevent something unpleasant
8. खून खराबा

56. **Suspect / Fear** bad things
57. **Do/ Tie /Comb** your hair
58. **Blow** horn
59. **Get** an idea / ill / mad
60. **Raise** alarm
61. Train **Runs/ Derails**
62. Bomb **explodes / goes off**
63. **Defuse** bomb
64. **Load/fire** the gun
65. **Throw** tantrums
66. **Give** oneself airs
67. **Have/Keep /Lose** patience
68. **Abolish** tradition
69. **Eradicate** poverty / disease
70. **Cure /Control /Prevent** disease
71. **Keep /Observe** fast
72. **Decline/ Accept** an offer
73. **Refute /Rebut/Deny** charges
74. **Maintain** the accounts
75. **Tamper with** the EVM/ machine/ meter
76. Tyre **deflates**
77. **Fall** in love/ **fall** ill
78. Riot **starts/flares up**
79. **Play** the guitar/ flute etc.
80. Civilization **flourished /came to an end**
81. **Meet** one's fate
82. **Raise / maintain** standard of living
83. **Bring down / control** the price
84. Price **rises / shoots up / decreases/ fluctuate**
85. Rain **pours**
86. **Solicit / ask for / give** support/ advice
87. Boards/ things are **displayed**
88. News is **broadcast/ telecast/ aired**
89. News / shows (on TV) are **telecast**
90. **Exercise** rights
91. **Spit** venom
92. To make faces in disapproval, anger etc- **frown.**
93. **Participate** in a competition etc.
94. **Steer clear of** charges
95. **Garner/ muster** courage

- **Raise Alarm** – शोर मचा कर सचेत करना
- **Explode** – फटना
- **Defuse** – निक्रिय करना
- **Tantrums** – नखरे

66. नखरे करना या बनावटी व्यवहार करना

- **Patience** – सन्न
- **Abolish** – उन्मूलन करना
- **Tradition** – प्रथा
- **Eradicate** – पूरी तरह खत्म करना
- **Fast** – व्रत
- **Decline** – अस्वीकार करना
- **Refute/ Rebut** – सबूत के साथ खंडन करना
- **Deny** – किसी बात की सच्चाई से इंकार करना
- **Charges** – इल्जाम
- **Doctor** – छेड़छाड़ करना
- **Tamper** – छेड़छाड़ करना

- **deflate** – हवा निकालना
- **Riot** – दंगा
- **flare up** – एकाएक भड़कना – जैसे आग/दंगा का
- **Flourish** – फलना-फूलना
- **Civilization** – सभ्यता
- **Meet one's fate** – to die in a way as he should have due to his deeds (usually used in negative sense)
- **rain pours** – मुसलाधार बारिश होना
- **Shoot up** – तेजी से बढ़ना

- **solicit** – सहायता मांगना
- **exercise rights** – अधिकार का प्रयोग करना
- **spit** – थूकना
- **spit venom** – जहर उगलना
- **steer clear of** – से बचना
- **garner** – जुटाना

96. **Partake of** refreshment
97. **Partake in** an event
98. Sale **increases / decreases / dips / shoots up**
99. **Clear** doubts
100. **Raise** arms/ your head / a question / an issue / your hand/ your voice
101. **Bow/ nod** one's head
102. **Flex** muscles
103. **Render** help
104. **Execute** an idea/ a plan
105. **Doctor** CCTV footage/ account/ CD.
106. **Amass** wealth
107. **Hatch** conspiracy
108. **Close** the deal.
109. **Tame** animals.
110. **Adhere** to customs or traditions.
111. **Reminisce** good old days

- Partake of – take one's share
- Partake in – to participate
- nod – हिलाना (सर)
- Flex one's muscles – ताकत दिखाना
- Render – सहायता देना
- Reminisce – to remember and feel happy.

Sentence Improvement

Based on the use of the best verb/word in the given action/sentence – This type of questions is easier for students who develop reading habits. Due to regular reading habit, they choose the most appropriate word conveniently. For eg: In the sentence 'I did a mistake', they can easily locate the mistake and will point out that 'made' will come in the place of 'did' as we normally say, "I made a mistake". In the same way, 'All of a at once' is wrong as they, time and again, while reading have come across 'all of a sudden'. Here, I feel, that it is mandatory to mention that reading is a fruitful habit. We imbibe the meaning and usage of many words automatically if we make reading a habit. In the few examples that follow, we will such appropriate Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns etc



NEETU SINGH
Email: online@kdcampus.org

सभी परीक्षाओं के लिए रामबाण

Volume 1 BY NEETU SINGH

पढ़ें सभी 34 Chapters Neetu Singh से
VOD + LIVE

Idioms & Phrases व One Word Substitution
ऐसे पढ़ें कि Class में ही याद हो जाए।
प्रत्येक Vocab का Synonyms व Antonyms
Class में Discussed

ONLY
1199/-
1 Year
Validity

CLASS CAN BE WATCHED OFFLINE | **KD LIVE YOUTUBE CHANNEL**
9555108888

Download Now!



1. Keats says the idea very well in his poems.
 (A) speaks (B) describes
 (C) expresses (D) No improvement
2. The enemy soldiers went back hastily.
 (A) returned (B) retreated
 (C) retrenched (D) No improvement
3. I will be giving blood in the hospital at 9.00 a.m. tomorrow.
 (A) exchanging (B) contributing
 (C) donating (D) No improvement
4. The suspected couple was taken away from the airport through a side entrance to the police station for interrogation.
 (A) whisked (B) rushed
 (C) guided (D) No improvement
5. The transport workers have organised a strike asking for more salary.
 (A) demanding (B) begging
 (C) requesting (D) No improvement
6. Ram cooked a conspiracy to cheat Abdul.
 (A) cultivated (B) hatched
 (C) fabricated (D) No improvement
7. I hope I am going to get fever soon.
 (A) fear (B) feel afraid
 (C) doubt if (D) No improvement
8. When we came out of the cinema, it was falling with rain.
 (A) pouring (B) descending
 (C) dropping (D) No improvement
9. Serious charges of corruption were levied against him.
 (A) put (B) levelled
 (C) made (D) No improvement
10. A lot of bloodshed could have been saved, had the administration taken timely action.
 (A) protected (B) prevented
 (C) eschewed (D) no improvement
11. The army has been wanted to be ready to control the flood.
 (A) alerted (B) warned
 (C) awakened (D) No improvement

SSC (CGL) TIER II, 2016

SSC (CGL) TIER-II, 2016

12. My foot is **paining**.
 (A) aching (B) ailing
 (C) hurting (D) No improvement
13. She **gave** most of her time to dance.
 (A) lent (B) spent
 (C) devoted (D) No improvement
14. Work at the **request** of your conscience.
 (A) behest (B) desires
 (C) orders (D) No improvement
15. Raju **requested** me to his birthday party tomorrow.
 (A) indulged (B) invited
 (C) inspired (D) No improvement
16. The Prime Minister **established** a commission to look after the plight of the widows.
 (A) formed (B) created
 (C) set up (D) No improvement
17. The fugitive was finally **stopped** at the airport.
 (A) compromised (B) comprehended
 (C) apprehended (D) No improvement **SSC (CGL) TIER-II, 2016**
18. He decided to **reveal** the corruption in his department to the media.
 (A) show (B) disclose
 (C) expose (D) No improvement
19. My friend **won** me at tennis.
 (A) succeeded me (B) outran me
 (C) beat me (D) No improvement

Answer Key with Explanations

- (C) We express our ideas. We don't speak or describe ideas.
- (B) Retreated – movement by soldiers away from an enemy – मॉचा छोड़ना
Change 'went back' into 'retreated'.
- (C) Change 'giving' into 'donating'. We donate blood.
- (A) Whisked – to move or take someone or something to another place very quickly – जल्दी से हटा लेना
Change 'taken away' into 'whisked'.
- (A) 'Asking for' means 'demanding' but 'demanding' is a stronger word and suits the context of the sentence.
Change 'asking for' into 'demanding'.
- (B) Hatch a conspiracy (ढड़यंत्र करना) is the right structure.

7. (A) Change 'hope' into 'fear'. He hope for something good and we fear of something bad that may happen.
8. (A) Change 'falling with' into 'pouring'.
9. (B) Change 'levied' into 'levelled'.
 Levied – An amount of money that must be paid and that is collected by a government – कर इत्यादि का लगाना
 Levelled — to aim or direct
 Eg:- to level a charge of fraud.
10. (B) Change 'saved' into 'prevented'.
 We prevent bloodshed to save people.
 Eschew – to avoid (something) especially because one does not think it is right, proper etc – परहेज करना
11. (A) Army is 'alerted' (चौकस करना) to take charge when a natural calamity comes.
12. (A) We have stomach ache or head ache. 'Ache' is a common word for body pain.
13. (C) Change 'gave' into devoted'
 He devote time to learn some art or skill. Devote 'to' dance is the correct sentence formation.
14. (A) Behest – An authoritative order or urgent prompting
 Change 'request' into 'behest'.
 We do something good at the behest of our conscience.
15. (B) Change 'requested' into 'invited'.
 Indulge – to allow to do something – स्वीकृति देना
 Inspire – to make someone want to do something – प्रेरणा देना
16. (C) A commission is set up.
17. (C) Apprehend means 'to catch and arrest'. 'Fugitive' means 'one who is running away' (भगोड़ा). The police try to catch and arrest a fugitive.
18. (C) Expose – To reveal (something hidden, dishonest, etc)
 Change 'reveal' into 'expose'.
19. (C) 'To beat someone' means 'to defeat'.

We know that birds, animals and things have particular cries and sounds. Let us see them in details. (पंछी, जानवर व चीजों की अपनी बोली अथवा आवाज़ होती है। आए उन्हें विस्तार से देखें।

1. Birds **chirp**.
 2. Leaves **rustle**.
 3. The door **creaked**.
 4. My car **chugged** as I drove up the hill.
 5. Rivers **rumble** and trains **rattle** on the rail.
- Chugged – the sound made by a labouring engine.

SOUND & CRIES

S.No.	Animals Name	Sounds	S.No.	Animals Name	Sounds
1	Apes/ Monkeys	gibber, chatter	38	Goats/ lambs/ sheep	bleat
2	Asses/ donkeys	bray	39	Hawks	Scream
3	Bears	growl	40	Hens	cackle, cluck
4	Bees	hum, buzz	41	Hyenas	laugh
5	Birds	sing, twitter, tweet, chirp, warble	42	Jackals	howl
6	Bulls	bellow	43	Larks	sing, warble
7	Camels	grunt	44	Mice	squeak
8	Cats/ Kittens	mew, purr	45	Owls	hoot
9	Cattle/ Cows	low, moo	46	Oxen	low, bellow
10	Cocks	crow, cock-a-doodle-doo	47	Parrot	talk
11	Crickets	chirp, creak	48	Pigeons	coo
12	Crows	caw	49	Pigs	grunt, squeal
13	Cuckoos	coo	50	Hoofs	clatter
14	Dogs	bark, woof	51	Leaves	rustle
15	Geese	cackle	52	Railway engines	roar, chug, rumble
16	Doves	coo	53	Steel	clinks
17	Ducks	quack	54	Dry leaves	crackle
18	Eagles	scream/squawk	55	Clouds	thunder
19	Elephants	trumpet	56	Doors	creak
20	Puppies	yelp	57	Clocks	chime, tick
21	Ravens	croak	58	Cars/engines	chug
22	Snakes	hiss	59	Trees	sigh
23	Zebra/horses	neigh	60	Water	ripples
24	Tigers/ lions	growl, roar	61	Rivers	murmur/ rumble
25	Vultures	scream	62	Wind	whistles or sighs
26	Wolves	howl, yell	63	Teeth	clatter (due to cold or fear)
27	Arms (weapons)	clang	64	Hands	clap
28	Babies	lisp	65	Coins	jingle
29	Bells	ring, peal, jingle or tinkle	66	Old or discontented persons	mutter
30	Bugles	blow	67	Persons in agony	moan
31	Chains	clank	68	Rain or hail	patter.
32	Clouds	thunder	69	Guns	roar
33	Doors	creak or bang	70	Iron gate	clang
34	Drums	beat	71	Train	rattle
35	Footsteps	sound			
36	Foxes	yell, bark			
37	Frogs	croak			

Rules for making forms of verbs (Verbs के forms बनाने के नियम)

Rule - 1

Beg	Begged	Begged	Begging
Fit	Fitted	Fitted	Fitting
Hit	Hit	Hit	Hitting

Exception

Vomit - vomiting
Target - targeting

- Ending in consonant (last में consonant है)

- Consonant preceded by single vowel (Consonant के पहले एक vowel है)

If consonant is preceded by single vowel, the consonant is doubled and 'ed/ing' is added. (अगर consonant के पहले single vowel हो, तो consonant को double करें और उसके ही ed/ing लगाये)

Rule - 2

Heat - Ending in consonant (Last में consonant है)

- And Consonant preceded by two vowels (और Consonant के पहले दो vowels है)

If consonant is preceded by two vowels, consonant remains single and 'ed/ing' is added. (अगर consonant के पहले दो vowels हो, तो consonant singular ही रहता है)

Eg:-	Heat	Heated	Heated
	Sweat	Sweat	Sweating
	Beat	Beat	Beaten

Rule - 3

Die	Dying
Lie	Lying
Vie (to compete - प्रतिस्पर्धा करना)	Vying

If the verb ends in 'ie', change 'ie' into 'y' and then add 'ing'.

(अगर verb 'ie' में खत्म हो, तो 'ie' को 'y' में परिवर्तित करें। उसके बाद 'ing' लगाएं।)

Rule - 4

Change	Changing
Admire	Admiring

Generally, we remove 'e' before adding 'ing' if a verb ends in 'e'.

(अगर verb 'e' में खत्म हो, तो 'ing' लगाने से पहले 'e' हटाएं)

Exception (अपवाद) : Dye + ing = dyeing

Rule - 5

Panic (डरना)	Panicked
Traffic (Illegal व्यापार करना)	Trafficked
Picnic (Picnic मनाना)	Picnicked

If the verb ends in 'c', add 'k' before adding 'ed/ ing'. (अगर verb 'c' में खत्म हो, तो 'ed/ing' लगाने के पहले 'k' लगाएँ)

Rule – 6

V	—	Cry	Cried
N	—	City	Cities
Adj.	—	Pretty	Prettier, Prettiest

If Verb, Noun or Adjective ends in 'y' preceded by a consonant, change 'y' into 'i' and then its form/ degree changes.

(अगर Verb, Noun या Adjective 'y' में खत्म हो और 'y' के पहले consonant आए तो 'y' को 'i' में परिवर्तित करें, उसके बाद form/ degree परिवर्तित करें)

Rule – 7

V	—	Pray	Prayed
N	—	Boy	Boys
Adj	—	Grey	Greyer/ Greyest

If 'y' is preceded by a vowel, we do not change 'y' into 'i'. (अगर 'y' के पहले vowel हो, तो 'y' को 'i' में परिवर्तित नहीं करते हैं)

Exceptions (अपवाद) : Say Said
Pay Paid
Lay Laid

CONTRACTED FORMS

Shortened Forms of the Verb 'to be'	Shortened Forms of the Verb 'to have'		Shortened Forms of Modal Auxiliary Verb 'Will/shall'
I am → I'm	I have → I've	I had → I'd	I will, I shall → I'll
you are → you're	you have → you've	you had → you'd	you will → you'll
he is → he's	he has → he's	he had → he'd	he will → he'll
she is → she's	she has → she's	she had → she'd	she will → she'll
we are → we're	it has → it's	it had → it'd	we will/we shall → we'll
it is → it's	we have → we've	we had → we'd	they will → they'll
they are → they're	they have → they've	they had → they'd	there will → there'll
there is → there's	there has → there's		

CONTRACTED FORMS

Shortened Forms of Modal Auxiliary Verb 'Would'

I would	→	I'd
you would	→	you'd
he would	→	he'd
she would	→	she'd
it would	→	it'd
we would	→	we'd
they would	→	they'd
there had	→	there'd
there would	→	there'd

Shortened Forms of Modal Verbs

cannot	→	can't
could not	→	couldn't
dare not	→	daren't
had not	→	hadn't
might not	→	mightn't
must not	→	mustn't
need not	→	needn't

ought not	→	oughtn't
shall not	→	shan't
will not	→	won't
should not	→	shouldn't
used not	→	usedn't
would not	→	wouldn't
may not	→	mayn't

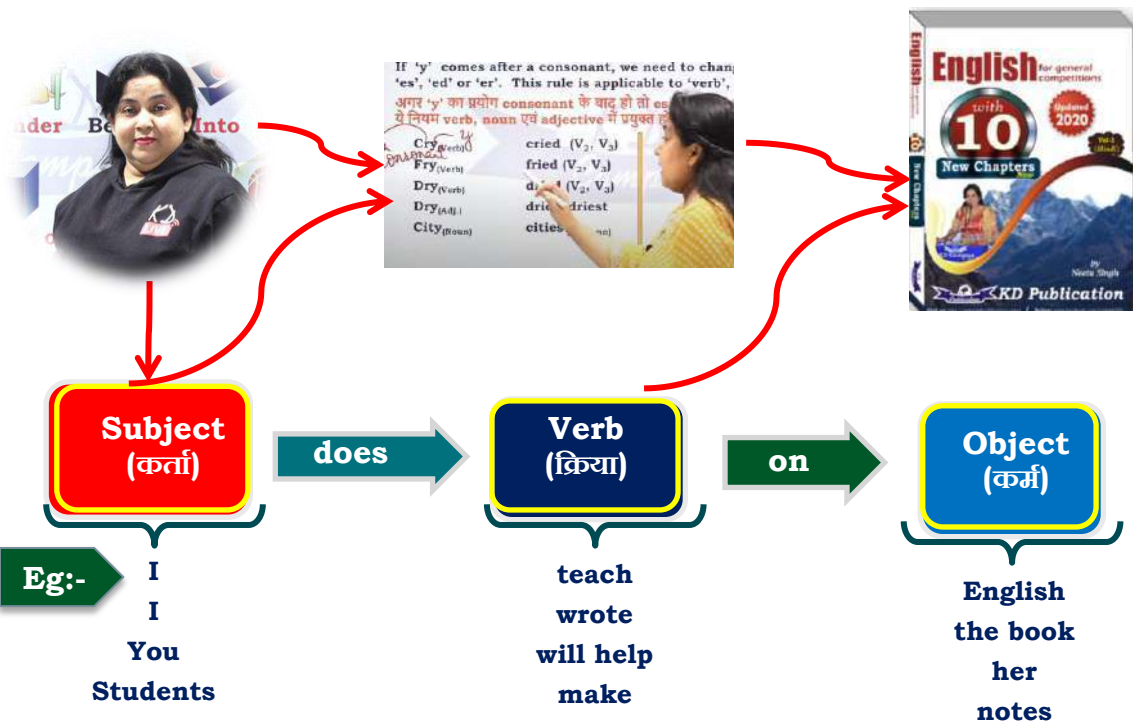
CONTRACTED FORMS

Contracted forms of Helping Verb & not

Is not	→	isn't
Am not	→	× (aren't in Inversion)
Are not	→	aren't
Was not	→	wasn't
Were not	→	weren't
Do not	→	don't

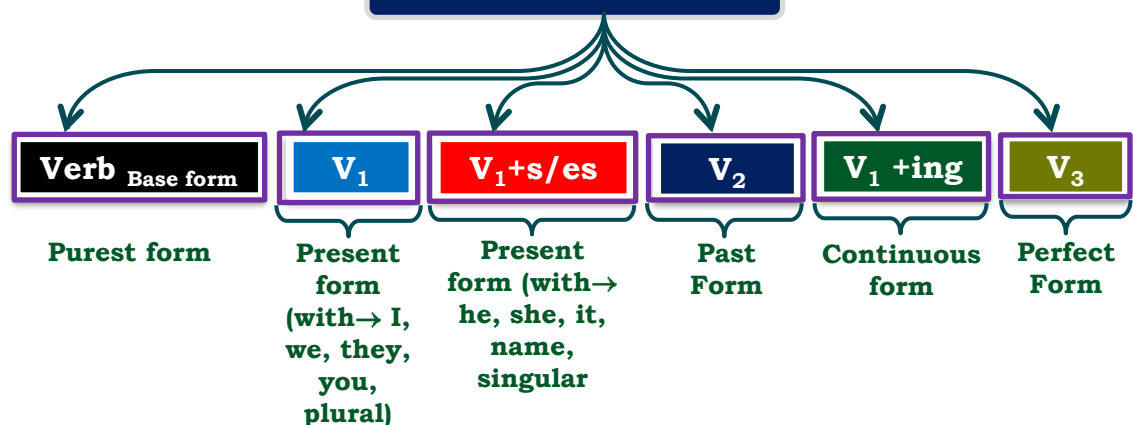
Does not	→	doesn't
Did not	→	didn't
Has not	→	hasn't
Have not	→	haven't
Had not	→	hadn't

Ain't Colloquial English	→	is not
	→	Am not
	→	Are not
	→	Have not
	→	Has not



See the sentences given above. The forms of verbs change and we can understand the time as well as the action/ state from the forms of verbs.
 (ऊपर दिए गये वाक्यों को देखो। **Verb** के **forms** परिवर्तित हो रहे हैं और **verbs** के **forms** हमें **action** (कार्य)/ **state** (अवस्था) एवं समय का बोध करा रहा है।)

Forms of Verbs



Now check the forms./ (**Forms check करें**)

We have present form past form of verbs but no future form.

(Verb के Present एवं past form मौजूद हैं लेकिन कोई future form नहीं)

Hence some Grammarians are of the view that Tense is of two types – Present and Past.

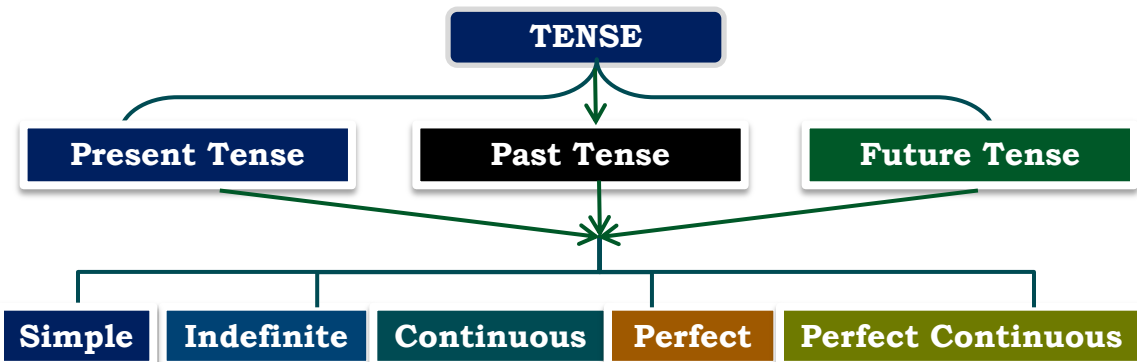
(अतः कुछ grammarians का कहना है कि Tense दो प्रकार के होते हैं- Present एवं Past)

Future Tense requires Modals will/ shall and V_{b.f.}

(Future Tense के लिए Modals will/shall एवं V_{b.f.} की जरूरत पड़ती है)

This means we do not have readymade future tense. We rather make it.

(इसका अर्थ है कि हमारे पास बना-बनाया Future Tense नहीं है। हमें Future Tense बनाना पड़ता है।)



To be good at Tense, you need to know all the forms of verbs that are common in day-to-day life so learn all the forms of those verbs which are used in day-to-day life. (Tense में अच्छा होने के लिए आप को forms of verbs आना चाहिए। कम से कम उन verbs को अच्छे से याद कर ले जो रोजमर्रा की जिन्दगी में प्रयुक्त होते हैं)

Now let us see Tense one-by-one in detail.

(अब एक-एक कर के Tense को detail में देखते हैं।)

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

This includes Present state made from verb 'is/ am/ are'. It describes one's present identity, class or quality.

(इसमें Verb 'is/ am/ are' से की गई वर्तमान अवस्था शामिल है। यह वर्तमान पहचान, वर्ग या गुणवत्ता का वर्णन करता है।)

Eg:-

I **am** a teacher.

She **is** not my aunt.

Are you in Delhi?

Structure

Positive Sentence (सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + is/am/are + Subject complement

Negative Sentence (नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject+is/am/are+not+Subject complement

Interrogative Sentence (प्रश्न सूचक वाक्य)

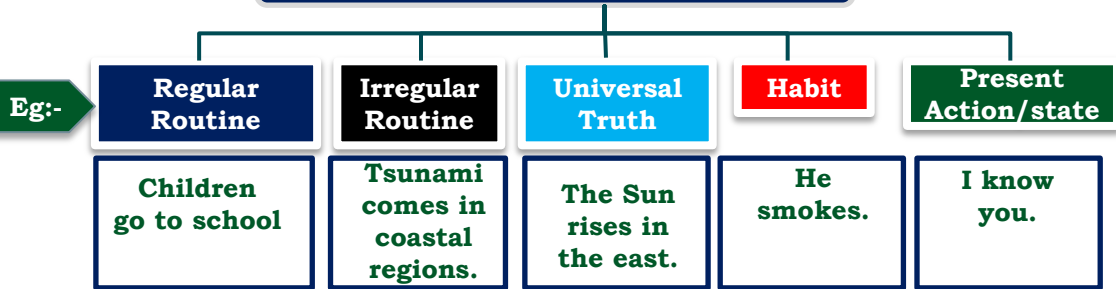
Is/ am/ are + subject + Subject complement?

PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE

The name itself suggests that it denotes Present action/ state that is regular/ irregular/ habit/ universal truth/ happens/ does not happen etc but must be a part of our present life.

(नाम से ही ये पता चलता है कि ये वर्तमान के कार्य/अवस्था दर्शाता है जो नियमित है/ अनियमित है/ आदत है/ सार्वभौमिक सत्य है/ होता है/ नहीं होता है, लेकिन निश्चित ही वर्तमान का हिस्सा है।)

PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE



Structure

Positive Sentence/ (सकारात्मक वाक्य)	Subject + V₁ + Object. (अगर Subject I, We, They, You अथवा Plural हो)
Negative Sentence/ (नकारात्मक वाक्य)	Subject + do not (don't) + V₁ + Object.
Interrogative Sentence/ (प्रश्न सूचक वाक्य)	Do + Subject + V₁ + Object? Do + Subject + not + V₁ + Object? Don't + Subject + V₁ + Object?

Structure

Positive Sentence/ (सकारात्मक वाक्य)	Subject + V₁ + s/es + Object. (अगर Subject he, she, it, name या Singular हो)
Negative Sentence/ (नकारात्मक वाक्य)	Subject + does not (doesn't) + V₁ + Object.
Interrogative Sentence/ (प्रश्न सूचक वाक्य)	Does + Subject + V₁ + Object? Does + Subject + not + V₁ + Object? Doesn't + Subject + V₁ + Object?

Note:- We add 'es' after V₁ if the verb ends in s, ss, ch, sh, z, x & o.
(V₁ के साथ 'es' तब लगता है जब verb s, ss, ch, sh, z, x और o में खत्म हो)

Maximum number of questions are asked from the use given below.
(अधिकतर सवाल ऊपर दिए गए use से पूछे जाते हैं)

1. The fifth and final act of Macbeth contain the sleepwalking scene. CHSL 2018
2. The Cannes film festival attract some of the world's most famous people CHSL 2018
3. The price of woolen clothes come down in summer. CHSL 2018
4. The two states frequently has differences over the use of the river water especially during the summer. CHSL 2018

5. My teacher told me that honesty was the best policy.
6. I do not know what does she want.
7. Our neighbour switch on his TV early in the morning at full volume.
(Stenographer 2018)
8. Last evening my friend tells me the funny joke that I had never heard.
CGL Mains 2018
9. I will buy a television set when the prices comes down.
10. What you know about her?
11. What kind of bird is the dodo!
12. Who comes daily?
13. He like his parents are introvert.

Answers

1. Change contain into contains as the fifth and final act of Macbeth is the same one. 2. Change 'attract' into 'attracts' as the subject is singular. 3. Change 'come' into 'comes' as the subject (price) is singular. 4. Two states (P.S.) will take have (P.V.) change 'has' into 'have'. 5. Change 'was' into 'is'. Universal truth, idioms and phrases are in Present Indefinite Tense. 6. Change 'what does she want' into 'what she wants'. The sentence is not interrogative. 7. Change 'switch' (P.V) into switches (S.V) as the subject (neighbour) is singular. 8. Tells ($V_1 + s/es$) cannot come with last evening (Past time). Change	'tells' into 'told'. 9. Prices is plural noun and comes in singular verb. Change 'prices' (P.N) into 'price' (S.N) 10. The sentence is interrogative. Change 'you know' into 'do you know'. 11. Change 'is the dodo' into 'the dodo is' as the sentence is exclamatory not interrogative. 12. The interrogative structure is — 'WH + H.V. + Sub + Verb?' but here the subject is missing so H.V. is also not needed. 13. Here 'like' means 'के जैसा'. Verb will follow 'he'. Change 'are' into 'is'. The sentence with proper punctuation will look better— He, like his parents, is introvert.

- Present Indefinite Tense comes when we talk about any book, the contents of which are still relevant, though the book may have been written in the past. (Present Indefinite Tense का प्रयोग तब भी होता है जब कोई किताब की प्रासंगिकता अभी भी हो चाहे वो बहुत पहले ही क्यों ना लिखी गई हो)

Eg:-

1. Our Constitution guarantees six fundamental rights.
2. This book reveals the stark reality of the children's homes.

- For formal / officially planned action of future, Present Indefinite Tense is the 1st choice. (भविष्य के औपचारिक planned कार्यों के लिए Present Indefinite Tense पहली पसंद है)

Eg:-

1. The PM leaves for Japan next week.
2. The meeting starts at 5 pm tomorrow.
3. India takes on Pakistan at Mohali tomorrow.

- In Informal English, we use Future Indefinite Tense for future actions or Present Continuous Tense for planned action of near future . (अनौपचारिक English में, भविष्य के कार्यों के लिए **Future Indefinite Tense** और निकट भविष्य के **planned** कार्यों के लिए **Present Continuous Tense** का प्रयोग होता है।)

Eg:-

1. I am going to Mumbai tonight.
2. She will come tomorrow.

- We use Present Indefinite Tense in Newspaper Headlines even though the action is already over. (भूतकाल में घटित घटना के लिए भी **Newspaper** के **Headlines** में **Present Indefinite Tense** का प्रयोग होता है।)

Eg:-

1. Bus hits 3 cars on NH 48.
2. CBI raids land mafia's premises.

Note:- There are certain rules to be followed while designing newspaper headlines to make them short and attractive. (समाचार पत्र के **headlines** बनाते समय कुछ नियमों का ध्यान रखा जाता है ताकि **headlines** छोटा एवं आकर्षक हो)

- Leave out auxiliary verbs with Perfect, Progressive and Passive structures. (**Perfect, Progressive एवं Passive structures** में **auxiliary verb** ना लगाये)

Eg:-

1. Temperature soaring as June comes. (is soaring **(changed into)** **soaring**)
2. Triple Talaq Bill passed in Parliament. (has been passed **(changed into)** **passed**)
3. Bus hits car, 3 killed. (Three people have been killed **(changed into)** **3 killed**)

- Use Infinitives (to + V_{b.f.}) for future events. (भविष्य के **action** के लिए **to + V_{b.f.}** का प्रयोग करें)

Eg:-

1. President to invite the BJP to form government.
2. BJP to elect its President soon.

- Articles are omitted in newspaper headlines and figures are used for numbers. (**Articles** का प्रयोग **newspaper headlines** में नहीं होता और संख्या **figures** में होते हैं शब्दों में नहीं)

Eg:-

1. Bus hits car, I killed. (Correct)
2. A bus hit a car, one person was killed. (Grammatically correct but cannot come in headlines.)

- Present Indefinite Tense is used in Sports Commentary to make the action seem live. (**Present Indefinite Tense** का प्रयोग **Sports Commentary** में **action** को जिवंत रूप में दर्शाने के लिए किया जाता है।)

Eg: (1) Virat hits the ball and off it goes across the boundary line.

- In exclamatory sentences that begin with 'here' and 'there', Present Indefinite Tense is used to express the position or appearance of the objects. (जब विस्मयबोधक वाक्य '**here**' एवं '**there**' से शुरू हो, तो **Present Indefinite Tense** का प्रयोग किसी वस्तु के वहाँ होने या अचानक आने का बोध कराने के लिए होता है।)

Eg:-

1. Here comes the chief guest!
2. There he goes!

SIMPLE PAST TENSE

This includes Past state made from verb 'was/ were'. It describes one's past identity, class or quality./ (इसमें Verb 'was/ were' से की गई भूतकाल अवस्था शामिल है। यह भूतकाल पहचान, वर्ग या गुणवत्ता का वर्णन करता है।)

Eg:-

I **was** a teacher.
She **was** not my aunt.
Were you in Delhi?

Structure

Positive Sentence (सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + was/ were + Subject Complement.

Negative Sentence (नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject+was/were+not+Subject Complement.

Interrogative Sentence (प्रश्न सूचक वाक्य)

Was/were + subject + Subject Complement?

1. I meant to repair the radio but hadn't time to do it today.

(1) No error (2) to do it today. (3) I meant to repair the radio

(4) but hadn't time

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam, 25.10.2015, TF No. 2148789)

Ans. (4) Replace 'hadn't' with 'didn't have'.

PAST INDEFINITE TENSE

• For past action, Past Indefinite Tense is used.

(Past action के लिए Past Indefinite Tense का प्रयोग होता है।)

Structure

Positive Sentence (सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + V₂ + object

Negative Sentence (नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + did not (didn't) + V₁ + object

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्न सूचक वाक्य)

Did + Subject + V₁ + object ?

Did + Subject + not + V₁ + object ?

Didn't + Subject + V₁ + object ?

1. Rohit did not came to the office because he got held up due to the heavy rains.

CGL Mains 2018

2. Why she was angry with her son?

CGL (CPO) Pre, 2018

3. Madhuri did not reply when I asked her why was she weeping.

(SSC (CPO) Pre, 2017)

4. Why they didn't turn up for the workshop?

(CHSL-2012)

Answers

1. Change 'came' into 'come'. 'Did not' takes 'V₁'.

2. Change 'she was' into 'was she' as the sentence is in Interrogative form.

3. Change 'was she' into 'she was'. The sentence is not in interrogative form.

4. Change 'they didn't' into 'didn't they'. In interrogative sentences H.V. comes before the Subject.

- With past time, Past Indefinite Tense is used. (भूतकाल के समय के साथ **Past Indefinite Tense** का प्रयोग होता है)

Eg:-

1. I have come to Delhi yesterday. (×)
2. They have built the camp in 1966.

Answers

1. Change 'have come' into 'came'. With Past time, we use Past Indefinite Tense.
2. Change 'they have built' into 'they built'.

- If a sentence starts with Past Tense, it should continue in Past Tense unless it falls in the list of exceptional cases (discussed later). (अगर वाक्य की शुरुआत **Past** से हो, तो वाक्य आगे भी **Past** में होगा जबतक कि वह किसी अपवाद के अंतर्गत ना आए)

Eg:-

1. He said that he will never repeat the mistake.

(SSC-SO (Audit), 2006)

2. The salesman tried to sell me a solar heater but I already have one.

(SSC (CHSL)-2016)

3. I called at his house yesterday and have given him money.

(SSC (CGL), 2016)

4. I shake his hand when he arrived and when he left.

5. No one inform me that you would be absent.

(CGL Mains 2018)

6. She stopped singing as soon as the telephone rings across the hall.

(CGL Tier I, Re-exam 2015)

7. Aanya's Class teacher and her friends congratulates her warmly when she won the inter-school debate and brought the trophy to the school.

(CGL Mains 2018)

8. Very soon I realised that he is at fault.

9. I declined the invitation not because I did not want to go but because I have no time.

Answers

1. Change 'will' into 'would' as the sentence is in Simple Past (He said).
2. Change 'have' into 'had'. The sentence has V_2 in the starting of the sentence which indicates that the action is in Past.
3. Change 'have given' into 'gave'. 'Called at' means 'to visit some place'.
4. Change 'shake' into 'shook'.
5. 'Would' (V_2) indicates that sentence is a past action. Change 'inform' into 'informed'.
6. Change 'rings' into 'rang' as the sentence is an action of past.
7. Change 'congratulates' into 'congratulated' as the action is of past.
8. Change 'is' into 'was'.
9. Change 'have' into 'had'.

- If the sentence starts with Past Tense but then the latter part contains an Idiom, Phrase, Universal Truth, Habitual Action or a Sweeping generalization, the latter part will be in Present Indefinite Tense. (अगर वाक्य भूतकाल से शुरू हो लेकिन आगे मुहावरे, लोकोक्तियों, सार्वभौमिक सत्य, आदतन क्रिया या व्यापक सामान्यीकरण वाले वाक्य हो, तो हम **Present Indefinite Tense** का प्रयोग करेंगे।)

Note:-

A sweeping generalization is a statement that might be true in specific cases but the speaker has tried to apply it to all cases.

- Galileo proved that the earth _____ around the Sun.
(A) Revolves (B) Revolved
- Our teacher said that honesty was the best policy.
- They said that women are more sincere workers than men.
- I knew that a bad carpenter fought with his tools.

Answers

- (A) Ans. is 'Revolves' as the sentence is a universal truth though the sentence started with 'S+V₂'
- Change 'was' into 'is'.
- No error. Sentence is of sweeping generalization.
- Change 'fought' into 'fights'.
This is an idiom which means that if one is unsuccessful in doing anything, he lays the blame on external factors. (नाच न जाने आंगन देढ़ा)

- To express Past Routine, we have three options. (भूतकाल के routine कार्य के लिए हमारे पास तीन विकल्प हैं)

PAST ROUTINE

(with some limitation (कुछ शर्तों के साथ) (See Modals)

Sub + Used to + V_{b.f.}

(1st Choice)

- I ____ (go) to school daily.
(A) went (B) used to go
- She ____ a plate daily when she worked here.
(A) break (B) broke
- I ____ very thick hair.
(A) use to have (B) used to have
(C) Use to had

(SSC CISF ASI Exam. 29.08.2010)

- She uses to study till 10 pm and then goes to bed.

Past Indefinite Tense

(2nd Choice)

Subject + Would + V_{b.f.}

(3rd Choice)

Answers

- 1st choice → used to go. 2nd choice → (went)
- (B) Ans. is 'broke' as there is no option 'used to break' here'.
- Used to have. 'Used to' denote past and is followed by V_{b.f.}
- For Present Indefinite routine use Simple Present Tense. Change 'uses to study' into 'studies'.

- 'V₂' is used generally for Past action/ State but there is a strange use of V₂. All V₂ (except 'was') is used to express unreal or hypothetical situations. ('V₂' का प्रयोग सामान्यतः **Past Action/ State** के लिए होता है लेकिन 'was' को छोड़ दिया जाये तो काल्पनिक हालात भी व्यक्त कर सकता है)

- It is time you decide on your next course of action.

(SSC (CGL)- Tier I, 2010)

- It is high time that we leave this place.

(CHSL-2012)

3. It is high time we renovate our old house.

(SSC Mains-2014)

4. I wish I _____ a lot of money.
(A) have (B) has (C) had

5. Would that I was a billionaire.

6. Would that life was a bed of roses!

- 1, 2, 3 → 'It is time' 'it is high time' or 'it's about time' means that the action should have been done a long time ago. Hence we use V₂. Change 'decide' into 'decided' in 1. Change 'leave' into 'left' in 2. Change 'renovate' into 'renovated' in 3.
- Ans. is (C) 'had' is used for imaginary possession.
- Change 'was' into 'were'. In imaginary sentence, we use 'were' with all the subjects.
- 'Would that' is used for saying that something were true especially when you know that it is impossible. Change 'was' into 'were' as the sentence is of imagination.

SIMPLE FUTURE TENSE

This includes future state made from verb 'will be/ shall be'. It describes one's future identity, class or quality.

(इसमें Verb 'will be/ shall be' से की गई भविष्य की अवस्था शामिल है। यह भविष्य की पहचान, वर्ग या गुणवत्ता का वर्णन करता है।)

Eg:-

I **shall be** a teacher.
She **will not be** my wife.
Will you **be** in Delhi?

Structure

Positive Sentence (सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + shall/ will + be + Subject Complement.

Negative Sentence (नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + shall/will + not+be + Subject Complement.

Interrogative Sentence (प्रश्न सूचक वाक्य)

Shall/ will + sub + be + Subject Complement?

FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE

- Future Indefinite Tense represents action/ state of future.

(Future Indefinite Tense भविष्य के कार्य/अवस्था दर्शाता है।)

जैसे:

- I shall come tomorrow and he will accompany me.
- People will remember this pandemic for years.

STRUCTURE

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + shall/ will + V_{b.f} + object.

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + shall/ will + not + V_{b.f} + object.
Sub + shan't/ won't + V_{b.f} + object.

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्न सूचक वाक्य)

Shall/will + sub + V_{b.f} + object ?
Shall/ will + sub + not + V_{b.f} + object ?
Shan't/ won't + sub + V_{b.f} + object ?

I/we
shall

Other
Subject

will

- In modern English Language we have started using 'will' with all persons i.e even with 'I' and 'we'. (Modern English Language में हम 'will' का प्रयोग सभी persons के साथ करने लगे हैं)

Eg:- 1. I will meet you next week.

- We should refrain from using 'will' with 'I/'we' in Interrogative sentences even in Modern English. (Modern English में प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में 'I'/'we' के साथ 'will' का प्रयोग नहीं होता)

Eg:- 1. Will we ever know the truth? (×)
Shall we ever know the truth? (✓)

Note: In normal sentences of future we use 'shall' with 'I' and 'we'. (सामान्य वाक्यों में 'I' और 'we' के साथ 'shall' का प्रयोग होता है)

Now let us see how questions come from the structures.
(Structure से सवाल कैसे पूछे जाते हैं, देखें):-

Examples

1. I am really bored of this movie! when was it end? (CGL Mains 2018)
2. Agent Chitrangada will telegraphed a secret code word to her boss as part of a dubious mission. (SSC Steno 2017)
3. Fuji's invention of Super computer will be enable to make Japan supersede America in Computer technology.
4. Is she go to visit her parents in the evening? (SSC (CGL) Tier I 2013)

Answers

1. Change 'was' into 'will'. The speaker wants the movie to end as he is getting bored.
2. Will cannot take 'V₂'. Change 'will telegraphed' into 'has telegraphed'/'telegraphed' or 'will telegraph'.
3. Change 'will be enable' into 'will enable' (will + V_{b.f.})
4. Change 'Is she go' into 'will she go' or 'Is she going'. For future action we use Future Indefinite Tense. For planned action of near future, we can use Present Continuous Tense too.

However in sentence of—

- Determination (हृढ़ निश्चय)
- Promise (वादा)
- Threat (धमकी)
- Advice (सलाह)
- Command (आदेश)

I/we will

Other Subjects shall

• 'Shall' comes with 2nd & 3rd person— (You, he, she, it, name, singular and 'will' with 'I' and 'we'). (हृद निश्चये, वादे, धमकी व सलाह वाले वाक्यों में **2nd** और **3rd Person— (You, he, she, it, name एवं singular)** के साथ 'shall' का प्रयोग होगा और 'I' एवं 'we' के साथ 'will' का)

Examples

1. Trespassers _____ be prosecuted.
2. I will help you come what may.
3. You shall take rest for a week.
4. You shall be rewarded.
5. Swaraj is my birth right and I shall have it.
6. We shall overcome some day.

Answers

1. **Ans. - shall.**
The sentence is of threat. Meaning- बिना अनुमति के प्रवेश करने वालों को दंड दिया जाएगा
Trespasser – One who enters, someone's land without permission (घुसपैठिया)
2. 'Come what may' means 'चाहे कुछ हो जाए'
The sentence is of 'determination'.
3. The sentence is of advice, so 'shall' has come with 'you'.
4. Here 'shall' has come with 'you' because the sentence is of advice.
5. This is a famous statement given by 'Bal Gangadhar Tilak' and we cannot apply Grammatical rules to famous sayings and quotations.
6. This is a famous song hence no rule can be applied on this song.

Continuous Tense

Present Continuous

- Action going on at Present (जो कार्य वर्तमान में जारी है)

जैसे:

1. She is sleeping now.
2. They are studying now.

Past Continuous

- Action going on in the Past (जो कार्य भूतकाल में हो रहा था)

जैसे:

1. She was waiting for me.
2. We were having lunch.

Future Continuous

- Action going on in the Future (जो कार्य भविष्य में हो रहा होगा)

जैसे:

1. She will be going home at this time tomorrow.
2. I shall be taking the exam at this time next week.

Present Continuous Tense

STRUCTURE

Is/am/are का प्रयोग

Is → he/she/it/name/singular के साथ

Am → I के साथ

Are → you/we/they/all/plural के साथ

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + is/ am/ are + V_1 + ing+ object

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + is/ are/ am/ + not + V_1 + ing+ object
Subject + isn't/ aren't/ am not + V_1 + ing+ object

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Is/ am/ are + Subject + V_1 + ing+ object?
Is/ am/ are + Subject + not + V_1 + ing+ object?
Isn't/ aren't + Subject + V_1 + ing+ object?

Past Continuous Tense

STRUCTURE

Was/were का प्रयोग

Was → He/she/it/name/singular/I के साथ

Were → You/we/they/plural/all के साथ

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + was/were + V_1 + ing + object

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + was/were + not + V_1 + ing + object
Subject + wasn't/weren't + V_1 + ing + object

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Was/were + Subject + V_1 + ing + object?
Was/were + Subject + not+ V_1 + ing + object?
Wasn't/weren't + Subject + V_1 + ing + object?

Future Continuous Tense

STRUCTURE

I/we > shall

Other Subject > will

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + shall/ will + be + V_1 + ing + object

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + shall/ will + not + be + V_1 + ing + object
Subject + shan't/ won't + be + V_1 + ing + object

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Will/shall + Subject + be+ V_1 + ing + object?
Will/shall + Subject + not+ be+ V_1 + ing + object?
Won't/shan't + Subject +be+ V_1 + ing + object?

Examples

1. Why you copying your homework from someone else?

(SSC (CGL) 2016)

2. Some of us are plan to go for a movie tonight.

(CGL Mains 2018)

3. I aren't fine.
4. I am fine, aren't I?
5. I am going to Mumbai tonight.
6. Five years ago today, I am sitting in a small Japanese car, driving across Poland towards Berlin.

(SSC (CGL) Tier I - 2013)

Answers

1. Change 'you copying' into 'are you copying'. The sentence is Interrogative hence the helping verb will come before the subject.
2. Change 'are plan' into 'are planning'.
3. Change 'aren't' into 'am not'.
4. 'am not' takes shortened form 'aren't' only in Inversion i.e. when the helping verb comes before the subject.
5. The sentence is correct as we can use present continuous tense for future planned action of near future.
6. Change 'am sitting' into 'was sitting'. The sentence is of past.

- The Present Continuous with words such as 'always' or 'constantly' expresses the idea that something irritating or shocking often happens. Note that the meaning is like Present Indefinite Tense but with Negative emotions.

(अगर **Present Continuous** वाले वाक्यों में 'always' या 'constantly' शब्दों का प्रयोग हो, तो उसका अर्थ **Present Indefinite Tense** में ही निकलता है हालांकि नकारात्मक भावना के साथ)

1. You are always sleeping in class.
2. You are constantly pestering me.

- Many times we get confused between Continuous Tense and Indefinite Tense. (कई बार हम **Continuous** एवं **Indefinite Tense** के बीच में **Confuse** कर जाते हैं |)

Eg:- 1. I am studying in a good school. (×)

2. I study in a good school. (✓)

Routine Action of Present takes Present Indefinite Tense.

(वर्तमान का **Routine Action Present Indefinite Tense** में होता है)

- Certain sentences are based on literal translation and common usage. (कुछ वाक्य सीधे-सीधे **translation** एवं आम भाषा पर आधारित होते हैं)

1. We are leaving for Kerala today.

(CHSL-2012)

2. The light went out while I read.

(CHSL-2011)

3. One of my friends are going to Mumbai tomorrow.

(CHSL-2014)

4. When I went there Charles is playing a game of Chess.

(SSC (CGL) Tier I - 2011)

5. We did a test when the lights went out.

(CHSL -2011)

Answers

1. This sentence is of Present Continuous Tense as we can use Present Continuous for Future planned action.
2. Change 'I read' into 'I was reading'.
3. Change 'are' into 'is'. 'One' takes S.V. (is).
4. Change 'is' into 'was'. The sentence is of past.
5. Change 'did' into 'were doing'.

2, 4, 5 → In these sentences one action took place while the other was going on. Hence we have used Past Continuous and Past Indefinite combinations.

- Many times 'V₁ + ing' form of verb can be replaced by an Adjective. (कई बार verb के 'V₁ + ing' form को Adjective से हम replace कर सकते हैं।)

Examples

1. (i) I was <u>sleeping</u>. (V1 + ing) (ii) I was <u>asleep</u>. (Adj.)	3. (i) The house was <u>burning</u>. (V1 + ing) (ii) The house was <u>ablaze</u>. (Adj.)
2. (i) The body was <u>floating</u>. (V1 + ing) (ii) The body was <u>afloat</u>. (Adj.)	

- There are certain non-continuous verbs. They do not come in 'V₁ + ing' form because normally you cannot see someone doing that. (कुछ Non-continuous Verbs होते हैं। ये 'V₁ + ing' में नहीं आते क्योंकि सामान्यतः आप किसी को ये करते नहीं देखते।)
The verbs given below are non-continuous verb. (नीचे दिए गए Verbs Non-continuous verbs हैं।)

- **Verbs of Perception** – (अनुभूति से संबंधित verbs)
See, taste, hear, smell, appear, sound, feel, look.
- **Verbs of possession** – (आधिपत्य संबंधित verbs)
Own, have, possess, comprise, consist, contain, belong
- **Verbs of feelings** – (भावनाओं से संबंधित verbs)
Love, like, hate, adore (पसंद करना), dislike, want, wish, please, trust, hope, desire (इच्छा करना), believe
- **Verbs of thoughts** – (मस्तिष्क की क्रियाओं से संबंधित verbs)
Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose, notice, recognize (पहचानना), imagine, understand, comprehend (समझना), prefer.
- **Some other verbs** – (कुछ अन्य verbs)
Agree, afford, resemble, cost, require, refuse, consider, become, exist.

Examples

Trust me. I am believing you word for word. (×)
Here believe cannot take 'ing' form. Change 'I am believing you' into 'I believe you'.

1. I am having a car. (×)

If 'have' means 'own' or 'possess', it becomes non-continuous verb.

I have a car. (✓)

2. It is smelling good. (×) It smells good. (✓)

Here I am not smelling a particular thing. Let's say when I entered my room, I felt a good smell. Here I am not doing any action. The smell is automatically affecting my sense organ 'nose'. So here we should say.

If we want to smell some food to know its ingredient, we are performing some action. Here we can use 'smelling' as it is an action.

यहाँ हम कुछ सूँघ नहीं रहे हैं | जैसे ही मैं अंदर आया, वैसे ही मुझे गंध आया | मैंने सूँघने का कोई action नहीं किया | गंध मेरे sense organ 'नाक' पर खुद व खुद असर कर रहा है | इसीलिए यहाँ 'smell' non - continuous verb है |

अगर हम खुद सूँघ कर सामग्री का पता लगाना चाह रहे हो तो हम action कर रहे हैं |

Eg: He is smelling the soup to check its ingredients.

Examples

1. I now (1)/ am knowing (2)/ all the facts about him.(3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006 (Second Sitting))

2. Ramesh smiled when he was remembering (1)/ his hard early years (2)/ and his long road to success. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 29.03.2009)

3. Madhuri Dixit is having (1)/ a large (2)/ fan following. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Higher Secondary Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.11.2010 (IInd Sitting))

4. He is having (1)/ many (2)/ friends here. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC CPO (SI, ASI & Intelligence Officer Exam. Paper-II 28.08.2011))

5. I (1)/ am having (2)/ three children. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.10.2012 (1st Sitting))

6. You are a very lovable person (1)/ but I (2)/ am not loving you. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Constable (GD) Exam. 12.05.2013)

7. My mother (1)/ is having (2)/ grey hairs (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (steno.) 2017, 14 Sept., Evening

8. I was not able to solve the questions as I was not knowing the answers.

- (1) the answers (2) I was not
(3) able to solve (4) was not knowing

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 14 March,
2019 Evening

9. Most children are liking ice-cream.

- (1) likes (2) like
(3) were liking (4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator
& LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (1st Sitting))

10. I am having two sisters.

- (1) have had (2) have
(3) had (4) No improvement

(SSC Data Entry Operator & LDC
Exam. 28.11.2010)

11. She is loving chocolate ice cream

- (1) has loving (2) has been loved
(3) loves (4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry
Operator & LDC Exam. 28.10.2012
(1st Sitting))

12. He is wanting in a little common sense.

- (1) No improvement (2) lacks
(3) is lacking in (4) needs some

13. This telephone number is not existing.

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 09.08.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 1443088)

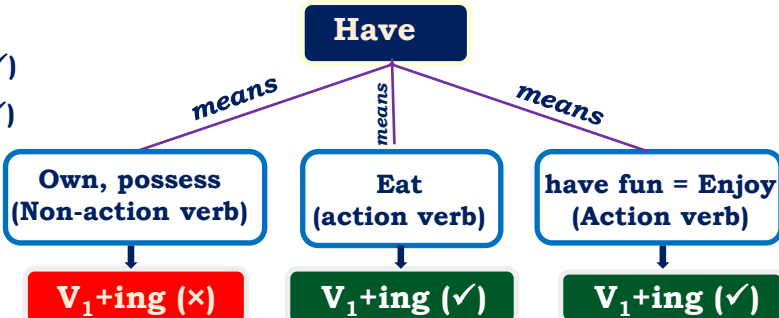
(SSC (CGL) Tier I, 2013 Re-exam)

Answers

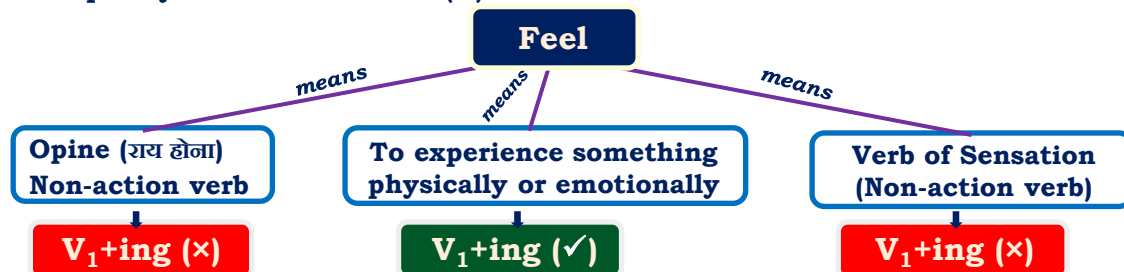
- (2) Replace 'am knowing' with 'know'. 'Know' is not used in Progressive Tense.
- (1) Replace 'was remembering' with 'remembered'.
- (1) Replace 'is having' with 'has' because verb of possession does not come in the 'V_{ing}' form.
- (1) Replace 'is having' with 'has' as 'having' (have in 'ing' form) cannot come in 'V₁+ing' it means to possess.
- (2) Replace 'am having' with 'have'.
- (3) Replace 'am not loving you' with 'do not love you' because verbs that show emotion do not come in 'V_{ing}' form.
- (2) Replace 'is having' with 'has'. Having something means enjoying or eating which is not suitable here according to the meaning of the sentence.
- (4) Replace 'was not knowing' with 'didn't know'. 'Know' does not come in 'ing' form.
- (2) Replace 'are liking' with 'like' because for habitual action Simple Present Tense is used.
- (2) Replace 'am having' with 'have' when 'have' shows possession it does not come in '-ing' form.
- (3) Replace 'is loving' with 'loves' because 'love' is a static verb, we do not use it in '-ing' form.
- (2) Replace 'is wanting in a little' with 'lacks'. General facts comes in Simple Present Tense.
- Change 'is not existing' into 'does not exist'. You know this line. You have heard it many times on phone.

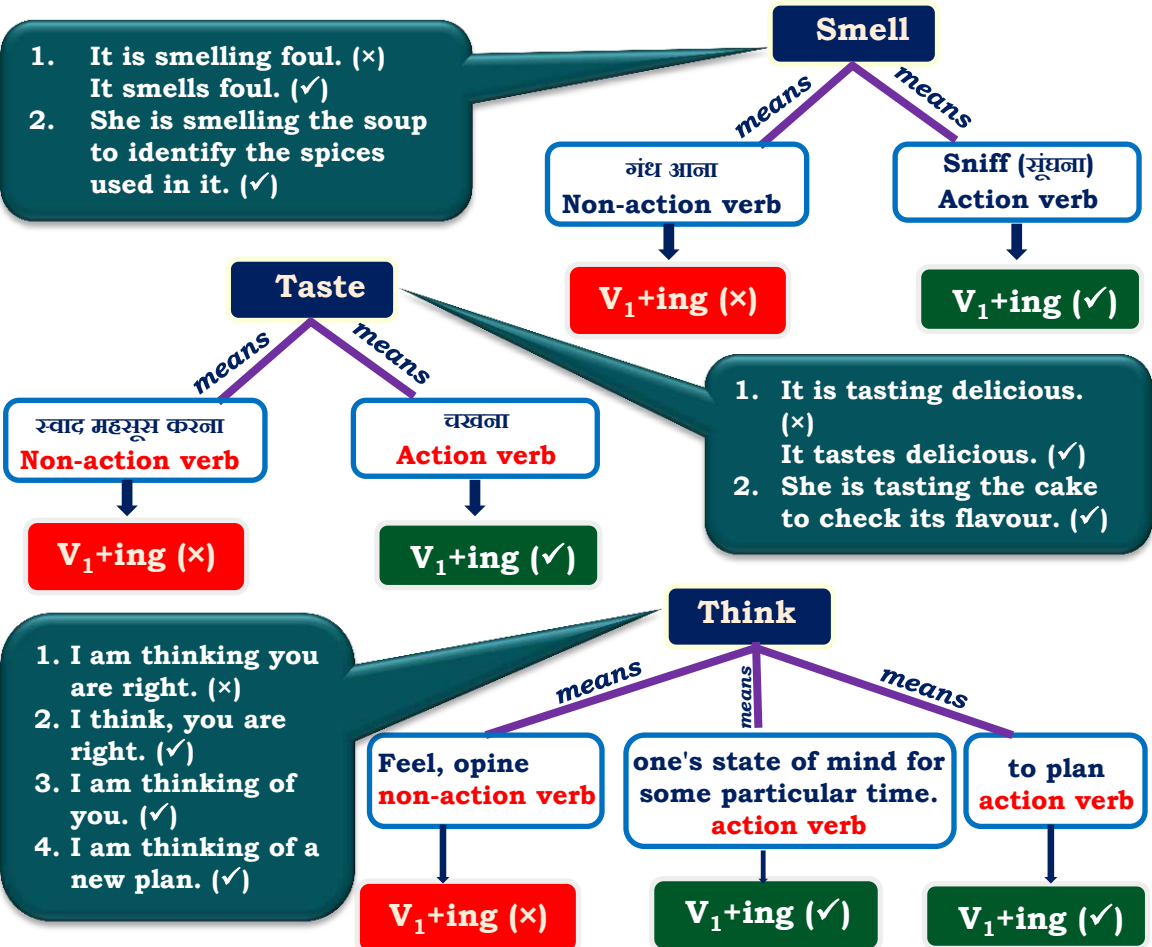
• Now let us see where we can use 'V₁ + ing' forms of verbs that are usually non-continuous. (अब देखते हैं हम **non-continuous verbs** का प्रयोग 'V₁ + ing' form में कहीं-कहीं कर सकते हैं)

- I am having lunch. (✓)
- We are having fun. (✓)
- I am having a car. (✗)
I have a car. (✓)



- I am feeling, you are right. (✗)
I feel you are right. (✓)
- It is feeling soft.
It feels soft.
- She is feeling the quilt to check the quality of the fabric used. (✓)
- I am feeling unwell. (✓)





- **Lo!** She is smelling the artificial roses. (✓)

We use **Lo/ See/ behold/** to attract the attention of the listener towards the action going on.

(**Lo/ See/ behold** का प्रयोग श्रोता के ध्यान को आकर्षित करता है। यानि ध्यान उस **action** के तरफ आकर्षित किया जाता है जो जारी अवस्था में हो।)

Lo! definition

We used '**Lo!**' to tell people to pay attention and look at something interesting.

1. **Seeing is believing.**

sub.

obj.

2. Mosquitoes are capable of seeing in the night.

Prep.

'**V₁+ing**' is used as Gerund. Gerund is Noun. Noun comes in place of Subject and object and after a Preposition.

'**V₁+ing** Gerund' एवं है और **Subject object** के स्थान पर और **Preposition** के बाद होता है।

In the examples given above 'See' and 'believe' have come in '**V₁+ing**' form. Here they are Gerund.

Present Perfect Tense

Has/have के प्रयोग

has	He/ She/ It/ Name/ Singular
have	I/ We/ They/ You/ Plural/ All

Present Perfect is used for various types of actions.
(**Present Perfect** का प्रयोग विभिन्न प्रकार के **actions** के लिए होता है।)

STRUCTURE

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + has/ have + V₃ + object.

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + has/ have + not + V₃ + object
Subject + hasn't/ haven't + V₃ + object

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Has/ have + Subject + V₃ + object ?
Has/ have + Subject + not + V₃ + object ?
Hasn't/ haven't + Subject + V₃ + object ?

Examples

- The teacher (1)/ has took (2)/ the responsibility. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC CISF ASI Exam. 29.08.2010 (Paper-I))
- I have sign over (1)/ the cheque, you can (2)/ collect it tomorrow. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC CHSL-2016 (2nd February, Morning))
- Everything has became very expensive these days.
(1) No error (2) Everything has become
(3) very expensive (4) these days
(CGL MAINS 2018, 12 September, 2019)
- Now that I am back at work, (1) / I have beginning (2) / to feel much better.
(3) / No error (4)
(SSC CGL-2016 (2nd September, Morning))
- It has becoming clear (1)/ that attempts to impress the (2)/ people have failed. (3)/ No Error (4)
(SSC (steno.) 2017, 11 Sept., Morning)
- I have went through the write-ups guideline (1)/ too but still want to clear on mail (2)/ communication for topic confirmation. (3)/ No Error (4)
(SSC (steno.) 2017, 11 Sept., Evening)
- The Public Works Department has propose to construct an elevated corridor which will run parallel to the National highway.
(1) to the National highway (2) The Public works Department has propose
(3) which will run parallel (4) to construct an elevated corridor
(CHSL-2018, 2 July, 2019, Morning)
- The advancements in medical science **has proved** to be a boon for all of us.
(1) has proven (2) had proven
(3) have proved (4) No improvement
(SSC Stenographer (Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 09.01.2011))

Answers

1. (2) Replace 'has took' with 'has taken'. After 'has/ have' 'V₃' is used.
2. (1) After 'has/have' V₃ comes hence replace 'sign' with 'signed'. Also remove 'over'.
3. (2) Replace 'became' with 'become'. Has takes V₃.
4. (2) After 'have' 'V₃' form of verb is used. Thus replace 'beginning' with 'begun'.
5. (1) Change 'becoming' into 'become' because the sentence is in present perfect tense where the structure is-
Sub + have/has + V₃
6. (1) Replace 'went' with 'gone' become 'go through' means to examine carefully.
7. (2) 'Has' is always followed by 'third form of verb'. Use 'proposed' in place of 'propose'.
8. (3) Replace 'has proved' with 'have proved' because here the main subject is plural, it will agree with plural verb (have).

- The action that has taken place just now or recently takes Present Perfect Tense but if an action is of past, we should use Past Indefinite Tense. (जो कार्य अभी-अभी या हाल-फिलहाल हुआ हो, उसे **Present Perfect Tense** में रखा जाता है। लेकिन अगर **Action** भूतकाल का हो तो **Past Indefinite Tense** का प्रयोग होता है।)

Eg:-

1. I have come to Delhi recently.
2. She has arrived just now.
3. I have had lunch just now.

- If Past time is given, the sentence is in Past Indefinite Tense.
(अगर भूतकाल का समय दिया हो तो वाक्य **Past Indefinite Tense** में होगा।)

Examples

1. I have passed (1)/ the examination (2)/ two years ago. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)
2. I (1)/ have seen him (2)/ yesterday. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.10.2012 (1st Sitting))
3. They have (1)/ played a game (2)/ last week. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013, IInd Sitting)
4. I have got your letter yesterday (1)/ and felt happy to learn (2)/ of your recovery. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

5. I have seen (1)/ that film last year (2)/ but I do not remember its story.(3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking (Non-Tech.) Staff Exam. 16.02.2014)
6. I have visited Mumbai two years ago (1)/ and I am planning to visit again (2)/ in the near future. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5)
7. We have finished our work three hours ago and have been waiting for you since then.
(1) three hours ago and have been waiting (3) for you since then
(2) We have finished our work (4) No error
(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 16.08.2015 (IInd Sitting) TF No. 2176783)
8. I called (1)/ at his house yesterday (2)/ and have given him money (3)/ No Error (4)
(SSC CGL-2016 (8th September, Evening)
9. She has slept for eight hours last night.
(1) slept (2) had slept
(3) has been sleeping (4) No improvement
(SSC Tax Assistant (IncomeTax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)
10. Rani has completed her graduation from a reputed university last year.
(1) completed (2) was completed
(3) No improvement (4) had been completed
(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 06.12.2015 (IInd Sitting) TF No. 3441135)
11. I have returned library books yesterday.
(1) had returned (2) have had returned
(3) returned (4) No improvement
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 06.01.2008)

Answers

- (1) Replace 'have passed' with 'passed' because the given sentence is in Past Tense.
- (2) Replace 'have seen' with 'saw' because the given sentence is in Past Tense.
- (1) Change 'have played' into 'played' because the sentence is in Past Tense.
- (1) Replace 'have got' with 'got' because the given sentence is in Past Tense.
- (1) Replace 'have seen' with 'saw' since the given sentence talks about past events.
- (1) Replace 'have visited' with 'visited' because the event is of past time.
- (2) Replace 'have finished' with 'finished' because the event took place in past.
- (3) Given sentence is an past tense, thus replace 'have given' with 'gave'.
- (1) Replace 'has slept' with 'slept' because the action denotes a past act.
- (1) Replace 'has completed' with 'completed' because the given sentence is in Past Tense.
- (3) Replace 'have returned' with 'returned'. 'Yesterday' denotes that action took place in past.

- Sentences with **yet/ so far / till now** (अभी तक) **come in Present Perfect Tense.**

(जिन वाक्यों में **yet/ so far** (अभी तक) का प्रयोग हो उनमें **Present Perfect Tense** का प्रयोग होता है।)

1. **Didn't** Mr. Sharma come to the office yet ?
(1) Hadn't (2) Hasn't
(3) Isn't (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam.
30.09.2007)

2. He **didn't** eat anything till now.

- When the action is important, not the time of action and the action is over, however the time of action is not given, we use **Present Perfect Tense.** (जब कार्य महत्वपूर्ण हो ना कि कार्य होने का समय और कार्य खत्म होने के समय का कोई उल्लेख भी नहीं हो)

1. The housing problem in Mumbai **becomes** more serious.
(1) is become (2) has become
(3) become (4) No improvement

(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 16.11.2014 ,
1st Sitting TF No. 333 LO 2)

2. Science has made our life better.
3. Man has reached the moon.
4. I have already had a slice of bread.

- See the structure given below. (नीचे दिए गये **structure** को देखें)

This is the nth time + Present Perfect Tense

1. This is the first time, I have met him.
 2. This is the fourth time, you have interrupted.
- But this is a structure which we can use only when the action is over, however the time of action is not given.

(लेकिन इस **structure** का प्रयोग सिर्फ तभी करें जब कार्य हो चुका हो)

- Eg:-**
1. This is the sixth time, he is calling me up.
 2. This is the 4th time, you are watching this movie.

- See the structure given below. (नीचे दिए गये **structure** को देखें)



Eg:-

1. My sister has been (1)/ interested in medicine (2)/ ever since she was a child
(3)/ No Error (4)
2. **I have never been hearing from** him since he left for America.
(1) have never heard (2) have never been hearing
(3) was never heard (4) No improvement

SSC CGL-2016 (11th September, Evening)

(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam.
(2013) 20.07.2014, IInd Sitting)

1. (4) No error
2. (1) Replace 'have never been hearing' with 'have never heard'. When 'hear' means 'listen something' it is not used in Continuous Tense.

Past Perfect Tense

- If two actions took place one after the other, the 1st action is in Past Perfect Tense and the 2nd action is in Past Indefinite Tense. (जब दो कार्य भूतकाल में हो, तो जो पहले हुआ हो वह **Past Perfect** में होगा और जो उसके बाद हुआ हो वह **Past Indefinite Tense** में होगा)

STRUCTURE

Positive Sentence

(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + had + V₃ + obj

Negative Sentence

(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + had + not (hadn't) + V₃ + obj

Interrogative Sentence

(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Had + sub + V₃ + obj ?

Had + sub + not + V₃ + obj ?

Hadn't + sub + V₃ + obj ?

Eg:-

1. I had called you up before he arrived.
2. Before he understood anything, the robbers had fled.
3. He boarded the bus after he had texted him.
4. By the time we reached the station, the train had left.

1. Although we reached his house in time (1)/ he was left (2)/ for the airport. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking (Non-Tech.) Staff Exam. 16.02.2014)

2. The train had left (1)/ when he had reached (2)/ the station. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)

3. By the time (1)/ we got our tickets and entered the cinema theatre, (2)/ the show was already begun. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 14.12.2008)

4. When Anand reached the village (1)/ he found that (2)/ reports about him preceded him. (3)/ No error (4)

5. When at last (1)/ we got to the theatre, (2)/ the much publicized programme by the Bollywood stars was begun. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016, 21th Jan, Evening

6. We had to return because (1)/ when we reached the railway (2)/ station the train left. (3)/ No error (4)

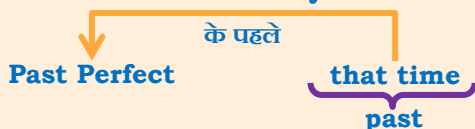
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 16.09.2012)

7. I finished my assignment before we (1)/ reached his wedding with great (2)/ difficulty because of heavy traffic. (3)/ No Error (4)
- SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 4 July, 2018 Morning
8. He said that he saw him last year, to discuss the documents.
 (1) met (2) had seen
 (3) seen (4) No improvement
- (SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting) Delhi Zone)
9. Hoping not to be disturbed, I sat down in my easy chair to read the book, I won as a prize.
 (1) I had won as a prize (2) I have won as prize
 (3) I had to win as a prize (4) No improvement
- (SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013, IInd Sitting)
10. She had realized that she had seen him before.
 (1) had been realized (2) realized
 (3) has realized (4) No improvement
- (SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (IInd Sitting) TF No. 7203752)
11. He lost the bicycle that his father gifted him.
 12. Every one had slept till that time.

Answers

1. (2) Of the two past actions the action that happens earlier is expressed in Past Perfect Tense.
Hence replace 'was left' with 'had left'.
2. (2) Replace 'had reached' with 'reached' because If two actions take place in Past, one after the other, the 1st action will be in Past Perfect Tense and 2nd in Past Indefinite Tense.
3. (3) Replace 'was' with 'had'. The structure we follow in this type of question is
By the time + Simple Past + Past Perfect.
Here two actions took place one after the other in the past.
4. (3) Replace 'Preceded' with 'had Preceded'.
If two actions take place in the past, one after the other, the first action will be in Past Perfect Tense and 2nd is Past Indefinite Tense.
5. (3) Replace 'was begun' with 'had begun'
If two actions take place in past one after the other, the first action is expressed in Past Perfect Tense.
6. (3) If two actions take place in past, one after the other, the first action is in Past Perfect Tense and the second action is in 'Past Indefinite Tense'.
Hence replace 'left' with 'had left'
7. (1) Correct formation –
Past Perfect ----- before ---- Past Indefinite. Use 'had' before 'finished'.
8. (2) Replace 'saw' with 'had seen'. Since the given sentence is in Indirect Speech.

9. (1) Replace 'I won as a prize' with 'I had won as a prize'. Of two actions of past, the earliest one comes in Past Perfect Tense.
10. (2) Replace 'had realized' with 'realized'. If two actions take place in Past one after the other, the 1st action comes in Past Perfect Tense and the 2nd one is Simple Past Tense.
11. 'gifted' changes into 'had gifted'.
12. Preceded by



Future Perfect Tense

- Action, which the speaker assumes will have been completed or occurred in the future, is expressed in Future Perfect Tense. (जो कार्य, वक्ता मान के चलता है कि भविष्य में हो चुका होगा, वह **Future Perfect Tense** में आता है।)

STRUCTURE

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + will/shall + have + V₃ + object

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Subject + will/shall + not + have + V₃ + object
Subject + won't/shan't + have + V₃ + object

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Will/shall + Subject + have + V₃ + object ?
Will/shall + Subject + not + have + V₃ + object ?
Won't/shan't + Subject + have + V₃ + object ?

- By the time we will reach the theatre, the show will have begun. (×)

Note:- Here we cannot use double will/ shall. (यहाँ **double will/shall** का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।)

Future Perfect part will have 'will/shall'. The other part will be in Simple Present Indefinite Tense. ('will/shall' का प्रयोग **Future Perfect** वाले भाग में होता है। दूसरे भाग में **Present Indefinite Tense** का प्रयोग होगा।)

Correct Sentence By the time we reach the theatre, the show will have begun.

- By this time tomorrow, I will reach my home.
(1) will be reaching (2) shall have reached
(3) can reach (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial
Audit) Exam. 25.09.2005)

- I am late for sure. By the time I will reach the station, the train would have left.
- I ___ (read) four novels by the end of the vacation.

Answers

- (2) कल इस समय तक मैं घर पहुँच चुका हूँगा
- Change 'I will reach' into 'I reach' and 'would have left' into 'will have left'.
- 'Shall have read' is the correct answer as 'by' suggests that the end of the vacation is yet to come.

Perfect Continuous Tense

Present Perfect Continuous

Action started in the past and still going on. (जो कार्य भूतकाल में शुरू हुआ और अभी भी चल रहा हो)

जैसे: I have been living in Delhi since childhood.

Past Perfect Continuous

Action started in the past, continued and finished in the past. (जो कार्य भूतकाल में शुरू हुआ, चला और भूतकाल में खत्म हो गया)

जैसे: He had been waiting for three hours before you came.

Future Perfect Continuous

Action to continue up to a certain future point of time. (जो कार्य भविष्य के किसी समय तक जारी रहेगा)

जैसे: By the end of this year, I shall have been living here for ten years.

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

STRUCTURE

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + has/ have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + has/ have + not + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time.
Sub + hasn't/ haven't + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Has/ have + Sub + + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time?
Has/ have + Sub + not + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time?
Hasn't/ haven't + Sub + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time?

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

STRUCTURE

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + had + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + had + not (hadn't) + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Had + sub + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?
Had + sub + not + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?
Hadh't + sub + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

STRUCTURE

Positive Sentence
(सकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + shall/ will + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time.

Negative Sentence
(नकारात्मक वाक्य)

Sub + shall/ will + not + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time.
Sub + shan't/ won't + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time.

Interrogative Sentence
(प्रश्नसूचक वाक्य)

Will/ shall + sub + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time?
Will/ shall + sub + not + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time ?
Won't/ shan't + sub + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time ?

Verb Based Questions

The verbs which are not used in 'V₁ + ing' form cannot come in 'Perfect Continuous Tense'. They come in 'Perfect Tense'. (जिन verbs का प्रयोग 'V₁ + ing' form में नहीं होता उनका प्रयोग **Perfect Continuous Tense** में नहीं कर सकते। उनका प्रयोग **Perfect Tense** में करें।)

Eg.

1. I have been liking chocolate since childhood.
2. She has been preferring tea to coffee for years.
3. We have been knowing (1)/ each other (2)/ since we were children. (3)/ No error.(4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

4. She was ill for five days (1)/ when the doctor (2)/ was sent for. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 16.11.2014, Patna Region : 1st Sitting)

5. Since July 2008, our customers will be able to use the ATM network of BBY Bank, the bank that was acquired by us during that year.

- (1) have been able to use (2) were using
(3) will have been able to use (4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

6. I have never been hearing from him since he left for America.

- (1) have never heard (2) have never been hearing
(3) was never heard (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam. (2013) 20.07.2014, IInd Sitting)

Answers

1. Change 'have been liking' into 'have liked'.
2. Change 'has been preferring' into 'has preferred'.
3. (1) Replace 'have been knowing' with 'have known'. 'Know' is not used in continuous form.
4. (1) Replace 'was ill' with 'had been ill' because the work continued in past for a period of time.
5. (1) The action started in July 2008 and is still going on. Present Perfect Continuous is the most appropriate tense needed here.
6. (1) Replace 'have never been hearing' with 'have never heard'. 'Hear' is a 'non-continuous verb' and it is not used in Continuous Tense.

Tense Based Questions

1. He is (1)/ residing here (2)/ since 1983. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Stenographer (Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 09.01.2011)

2. Nalini says that (1)/ she is living in Chennai (2)/ since 1991. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting))

3. They are residing (1)/ in this city (2)/ for the last two decades. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

4. Sam is working (1)/ in a bank in Chennai (2)/ for the past five years. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)
5. By May next year I have been working in this college for twenty years.
(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 09.08.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 1443088)
- (1) No error (2) By May next year
(3) I have been working in this college (4) For twenty years.
6. My grandmother has been lives in Shimla since her childhood days.
(1) has been lives (2) her childhood days
(3) My grandmother (4) in Shimla since
CHSL-2018, 10 July, 2019, Evening
7. How long are you working here ?
(1) have you been working here ? (2) you are working here ?
(3) were you working ? (4) No improvement
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 06.01.2008)
8. Mayank was working overtime for the last two weeks.
(1) is working (2) is being working
(3) has been working (4) No improvement
(SSC Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.11.2010)
9. The fishermen are fishing in the sea from sunrise and will continue to do so until sunset.
(1) have fished (2) have been fishing
(3) were fishing (4) No improvement
(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)
10. The clients are waiting outside since morning and will continue to wait until you meet them.
(1) have waited (2) have been waiting
(3) were waiting (4) No improvement
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

Answers

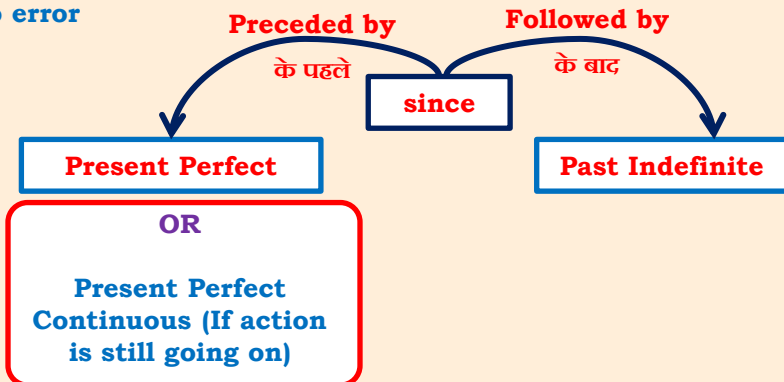
- (1) Replace 'is' with 'has been'.
- (2) Replace 'is living' with 'has been living'.
An action that started in the Past and still going on comes under Present Perfect Continuous Tense.
- (1) Replace 'are residing' with 'have been residing'.
- (1) Replace 'is working' with 'has been working' because the action that started in the Past and is still continuing comes under Present Perfect Continuous Tense.
- (3) Since the sentence talks about future time so it should be 'shall have been' in the place of 'have been'.
- (1) use 'living' in place of 'lives'. Has been is followed by V₁ + ing.
- (1) Replace 'are you working here' with 'have you been working here'. Since the given sentence is in Present Perfect Continuous Tense.
- (3) Replace 'was working' with 'has been working' because the given sentence is in Continuous Tense
- (2) Replace 'are fishing' with 'have been fishing'.
- (2) Replace 'are waiting' with 'have been waiting' because 'the action of 'waiting' is still continuing hence Present Perfect Continuous Tense will come'.

MISCELLANEOUS

1. This custom (1)/ has come down (2)/since times immemorial.(3)/No error.(4)
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (1st Sitting (Delhi Zone))
2. I have been writing ten letters since morning.
3. She has been reading four novels since the vacation started.
4. He has been visiting historical monuments since he came to India.

Answers

1. (3) 'time immemorial' will replace 'times immemorial' because 'time immemorial' means 'for longer than any one can remember'.
'Times' (बार) is countable
2. Change 'have been writing' into 'have written'. We cannot write ten letters at one time. We can write one letter after the other.
3. Change 'has been reading' into 'has read'. We cannot read all the four novels together.
4. No error



Use of 'For' & 'Since'

For

When period/ duration is given, use for.

जब समय की अवधि का उल्लेख हो तब 'for' का प्रयोग करें।

All Indefinite Tense

For

used in

All Perfect Tenses

All Perfect Continuous Tenses

Eg.

1. I lived in Delhi for ten years.
2. I teach you for two hours every day.
3. She will study for three hours every day.
4. I haven't eaten anything for ten hours.
5. He had been ill for ten months before he passed away.
6. I have been living in Delhi for ten years.

Use of 'For' & 'Since'

Since

When starting point of time is given, use since.

जब शुरुआती समय का उल्लेख हो तब **Since** का प्रयोग करें।

Since

used in

Perfect Tense

Perfect Continuous Tense (Except Future Perfect Continuous where we use 'from'.)

Since

used with

1 Calendar

2 Clock

3 Stages of life

4 Parts of a day

5 Synonyms of Starting

Eg.

1. Since 2009 (years), Since May (months), Since Holi (Occasions), Since 7th July (date), since Monday (Days).
2. Since 7 O'clock, Since 8:30 pm.
3. Since Childhood, Since adolescence.
4. Since morning, Since last night.
5. Since beginning, Since inception.

Long since
(Adv)

Comes after the Helping Verb and before the Main Verb

Long ago (past)
(बहुत पहले)

for a long time
(काफी समय से)

Eg.

Promises were long since forgotten.

Eg.

We have long since been bosom friends.

1. Our new neighbours (1)/ had been living in Arizona (2)/ since ten years before moving to their present house. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)
2. I (1)/ have been studying (2)/since four hours. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.11.2012 (2nd Sitting))
3. I have (1)/ known him (2)/ since two years. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)
4. I have been (1)/ working in this organization (2)/ since three years. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)
5. I have been waiting for you since two hours.
(1) for you (2) No error
(3) I have been waiting (4) since two hours
(SSC Constable (GD) Exam, 04.10.2015, IInd Sitting)
6. Vipul has been (1)/suffering from fever (2)/since seven days. (3)/No error(4)
SSC CHSL-2016, 17th Jan, Evening
7. She has been (1)/ complaining about headache (2)/ from morning. (3) No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.01.2016 TF No. 3513283)
8. Neeta served as President (1)/ of the oshinara club (2)/ since ten years (3)/ No error (4)
SSC (steno.) 2017, 12 Sept., Morning
9. I have been living in Delhi since many years.
(1) since (2) have been living
(3) in Delhi (4) many years
Stenographer – 2018, (5 Feb., 2019 Evening)
10. My nephew has been in hospital since four weeks because of Mumps.
(1) because of (2) in
(3) since (4) has been
Stenographer – 2018 (6 Feb., 2019 Morning)
11. Mr. Sharma has been living in this city since five years.
(1) for (2) only
(3) from (4) No improvement
(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 16.11.2014, Patna Region : Ist Sitting)

Answers

1. (3) Replace 'since' with 'for'. 'For' is used for duration of time.
2. (3) Replace 'since' with 'for'
For is used for 'duration of time'
Since is used for 'point of time'.
3. (3) Replace 'since' with 'for'.
'for' is used for 'duration of time'
'since' is used for 'point of time'.

4. (3) Replace 'since' with 'for'.
'for' is used for 'duration of time'.
'Since' is used for 'Point of time'.
5. (4) Replace 'since' with 'for'.
For is used for 'duration of time'.
Since is used for 'point of time'.
6. (3) 'For' is used for 'duration of time'.
'Since' is used for 'point of time'.
Hence replace 'since' with 'for'.
7. (3) Replace 'from' with 'since'.
8. (3) Change 'since' into 'for' because the time period is given.
9. (1) Use 'for' in place of 'since'.
for + period of time
since + point of time
10. (3) Replace 'since' with 'for'.
11. (1) Replace 'since' with 'for'.
'Since' is used for 'point of time'.
'For' is used for 'duration of time'.

From

Eg.

I will reach home tomorrow in the evening but my mother will have been waiting for me from morning.

Note:-

'Since' comes for only past not for future. For future point of time use 'from'.



NEETU SINGH

Download Now!



SUBSCRIBE NOW

KD LIVE YouTube Channel

Email: online@kdcampus.org

Contact : 9555108888, 9555208888

Introduction

- A group of words which makes a complete sense is called a sentence.
(शब्दों का समूह जिसका एक सम्पूर्ण अर्थ निकलता है, वह वाक्य कहलाता है।)

Types of Sentences

Declarative Sentence or Assertive Sentence	Interrogative Sentence	Exclamatory Sentence	Imperative Sentence	Optative Sentence
A Declarative Sentence simply makes a statement or expresses an opinion. (कथनात्मक वाक्य सिर्फ एक वक्तव्य अथवा राय दर्शाता है।)	Interrogative Sentences ask questions. (प्रश्नात्मक वाक्य सवाल करता है।) Interrogative sentences take question mark (?)	An exclamatory sentence is a sentence that expresses great emotions such as excitement, surprise, happiness and anger. (विस्मयादिबोधक वाक्य गहरी अनुभूति दर्शाता है।) Exclamatory sentences take exclamatory mark (!)	An Imperative Sentence gives a command or makes a request or suggestion. (आदेशात्मक वाक्य आदेश, निवेदन अथवा सलाह दर्शाता है।)	An Optative Sentence expresses a prayer, wish, curse etc. (इच्छासूचक वाक्य प्रार्थना, इच्छा, शाप दर्शाता है।)

DECLARATIVE SENTENCE

Honesty is the best policy.



INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE

Where are you going?



EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE

How beautiful the rain is !



IMPERATIVE SENTENCE

Leave the room right now.



OPTATIVE SENTENCE

May god bless you.



Declarative Sentence

- Declarative Sentences are the most basic type of sentence. They give information or opinion. They are punctuated with a period (full stop).
(कथनात्मक वाक्य सबसे साधारण प्रकार के वाक्य हैं। ये किसी प्रकार की सूचना व राय देता है।)

Examples / उदाहरण

(1) He sings.	(Information)
(2) I love cricket.	(Information)
(3) She is sad.	(Opinion)
(4) The sky is blue.	(Universal truth)

See the sentences given above (ऊपर दिए गये वाक्यों को देखें).

The structure is –

Subject + Verb + Object

- The passer-by told us (1)/where was the marriage hall (2)/and even led us to it. (3)/ No Error/(4).
(SSC Section Officer (Audit), Exam. 05.06.2005)
- Madhuri did not reply (1)/ when I asked her (2)/ why was she weeping. (3)/ No Error (4)
SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 6 July, 2018 Evening
- Can anyone tell me what did we learn in Mathematics yesterday?
(1) anyone (2) Can
(3) did we learn (4) in
Stenographer – 2018, 6 Feb., 2019 Morning
- What does it matter most is the quality of the goods that we require.
(1) What it matters more
(2) What does it matter more
(3) What matters most
(4) No improvement
(SSC Section Officer (Audit), Exam. 05.06.2005)
- Who you said was coming to see me this morning ?
(1) you did say (2) did you say
(3) did you say that (4) No improvement
(SSC SAS Exam. 26.06.2010)
- I asked the traveller where is he going.
(1) where he is going
(2) where was he going
(3) where he was going
(4) No improvement
(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)
- The stranger asked the little girl what is her name.
(1) what her name is
(2) what her name was
(3) what was her name
(4) No improvement
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (Eastern Zone) IInd Sitting)

8. I don't understand why did you not call me last night.
 (1) why had you not call (2) why you did not call
 (3) why not did you call (4) No improvement
9. What does agonise me most is not this criticism, but the trivial reason behind it.
 (1) No improvement (2) most agonising me
 (3) agonises me most (4) most agonised me

(SSC GL Tier-II Exam.
21.09.2014)

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam,
25.10.2015, TF No. 2148789)

Answers

- (2) Here the structure is declarative not interrogative. Hence replace 'where was the marriage hall' with 'where the marriage hall was'.
- (3) Use 'was' after 'she'. The sentence is not interrogative so helping verb will come after the subject.
- (3) Replace 'did we learn' with 'we learnt'.
- (3) Replace 'what does it matter most' with 'what matters most'. If a declarative sentence starts with 'wh-family', it does not take 'do/does' with it as helping verb.
- (4) No improvement. 'Who was coming'.... is the question here. 'You said' will remain as it is because two questions do not come together.
- (3) Replace 'where is he going' with 'where he was going'. Because the given sentence is not an interrogative sentence and in past tense.
- (2) Replace 'what is her name' with 'what her name was'.
- (2) Replace 'why did you not call' with 'why you did not call' because given sentence is an assertive sentence so it must follow the assertive structure.
- (3) Replace 'does agonise we most' with 'agonises me most'.

Interrogative Sentences

Sentences that ask questions are Interrogative Sentences. They are in Inversion and end in question mark (?) / (वाक्य अगर प्रश्न पूछता है तो वाक्य प्रश्नात्मक होता है) ये **Inversion** में होते हैं और **question mark (?)** का प्रयोग अन्त में होता है।

Open-Ended questions

They allow someone to give a free-form answer. (ये किसी को अपने मर्जी के अनुसार उत्तर देने की छूट देता है।)

Eg:

1. What is your name?
2. Where do you live?

Closed-Ended questions

They can be answered with only yes/ no or they have limited set of Answers like A, B, C & D) (इन का जवाब बस हाँ या ना हो सकता है या सीमित विकल्पों में से एक हो सकता है।)

Eg:

1. Are you tired?
2. Is she happy?

Structure of Interrogative Sentences

See the structure:-

• Helping Verb + Subject + Main Verb?

Eg:- Are you coming?

• Main Verb + Subject + ... ?

Eg:- Is he unwell?

• WH + Helping Verb + Subject + Main Verb ?

Eg:- What are you doing?

• WH + Main Verb + Subject ?

Eg:- Where are my shoes?

1. You have been doing (1)/ your homework (2)/ regularly ? (3)/ No error (4)

(FCI Assistant Grade-II Exam. 22.01.2012 Paper-I)

2. Why you (1) / copying your homework (2) / from someone else? (3) / No Error (4)

SSC CGL-2016 (6th September, Morning)

3. Why she was angry with her son?

- (1) she was (2) angry with
(3) her son (4) Why

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018
12 March, 2019 Morning

4. Why should always we have to wait for her to join us?

- (1) Why should (2) have to wait for her
(3) always we (4) to join us?

CGL MAINS 2018
11 September, 2019

Answers

1. (1) Replace 'you have been doing' with 'have you been doing' because in an interrogative sentence, auxiliary verb comes before the subject.

2. (1) In an interrogative sentence the helping verb comes before the subject. Add 'are' before 'you'.

3. (1) Replace 'she was' with 'was she'.

Structure of Interrogative Sentence → Interrogative word + auxiliary verb + subject... ?

4. (3) In interrogative sentences only helping verb precedes the subject. Adverb remains at its place.

Exclamatory Sentences

- An Exclamatory sentence is a sentence that expresses great emotion such as excitement, surprise, happiness and anger and ends with an exclamatory mark(!). (विस्मय आदि बोधक वाक्य भावना के अधिकता को दर्शाता है जो उत्तेजना, आश्चर्य, खुशी व गुस्सा दर्शाता है एवं **exclamatory mark (!)** में खत्म होता है।)

- How beautiful the rain is !
- What nonsense!
- Hurray! we have won the match.
- Good heavens ! (1)/ How has she (2)/ grown ! (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 29.03.2009)

Answers

4. (2) Replace 'How has she grown' with 'How she has grown' because it is an exclamatory sentence not an interrogative sentence.

Imperative Sentences

- Imperative Sentences give instructions, advice, commands, orders or make a request. (**Imperative** वाक्य आदेश, निवेदन, सलाह या निर्देश दर्शाता है।)

Eg:

- Go away. (Order)
- Be happy. (suggestion)
- Please help me. (request)
- Stand at ease. (command)

- An Imperative Sentence starts with 'Base form of verb'. (**Imperative** वाक्य **Verb** के **base form** से शुरू होता है।)

Optative Sentence

- An Optative Sentence expresses a prayer, wish, curse etc. (इच्छासूचक वाक्य प्रार्थना, इच्छा, शाप दर्शाता है।)

Optative Sentences are in Inversion. Inversion means Helping verb/ Main verb before the Subject (In Active Voice) and before the Object (In Passive Voice). (इच्छासूचक वाक्य सामान्यतः **Inversion** में होता है। **Inversion** में **Helping Verb/ Main Verb Subject** के पहले आता है और **Passive Voice** में **Helping Verb/ Main Verb Object** के पहले आता है। Here the Helping verb is generally 'May'. (यहाँ सामान्यतः **May** का प्रयोग होता है।)

Eg:

- May god bless you.
- Long live the king.
- May you live long.
- Wish you a happy married life.
- She said, "Son, god may bless you." (×)
- She said, "Son, may god bless you." (✓)
- Go to hell.

QUESTION TAG

5

- A short question following a sentence is called a Question Tag.

(एक वाक्य में आने वाला एक छोटा सा प्रश्न **Question Tag** कहलाता है।)

Examples

- Ram is coming, ___?
- People do not vote wisely, ___?
- Children love ice cream, ___?
- People voted judiciously, ___?
- I do not know him, ___?

Answers

- isn't he
- do they
- don't they
- didn't they
- do I

Rules for making Question Tag (Question Tag बनाने के नियम)

- Tense of the sentence and the question tag must be the same.
(वाक्य एवं **question tag** के **Tense** एक ही होने चाहिए।)
- If the sentence is +ve, the question tag is -ve and vice-versa.
(अगर वाक्य **positive** हो, तो **question tag negative** होगा और वाक्य **negative** हो, तो **question positive** होगा।)
- Question Tag takes 'helping verb and pronoun'. (Except forms of 'be' which comes even if it is used as M.V.)
(Question Tag में '**helping verb + pronoun**' का प्रयोग होता है सिवाए '**be**' के अगर इसके **forms main verb** के रूप में हो, तो भी इन्हीं का प्रयोग होता है।)
- In -ve Question Tag, we use only contracted form of helping verb and not.
(-ve Question Tag में **Helping verb** एवं **not** का **contracted form** का प्रयोग होता है।)

Examples

- I am fine, ___?
- She can do well, ___?
- People will vote him to power, ___?
- We shall overcome, ___?
- You haven't seen a stoic, ___?

Answers

- Ans → aren't I?
Am not **contracted form** → Aren't (Only in Inversion)
 - Ans → can't she? Cannot = can't
 - Ans → won't they? Will not = won't
 - Ans → shan't we? Shall not = shan't
 - Ans → have you
- Note: - 'Stoic' means 'one who is indifferent to pleasure or pain' (तटस्थः)

If M.V
= **V₁**

If M.V =
V₁ + s/es

If M.V =
V₂

If M.V = **is, am, are, was, were.**

The
H.V is
do

The H.V
is **Does**

The
H.V is
Did

The same is/am/are/was/ were
comes in the Question Tag no
matter it comes as H.V or M.V

6. She has done her homework, ___?
7. I have a car, ___?
8. She has a doubt, ___?
9. She works hard, ___?
10. He begged for mercy, ___?
11. I knew him well, ___?
12. You succeed in your motives, ___?
13. I am a teacher, ___?
14. She was unwell, ___?
15. We are happy, ___?
16. We are planning a trip, ___?

Answers

6. hasn't she	12. don't you
7. don't I	13. aren't I
8. doesn't she	14. wasn't she
9. doesn't she	15. aren't we
10. didn't he	16. aren't we
11. didn't I	

- If we find **rarely, scarcely, barely, hardly, seldom, never, neither, none, not, no** in a sentence, it means that the sentence is negative. Use positive Question Tag for such sentences. (अगर हम वाक्य में **rarely, scarcely, barely, seldom, hardly, never, neither, none, not, no** पाते हैं तो इसका अर्थ है कि वाक्य **negative** है, अतः **Question Tag positive** होगा)

rarely, scarcely, seldom	कभी-कभार
barely, hardly	मुश्किल से ही
never	कभी नहीं
neither	दोनों में से एक भी नहीं
None	दो से अधिक में से एक भी नहीं
neither fish nor fowl	belonging to neither class (दोनों में से किसी वर्ग के नहीं)

Examples

1. I hardly go there, ___?
2. She has rarely come late, ___?
3. It has scarcely affected us, ___?
4. They had got barely anything to eat, ___?
5. It is neither fish nor fowl, ___?
6. He dislikes me, ___?
7. You misunderstood the concept, ___?
8. They ill-treat us, ___?
9. He denied stealing my watch, ___?
10. He forbids me to go there, ___?

Answers

1. do I	2. has she
3. has it	4. had they
5. is it	6. doesn't he
7. didn't you	
8. don't they	
9. didn't he	
10. doesn't he	

Countable Nouns Take

• Few/ Very Few (ना के बराबर)

• A few (कम है लेकिन है)

Little/ Few

The sentences become negative with the use of few, we need positive Question Tag

Sentence remains positive with the use of a few, we need Negative Question Tag

Uncountable Noun Take

• Little/ Very Little (ना के बराबर)

• A little (कम है लेकिन है)

The sentence becomes negative with the use of little, we need Positive Question Tag

The sentence remains positive with the use of a little, we need Negative Question Tag

Examples

1. I have a few friends, ____?
2. A little knowledge is a dangerous thing, ____?
3. She has few friends, ____?
4. Police show little sensitivity, ____?
5. Teachers must have a little patience, ____?
6. There are very few honest people in this department, ____?

Answers

1. **don't I**
2. **isn't it**
3. **does she**
4. **do they**
5. **mustn't they**
6. **are there**

Use Right Pronoun In the Question Tag

1. My **Confidante** has come, ____?
2. The **Benefactress** was generous, ____?
3. My **Fiancee** is here, ____?
4. The **gentry** did not like the proposal, ____?
5. **Rickets** affected many children, ____?
6. The **teacher** is in the class, ____?
7. The **student** is not in her class, ____?

Answers

1. hasn't she	5. didn't it
2. wasn't she	6. isn't he
3. isn't she	7. is she
4. did they	

1. **Confidante** a woman who you can trust and with whom you share your secrets. (सजदार महिला)
Confidant → सजदार (पुरुष)
2. **Benefactress** is a woman who helps or gives money to a person. (परोपकारी महिला)
Benefactor → परोपकारी (पुरुष)
3. **Fiancee** → मंगेतर (महिला)
Fiance → मंगेतर (पुरुष)
4. **Gentry** means 'high class people' (उच्च वर्ग के लोग)
Gentry P.N है।
5. **Rickets** — a disease of bones (हड्डी एक बिमारी)
6. **Teacher** is common Noun. The **teacher, Student, Lawyer, Client, Customer, Agent** do not denote gender. Use Pronoun 'He' for them, unless the sentence is gender specific. (**Teacher, Student, Lawyer, Client, Customer, Agent** से **Gender** का पता नहीं चलता। जब तक **Gender** का पता नहीं चलता, हम **He** का प्रयोग करते हैं।)
7. 'Her class' reveals the gender of the student.

- Sentences of 'Let us' and 'Let's' take 'Shall we?'
(**Let us/ Let's** वाले वाक्यों में **shall we** का प्रयोग होगा।)

Examples

1. Let us party, **shall we**?
2. Let's go now, **shall we**?
But if a hint is given in the bracket, follow that hint.
(लेकिन अगर **bracket** में **hint** दिया हो, तो **hint** को समझो)
3. Let us pay in cash (we can), **can't we**?
If it is not 'us' but some other pronoun/noun, the sentence becomes a request not a suggestion.
(अगर 'us' के स्थान पर कोई दूसरा Pronoun/Noun का प्रयोग हो तब वाक्य सलाह नहीं निवेदन बन जाता है।)

4. Let me go, would you? (Here 'let' has come to seek permission)

One

1. One must perform one's duty, mustn't one ?
2. One is neither prime nor composite, is it ?
3. One boy has come, hasn't he ?

Note

What pronoun will come in question tag depends on what 'one' actually is. (Question Tag में Pronoun क्या आएगा ये इस पर निर्भर करता है कि 'One' कौन-सा Part of Speech है।)

One

Question Tag

In sentence

1) Pronoun

One

In sentence

2) Noun

It

In sentence

3) Adjective

look for the Noun. Here the Noun is boy. Use Pronoun 'He'.

This, That, These, Those, Such

1. This is my mistake, _____ ?
2. That was my student, _____ ?
3. Those were his problems/ students, _____ ?
4. That boy has passed, _____ ?
5. Such a debutante will earn name and fame, _____ ?
6. That is my niece, _____ ?

Answers

1. **isn't it**
2. **wasn't he**
3. **weren't they**
4. **hasn't he**
5. **won't she**
6. **isn't she**

1. 'This' has come for 'mistake'. Use Pronoun 'it'.
2. 'That' has come for 'student'. Use Pronoun 'he'.
3. 'Those' has come for Plural Noun, Problems/ Student'. Use Pronoun 'they'.
5. 'Such a debutante' means a female performer performing for the first time hence use Pronoun 'she'.
6. Niece (भांजी / भतीजी) is feminine gender of Nephew (भांजा / भतीजा).

Each, Every, Everyone, Someone, Somebody, Nobody, None, No one

- Each, every etc are singular. They take Singular Verb, Singular Noun and Singular Adjective but in Question Tag they take Plural Verb and Plural Pronoun. (Each, every इत्यादि Singular होते हैं। ये Singular Verb, Singular Noun एवं Singular Adjective का प्रयोग करते हैं परन्तु Question Tag में ये Plural Verb एवं Plural Pronoun लेते हैं।)

Examples

1. Every boy has come, ___ ?
2. Nobody bothers, ___ ?
3. Everyone wants to succeed, ___ ?
4. Someone is at the gate, ___ ?
5. Somebody has stolen my shoes, ___ ?

Answers

1. haven't they
2. do they
3. don't they
4. aren't they
5. haven't they

Something, Anything, Nothing, Everything

- Something, Anything, Nothing and all Uncountable Nouns, take Singular Verb and Pronoun 'it'. (**Something, Anything, Nothing** एवं सभी **Uncountable Nouns Singular verb** एवं 'it' लेते हैं।)

Examples

1. Something is missing, ___ ?
2. Anything is possible, ___ ?
3. The information has leaked, ___ ?
4. The scenery enchanted everyone, ___ ?
5. Nothing is impossible, ___ ?

Answers

1. isn't it
2. isn't it
3. hasn't it
4. didn't it
5. is it

Sentences of 'There'

Examples

1. There are a few students in the class, _____ ?
2. There is no water, _____ ?

Answers

1. aren't there
2. is there

Collective Noun

Divided or if per person is mentioned (Plural verb & they come)

{ Team, Army, Jury, Committee etc. }

If united or unanimous or used in a general sentence. ('S.V & it' come.)

Examples

1. The jury has given its verdict ___ ?
2. The class is going on, ___ ?
3. The committee are divided in their opinion ___ ?
4. The team took their position for fielding, ___ ?
5. The herd of cows is grazing in the field, ___ ?

Answers

1. hasn't it
2. isn't it
3. aren't they
4. didn't they
5. isn't it

- Question Tag is made for that part of the sentence, which is the main part.
(वाक्य के मुख्य भाग का **Question Tag** बनाया जाता है।)

Examples

1. I think, you are right, ___?
2. She is one of the students who have passed, ___?
3. I don't think, anyone will volunteer ___?
4. Unless you work hard, you won't succeed, ___?

Answers

1. aren't you
2. isn't she
3. Will they
4. will you

Sentence of 'Used to'

Examples

1. I used to go to school by bus, **usedn't I** or **didn't I** ?
2. I am used to going to school by bus, **aren't I** ?

1. Past routine action can be expressed by both 'used to' and 'Simple Past Tense'. So in Question Tag we can use either 'Used' or 'did'.
(भूतकाल के **Routine Action** को व्यक्त करने के लिए '**Used to**' एवं '**Simple Past Tense**' का प्रयोग होता है। अतः **Question Tag** में '**Used**' व '**did**' में से किसी का भी प्रयोग हम कर सकते हैं।)

2. Here 'am' is the verb. 'Used to' is Adjective.

- In Imperative sentence, the question tag depends on the mood of the sentence. (**Imperative** वाक्यों में वाक्य के **Mood** पर **Question Tag** निर्भर करता है।)

Examples

1. Shut your mouth, won't you ?/can't you?
2. Please help me, would you ?
3. Have some coffee, would you ?
4. Never ever go there, will you ?
5. Let him go, would you ?
6. Let us go, shall we ?

Mood	Annoyance (चिढ़)
Mood	Request (निवेदन)
Mood	Offer (पेशकश)
Mood	Prohibition (निषेध)
Mood	Seeking permission (अनुमति माँगने के लिए)
Mood	Suggestion (सुझाव)

Would is used in polite requests (see Modals)
(**Would** का प्रयोग विनम्र निवेदन के लिए होता है।)

Previous Year Questions

1. She pretends as if she has (1)/ never in her life, (2)/told a lie. Isn't it ? (3)/No error.(4)

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 13.08.2006)

2. The earth moves (1)/ round the Sun. (2)/ Isn't it ? (3)/. No error

(SSC Section Officer (Audit), Exam. 10.12.2006)

3. He is not the fastest bowler (1)/ in the Indian team, (2)/ isn't he ? (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 25.11.2007)
4. Everybody in the office (1)/ has left early, (2)/ haven't they ? (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Data Entry Operator, Exam. 02.08.2009)
5. You will come (1)/ to my sister's wedding tomorrow, (2)/ isn't it? (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC CISF Constable (GD), Exam. 05.06.2011)
6. I don't suppose (1)/ anyone will volunteer, (2)/ will they ? (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II, Exam. 16.09.2012)
7. He is (1)/ your brother (2)/ isn't it ? (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector, (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)
8. You haven't responded (1)/ to my invitation (2)/ didn't you ? (3)/No Error (4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff, Exam. 17.03.2013, IInd Sitting)
9. We should make green vegetables (1)/ an essential part of our daily diet,(2)/ shouldn't we ? (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking (Non-Tech.) Staff Exam. 23.02.2014, IInd Sitting)
10. She has not completed (1)/ her course, (2)/ Isn't it ? (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 02.11.2014, IInd Sitting)
11. The collector (1)/ visits the office regularly (2)/ Isn't it ? (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC, Exam. 02.11.2014, IInd Sitting)
12. You have prepared well (1) / for the examination (2) / isn't it ? (3) / No error (4)
SSC CGL-2016, (30th August, Morning)
13. You could find our house easily, didn't you?
(1) didn't you (2) easily
(3) our house (4) You could find
Stenographer- 2018 7 Feb., 2019 Evening
14. Ravi has been demanding a lot more marks, doesn't he ?
(1) hasn't he ? (2) isn't he ?
(3) isn't it ? (4) No improvement
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)
15. Let us go to see her new house, shall we?
(1) do we ? (2) don't we ?
(3) do they ? (4) No improvement
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 14.12.2003)

16. He must know them in their most plausible form, isn't it ?

- (1) isn't he ? (2) mustn't he ?
(3) can't he ? (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 14.12.2003)

17. His reasons can be good. is it not ?

- (1) Can they ? (2) Isn't he ?
(3) Can't they ? (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 14.12.2003)

18. You called on me when I was not at home, don't you ?

- (1) did you ? (2) didn't you ?
(3) didn't I ? (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 05.06.2005)

19. You won't tell them what has happened, wouldn't you ?

- (1) won't you (2) isn't it
(3) will you (4) No improvement

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 31.7.2005)

20. The students often play truant, didn't they ?

- (1) can they ? (2) is indeed ?
(3) don't they ? (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 25.09.2005)

21. He comes here often, don't he?

- (1) is he. (2) does he.
(3) doesn't he. (4) No improvement.

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006)

22. She teaches us grammar, isn't it ?

- (1) isn't she ? (2) doesn't she ?
(3) doesn't it ? (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)

23. You called on me when I was not at home, don't you ?

- (1) did you ? (2) didn't you ?
(3) didn't I ? (4) No improvement

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 24.06.2007)

24. They have bought a new car, isn't it ?

- (1) haven't they (2) don't they
(3) have they (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 30.09.2007)

25. It is necessary to consider separately these problems, is indeed ?

- (1) is that it (2) isn't it
(3) are they (4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 06.01.2008)

26. He was weary of failure, Didn't he ?
 (1) isn't he (2) wasn't he
 (3) doesn't he (4) No improvement
 (SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 30.10.2008)
27. We can buy anything in this shop, can we ?
 (1) isn't it (2) can't we
 (3) don't we (4) No improvement
 (SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 30.10.2008)
28. Children like to eat sweets, isn't it?
 (1) do they (2) is it
 (3) don't they ? (4) No improvement
 (SSC Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 27.11.2010)
29. Sachin Tendulkar has completed hundred centuries, hasn't he ?
 (1) has he ? (2) isn't it ?
 (3) didn't he ? (4) No improvement
 (SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (IInd Sitting))
30. Let's buy a new sari with the annual bonus, can we ?
 (1) shall we (2) could we
 (3) isn't it (4) No improvement
 (SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)
31. The Indian team should fare well, shouldn't they ?
 (1) oughtn't they (2) shouldn't it
 (3) should it (4) No improvement
 (SSC Multi-Tasking Staff (Patna) Exam. 16.02.2014)
32. You are a mechanic, aren't you?
 (1) wasn't (2) isn't
 (3) are (4) No improvement
 (SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam. (2013) 20.07.2014, IInd Sitting)
33. One cannot be indifferent to one's health, can't one
 (1) can't be ? (2) can one ?
 (3) isn't it ? (4) No improvement
 (SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 09.11.2014)
34. She does not tell lies, doesn't she?
 (1) isn't she ? (2) does she ?
 (3) didn't she ? (4) No improvement
 (SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 16.11.2014)
35. You ought to do your homework, oughtn't you ?
 (1) shouldn't. (2) mustn't
 (3) ought (4) No improvement
 (SSC GL Tier-II Exam. 21.09.2014)

36. Mr. Mukherjee knows ten languages, isn't it ?
(1) No improvement (2) doesn't Mr. Mukherjee
(3) hasn't he (4) doesn't he

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 09.08.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 1443088)

37. We met yesterday, haven't we ?
(1) didn't we ? (2) No Improvement
(3) hadn't we ? (4) isn't it ?

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 16.08.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 3196279)

38. I needn't get up early tomorrow, shouldn't I ?
(1) don't I (2) do I
(3) need I (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam, 30.08.2015)

Answers

1. (3) Replace 'isn't it' with 'doesn't she'. because the sentence and Question Tag must be in the same tense.
2. (3) Replace 'isn't it' with 'doesn't it'.
3. (3) Replace 'isn't he' with 'is he'. If a sentence is positive, the Question Tag must be negative.
4. (4) No error.
Every one is singular but in question tag it takes plural pronoun and plural verb.
5. (3) Replace 'isn't it' with 'won't you'.
'Question Tag' must agree with the Tense of a sentence.
6. (4) No error. The sentence has the main part 'anyone will volunteer' and not 'I don't suppose'.
7. (3) Replace 'isn't it' with 'isn't he'.
Because here the subject is 'he'.
8. (3) Replace 'didn't you' with 'have you' because the sentence and Question Tag must be in the same tense. The sentence is -ve, hence the question tag will be +ve.
9. (4) No error
10. (3) Replace 'isn't it' with 'has she'.
The sentence and the Question Tag must be in the same tense.
11. (3) Replace 'isn't it' with 'doesn't he/she'?
12. (3) Since the sentence is in present perfect tense, Question Tag should also be in Present Perfect Tense. Replace 'isn't it ?' with 'haven't you?'.
13. (1) Replace 'didn't you' with 'couldn't you'.
14. (1) Replace 'doesn't he' with 'hasn't he'.
The sentence and the Question Tag must be in same tense.
15. (4) No Improvement
If the sentence starts with 'let us'.
'Shall we' is used as a Question Tag.
16. (2) Replace 'isn't it' with 'mustn't he'.

17. (3) Replace 'isn't it' with 'can't they'. Pronoun 'they' will replace noun 'reasons'.
18. (2) Replace 'don't you' with 'didn't you'.
The sentence and the Question Tag must be in the same tense. Here the given sentence is in Past Tense so the Question Tag should also be in Past Tense.
19. (3) Replace 'wouldn't you' with 'will you'.
If the sentence is negative, the Question Tag must be Positive and Vice-versa.
20. (3) Replace 'didn't they' with 'don't they'.
The sentence and the Question Tag must be in the same tense.
21. (3) Replace 'don't he' with 'doesn't he'.
Singular pronoun takes singular verb 'does'.
22. (2) Replace 'isn't it' with 'doesn't she'.
 - Question Tag of a sentence must agree with the pronoun of the sentence.
23. (2) Replace 'don't you' with 'didn't you'.
The sentence and Question Tag must be in same tense.
24. (1) Replace 'isn't it' with 'haven't they'.
25. (2) Replace 'is indeed' with 'isn't it'.
The Question Tag must agree with its sentence both in terms of helping verb and Pronoun.
26. (2) Replace 'didn't he' with 'wasn't he'.
27. (2) Replace 'can we' with 'can't we'.
If the sentence is positive the Question Tag must be negative.
28. (3) Replace 'do they' with 'don't they'.
29. (4) No Improvement
30. (1) Replace 'can we' with 'shall we'.
If the sentence starts with 'Let us'.
'Shall we' is used in the Question Tag.
31. (2) Here 'team' is used as collective noun, hence for pronoun 'it' should be used. Thus replace 'shouldn't they' with 'shouldn't it'.
32. (4) No improvement
33. (2) Replace 'can't one' with 'can one'. Here the sentence is negative so its Question Tag should be positive.
34. (2) Replace 'doesn't she' with 'does she'.
If the sentence is negative the Question Tag must be positive.
35. (4) No improvement
36. (4) Replace 'isn't it' with 'doesn't he'.
37. (1) Replace 'haven't we' with 'didn't we'.
38. (3) Replace 'shouldn't I' with 'need I'.
Here 'need', a partial modal, has come in place of helping verb.

**FOR YEARWISE QUESTIONS & SOLUTIONS OF OTHER CHAPTERS BUY
1000+ DETECTING ERRORS & 900+ SENTENCE IMPROVEMENT**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

6

- ★ Sentences that comprise a condition are called Conditional Sentences.
(शर्त वाले वाक्य **Conditional** वाक्य कहलाते हैं।)
- ★ In such sentences one action depends on the other action.
(ऐसे वाक्य में एक कार्य दूसरे पर निर्भर करता है।)
- ★ There are two clauses in Conditional Sentences.
(**Conditional Sentences** में दो **Clause** होते हैं।)

Eg:-

If I work hard, I will succeed.

'Sub-ordinate clause' or 'If Clause' 'Principal clause' or 'Main clause'

- ★ What is a clause?
Clause क्या है?

A clause is a group of words that contains a verb (and usually other components too). A clause may form part of a sentence and it may be a complete sentence in itself.

(**Clause** शब्दों का समूह होता है जिसमें एक **verb** होता है और वाक्य के अन्य भाग भी हो सकते हैं। **Clause** खुद में पूरा वाक्य भी हो सकता है और ये वाक्य का भाग भी हो सकता है।)

'If' is called Sub-ordinating Conjunction because 'if' introduces Sub-ordinate clause.

('If' **Sub-ordinating Conjunction** कहलाता है क्योंकि 'if' **Sub-ordinate clause** का परिचय कराता है यानि 'If' के साथ **Sub-ordinate clause** आता है।)

We can use 'Unless', 'Until', 'When', 'Provided', 'in case' etc in place of 'if' depending on the meaning of the sentence.

(हम 'If' के स्थान पर **Unless, Until, When, Provided** अथवा **in case** भी देख सकते हैं। अगर वाक्य के अर्थ के अनुसार जरूरी हो तो।)

Present Imaginary Sentences/ (जो कल्पना वर्तमान समय के लिए हो)
(Type -2)



Present Imaginary Position

1. If I were the Prime Minister, I would increase employment opportunities.
2. If I were you/ If I were in your place/ If I were in your shoes, I would not trust any one.
3. If Mahatma Gandhi were alive today, he would feel sorry for the Congress party.

If + Subject + were + object ..., Subject + would + V_{b.f} ...

Were + Subject + object ..., Subject + would + V_{b.f} ...

Note: We can use any other past modal in place of 'would' if required'.

(अगर जरूरी हो तो हम **would** के स्थान पर कोई और **Past Modal** का भी प्रयोग कर सकते हैं)

4. If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.
5. If I were the Education Minister, I would bring several reforms.
6. Were I the CSE topper today, I would be on cloud nine.
7. If I were rich, I would help the poor.
8. If I were god, no child would starve.

Explanation to sentence 6 → If we remove 'if', 'were' will come at the beginning of the sentence.

9. I wish I am (1)/ the richest person (2)/ in the whole wide world. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Section Officer (Audit), Exam. 10.12.2006)
10. If he is a millionaire (1)/ he would help (2)/ the millennium project. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC CPO (SI, ASI & Intelligence Officer Exam. 28.08.2011 (Paper-I)
11. I would (1)/ accept the offer (2)/ if I were you. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level DEO & LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (1st Sitting (East Zone)
12. If I was he, (1)/ I wouldn't accept (2)/ this project. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I, Exam. 19.05.2013)
13. If I was he (1)/ I wouldn't (2)/ accept the offer. (3)/ No error (4)
SSC (steno.) 2017, 12 Sept., Morning
14. He commands me (1)/ as if he was (2)/ my husband. (3)/ No Error (4)
SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 2 July, 2018 Evening
15. If I was he, (1)/ I wouldn't (2)/ accept this gift. (3)/ No Error (4)
SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 6 July, 2018 Evening
16. If I am the P.M. I would ban all processions.
(1) will be (2) were
(3) am (4) No improvement
(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 05.12.2004)
17. If I was you, I would not sign the document.
(1) If I have been you (2) If I were you
(3) If I had been you (4) No improvement
(SSC Multi-Tasking (Non-Tech.) Staff Exam. 20.02.2011)
18. If you were the Prime Minister of India what steps would you have taken to end unemployment ?
(1) will you take (2) will you be taking
(3) would you take (4) No improvement
(SSC CAPFs SI & CISF ASI Exam. 23.06.2013)
19. The Councillor behaves as if he is the Chief minister.
(1) has been (2) were
(3) No improvement (4) was
(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 06.12.2015 (IInd Sitting) TF No. 3441135)

9. (1) Replace 'I am' with 'I were'.
10. (1) For imaginary position, 'were' is used with all subjects.
Hence Replace 'is' with 'were'.
11. (4) No error.
12. (1) Replace 'was' with 'were'.
For imaginary position, the structure is
Rule: If + subject + were, subject + would + $V_{b.f}$
13. (1) Change 'was' into 'were' because the sentence is related to imaginary state. For imaginary state, we use 'were' with all subjects.
14. (2) For Present Imaginary Position- we use 'were' instead of 'was'.
15. (1) Use 'were' in place of 'was'.
16. (2) Replace 'am' with 'were'.
For imaginary sentence the structure is:
If + Subject + were, subject + would + $V_{b.f}$
17. (2) Replace 'If I was you' with 'If I were you'.
The structure of Imaginary Position is:
If + subject + were, Subject + would + $V_{b.f}$
18. (3) Replace 'would you have taken' with 'would you take'.
The structure is:
If + subject + were, subject + would + $V_{b.f}$. Since this is an interrogative sentence, we should put 'would' before the subject.
19. (2) Replace 'he is' with 'he were'.
For imaginary position, the following structure is applicable.
If + subject + were, subject + would + $V_{b.f}$



Present Imaginary Possession (काल्पनिक अधिकार)

If I had money, I would help you.

Structure

If + Subject + had (V_2) + object, Subject + would + $V_{b.f}$

1. If I had two cars, I would give one to you.
2. If I had surplus money, I would donate it to PM relief fund.
3. If I had a gun, I would shoot you.
4. If I had time, I would cook lunch.
5. If I had wings, I would fly in the sky.
6. If the farmer got a washing machine (1)/ his wife can (2)/ do the laundry quickly (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CGL-2016 (1st September, Afternoon)

6. Ans- (2)

Rule: If 'if clause' is in Past Indefinite Tense, the general formula we use is:

If + Past Indefinite Tense, subject + would / could + $V_{b.f}$

Thus replace 'can' with 'could'.



Present Imaginary action/ state

Structure

If + Subject + V_2 , Subject + would + $V_{b.f}$

1. If life existed on other planets, we would see someone or the other for sure.
2. If I knew how to sing, they would hire me for the Orchestra.
3. If I bought a Ferrari, he would be green with envy.
4. If Gurukuls existed now, our children would be more courteous.
5. If you lived on the Moon, you would weigh 10 kilograms only.
6. He walks (1)/ as if the earth (2)/ belonged to him. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC CISF Constable (GD) Exam. 05.06.2011)
7. It is time (1)/ we should have done (2)/ something useful. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level DEO & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (East Zone))
8. If I dyed my hair green, everybody will laugh at me.
(1) would (2) did (SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 25.09.2005)
(3) may (4) No improvement
9. Mary would not go to the market unless I go with her.
(1) shall go (2) went (SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (North Zone) Ist Sitting)
(3) would go (4) No improvement.
10. I wish I knew what is wrong with my car.
(1) I wish I knew what was wrong with my car. (SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)
(2) I wish I had known what is wrong with my car.
(3) I wish I know what is wrong with my car.
(4) No improvement

Answers

6. (4) No error.
If 'as if' is followed by total unrealistic action, it is in 'S + V_2 ' form.
7. (2) Replace 'should have done' with 'did'. It's time is followed by ' V_2 '.
8. (1) Replace 'will' with 'would'.
The structure is – If + Past Indefinite, Subject + Would + $V_{b.f}$.
9. (2) Replace 'go' with 'went'.
The structure here is – If + Subject + V_2 , Subject + Would + $V_{b.f}$
10. (4) This is a sentence expressing a wish and an action of present. So 'knew' (V_2) for wish and 'is wrong' for present state should come.



Past Conditional Sentences

If is also called past unfulfilled action. It is a closed case as the action is not possible now. It comes in type 3.

Structure

If + Subject + had + V₃, Subject + would have + V₃

Had + Subject + V₃, Subject + would have + V₃

Note: We can use any other past modal in place of 'would' if required'.

(अगर जरूरी हो तो हम **would** के स्थान पर कोई और **Past Modal** का भी प्रयोग कर सकते हैं)

Eg:-

1. If I had seen him, I would have stopped my car.

Means:- मैंने उसे नहीं देखा। अतः मैंने गाड़ी नहीं रोक दी। (पुरा वाक्य **Past Unfulfilled action** है।)

सम्पूर्ण अर्थ:- अगर मैंने उसे देखा होता तो मैंने गाड़ी रोक दी होती।

2. If she had come late, she would not have got the permission to take the exam.

1. If I had gone to Delhi, I would have got infected.
2. If I had got a chance to meet the super star, I would have been very happy.
3. If he had given up smoking, he would not have died at such a young age.
4. Had luck favoured me, I would have become an IAS officer.
5. If we had had Dhoni in our team, we would have won the match.
6. John would have told (1)/you the truth (2)/ if you had asked him. (3)/ No Error. (4)
(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 05.12.2004)
7. Had you (1)/ worked hard (2)/ you will have passed. (3)/ No error (4)
Operator & LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (North Zone))
8. If he had walked (1)/ fast enough (2)/ he will get the bus. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.11.2012 (2nd Sitting))
9. If she had seen (1)/ the car coming, she (2)/ may not crossed the road. (3)/ No error.(4)
(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam.16.11.2014, IInd Sitting TF No. 545 QP 6)
10. If I had remembered (1)/ this, it will have (2)/ prevented some mistakes. (3)/ No error (4)
SSC CHSL-2016 21th Jan, Evening
11. Had I been (1) / in my brother's position (2) / I would have refused the offer. (3) / No Error (4)
SSC CGL-2016 (8th September, Afternoon)

12. If you have studied hard, you would have got a first class.
 (1) If you studied hard.
 (2) If you had studied hard.
 (3) If you would study hard.
 (4) No improvement.
 (SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006)
13. If I had followed your advice, I would not regret today.
 (1) will not regret
 (2) had not regretted
 (3) would not have regretted
 (4) No improvement
 (SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 30.10.2008)
14. If I had played well, I would have won the match.
 (1) I played well
 (2) I play well
 (3) I am playing will
 (4) No improvement
 (SSC Combined Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 16.05.2010 (Second Sitting))
15. If I hadn't seen the car coming, I might have been killed.
 (1) If I had seen the car coming
 (2) When I hadn't seen the car coming
 (3) Since I hadn't seen the car coming
 (4) No improvement
 (SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (East Zone)))
16. If I had gone to Mumbai, I would surely bring your books.
 (1) would have surely brought
 (2) could have surely brought
 (3) might have brought
 (4) No improvement
 (SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (IInd Sitting))
17. If I had the money I would have bought the house.
 (1) If I have had the money I would have bought the house.
 (2) If I had had the money I would have bought the house.
 (3) If I have the money I would have bought the house.
 (4) No improvement
 (SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

Answers

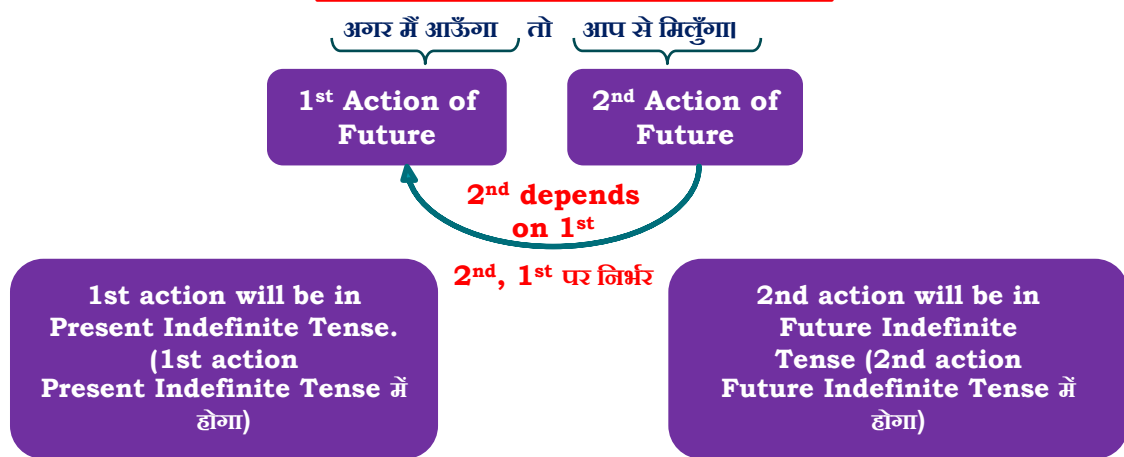
6. (4) No error
 The rule applicable here is
 If + subject + had, subject + would + have + V_3 .
7. (3) Change 'will have' into 'would have'. The sentence fits in the formula given below.
 If + subject + had, subject + would + have + V_3 .
8. (3) Replace 'will get' with 'would have got'.
 The formula applicable here is:
 Rule: If + subject + had, Subject + would + have + V_3 .
9. (3) Replace 'may not crossed' with 'might/ would not have crossed'.
10. (2) The correct formula is-
 If + had + V_3 , Sub + would + have + V_3
 Hence replace 'will' with 'would'.

11. (4) "Had + subject + V_3 ", Subject + would + have + V_3 is the formula if we remove 'if' from a conditional sentence.
12. (2) Replace 'If you have studied hard' with 'If you had studied hard'.
Structure – If + Sub + had + V_3 , S + would have + V_3 .
13. (3) Replace 'would not regret' with 'would not have regretted'.
The formula fits here is:
If + subject + had + V_3 , Subject + would + have + V_3
14. (4) No improvement
15. (4) No improvement
Here 'would' is replaced by 'might' because were possibility can be expressed here.
16. (1) Replace 'would surely bring' with 'would have surely brought'.
The formula here is:
If + subject + had + V_3 , subject + would + have + V_3
17. (2) Here 'If I had had money, I would have bought the house' should be used as the structure is :
If + sub + had + V_3 , Sub + would have + V_3 .



Future Conditional Sentences

Type 1 Conditional Sentences



If I come, I will meet you

1. Unless (1)/ you will study hard (2)/ you cannot pass. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Higher Secondary Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 27.11.2010)
2. He will tell you (1)/ about it when (2)/ he will come back. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level DEO & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (East Zone))
3. We shall (1)/go out (2)/if it does not rains. (3)/ No Error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level DEO & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting))
4. We shall wait (1)/ till you (2)/ will finish your lunch. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, Ist Sitting)

5. If I will play my best I can win any day against anybody.
 (1) against anybody (2) I can win any day
 (3) No error (4) If I will play my best
 (SSC Constable (GD) Exam, 04.10.2015, 1st Sitting)
6. If you will finish your homework I (1)/ will give you (2)/ an ice-cream. (3)/ No Error (4)
 (SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 2 July, 2018 Evening)
7. We will rest(1)/for sometime when (2)/we will reach the top(3)/No error(4).
8. He will revise it when he is comes back.
 (1) when he come back (2) on coming back
 (3) when he came back (4) No improvement
 (SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 22.06.2014)
9. If he has time he will telephone.
 (1) could (2) might
 (3) would (4) No improvement
 (SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 09.08.2015 (IInd Sitting) TF No. 4239378)
10. If I will get an opportunity, I shall attend the seminar.
 (1) get (2) got
 (3) No Improvement (4) shall get
 (SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 16.08.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 3196279)
11. Be quick otherwise you would miss the train.
 (1) otherwise you could have (2) No Improvement
 (3) otherwise you will (4) otherwise you will have
 (SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 06.12.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 1375232)

Answers

- (2) Replace 'will'. The 1st action of conditional sentence is Present Indefinite Tense.
- (3) Replace 'will come' with 'comes'.
The given sentence is a conditional sentence and the formula applicable here is - If + Present Indefinite, Future Indefinite.
- (3) After 'do/ does' first form of verb (V_1) comes.
Hence replace 'rains' with 'rain'.
- (3) Replace 'will finish' with 'finish'.
- (4) Replace 'will'.
- (1) Correct formation- If + sub + V_1 + obj + S_2 + will/shall + V_1 + obj.
Remove 'will'.
- (3) 1st action will be in Present Indefinite Tense. 'When' will be followed by Present Indefinite Tense.
- (2) Replace 'when he is comes back' with 'on coming back'. All the rest options are wrong.
- (4) No improvement
- (1) Replace 'will get' with 'get'.
The structure here is: If + Present Indefinite Tense, Future Indefinite Tense.
- (3) The structure suggests that Future Indefinite Tense should be used here. Replace 'otherwise you would' with 'otherwise you will'.



Some Other Structures

- But for your help, I would have failed.
 - But for his timely arrival, the patient would have died.
 - Here 'but for' means 'without'. ('But for' का अर्थ है 'के बिना')
 - Here the sentences are of past hence the Principal Clause is 'Subject + Would have + V₃'.

(यहाँ वाक्य Past के हैं अतः Principal Clause 'Subject + Would have + V₃' होगा)
 - If I were an Englishman, I would have got this job.
 - If you had not helped me, I wouldn't be alive today.
- Sentences 2 and 3 are of mixed category.

Explanation to Sentence 2:

Sub-ordinate Clause

If I were an Englishman → Present Imaginary post.

'If + Subject + were + object

Principal Clause

I would have got this job → Past unfulfilled action.

'Subject + would have V₃ + object

Explanation to Sentence 3:

Sub-ordinate Clause

If you had not helped me → Past unfulfilled action.

'If + Subject + had + V₃ + object

Principal Clause

I wouldn't be alive today → Present Imaginary post.

'If + Subject + Would + be + object

- If the car hadn't broken down we will be at the office now.
 - If the car
 - we will be
 - hadn't broken down
 - at the office

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018
12 March, 2019 Evening



- I will go to office after I have finished the household chores.
- We will come to know the truth after the investigation has finished.

Explanation to Sentences 1 and 2:

When the 2nd action takes place after the 1st action has finished, we can use 'Present Perfect' in place of 'Present Indefinite Tense' in the Sub-ordinate Clause. Here the completion of 1st action is emphasised.

(जब 1st action के पूर्ण होने पर जोर दिया जाए तो हम 1st action में Present Indefinite Tense के स्थान पर Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं)

- After the letter reached me, I shall know the result.
 - After the letter reach
 - After the letter will reach
 - After the letter has reached
 - No improvement

(SSC Section Officer
(Audit) Exam. 06.01.2008)

Ans.→ Replace 'after the letter reached' with 'After the letter has reached'. Here we emphasise the completion of an action.



Present Conditional Sentence

Present Conditional Sentences सीधे-सीधे translate किये जा सकते हैं।

1. **If we heat ice, it turns into water. (This sentence is of Universal truth. It comes in type zero conditional sentences.)**

अगर हम बर्फ गर्म करते हैं तो वह पानी बन जाता है। (ये वाक्य सार्वभौमिक सत्य का है। ये **Type Zero** में आता है।)

2. अगर मैं दिल्ली आता हूँ तो आप से मिलता हूँ।

If I come to Delhi I meet you.

3. अगर तुम मेरा इंतजार कर रहे हो तो कल आओ।

If you are waiting for me come tomorrow.

4. अगर तुम काम खत्म कर चुके हो तो तुम घर जा सकते हो।

If you have finished the work you may go home.

5. अगर वो एक घंटे से सो रहा है तो मैं उसे तंग नहीं करूँगी।

If he has been sleeping for an hour I will not disturb him.



Different Types of conditional Sentences

Conditional Sentence Type	Usage	'If' clause is in-	Example
Zero (Universal Truth)	General truths	Present Indefinite	If we heat water, it turns into steam.
Type 1 (Future Conditional Sentences)	A possible condition and its probable result	Present Indefinite	If I come to Delhi, I will meet you.
Type 2 (Present Imagination)	A hypothetical conditional and its probable result	Past Indefinite ('was' cannot come)	If I were a queen, I would wear a crown.
Type 3 (Past Conditional Sentences)	An unreal past condition and its probable result in the past	Past Perfect	If I had reached in time, I would not have missed the exam.

Subject Verb Agreement or Syntax

7

1. The boy has done his work himself.
Singular Noun Singular Adjective Singular Verb Singular Pronoun
2. The boy comes daily.
Singular Noun Singular Verb
3. The boys come daily.
Plural Noun Plural Verb

In the 1st sentence we can see that the agreement is not only between subject and verb but also among all the Parts of Speech. This is called Syntax. (वाक्य 1 में हम देख सकते हैं कि **Agreement** सिर्फ **Subject** एवं **Verb** के बीच ही सिर्फ नहीं होता बल्कि सभी **Parts of Speech** के बीच होता है। इस नियम को **Syntax** कहते हैं।)

Syntax

The rules that govern the ways in which words or elements combine to form a Phrase, Clause or a Sentence is called Syntax. (वह नियम जो यह तय करता है कि किस प्रकार शब्द जुड़ कर एक **Phrase, Clause** या वाक्य बनाता है **Syntax** कहलाता है।)

- The 'Verb' follows the 'main subject'. It is easier if we remember that the verb follows the subject preceding 'of'. (**Verb** हमेशा उस **Subject** को **follow** करेगा, जिसके लिए **verb** का प्रयोग हो रहा है। इसके लिए याद रखें 'of' से पहले वाला '**Noun**' **Subject** होता है।)
- 1. The main cause of concern ____ (be) the children.
- 2. The actual source of information ____ (be) the spies.
- 3. The quality of apples ____ good. (be)
- 4. The swarm of galaxies of stars ____ the astronauts. (attract)
- 5. The various consequences of(1)/ the decision taken by the (2)/ Finance Ministry was not foreseen by the bureaucrats. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)
- 6. The introduction of job-oriented courses (1)/in the self-financing colleges (2)/ attract many students (3)/. No error (4)
(SSC Section Officer (Audit), Exam. 14.12.2003)
- 7. Knowledge of (1)/ at least two languages (2)/ are required to pass the examination (3)/. No error (4).
(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)
- 8. A variety of pleasant items in the shop (1)/ attract (2)/ everybody. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 29.03.2009)

9. The strain of all (1)/ the difficulties and vexations and anxieties (2)/ are more than he could bear. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 30.09.2007 (Second Sitting)

10. The introduction of tea and coffee (1)/ and such other beverages (2)/ have not been without some effect. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 14.12.2008)

11. The newer type of automatic machines (1)/ wash (2)/ the clothes faster. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 14.12.2008)

12. The increasing mechanisation of life (1)/ have led us farther away from daily contact with nature and (2)/ the crafts of the farm. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. Paper-II 04.08.2011)

13. A technical view of new gadgets (1)/ sometimes differ (2)/ from an economic perspective. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, Kolkata Region)

14. The behaviour of resident spiders (1)/ towards pirate spiders and their own prey (2)/ are quite different. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (CPO) mains- 2017

Answers

1. Ans. → 'is'. The subject is 'main cause'.

2. Ans. → 'is'. The subject is 'the actual source'.

3. Ans. → 'is'. The subject is 'the quality'.

4. Ans. → attracts

5. (3) Replace 'was' with 'were' because here the main subject (The various consequences) is plural.

6. (3) Replace 'attract' with 'attracts'. Here the main subject is singular (introduction) hence it will take singular verb.

7. (3) Replace 'are' with 'is' because here the main subject is knowledge which is an uncountable noun so it will take singular verb.

8. (2) 'Attract' is correct because the subject 'A variety of' / 'a vast variety of' is plural so it will take plural verb.

9. (3) Replace 'are' with 'was'.

Here the main subject is 'strain' which is singular, so the verb should also be singular. The sentence is in past (see 'could').

10. (3) Replace 'have' with 'has'.

Here the main subject is 'introduction' which is singular. Hence it will agree with singular verb.

11. (4) 'Newer type' is Singular hence washes (S.V) is correct.

12. (2) Replace 'have' with 'has'.

Here the main subject is singular.
So it will agree with singular verb.

13. (2) Replace 'differ' with 'differs'.

Here the subject is singular so it will take singular verb.

14. (3) Replace 'are' with 'is'. Behaviour is singular and hence will take singular verb.

- The Verb may be far away from its subject. Do not forget to check if the verb agrees to its subject. (**Verb** अपने **Subject** से बहुत दूर हो सकता है। **Verb** को उसके सही **Subject** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त करें।)

1. The appeal of the victims to transfer the cases related to riots to some other states have been accepted.
2. The vulnerability of women, children and old people pose great threat to the security of a major part of our population.
3. Flowers (1)/that are just picked (2)/begins to rot in 15 seconds. (3)/ No Error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, IInd Sitting)

4. Most of the members at the meeting felt (1)/ that the group appointed to investigate the case (2)/ were not competent to do the job efficiently. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015, Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

5. Organizing World Cup matches in England imply that rains can be a constant threat.

(1) be a constant threat.	(2)	in England imply
(3) that rains can be	(4)	Organizing World Cup matches

Answers

CGL MAINS 2018, 12 September, 2019

1. Change 'have been accepted' into 'has been accepted'. The main subject is 'appeal' which is a Singular Subject.
2. Vulnerability is singular hence poses (S.V) is needed.
3. (3) Replace 'begins' with 'begin'.
A Plural subject always agrees with Plural verb.
4. (3) Replace 'were' with 'was' because 'group' is a Collective Noun and Collective Noun takes singular verb with it.
5. (2) Replace 'imply (Plural)' with 'implies (Singular Verb)'. Organizing world cup is a singular noun.

See the examples of inversion too

- Verb may precede the Subject that it agrees to. This is a case of Inversion. (**Verb** अपने **Subject** से पहले भी प्रयुक्त हो सकता है। ये **Inversion** का **Case** है।)

1. Along the northern frontier of India is the Himalayas.
2. The tiger is not the only cause of concern. There is hyenas too.
3. Twenty miles beyond the LOC was seen a few terrorists.
4. Just outside my house are a playground for school boys and girls.

(1) Just outside my house	(2) are a playground
(3) No error	(4) for school boys and girls

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 16.08.2015 (Ist Sitting) TF No. 3196279)

Answers

1. Change 'is' into 'are' 'Himalayas' is Plural Noun.
 2. Hyenas (लकड़बग्घे) is Plural Noun and hence it will take Plural Verb.
 3. Change 'was seen' into 'were seen'. 'A few terrorists' is Plural and hence will take Plural Verb.
 4. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is' because here subject (the playground) is singular.
A singular subject always takes Singular Verb.
- When two subjects are joined by 'and', Plural Verb follows. (अगर दो Subjects को and से जोड़ा जाए तो Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है)

1. Ram and Shyam are coming.
2. Bread and Butter are sold in this grocery shop.

If two Subjects are joined by 'and', Plural Verb follows but if both Nouns/ Adjectives indicate the same person, thing or idea, Singular verb follows. (दो Subject को and से जोड़ा जाए तो Plural verb आता है, लेकिन अगर वह व्यक्ति, वस्तु या आइडिया को संबोधित करे तो Singular verb का प्रयोग होगा)

Answers

1. Bread and butter is my daily breakfast.

1. Here 'bread and butter' is a single dish.

Note:-

Note the following examples too. They take Singular verb as they denote the same person, thing or idea. (ऐसे कुछ अन्य pairs भी हैं जो Singular verb होते हैं क्योंकि वो एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु या idea को संबोधित करते हैं)

1. Slow and steady wins the race.
2. My friend, philosopher and guide has come.
3. Fish and chips is my favourite dish.

Answers

Note:-

4. Two and two make four.
5. Time and tide wait for no man.

In sentences 4 and 5 'verb' is plural as the subjects joined by 'and' are two different things.

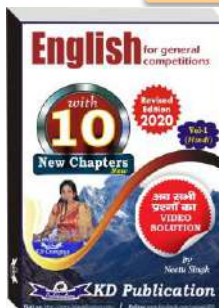
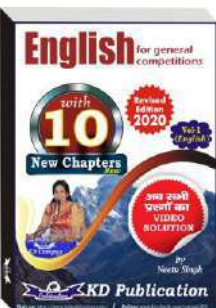
6. The sum and substance of this poem is as follows.

- (1) of this poem
- (2) No error
- (3) The sum and substance
- (4) is as follows

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 09.08.2015 (IInd Sitting) TF No. 4239378)

Answers

6. (2) No error



More Pairs that take Singular Verb

1. Lime and Soda 2. Sum and Substance (निचोड़) 3. Part and Parcel (अभिन्न अंग) 4. Fun and Frolic (मजे) 5. Science and Technology 6. Art and Culture 7. Trade and Commerce 8. Peace and Harmony 9. Peace and Prosperity 10. Destruction and Devastation (विध्वंस) 11. Honour and Glory (सम्मान, भव्यता)	12. Power and Influence 13. Chaos and Confusion (अराजकता) 14. Horse and Carriage (तांगा) 15. Slow and Steady 16. Manners and Etiquettes (शिष्टाचार) 17. Heart and Soul 18. Mind and Soul (दिलो-दिमाग) 19. Culture and Tradition 20. Custom and Tradition 21. Ebb and flow 22. Drinking and driving

Eg:-

Peace and harmony leads to prosperity

- Knowledge and Wisdom will take Plural Verb. Similar case is with Poverty and Misery. Here the two Nouns are two different things hence they will take Plural verb.

Note:-

3. The ebb and flow of the tides (1)/ are (2)/ now understood (3)/. No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 25.09.2005)
4. Time and tide (1)/ wait (2)/ for no man. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)
5. Drinking and driving(1)/ are(2)/ a major cause of accidents.(3)/ No error.(4)

(SSC CPO (SI, ASI & Intelligence Officer Exam. Paper-II 28.08.2011)
6. Short stories and poems (1)/of varying quality (2)/appears in dailies and periodicals (3)/. No error (4)

(SSC Constable (GD) Exam. 12.05.2013, 1st Sitting)

Answers

3. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is'.
 If 'two' or more than two Nouns or Adjectives are joined by 'and' but only Person or thing or idea is discussed, singular verb is used. Here 'ebb and flow' is considered as singular subject.
4. (4) No error.
 Here two subjects 'time' and 'tide' are joined by 'and' and both mean two different things, hence plural verb follows.
5. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is'.
 If two or more than two nouns are joined by 'and' but only one thing or idea is discussed, it takes singular verb. Here the action is singular as a whole which means driving while drunk.
6. (3) Replace 'appears' with 'appear' because short stories and poems are joined by 'and' are Plural. Plural verb will follow.

- See the examples given below. Article before the 1st subject only indicates that there is only one Subject addressed by two or more than two nouns. If there is no Article and a Possessive Adjective comes before the 1st Subject, the Subject is singular. Hence Singular Verb, Singular Adjective and Singular Pronoun will follow.

(नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण को देखें। अगर सिर्फ 1st subject के पहले Article का प्रयोग हो तो इसका अर्थ है एक ही Subject है जिसे दो या दो से अधिक Noun के द्वारा सम्बोधित किया जा रहा है। अगर कोई Article का प्रयोग ना हो और Possessive Adjective का प्रयोग 1st Subject के पहले हो तो भी Subject Singular है अतः Singular Verb, Singular Adjective एवं Singular Pronoun का प्रयोग होगा।)

- If the Article comes before all the subjects, it means there are two or more than two individual person or things. Hence Plural Verb, Plural Adjective and Plural Pronoun follow.

(अगर Article सभी subjects के पहले आए तो इसका अर्थ होगा दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्ति या वस्तु। अतः Plural Verb, Plural Adjective एवं Plural Pronoun का प्रयोग होगा।)

1. The Secretary and the Principal of the college (1)/ are attending (2)/ the District Development Council Meeting at the Collectorate (3)/. No error (4).
(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)
2. A hot and (1)/ a cold spring (2)/ was found near each other (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)
3. The Principal and staff (1)/ are waiting for (2)/ the chief guest. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Higher Secondary Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 27.11.2010)
4. The artist and writer (1)/ has (2)/ died. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.10.2012 (1st Sitting))
5. The trustee and principal are at loggerheads.

Answers

1. (4) No error.
2. (3) Replace 'was' with 'were'.
If two different subjects are joined by 'and', Plural verb is used. Here Article has come before both the subject. This indicates that there are two subjects.
3. (1) Add article 'the' before the word 'staff'.
4. (4) No error
5. At loggerheads means 'at conflict (टकराव)' and to be at loggerheads you need someone else. Hence principal is a separate identity. Add 'the' before 'Principal'.

• Sometimes the two Subjects cannot be the same. In such a case the verb is plural but Article decides whether the Noun will be Singular or Plural.
(कभी-कभी दोनों **Subjects** एक हो ही नहीं सकते ऐसे में **Verb Plural** प्रयुक्त होगा लेकिन **Article** तय करेगा कि **Noun Singular** होगा या **Plural**.)

1. The first and the second row are reserved. (Article twice → Noun Singular)

Singular Noun

2. The first and second rows are reserved. (Article once, Noun Plural)

Plural Noun

- If two Subjects are joined by using the following, the Verb follows the 1st Subject. (अगर निम्नलिखित शब्दों के द्वारा दो **Subjects** को जोड़ा जाए तो **Verb 1st Subject** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा)

With

Unlike

Like

Except/ but

Together with

Nothing but

Besides

Along with

As well as

Rather than

And not

Accompanied by

In addition to

1. The Prime Minister along with his Cabinet colleagues (1)/ have been welcomed by the Chief Minister (2)/ at a formal ceremony. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC CPO (SI, ASI & Intelligence Officer Exam. 28.08.2011 (Paper-I))

2. He as well as (1)/ you like (2)/ to go.(3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (1st Sitting (North Zone))

3. The captain along with his team (1)/ are practising very hard (2)/ for the forthcoming match. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (1st Sitting (East Zone))

4. The teacher as well as the students (1) have gone on an excursion (2)/ to Ooty during their summer vacation. (3)/ No Error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

5. Grandfather along (1)/ with the children (2)/ have gone to Chennai. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016, 23rd Jan, Evening

6. My brother (1)/ along with his friends (2)/ are going on a tour (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CGL-2016 (30th August, Morning)

7. The leader (1)/ with all his followers (2)/ are send to prison. (3)/ No Error(4)

(SSC CPO (SI, ASI & Intelligence Officer Exam. 28.08.2011 (Paper-I))

8. Mr. Gupta with his wife (1)/ and younger brother (2)/ were present at the station. (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 2 July, 2018 Morning

9. The child along with his parents were(1)/waiting for(2)/ the programme to begin.(3)/No error(4)

SSC PRE – 2018, 11th June, 2019 Evening

10. My brother along with his friends have gone to watch a movie at the nearest cinema hall.

- (1) at the nearest cinema hall.
- (2) My brother, along with his friends,
- (3) have gone to watch a movie
- (4) No error

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2016

11. Silver as well as gold are considered as precious metals.

- (1) as precious metals. (2) as well as
- (3) Silver (4) are considered

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 13 March, 2019 Evening

Answers

1. (2) Replace 'have' with 'has' when two or more subject are joined by 'along with' the verb agrees to the first subject.
Here the first subject is singular so it will take singular verb.
2. (2) Replace 'like' with 'likes'.
When two nouns or pronouns are joined by 'as well as', the verb agrees to the 1st subject.
3. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is'.
When two nouns or pronouns are joined by 'along with' the verb agrees to the first noun.
4. (2) Replace 'have' with 'has'.
When two or more nouns are joined by 'as well as', the verb agrees to the first subject. Here the first subject is singular so it will take singular verb.
5. (3) If the subject is joined by 'as well as', 'with', 'along with' 'together with', etc, the verb will agree to the first subject. Thus 'have' will be replaced by 'has'.
6. (3) If the subject is joined with 'along with', the verb agrees to the first subject. Here the first subject (my brother) is singular and so it will take singular verb (is). Replace 'are' with 'is'.
7. (3) Rule: If the subject is joined by 'as well as', 'with', 'along with', 'together with' etc, the verb agrees to the first subject.
Here the first subject is singular hence the verb used should also be singular. Hence replace 'are' with 'is'.
 - Also the sentence is in passive voice. Thus 'send' will be replaced by (V₃) 'sent'. Also according to the meaning of the sentence, 'was sent' is more appropriate as the action is of past.
8. (3) Use 'was' instead of 'were'.
If the subject is joined by 'as well as', 'with', 'but', 'except', 'like' etc. the verb agrees to the first subject.
9. (1) Use 'was' in place of 'were'. The verb agrees to the first subject, if conjunction is 'alongwith'.
10. (3) Replace 'have' with 'has'. Verb agrees to the 1st subject if the conjunction is 'along with'.
11. (4) Replace 'are' with 'is'. If two subjects are joined by 'as well as', the verb agrees to the 1st subject.

• When two subjects are joined by the following Conjunctions, the Verb follows the nearest Subject.

(कुछ ऐसे **Conjunctions** होते हैं जिनसे जोड़ने पर **Verb** नजदीक वाले **Subject** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा।)

Neither ... nor

Nor

Not only ... but also

Either ... or

Or

None but

- Neither the mouse (1)/ nor the lion (2)/ were caught. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking (Non-Technical) Staff Exam. 27.02.2011)
- Either Sohan or his friends (1)/ is to be blamed (2)/ for this mischief. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 16.09.2012)
- Either an officer (1)/ or an assistant (2)/ are required. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.10.2012 (1st Sitting))
- Either Parmeet (1)/ or Jyoti (2)/ have done the crime. (3)/No Error (4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013, 1st Sitting : Patna)
- Neither the girl nor her parents (1)/ was present (2)/ to receive the award. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 29.09.2013)
- Electronic mail or E-mail (1)/ are a method of exchanging (2)/digital messages. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 6636838)
- The light bulbs (1)/or the hall (2)/need to be changed (3)/No error. (4)
SSC (steno.) 2016
- Neither Mohit nor Rohit were there at the shop when I sent there.
(1) when (2) Neither Mohit nor Rohit
(3) were there (4) at the shop
SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 12 March, 2019 Evening
- Either Avika or Nikunj are going to win the prize in the handwriting competition.
(1) Either Avika (2) or Nikunj
(3) in the (4) are going to
SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018,13 March, 2019 Morning
- Neither I nor my sisters was interested in learning music.
(1) nor my sisters (2) in learning music.
(3) was interested (4) Neither I
SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 13 March, 2019 Morning
- Neither Amit nor Raju are staying with his parents in Mumbai.
(1) are staying (2) in Mumbai
(3) with his parents (4) Neither Amit nor Raju
SSC (CPO) mains- 2018 27 September, 2019

12. Neither you nor I _____ guilty.
13. Not only the common man but also the gentry _____ (was/ were) in problem.

Answers

1. (3) Replace 'were' with 'was'.

When two subjects are joined by neither ... nor, the verb agrees to the nearest subject.

2. (2) Replace 'is' with 'are'.

When two nouns or pronouns are connected with 'Either ... or', the verb agrees to the nearest subject. Here nearest subject is plural, hence verb should be plural.

3. (3) Replace 'are' with 'is' because when two Nouns or Pronouns are connected with Either ... or, the verb agrees to its nearest subject.

4. (3) Replace 'have' with 'has'.

5. (2) Replace 'was' with 'were'.

When two Noun or Pronouns are joined by 'either ... or' or 'neither ... nor', the verb agrees to the nearest subject.

Here the nearest subject (parents) is plural so it will take plural verb.

6. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is' when two nouns are joined by 'or', it takes Singular Verb.

7. (3) Use 'needs (S.V)' for hall (S.S).

8. (3) Replace 'were' with 'was'. The verb agrees to the nearest subject if the subjects are joined by 'neither ... nor'.

9. (4) Replace 'are' with 'is'. The verb agrees to the nearest subject (here-Nikunj) if the subjects are joined by 'neither ... or'.

10. (3) Replace 'was' with 'were'. 'Sisters' will take plural verb.

11. (1) Replace 'are' with 'is'. If two subjects are joined by 'neither ... nor', the verb follows the nearest subject.

12. Ans → am.

13. Ans → were.

'Gentry' means 'high class people' hence plural verb follows.

• None but + Subject + Verb

Eg:- None but cowards die many a death

• Nothing but + Subject + Verb

Eg:- Nothing but trees was seen there.

• The + Adjective of quality **take** → Plural Verb

Plural Common Noun

(Denote all the people of that class)

(उस वर्ग के सभी लोगों का सम्बोधित करता है)

Answers

1. Ans → are
2. Ans → exploit
3. Ans → die
4. Ans → get.
The tough – मजबूत लोग

Eg:-

1. The brave ____ (be) rewarded.
2. The rich ____ (exploit/ exploits) the poor.
3. Cowards die many a death, the brave ____ (die/ dies) but once.
4. When the going gets tough, the tough ____ (get/ gets) going.

• See the following Nouns. In Singular form too they can denote the whole class. However they take Singular verb.
(निम्नलिखित Nouns को देखें। Singular form में भी ये पूर्ण वर्ग को सम्बोधित कर सकते हैं हाताँकि Verb Singular प्रयुक्त होगा)

- Eg:-
1. A dog is a faithful animal. (A dog — the whole species)
 2. A dog is sitting there. (A dog — a particular dog)
- Note:-
3. Man is mortal. (Man — इंसान)
 4. A man is sitting there. (A man — एक आदमी)

5. If man makes proper use of his time and opportunities and follow his aim in life with patience and perseverance, he is sure to succeed.

- (1) and perseverance, he is sure to succeed.
- (2) If man makes proper use of his time and opportunities
- (3) and follow his aim in life with patience
- (4) No Error

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015)

Answers

5. (3) Replace 'follow' with 'follows' because here the main subject (man) is singular so it will take singular verb.

- If a plural number is used as a Singular Unit, Singular Verb follows.
(अगर **Plural** संख्या को **Singular Unit** के रूप में प्रयुक्त किया जाए तो **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होगा)

1. Ten kilometres (1)/ is (2)/ a long distance to walk. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 16.11.2003)

2. Ten kilometres are (1)/ to cover on foot (2)/a long distance for a child (3)/ No error (4).

SSC PRE – 2018 11th June, 2019 Morning

3. Twenty kms are not a great distance in these days of fast moving vehicles.
(1) is not a great distance (2) are not too great a distance
(3) aren't proving a great distance (4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013, IInd Sitting)

4. A thousand rupees are all that he wants.

- (1) are (2) was
(3) is (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam. (2013) 20.07.2014, IInd Sitting)

Answers

- (4) If Plural Noun is used after cardinal adjectives (one, two, three etc.) and if plural noun denotes certain amount, weight, height or period, singular verb will be used.
- (1) A plural number taken as a singular unit takes singular verb.
- (1) Replace 'are not a great distance' with 'is not a great distance'. 'Twenty kms' is followed by singular verb.
- (3) Replace 'are' with 'is'.

- In Optative Sentence, (sentences of wish and prayer) all subjects take base form of verb.

(इच्छासूचक वाक्यों में, सभी **subjects** के साथ **Verb** के **base form** का प्रयोग होता है।)

Eg:- 1. God bless you.



2. Long live the king.



- Generally we use 'May' in Optative Sentence and the sentence is in Inversion.

(सामान्यतः **Optative** वाक्यों में **May** का प्रयोग होता है और वाक्य **Inversion** में होता है।)

Eg:- 1. May god bless you.
2. May you live long.

- If two forms of the same verb are needed, use both the forms. We cannot simply use one form.
(अगर एक **verb** के दो **forms** की जरूरत पड़े तो दोनों **forms** का प्रयोग करें। हम एक **forms** से काम नहीं चला सकते।)

Eg:-

1. I have never and will never be an opportunist. (×)

I have never been and will never be an opportunist. (✓)

V_3

$V_{b,f}$

$V_{b,f}$

'Have' needs V_3 and 'will' takes $V_{b,f}$

2. Nothing has or will be more shocking than his demise. (×)

Add V_3 after 'has'. V_3 of 'be' (verb used here is 'been'). 'Nothing has been' is the correct form.

- Certain Nouns look plural but are singular. They take singular verb.
(कुछ **Nouns Plural** दिखते हैं पर **Singular** होते हैं। इनके साथ **Singular Verb** आता है।)

Eg:-

1. "The Arabian Nights" (1)/ are indeed (2)/ an interesting book. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Combined Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 26.06.2011 (Second Sitting))

2. 'Gulliver's Travels' (1)/are indeed (2)/an interesting book. (3)/ No Error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013, 1st Sitting : Patna)

3. The US (1)/ don't want (2)/India in the Security Council. (3)/ No Error.(4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

4. A Tale of Two Cities (1)/ are written (2)/ by Charles Dickens. (3)/ No error (4)/

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 24.03.2013, 1st Sitting)

Answers

1. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is'.

Here 'the Arabian Nights' is the name of one book and it is singular so singular verb will be used.

2. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is'.

'Gulliver's Travels' is the name of single book, hence it will take singular verb.

3. (2) Replace 'don't' with 'doesn't'. The 'U.S' is a single country.

4. (2) Replace 'are' with 'was'. Here 'was' is needed as sentence is in past tense.

'A tale of two cities' is the name of singular book so it will take singular verb.

Pay attention to the Voice of the sentences.
(वाक्य के **Voice** पर ध्यान दें)

Eg:-

1. Two resigned and one suspended. (×)

- Here the 1st Sentence is Active Voice but the 2nd is Passive Voice.
(यहाँ 1st वाक्य **Active Voice** में हैं एवं 2nd वाक्य **Passive Voice** में है।)

Two resigned and one suspended. (×)

'do' Done on

- Here use Passive Voice in the 2nd part.
(अतः 2nd part में **Passive Voice** का प्रयोग करें।)

Correct

Two resigned and one was suspended.

Eg:-

2. The accused fled but the accomplice arrested. (×)

The accused fled but the accomplice was arrested. (✓)

- Sentences of Present Imagination take V₂ (except was).
(वर्तमान के काल्पनिक वाक्यों में V₂ ('was' को छोड़ कर) का प्रयोग करें।)

Eg. He walks (1)/ as if the earth (2)/ belongs to him (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (South Zone) Investigators Exam. 12.09.2010)

Answers

23. (3) Replace 'belongs' with 'belonged'. Here unreal possession of present is expressed hence 'V₂' is needed.

- If two Nouns are joined by a preposition and both Nouns are same, the Nouns will be Singular in form and the verb will also be singular.
(अगर दो **Nouns** को एक **Preposition** से जोड़ा जाए तो दोनों **Nouns Singular form** में होंगे और **Verb भी Singular** होगा।)

- Eg:-**
- Town after town ___ (was/were) plundered.
 - Door to door service ___ (is/are) available.
 - Word for word repetition ___ (is/are) not allowed.
 - Men after men have turned up for the ceremony. (×)

Answers

- Ans. → was
- Ans. → is
- Ans. → is
- Man after man has turned up for the ceremony.
S.N S.N S.V

If divided or when per person is emphasised

COLLECTIVE NOUN

If united or unanimous or used in general sentences

P.V, Their & they

Eg:- Jury, Committee, Army, Team

S.V, Its & it

Eg:-

- The Jury ___ (has/have) passed ___ (its, their) order.
- The class ___ (is/ are) going on in ___ (its/ their) room.
- The committee ___ (is/ are) divided in ___ (their/ its) opinion.
- The Jury ___ (has/ have) taken ___ (its/ their) respective seats.

Answers

- has, its
- is, its
- are, their
- have, their

- In Syntax questions come from Adjectives too.
(Syntax में Adjectives संबंधित प्रश्न भी पूछे जाते हैं)

Eg:-

- The lions kill the animals and eat his meat.
(1) The lions (2) and eat his meat
(3) kill the animals (4) No error

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 21.06.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 8037731)

- The luxuries of the riches are maintained by depriving the poor of their dues.
(1) The luxuries of the riches (2) the poor of their dues
(3) are maintained by depriving (4) No error

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 30.08.2015 TF No. 4039770)

Answers

- (2) Replace 'his' with 'their' because here the object (animals) is plural so it will take plural possessive adjective (their).
- (1) Replace 'the riches' with 'the rich'. The rich — अमीर लोग

Suggest

सलाह देना

'Suggest' takes 'that clause'

I suggest to you to work hard. (×)

I suggest to you that you work hard. (✓)

Want

चाहना

'Want' takes 'to clause'

I want that you work hard. (×)

I want you to work hard. (✓)

Percentage & Percent

- Percentage is an Uncountable Noun. (Percentage Uncountable Noun है)
Percentage Uncountable Noun संबंधित ही Verb, Adjective, Pronoun का प्रयोग करेंगे)

Verb

Singular

~~Plural~~

Adjective

Less

~~fewer~~

Pronoun

that

~~these~~

Eg:-

- The percentage of girls is less than that of boys.
- The Percentage of Oxygen is less than that of Nitrogen.

- In sentences of Percent, the 'Noun' that follows 'of' decides whether the verb will be Singular or Plural. (**Percent** के वाक्यों में 'of' के बाद वाला 'Noun' तय करता है कि 'Verb' Singular होगा या Plural)

Eg:-

1. 21% of the students are girls.

P.N. P.V

2. 21% of the air is Oxygen.

U.N S.V

3. More than 25% people admits they have not sent or received a hand-written letter in the past decade.

(1) a hand-written letter

(2) More than 25% people admits

(3) they have not sent or received

(4) in the past decade

Answers

3. (2) Replace 'admits' with 'admit'. x% of plural noun takes plural verb.

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 16 March, 2019 Afternoon

Note:-

An Uncountable Noun always takes Singular Verb. (**Uncountable Noun** हमेशा **Singular Verb** लेता है।)

Ratio

1. Three-fourths of the syllabus has been covered.

S.N S.V

2. One-third of the students are absent.

P.N P.V

3. Two-thirds of the information is incorrect.

U.N S.V

4. Nine-tenths (1)/ of the pillar (2)/ have rotted away.(3)/No error (4).

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam. 16.05.2010 (IInd Sitting))

5. Three-fourths of the men (1)/ has gone (2)/ to war. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 16.11.2014 , Ist Sitting TF No. 333 LO 2)

Answers

4. (3) Replace 'have' with 'has'.

Rule:

Nine-tenths of $\begin{cases} \rightarrow \text{S.C.N} + \text{S.V} \\ \rightarrow \text{P.C.N} + \text{P.V} \\ \rightarrow \text{U.C.N} + \text{S.V} \end{cases}$

5. (2) Replace 'has' with 'have'.

Rule: Three - fourths + Plural countable noun + Plural verb.

Majority

1. Majority is in favour of the bill.

S.V

2. Majority of the students have passed.

P.N P.V

3. Majority of the information is incorrect. (x)

U.N

• Majority can come only with Countable Nouns. Hence Sentence 3 is incorrect. (**Majority** का प्रयोग सिर्फ **Countable Noun** के साथ होता है। अतः वाक्य 3 गलत है।)

• Majority + S.V (Sentence 1)

• Majority of the P.N + PV (Sentence 2)

Number

with P.C.N

A number of

कई

P.V

The number of

S.V

..... की संख्या

Eg:- A number of boys have come.

P.C.N P.V

Eg:- The number of boys is 5000.

P.C.N S.V

1. The number of guests (1)/ invited to the party
(2)/ are five hundred (3)/ No error (4)

SSC (steno.) 2017, 12 Sept., Morning

2. A number of points of resemblance between the
Australian and Dravidian languages is discovered,
despite the fact that the homes of the two races
are so far apart.

Stenographer- 2018 8 Feb., 2019 Evening

- (1) despite the fact (2) point of resemblance
(3) so far apart (4) is discovered

Answers

1. (3) Change 'are' into 'is' because 'the number of' denotes the number, hence it will take singular verb.
2. (4) Replace 'is' with 'have been'. 'A number of' takes plural noun and plural verb.

Plenty of

In large number, quantity or amount. (संख्या या मात्रा में काफी)

with

Singular Countable Noun (×)

with

Plural Countable Noun (✓)

with

Uncountable Noun (✓)

takes P.V

takes S.V

- Eg:-**
- I have plenty of friends. (✓)
P.N
 - I have plenty of information. (✓)
U.N
 - Plenty of books are available. (✓)
P.N P.V

4. Plenty of effort is needed. (✓)

U.N S.V

5. Plenty of boy are here. (×)

Change 'boy' into 'boys'.

6. A great plenty of stamina is needed in wrestling. (×)

Change 'a great plenty of' into 'a great deal of' or 'plenty of'.

7. A great plenty of furniture is lying in the godown. (×)

'Great' with 'plenty' becomes superfluous.

('Great' का प्रयोग 'plenty' के साथ Superfluous हो जाता है)

Plenty of furniture is lying in the godown. (✓)

A great deal of

- 'A great deal of' means 'to a great degree or extent (काफी हद तक)'. It can come with Uncountable Nouns only. (ये सिर्फ U.N के साथ प्रयुक्त होता है)

Eg:-

- I have a great deal of book. (×)
- I have a great deal of books. (×)
- I have a great deal of information. (✓)
- I read (1)/ a great deal of (2)/ books.
(3)/ No Error (4)

Answers

4. (2) Replace 'a great deal of' with 'plenty of'.

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013, 1st Sitting : Patna)

More than one

Structures

More than one + S.N + S.V

Eg:- More than one student is absent

S.N S.V

More + P.N + than one + P.V

Eg:- More boys than one have come.

P.N

P.V

A lot of & lots of

- Both mean the same a large amount or number of (people or things).
(दोनों का एक ही अर्थ है) (काफी मात्रा या संख्या में)

1. I have a lots of friends.

2. A lot of work is pending.

U.N S.V

3. A lot of people are missing.

P.C.N P.V

4. Lot of boys are absent.

Answers

- Remove 'a'.
- No error. Either use 'lots of' or 'a lot of'.
- No error.
- Change 'lot of' into 'a lot of' or 'lots of'.

All

with

Uncountable Noun (U.N)

The whole of a thing

→ सारा/ समूचा

Plural Countable Noun (P.C.N)

Everyone of the group

→ सभी

Eg:-

1. All is well that ends well.
S.V S.V
2. All that glitters is not gold.
S.V S.V
3. All are well at home.
P.V

One

Eg:-

1. One must perform his duty himself. (×)
One must perform one's duty oneself. (✓)
2. This car is better than that ____.
3. These books are more useful than those ____.

Answers

1. one (singular)
2. ones (plural)

Difference between ones & once

Eg:-

1. These halls are more spacious than those ____.
2. He disappeared at ____.
3. He comes here ____ in a while.
4. He came here only ____.
5. I am warning you ____ and for all.
6. ____ upon a time, there lived a king.

Answers

1. Ones (Plural of One) : to avoid repetition of Plural Noun use 'ones'.
2. At once : suddenly (अचानक)
3. Once in a while : occasionally (कभी-कभी)
4. Only once : (सिर्फ एक बार)
5. Once and for all : for the last time (आखिरी बार)
6. Once upon a time : एक समय की बात है

Some

with

P.C.N

(अर्थ → कुछ)

S.C.N

(अर्थ → कोई)

U.N

(अर्थ → थोड़ा/ कुछ)

Eg:- 1. Some boys are missing.

2. Some ^{P.C.N} furniture ^{P.V} is lying in the room.

3. Some ^{U.N} Rahul ^{S.V} boy is standing at the gate.

Some

&

Any

With Positive Sentences

सकारात्मक वाक्यों के साथ

With Negative Sentences

नकारात्मक वाक्यों के साथ

With Interrogative Sentences if the answer is expected in 'yes'.

प्रश्नसूचक वाक्यों के साथ अगर जवाब 'हाँ' में उम्मीद की जाए तब।

With Interrogative Sentences

प्रश्नसूचक वाक्यों के साथ

Answers

1. Some
2. any
3. Any
4. Some
5. some
6. No any cannot come together
Correct → I have no information.
Or, I don't have any information.
7. any (कोई भी)
Here the sentence is not negative still 'any' can come.
8. Change many friends into any friend.

Eg:-

1. I have _____ problems.
2. I don't have _____ problem.
3. Do you have _____ problem?
4. May I have _____ water?
5. Could you lend me _____ money?
6. I have no any information.
7. You can apply for _____ post.
8. I hardly have many friends in Delhi.

Something, Anything, Nothing, Everything

- These are Uncountable Pronouns. They take Singular verb.

Eg:-

1. Something ^{S.V} is missing.
2. ^{S.V} Is anything required?
3. Nothing ^{S.V} is impossible.

Many

- A large number of (बहुत सारे)

'Many' comes with only 'Countable Nouns'. We use 'much' with Uncountable Noun

Many + P.N + P.V

Many people are waiting for him.

Many a + S.N + S.V

Many a sportsman has failed the dope test.

Eg:-



A great many + P.N + P.V



A good many + P.N + P.V

In a large number.
(भारी संख्या में)

Eg:- A great many sportsmen have brought laurels for the country.

P.N

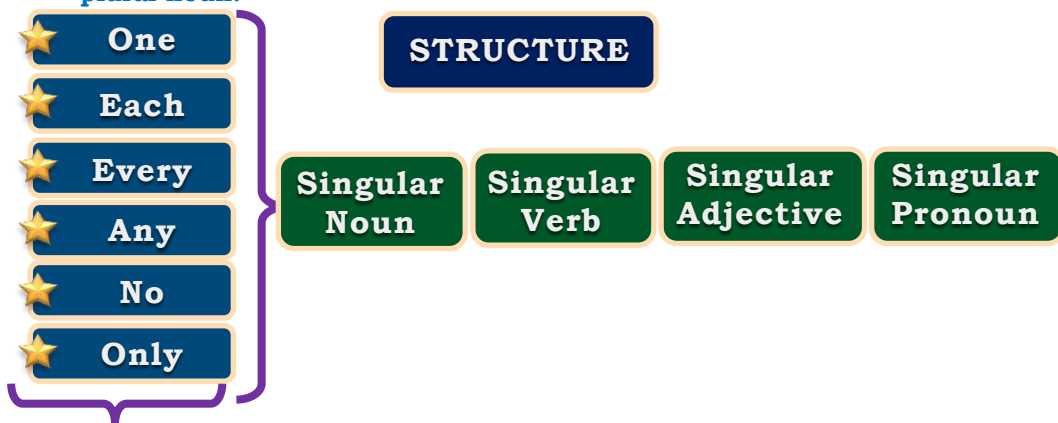
P.V

1. A great many student (1)/ have been declared (2)/ successful. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Combined Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.06.2011 (Second Sitting))
2. Most countries in the world (1)/ is for (2)/ peace. (3)/ No error.(4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, Kolkata Region)
3. Many a man (1)/ have realized (2)/ that real happiness lies in making sacrifices. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, Kolkata Region)
4. Many a man want to be rich quickly.
(1) rich quickly (2) want to be (3) Many a man (4) No error
(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 16.08.2015 (IInd Sitting) TF No. 2176783)
5. Many a man have (1)/come to India from Canada (2)/ to live here permanently. (3)/No error (4).
SSC (steno.) 2017, 13 Sept., Morning
6. Many a girl were influenced by the inspirational lecture given by the Nobel laureate.
(1) Nobel laureate (2) were influenced (3) inspirational lecture (4) Many a girl
Stenographer- 2018 8 Feb., 2019 Evening
7. Many a man would welcome the opportunity.
(1) Many man (2) A many man (3) Many a men (4) No improvement
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)
8. Many a man have died of cancer.
(1) No improvement (2) have died from (3) have been dying of (4) has died of
(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam, 25.10.2015, TF No. 2148789)
9. How many country are there in Europe ?
(1) countries are their in (2) country are there on (3) countries are there in (4) No improvement
(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 6636838)

Answers

1. (1) Replace 'student' with 'students'.
After 'many', 'a great many' and 'a good many' plural countable noun comes.
2. (2) Replace 'is' with 'are' Since 'countries' is a plural subject and 'most' is Superlative Degree of 'many' here. For uncountable nouns 'most' is the Superlative Degree of 'Much'.
3. (2) Replace 'have' with 'has'.
Here 'man' is singular noun so it will take singular verb.

4. (2) Replace 'want' with 'wants' because here the main subject 'man' is singular and will take Singular Verb.
5. (1) Change 'have' into 'has' because after 'Many a/an' + singular countable noun, singular verb comes.
6. (2) Replace 'were' with 'was'. 'Many a' takes singular Subject and Singular Verb
7. (4) 'Many a' is followed by singular noun so 'many a man' is correct.
8. (4) Replace 'have died of' with 'has died of'. 'Many a' is followed by singular noun and singular verb.
9. (3) Replace 'country are there' with 'countries are there'. 'Many' is followed by plural noun.

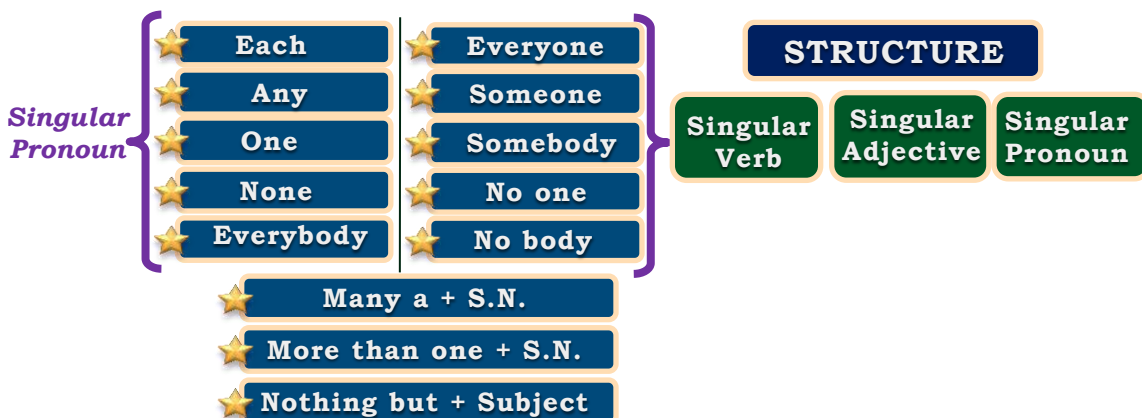


Singular Adjectives

- Eg:-**
1. Each ^{S.N} boy ^{S.V} has ^{S.A} done ^{S.P} his work himself.
 2. You can apply for any posts. (×)
 3. Every movies you suggested were worth-watching. (×)
 4. Each boy has handed their work.
 5. Each boy and each girl have done their work.
 6. We each have been rewarded.

Answers

2. Change 'posts' into 'post'.
3. Change 'movies' into 'movie' and 'were' into 'was'
4. Change 'their' into 'his'.
5. Change 'have' into 'has' and 'their' into 'his' / 'her'.
6. Here 'have' has come for 'we'.



1. One must perform one's duty oneself.
2. Someone is waiting for me.
3. Everyone are expected (1)/ to come (2)/ to school tomorrow. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting))

4. Every child in the class (1)/ are wearing (2)/ sandals today. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013)

5. Every boy and every girl (1)/ were given (2)/ a packet of sweets. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam-2013, 27.04.2014)

6. Everyone were happy to hear about his success.
(1) to hear (2) about his success
(3) No error (4) Everyone were happy

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 21.06.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 8037731)

Answers

3. (1) Replace 'are' with 'is' because 'everyone' and 'everybody' takes 'singular verb' with it.
4. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is'. When words like each, every, either, neither are used as subjects, they take singular verb.
5. (2) Replace 'were' with 'was' because 'every' takes singular verb with it.
6. (4) Replace 'were' with 'was' because 'everyone' is followed by Singular Verb.

STRUCTURE



1. One of them has come.

P.P S.V

2. Everyone of the students is waiting.

P.N S.V

3. None of them is here.

P.P S.V

4. One of the terrorists (1)/ of the Kashmir valley (2)/ are shot dead. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 16.11.2003)

5. Either of the roads (1)/ lead (2)/ to the park (3)/. No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)

6. One of my desires (1)/ are to become (2)/ a doctor (3)/. No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)

7. Each of the students in the computer class (1)/ has to type (2)/ their own research paper this semester. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 14.12.2008)

8. Each of these boys (1)/ play games (2)/ in the playground. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 16.09.2012)

9. Each of the girls (1)/ are (2)/ clever. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 24.03.2013, Ist Sitting)

10. Each one of you (1)/ must make up their mind (2)/ as I did. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013, Ist Sitting)

11. One of the (1)/ most dangerous disease (2)/ is AIDS (3)/. No error (4)

(SSC Constable (GD) Exam. 12.05.2013, Ist Sitting)

12. Each of these boys (1)/ play (2)/ games. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 29.09.2013)

13. One of the most (1)/ widely spread (2)/ bad habit is the use of tobacco. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC GL Tier-I Exam. 19.10.2014, Ist Sitting)

14. One of my teacher has received the Sahitya Akademi award.

- (1) the teacher (2) my teachers
(3) teacher (4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (IInd Sitting))

15. One of my friend is an engineer.

- (1) One of my friends (2) One among my friends
(3) One of friend of mine (4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.10.2012 (1st Sitting))

Answers

4. (3) Change 'are' into 'was'. If 'of' is used after 'each', every, one etc, the Noun or Pronoun that comes immediately after 'of' will be Plural in form. However the verb, Pronoun, Adjective etc. that comes in the latter part of the sentence will be singular in form. This sentence is of past so use 'was'.

Structure:

One + of + Plural Noun + Singular Verb

5. (2) Change 'lead' into 'leads'.

The structure of this type of sentence is

Either + of + plural noun + singular verb.

6. (2) Change 'are' into 'is'.
If 'of' comes after 'each', 'every' 'one' etc, the Noun or Pronoun that comes immediately after 'of' will be plural in form. However the verb that comes in latter part of the sentence will be singular.
7. (3) Replace 'their' with 'his'.
The structure we follow is
Each of the + Plural Noun + Singular verb/ Pronoun/ Adjective.
If 'of' is used after 'each', the Noun or Pronoun that comes after 'of' will be plural in form. However, the verb, Pronoun, Adjective that comes in the latter part of the sentence will be singular.
8. (2) Replace 'play' with 'plays'
Structure: Each of + plural noun + singular verb.
9. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is'.
'Each of' is followed by plural Noun and Singular Verb.
10. (2) Replace 'their' with 'your'. 'Each of you' will take possessive adjective 'your'.
11. (2) Replace 'disease' with 'diseases'. 'One of' is followed by 'Plural Noun'.
12. (2) Replace 'play' with 'plays'. Rule: Each of + Plural Noun + Singular verb.
13. (3) Replace 'habit' with 'habits'.
'One of' is followed by Plural Noun.
14. (2) Replace 'my teacher' with 'my teachers'.
'One of' is followed by Plural Noun.
15. (1) Replace 'one of my friend' with 'one of my friends'.
• 'One of' is followed by plural noun and singular verb.

★ 'Neither'	'0' out of 'two'. ('दो' में से 'एक भी नहीं')
★ 'None'	'0' out of 'More than two'. ('दो से अधिक' में से 'एक भी नहीं')
★ 'Either'	'1' out of two. ('दो' में से एक)
★ 'One'	'1' out of 'More than two'. ('दो से अधिक' में से 'एक')
★ 'Every'	प्रत्येक
★ 'Each'	जब प्रत्येक पर जोर दिया जाए तो

1. Neither of the three routes are safe.
2. None of my knees needs surgery.
3. Either of the fifty guests has lost his bag.
4. ____ part of a banana tree is useful.
5. Man must value ____ stage of his life.
(A) Each (B) Every
(C) All (D) Any
6. Neither of these two documents (1)/ support your claim (2)/ on the property. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC
Exam. 04.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (North Zone))

Answers

1. Change 'neither' into 'none' and 'are' into 'is'.
2. Change 'none' into 'neither'.
3. Change 'either' into 'one'.
4. Ans.→ 'each'
5. Ans. (A) → 'each'
6. (2) Replace 'support' with 'supports'.
The structure should be
Neither of + plural noun + singular verb

7. Neither of the sisters (1)/ are sensible enough (2)/ to carry out the plan.(3)/ No error (4)

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

8. Neither of the scout leaders know (1)/ how to trap wild animals (2)/ or how to prepare them for mounting (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC CGL-2016 (7th September, Morning)

9. One of these two books is good.
(1) Any of this (2) Either of these
(3) Any other of this (4) No improvement

(SSC GL Tier-I Exam. 19.10.2014)

Answers

7. (2) Replace 'are' with 'is' because 'neither of' is followed by Plural Noun and Singular Verb
8. (1) Replace 'know' with 'knows'. 'Neither of' takes singular verb.
9. (2) Replace 'one of these' with 'either of these'. 'Either' is used for 'two person'



1. One of the boys who have submitted their work has done his work himself
P.N P.V P.A S.V S.A S.P

2. She is one of the greatest leaders that was active in freedom struggle.
3. He is one of the players who plays for his country and not for money.
4. It is I who is to blame.
5. Isn't it me who is at loss?
6. It is I (1)/who is to blame.(2)/for this bad situation(3)./ No Error.(4)

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 05.12.2004)

7. Kambli is one of the players (1)/ who has been selected (2)/ for the test match. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)

8. He is one of those writers (1)/who has won acclaim (2)/the world over.(3)/No error (4).

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 31.7.2005)

9. Do you know that it was I (1)/ who has done (2)/ this piece of beautiful work? (3)/ No error.(4)

(SSC Combined Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 26.06.2011 (First Sitting)

10. One of the most important factor (1)/ that contribute to the success of a person (2)/ is his sincerity. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, Kolkata Region)

Answers

2. Change 'was' into 'were'.
3. Change 'plays' into 'play' and 'his' into 'their'.
4. Change 'is' into 'am'.
5. Change 'me' into 'I' and 'is' into 'am'
'It + be' takes Subject form of Pronoun.

6. (2) Replace 'is' with 'am'. The verb that follows a relative pronoun (here 'who') agrees to the antecedent to the relative pronoun (here 'I')
7. (2) Replace 'has' with 'have'.
The verb used after the relative Pronoun depends upon its antecedent. Here 'antecedent' of 'who' is plural.
So plural verb will be used.
8. (2) Replace 'has' with 'have'.
The verb that comes after relative Pronoun depends upon its antecedent. Here antecedent of Relative Pronoun (who) is Plural Noun (writers) hence it will agree with Plural verb (have).
9. (2) Replace 'has done' with 'have done'. The verb to be used after Relative Pronoun depends on its antecedent. Here antecedent of 'who' is 'I', hence it will agree with plural verb (have) but the sentence is in past. So change 'have' into 'had'.
- 10.(1) Replace 'factor' with 'factors'.
'One of' is followed by Plural Noun and Singular Verb.

 In the examples given above, the 'verb' following the 'Relative Pronoun' agrees to the 'antecedent' to the Relative Pronoun'.

(ऊपर दिए गये उदाहरणों में ये देखें कि 'Relative Pronoun' के बाद आने वाला 'Verb' 'Relative Pronoun' के **Antecedent** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा)

 Apart from this try to understand the meaning of the whole sentence and use suitable parts of speech.

(इसके अलावा पूरे वाक्य के अर्थ को समझते हुए उपयुक्त **Parts of Speech** का प्रयोग करें)

 There is only one of his novels that have been published.

'Change 'have' into 'has'. Here 'Only one novel' has been published is what the sentence means. (यहाँ वाक्य का अर्थ है सिर्फ एक **novel** ही छपा है।)

SSC TIER-III + SSC CHSL TIER-II



DESCRIPTIVE ENGLISH

Classes On
Letter Writing
Impressive Essays
Essays On
Social Issues
Current Issues

ONLY
3499/-

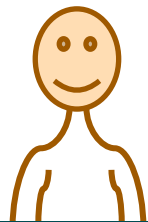


Only One Option For Descriptive Paper → NEETU SINGH

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 9555108888 , 9555208888

CAUSATIVE VERBS

8



Subject

Requests,
Orders,
Forces,
Pays etc



Agent

Does

Verb

on

Object



Causative Verbs — Verbs that indicate that one person (Subject) causes another person (Agent) to do (verb) on someone or something (Object). The Subject can cause the Agent to do something either by paying, requesting, asking or forcing the Agent to do it.

(वो Verbs जो ये बताता है कि कोई व्यक्ति (कर्ता) किसी दूसरे व्यक्ति (Agent) को आदेश दे कर, निवेदन कर के, दबाव डाल कर या पैसे देकर कार्य (क्रिया) कराता है और क्रिया किसी व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु (Object) पर होता है।)

CAUSATIVE VERBS

Have

Get

Make

HAVE

STRUCTURE - 1

Sub. + have + agent + Bare Infinitive + Obj.

according to
tense

V_{b.f.}

STRUCTURE - 2

Sub. + have + obj + V₃ + by + agent

according to
tense

Eg:

1. I had him do the work.
2. She has Alok do her homework.
3. Rajesh will have Rohini buy a sari for his mother.

Eg:

1. I had the work done by him.
2. Mohit has his car washed every week.
3. I will have my suit stitched soon.

Eg.: I am going (1)/ to have this certificate (2)/ attest by the Director. (3)/
No error. (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator &
LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (North Zone)

Ans:- (3) 'attested' will replace 'attest'. Here 'have' is a causative verb that takes V_3 after it. If 'by agent' at the end.

GET

STRUCTURE - 1

Sub. + get + agent + Infinitive + Obj.

according
to tense

to+ $V_{b.f.}$

Eg:

1. I got the servant to clean my house.
2. I will get an agent to book my ticket.
3. I always get an experienced teacher to teach my students.
4. Get this book (1)/ be published (2)/ in time. (3)/ No error. (4)

STRUCTURE - 2

Sub. + get + obj. + V_3 + by + Agent

according
to tense

Eg:

1. Manisha got her car sold.
2. People will get their names registered.
3. She usually gets her hair coloured.

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator &
LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (North Zone)

5. We hope devotees will (1)/ participate in the event and (2)/ get spiritually benefit. (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (steno.) 2017, 11 Sept., Morning

Answers

4. (2) Remove 'be'. After causative verb 'get', V_3 comes.
5. (3) Change 'benefit' into 'benefitted' because 'get' is followed by V_3 .

MAKE

STRUCTURE

Sub. + make + Agent + $V_{b.f.}$ + obj.

According to tense

Eg:-

1. I made him do the work.
2. I will make the students complete the syllabus in time.
3. She makes us get up early in the morning.

Note 'Make' as Causative Verb takes 'Bare Infinitive' in Active Voice and Infinitive in Passive Voice. (Causative Verb के रूप में Active Voice में 'Make' के बाद 'Bare Infinitive' आता है और Passive Voice में Infinitive आता है।)

Eg:- 1. He made us do the work. (A.V)

We were made to do the work by him. (P.V)

2. She made the child to study hard.

(1) to study hard

(2) No Error

(3) She made

(4) the child

3. The landlady made me changing the design of the kitchen three times.

(1) the design

(2) made me

(3) changing

(4) of the kitchen

**(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO &
PA/SA Exam, 06.12.2015 (1st
Sitting) TF No. 1375232)**

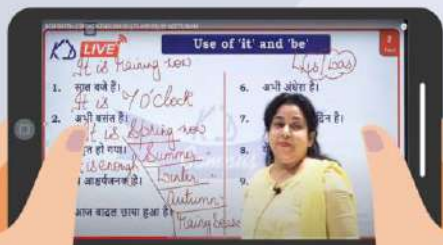
SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018
12 March, 2019 Evening

2. (1) Replace 'to study' with 'study'. After causative verb 'made' bare infinitive ($V_{b, f}$) is used.

3. (3) Replace 'changing' with 'change'. Make + V_{b.f.} Make when used as a causative verb is followed by Bare Infinitive (base form of verb)

EXPERT INSTRUCTORS

LEARN FROM EXPERIENCED FACULTY



ENGLISH

CHECK THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN

Have

1. Agent may or may not be given in the sentence.
(वाक्य में **Agent** हो भी सकता है और नहीं भी।)
2. The Main action is in (मुख्य कार्य का **form** होगा)–
(1) Bare Infinitive (V_{b.f})
(2) V₃

Get

1. Agent may or may not be given in the sentence.
(वाक्य में **Agent** हो भी सकता है और नहीं भी।)
2. The Main action is in (मुख्य कार्य का **form** होगा)–
(1) Infinitive (to V_{b.f})
(2) V₃

Make

1. Agent is present in the sentence.
(वाक्य में **Agent** होगा)
2. The Main action is in (मुख्य कार्य का **form** होगा)
(1) Bare Infinitive (V_{b.f}) – In Active Voice
(2) Infinitive (to + V_{b.f}) – In Passive Voice

There are two more similar verbs that are not Causative Verbs by definition but they make similar sentence structure.

(दो अन्य **Verbs** जो नाम से **Causative Verb** नहीं हैं परन्तु वाक्य के बनावट से **Causative Verb** की तरह हैं।)

1 LET

2 HELP

1 LET

Meaning → Allow / Permit (अनुमति देना)

STRUCTURE - 1

Subject + let + agent + V_{b.f} + object
according to Tense

Eg:-

1. I will let you drive my car.
2. My father has let me choose my career.
3. I cannot let you swim in this pool.
4. Let me go.

2 HELP

Meaning → सहायता करना

STRUCTURE - 1

Subject + help + agent + Infinitive + obj
according to tense V_{b.f}

Eg:-

He helped me to do my work.

STRUCTURE - 2

Subject + help + agent + Bare Infinitive + obj
according to tense V_{b.f}

Eg:-

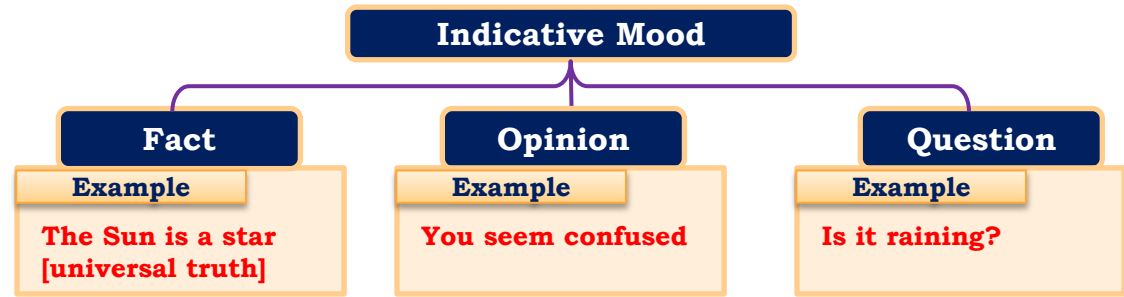
She helped me prepare lunch.

It indicates the mood or intention of the speaker.

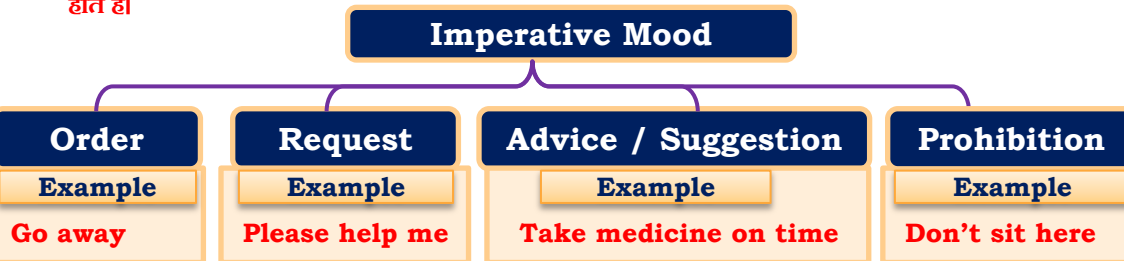
यह वक्ता का इशारा या **Mood** को दर्शाता है।

There are three moods in English:

अंग्रेजी में तीन **Moods** होते हैं।



- Remember that facts come in universal truth which is in Present Indefinite Tense. / ध्यान रखें कि एक 'universal truth के facts' Present Indefinite Tense में ही होते हैं।



- How Mood influences Narration:

देखें कैसे **Mood Narration** पर प्रभाव डालता है:

- He said, "Babies drink milk." [Universal truth]
He said that Babies drink milk.

- No change of tense takes place if a universal truth is changed into indirect speech.

यदि एक **universal truth** को **indirect speech** में बदलते हैं तब **Tense** को नहीं बदला जाता है।

- He said, "Babies, drink milk." [Imperative sentence]
He ordered the babies to drink milk.

- Here just a comma (,) has changed the mood of the sentence
यहाँ सिर्फ एक **comma (,)** ने वाक्य के **mood** को परिवर्तित कर दिया।

Subjunctive Mood

Present Subjunctive Mood

Indirect Suggestions, Orders, Requests, Requirements etc.

Past Subjunctive Mood

Unrealistic Imaginations and Improbabilities.

Past Subjunctive Mood

- We use 'V₂' (except 'was') in Past Subjunctive Mood. It expresses improbabilities. / हम **Past Subjunctive Mood** में 'V₂' (was को छोड़ कर) का प्रयोग करते हैं। तब यह **improbabilities** को दर्शाता है।

Examples

- If I _____ you, I would beat him black and blue. (be)
- What would you do if you _____ a dinosaur? (see)
- It's time you _____ in bed. (be)
- He talks as if he was the Prime Minister. (Change 'was' into 'were'.)
- He walks as if the whole earth belongs to him. (Change 'belongs' into 'belonged')

Answers

- were
- saw
- were

Present Subjunctive Mood

- We use the base form of verb in Present Subjunctive Mood. It expresses indirect suggestions, orders etc.
हम **Present Subjunctive Mood** में **verb** की **base form** का प्रयोग करते हैं। तब, यह **indirect suggestions, orders etc.** को दर्शाता है।

Examples

- This civil case doesn't require that he is present. (Change 'is' into 'be')
- In this criminal case, it is imperative that he remains present in the court. (Change 'remains' into 'remain')
- According to a parable, Savitri prayed to the Almighty that her husband be brought back to life. (No error)

Present Subjunctive Mood

4. Our teacher suggested to us that every one of us _____ our best shot.
(i) to give (ii) gave (iii) gives (iv) give
Ans. (iv)
5. The cabin crew advised that every passenger fasten his seat belt. **(No error)**
6. I would rather he stay at home. **(Change 'stay' into 'stayed')**
7. I had rather tell him the truth. **(No error)**
8. The staff demanded that they be paid the Diwali bonus. **(No error)**
9. God saves the world ! **(Change 'saves' into 'save')**
10. May God bless him ! **(No error)**
11. Long live the king ! **(No error)**
12. It is necessary that every boarder informs his parents. **(Change 'informs' into 'inform')**

Present Subjunctive Mood

Explanation of 6 & 7

Would rather, Had rather, Had Sooner, Had better express wish or strong desire. They take second form of verb (V2) after them but if followed by another subject (as in 6), and base form if no such subject follows (as in 7).

व्याख्या 6 और 7

Would rather, Had rather, Had Sooner, Had better प्रबल इच्छा या सलाह को दर्शाता है। यहाँ subject के बाद base form आता है (जैसे- sentence 7) परन्तु अगर had rather, had better इत्यादि के बाद कोई दूसरा subject आ जाए (जैसे- Sentence 6) तो V₂ (was को छोड़ कर) का प्रयोग होगा।

Example

The bank would rather you paid by cheque but you had rather pay in cash.

Inversion is the reversal of the normal word order in a sentence or a phrase.

साधारण वाक्य में शब्दों के क्रम का उल्टा **Inversion** कहलाता है।

These are two types of inversion.

'Inversion' दो प्रकार के हैं-

- 1 SUBJECT-VERB INVERSION (Complete Inversion)** – Where the subject and the main verb switch positions and the word order becomes verb + subject. Generally this order is used when a sentence starts with an Adverb of place. **SUBJECT-VERB INVERSION (Complete Inversion)** – जहाँ subject एवं main verb अपने-अपने स्थान को आपस में अदला-बदली कर लेते हैं और शब्दों का क्रम हो जाता है- **verb + subject** सामान्यतः ये क्रम का प्रयोग तब होता है जब वाक्य की शुरुआत **Adverb of place** से होती है।

E.g. Here comes the rain!
verb Sub

- 2 SUBJECT-AUXILIARY VERB INVERSION (Partial Inversion)**:- Where the subject and the auxiliary verb switch positions and the word order becomes 'Auxiliary verb + subject + main verb'.

SUBJECT-AUXILIARY VERB INVERSION (Partial Inversion):- जहाँ subject एवं auxiliary verb अपने-अपने स्थान को परस्पर बदल लेते हैं और शब्दों का क्रम हो जाता है- 'Auxiliary verb + subject + main verb'.

E.g. Never did I go there.
Subject
Auxiliary Main
verb verb

Inversion is used in the following types of sentences-

Inversion का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित प्रकार के वाक्यों में होता है।

- 1. Interrogative Sentences (प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में):-**

- E.g.**
- Do I know him?
A.V S main verb
 - Isn't he working hard?
A.V S main verb
 - How long it takes (1)/to travel from Chennai to Trichy (2)/ by train? (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC GL Tier-II Exam. 21.09.2014)
 - Why she was angry with her son?
(1) she was (2) angry with
(3) her son (4) Why

Answers

- (1) The first part of the sentence should read as ... 'How long does it take'. In an interrogative sentence the helping verb comes before the subject.
- (1) Replace 'she was' with 'was she'.

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018 12 March, 2019 Morning

2. IMAGINARY POSITION OF PRESENT

If the sentence is of imaginary position, it is of the following structure-
अगर वाक्य काल्पनिक पद का हो तो उस वाक्य का **structure** निम्नलिखित प्रकार से होगी-

E.g.

If I were a bird, I would fly.
If+ Sub main verb Sub would V_{b.f}

But if we remove 'if' from such imaginary sentences, 'were' which is the main verb here, comes before the subject and then the structure of the sentence is-

अगर **imaginary sentences**, से 'if' हटा दिया जाए तो 'were' जो यहाँ **main verb** है **subject** के पहले आ जाएगा और तब वाक्य का **structure** होगा-

E.g.

Were I a bird, I would fly.
main verb Sub Sub would V_{b.f}

3

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF PAST:- Conditional sentences of past is generally of the following formation.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES:- भूतकाल **Conditionals Sentences** के वाक्यों का **formation** निम्नलिखित प्रकार से होता है-

E.g.

If I had seen you, I would have stopped my car.
If+ Sub H.V V₃ Obj Sub+ H.V have V₃ Obj

But if we remove 'if' from such Imaginary Sentences, 'had' which is an auxiliary verb here comes before the subject and then the structure of the sentence is-

अगर हम ऐसे **Imaginary sentences** से 'If' को हटा देते हैं तो **auxiliary verb 'had'** **subject** के पहले आ जाता है और वाक्य का **structure** इस प्रकार बन जाता है।

E.g.

Had I seen you, I would have stopped my car.
If+ Sub V₃ Obj Sub+ H.V have V₃ Obj

- 'Should' can come in place of 'if' in Conditional Sentences (of real or open condition).

'Should' का प्रयोग भी 'if' के स्थान पर हो सकता है (**Real** या **open condition** वाले वाक्यों में)

E.g.

Should you need my help, do call me.

4

SHORT ANSWERS:- Short answers start with 'So' if the answer is positive and 'Neither' if the answer is negative. If a sentence starts with 'So' or 'Neither' the auxiliary verb comes before the subject.

SHORT ANSWERS:- 'Short Answers' की शुरुआत तब 'So' से होती है जब **answer positive** हो और 'Neither' से होती है अगर **answer negative** है। अगर वाक्य के शुरुआत में 'so' या 'neither' आता है तो वाक्य **inversion** में होता है।

E.g.

- I don't like playing football.
Negative Short Answer → Neither do I.
- I am tired.
Positive Short Answer → So am I.

In the same way there are certain other examples though they do not fall in the category of short answers.

इसी प्रकार कुछ अन्य उदाहरण भी हैं होंलाकि वे **short answers** के अंतर्गत नहीं आते हैं-

E.g. 1. Wheat is not native to India and neither is Barley. (✓)

Note: She how inversion i.e. 'is' before 'Barley' comes if the sentence starts with neither but it is not a case in a normal sentence i.e.

अगर वाक्य **Neither** से शुरू होता है तो देखे 'is' का प्रयोग 'Barley' से पहले हो रहा है लेकिन साधारण वाक्य में ऐसा नहीं है।

Wheat is not native to India and Barley isn't either. (✓)

Explanation: **Barley** + **isn't** comes if the sentence starts with a 'subject'.
Sub Verb
Barley + **isn't** का प्रयोग होगा। अगर वाक्य 'subject' (**Barley**) से शुरू होता है।
Sub Verb

E.g. 2. Canada does not require the citizens of the United States to have passport when they visit the country and

Answers:

- (i) Mexico _____
(ii) _____ Mexico

- (i) Mexico doesn't either
(ii) Neither does Mexico.

5 OPTATIVE SENTENCES:- In Sentences of 'wish', 'prayer' and curse 'May' comes before the 'subject'.

OPTATIVE SENTENCES:- 'wish' एवं 'prayers', वाले वाक्यों में 'May' का प्रयोग 'subject' से पहले होगा।

E.g. 1. **May** **god** **bless** **you.**
May Sub V_{b.f} Obj

2. **Long** **live** **the king.**
Adv. M.V (V_{b.f}) Sub.

OR

May **the king** **live** **long.**
May Sub. V_{b.f} Adv

6 INTRODUCTORY COMPARATIVE:- If a sentence starts with a comparative degree, the sentence will be in inversion.

INTRODUCTORY COMPARATIVE:- अगर एक वाक्य की शुरुआत **Comparative Degree** से हो तो वाक्य **inversion** में होगा।

E.g. 1. More important than my personal view **is** the student's opinion.

2. No less beneficial than the telephon **was** the telegraph machine.
verb subject
verb subject

यहाँ **Inversion** का प्रयोग तभी होगा जब Verb-‘be’ एवं be के forms होंगे।

यहाँ **Inversion** का प्रयोग तभी होगा जब Verb-‘be’ एवं be के forms होंगे।

INTRODUCTORY WORD IS 'V₁+ING' / 'V₃' VERB :- Inversion follows when the sentence starts with 'V₃/ing' form of a verb.

INTRODUCTORY 'V₁+ING'/' V₃' VERB हो तो :- जब वाक्य की शुरुआत **V₃** या **V₁ + ing** से हो, तो आगे वाक्य में **Inversion** का प्रयोग होगा।

E.g.

1. **Lost among the old clothes was my new favourite shirt which I had been looking for a long time.**
2. **Located between San Francisco and Marin County is the Golden Gate Bridge.**
3. **Burning out of control was a dense forest of Australia.**

8 **NEGATIVE INTRODUCTORY:-** Inversion follows when a sentence starts with 'no', 'not' or 'never' or when such a word is used at the starting of a sentence that is negative in meaning such as rarely, hardly, seldom, barely, little or scarcely.

NEGATIVE INTRODUCTORY:- अगर वाक्य की शुरुआत 'no', 'not' या 'never' से हो या फिर वाक्य की शुरुआत ऐसे शब्द से हो जो अर्थ से **negative** हो जैसे-**rarely, hardly, seldom, barely, little** या **scarcely** तो आगे वाक्य **Inversion** में होगा।

E.g.

1. Nowhere else in the world **do we find** such diversity in culture.
H.V Sub M.V
2. Never in the history of India, **did we see** such a shrewd mentor like Chanakya.
H.V Sub M.V
3. Not a word **did our Prime Minister speak** when the opposition heaped him with accusations.
H.V Sub M.V
4. **Hardly had I reached** the main road when the rain started.
H.V Sub M.V

5. No sooner he had left the house than there was a phone call for him.

- (1) No sooner (2) he had left
(3) for him (4) than there was

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 13 March, 2019 Evening

6. Scarcely she had heard the news when she fainted.

- (1) she fainted (2) when
(3) heard the news (4) Scarcely she had

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Morning

7. Hardly he had stepped out of the house when a tree fell on the roof.

- (1) out of (2) Hardly he had
(3) when a tree (4) fell on the roof

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Evening

Answers:

5. (2) Replace 'he had' with 'had he'. No sooner + auxiliary verb + subject. (See 'Negative Introductory Sentence' in Inversion)
6. (4) Replace 'she had' with 'had she'. Scarcely is followed by Inversion if the sentence starts with scarcely.
7. (2) Replace 'he had' with 'had he'. Hardly is followed by Inversion.

8. No sooner (1)/ I had spoken, (2) than he left. (3)/ No error. (4)
 (SSC CGL-2016 (2nd September, Evening))
9. No sooner (1)/ they had received the guests (2)/ than they began entertaining them. (3)/ No error (4)
 (SSC Graduate Level Tier-II, Exam. 16.09.2012)
10. We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).
 (SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5))
11. Not only we seen (1)/ the Kali temple but (2)/ also the Thirunelli temple. (3)/ No error (4)
 (SSC CHSL-2016, 30th Jan, Evening)
12. Not only we saw (1)/ the President but also (2)/ the Chief Minister of Delhi. (3)/ No Error (4)
 (SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017, 2 July, 2018 Morning)
13. Neither we borrow nor lend.
14. No sooner the minister had heard (1)/ about the accident (2)/ than he rushed to the spot. (3)/ No Error (4)
 (SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 17.03.2013, IInd Sitting)
15. Not only they went to see a film, but also had dinner out.
 (1) Not only did they go
 (2) They didn't go not only
 (3) They not only went
 (4) No improvement
 (SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

Best Seller
 in
 General Competitive Exams Category

The 1st Choice of Students for Last 10 Years

English for general competitions

Study the Whole Book from Neetu Singh at just ₹99/-

Vol-1 (English)

by Neetu Singh

KD Publication

Visit us: <http://www.kdpublication.com/> | Follow: www.facebook.com/kdpub202

♥ Recommended by Toppers ♥

SSC CGL
TIER-I, 2020
 Solved By Experts
 BILINGUAL

20

Solved Papers

Code Redeem करें और सीधे Experts से घर बैठे पढ़ें!

- Detail Explanations of Each & Every Question.
- Vocabularies Both in English & Hindi.
- Explanations Based On Concept & Trick.

By Neetu Singh

Visit us: <http://www.kdpublication.com/> | Follow: www.facebook.com/kdpub202

8. (2) Replace 'I had' with 'had I' because when a sentence begins with 'No sooner' it takes inversion form.
9. (2) Replace 'they had' with 'had they' because when a sentence begins with 'no sooner' it takes inversion form.
- 10.(3) Replace 'than' with 'when'. 'We had hardly reached' is the correct structure as hardly comes after the 'Helping Verb' and before the 'Main Verb'.
11. (1) Whenever we begin a sentence with negative adverb or adverbial phrase, we use inversion. In inversion verb comes before the subject. Hence replace 'Not only we seen' with 'Not only did we see' or 'not only have we seen'. We need 'did' as 'Helping Verb' if 'Main Verb' is 'V₂'.
12. (1) Either use 'not only' after saw or use structure 'not only did we see'. Conjunction should be followed by same part of speech.
13. Change 'we borrow' into 'do we borrow'. We need 'do' as 'Helping Verb' if the 'Main Verb' is 'V₁'.
14. (2) Replace 'he had' with 'had he'. Hardly is followed by Inversion.
15. (1) When a sentence begins with 'a negative word' it takes inversion form.
Replace 'Not only they went' with 'not only did they go'.



VOCABULARY
BY NEETU SINGH 
VOD BATCH

Download Now


ONLY 499/-
Buy Now

Email: online@kdcampus.org
Contact: 9555108888, 9555208888

ADVERBIAL INTRODUCTORY :- Inversion follows when a sentence starts with an Adverb. If the Adverb is Adverb of Place, the sentence is in Complete Inversion (See sentence 1, 2 & 4)

ADVERBIAL INTRODUCTORY :- जब वाक्य की शुरुआत 'Adverb' से हो, तो **Inversion** का प्रयोग होगा। अगर **Adverb of place** का प्रयोग हो तो वाक्य **Complete Inversion** में होगा (वाक्य 1, 2 & 4 देखें)

E.g.

- On a hill lived an old saint.
M.V Subject
- Under a tree was seated a cunning fox.
H.V M.V Subject
- Only when the virus enters your body does a disease occur.
H.V Sub. M.V
- Seldom we have been (1)/ treated in such (2)/ a rude manner. (3)/ No error (4)
SSC CHSL-2016 19th Jan, Evening
- So hoarse he was that he could not make the speech.
(1) So hoarse he was (2) that he could not make
(3) the speech (4) No error
(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam, 30.08.2015)

Answers

- (1) When a sentence begins with a negative adverb like never, barely, seldom, etc the auxiliary verb comes before the subject. Hence place 'have' before 'we'.
- (1) When a sentence begins with 'so' it takes inversion form. Hence the sentence should read as.
So hoarse was he that ...

INVERSION FOLLOWS IF IN A SENTENCE THE FOLLOWING CORRELATIVES ARE USED.

निम्नलिखित **Correlatives** के साथ **Inversion** का प्रयोग होता है।

So..... that
Not only..... but also
No sooner..... than
Hardly..... when
Scarcely..... when

In such sentences, Inversion follows only when the sentence starts with the first part of the correlatives given here. अगर वाक्य **So, not only** जैसे शब्दों से यानि **Correlatives** के प्रथम भाग से शुरू हो, तो **Inversion** का प्रयोग होगा।

- No sooner (1)/ I had spoken, (2) than he left. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)

Answers

- (2) Replace 'I had' with 'had I' because when a sentence begin with 'No sooner' it takes inversion form.

E.g.

- So tired was I that I was unable to walk.
M.V Subject
- Not only does he know me but also my parents.
H.V Sub M.V
- Scarcely had I boarded the train, when it departed.
H.V M.V

11

Complete Inversion follows if a sentence starts with 'here', 'there', 'away', 'out', 'in', 'down', or 'up' followed by a Noun.

अगर वाक्य की शुरुआत **with 'here', 'there', 'away', 'out', 'in', 'down' या 'up' से हो** और उसके बाद **Noun** का प्रयोग हो तो आगे **Complete Inversion** का प्रयोग होगा।

E.g.

- Up goes the water vapour and down comes the rain!
M.V Noun M.V Noun
- Here comes our chief guest!
M.V Noun
- There goes the plane!
M.V Noun

But if a sentence starts with the words given above but followed by a Pronoun, a normal sentence will follow.

लेकिन अगर इन्हीं वाक्यों **Noun** के स्थान पर **Pronoun** का प्रयोग हो तो वाक्य साधारण वाक्य होगा, **inversion नहीं**।

E.g.

- Here he comes.
Pronoun Verb
- There it is.
Verb

12

See some common phrases given below. These phrases will be followed by Inversion.

निम्नलिखित **Phrases** के बाद **Inversion** का प्रयोग होगा।

- Under no circumstance
 - In no way
 - On no account (means – under no circumstance)
 - On no condition (means – absolutely not.)
 - At no time. → कभी भी नहीं
 - Only yesterday/only last week/only day before yesterday etc.
 - Round the corner (means- soon to take place → जल्दी ही)
 - Five miles beyond the..... /ten metres above the sea level etc.
 - To such an extent.
 - To such a degree } इस हद तक
 - So well/so absurdly (So + adverb of manner)

E.g.

- Round the corner is your examination.
M.V subject

2. So well was the work done that I could not point out even a single mistake.
H.V object M.V
3. Ten miles beyond the hill was seen a ferocious tiger.
H.V M.V object
4. Only yesterday did I meet him.
H.V Sub M.V
5. To such an extent was the car damaged that it couldn't be repaired.
H.V object M.V

CORRECT THE UNDERLINED PART IF NEEDED

1. Not a word he spoke when he heard the news of his son's demise.
2. Round the corner your exam is.
3. Never in the history of India we find such a feeling of nationalism.
4. Under a tree a cunning fox was seated.
5. Here the rain comes.
6. There our chief guest comes.
7. There lived a saint and on a hill his tiny hut was.
8. Twenty miles beyond the terrain, some leopards were seen.
9. Little we know about his miserable condition.
10. To such an extent the condition has aggravated that no one can solve it.
11. Only the day before yesterday we saw him.
12. She will not do anything and neither her brother will.
13. Hardly I saw him intently when he ran away.
14. Not only he knows me but also my parents.
15. Under no circumstance we can allow such blatant act of corruption.
16. Seldom we go to our native village.
17. If I had come to know the truth, I would have helped him with all that he needed. (Remove if and restructure the sentence)
18. I haven't been to any European country and neither my parents have.
19. Never I go to his place as I find him very egoist and self-praising.
20. No sooner the government enacted the Hindu Marriage Act than the condition of Hindu women started getting better.
21. Along the border several sounds of firing was heard.
22. Down the stream went rumbling.
23. Seldom I have seen such a beautiful monument.
24. Hardly he knows anything about the political situation of his native state.
25. Under no circumstance I can accept your proposal.
26. On no condition, I will sell my land.
27. Only by taking some amount of money on loan, I can buy this bungalow.
28. Here the train comes.
29. So well he organized the party that everyone was left spell-bound.
30. So rudely he spoke that I felt extremely offended.

Change:

1. 'He spoke' into 'did he speak'.
2. 'Your exam is' into 'is your exam'.
3. 'We find' into 'do we find'
4. 'A cunning fox was seated' into 'was seated a cunning fox'.
5. 'The rain comes' into 'comes the rain'.
6. 'Our chief guest comes' into 'comes our chief guest'.
7. 'His tiny hut was' into 'was his tiny hut'.
8. Change 'some leopards were seen' into 'were seen some leopards'.
9. 'We know' into 'do we know'.
10. 'The condition has aggravated' into 'has the condition aggravated'.
11. 'We saw him' into 'did we see him'.
12. 'Her brother will' into 'will her brother'.
13. 'I saw' into 'did I see' or 'had I seen him'.
14. 'He knows' into 'does he know'.
15. 'We can' into 'can we'.
16. 'We go' into 'do we go'.
17. 'Had I come'.
18. 'My parents have' into 'have my parents'.
19. 'I go' into 'do I go'.
20. 'The government enacted' into 'did the government enact'.
21. Change 'several sounds of firing was heard' into 'were heard several sounds of firing'.
22. 'Down the stream went' into 'Down went the stream'.
23. 'I have seen' into 'have I seen'.
24. 'He knows' into 'does he know'.
25. 'I can' into 'can I'.
26. 'I will' into 'will I'.
27. 'I can buy' into 'can I buy'.
28. 'The train comes' into 'comes the train'.
29. 'He organized' into 'did he organize'.
30. 'He spoke' into 'did he speak'.

DON'T WORRY IF YOU MISS ANY CLASS

ALL CLASSES ARE RECORDED

All our live classes gets recorded. So even if you miss any class or join late, you will have access to previous classes which are recorded.



See the examples given below. (नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें)

- I want to study.
Noun (Object)
- I want to study English.
V (Object) but like a verb
is followed by
Object
is followed by
- To err is human, to forgive divine.
Noun (Subject) Noun (Subject)
- Swimming is a good exercise.
Noun (Subject)
- We prohibit smoking.
Noun (Object)
- We avoid cutting trees.
V (Object) but like a verb
is followed by
Object
is followed by

Answers

- (2) Replace 'get' with 'getting'. Here we need a Gerund.
- (3) Replace 'to receives' with 'to receive'. 'To' is followed by base form of verb.
- (3) Replace 'listening' with 'listen'. To takes base form of verb.

★ Infinitive (to + V_{b.f.}) and Gerund (V₁ + ing) are Nouns that retain the qualities of verb too. / Infinitive (to + V_{b.f.}) और Gerund (V₁ + ing) Noun है लेकिन ये 'Verb' की खासियत भी बनाये रहते हैं।

🔍 How to identify a Noun? / Noun की पहचान कैसे करें?

Noun comes in place of Subject and Object. See examples 1, 3, 4 & 5 ('Noun' 'Subject' और 'Object' के स्थान पर आता है। उदाहरण 1, 3, 4 & 5 देखें)

🔍 How to identify a Verb? / Verb की पहचान कैसे करें?

- Once you graduate (1)/ get a job (2)/ would be easier (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (steno.) 2017, 14 Sept., Evening

- I'm going to the airport to receives my friend.
(1) my friend
(2) to the airport
(3) to receives
(4) I'm going

CGL MAINS 2018, 11 September, 2019

- He switched on the TV to listening to the speech of the PM on the Independence Day.
(1) He switched on the TV
(2) of the PM
(3) to listening to the speech
(4) on the Independence Day.

CGL MAINS 2018, 12 September, 2019

Transitive Verbs take an **Object** to give a complete sense to the sentence.

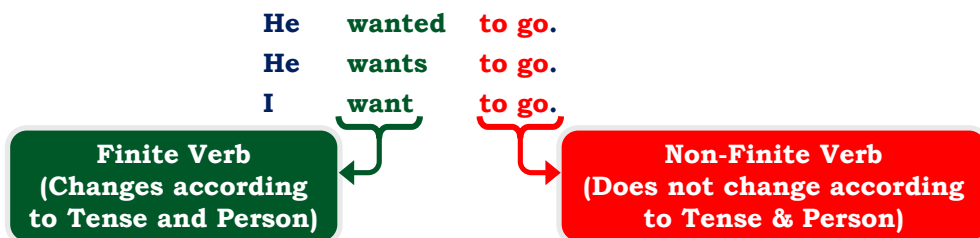
(**Transitive Verbs** को वाक्य के पूर्ण अर्थ के लिए एक **Object** की जरूरत पड़ती है)

See examples 2 & 6 (उदाहरण 2 और 6 देखें)

★ **Infinitive (to + V_{b.f.}) and Gerund (V₁ + ing) are Non-finite verbs.**

Infinitive (to + V_{b.f.}) और Gerund (V₁ + ing) Non-finite verbs हैं।

See the examples given below: (नीचे दिए गए उदाहरण को देखें)



★ Now let us see the examples given below and understand the concepts of **Infinitive & Gerund**.

(अब निम्नलिखित उदाहरण देखें और **Infinitive** एवं **Gerund** के **Concepts** समझें)

1. **I know to swim.** (×)
I know how to swim. (✓)

Concept 1 If 'know', 'wonder', 'learn', 'teach' & 'discover' are followed by an Infinitive, the Infinitive is preceded by a 'Wh Family' word.
यदि 'know', 'wonder', 'learn', 'teach' और 'discover' के बाद **Infinitive** का प्रयोग किया जाता है, तो **Infinitive** के पहले 'Wh Family' शब्द का प्रयोग होता है।

2. I wondered where to go.
3. She learnt how to drive.
4. I didn't know what to do.

★ He is addicted to smoking.

Prep V₁+ing

Explanation

A preposition is followed by a Noun or a Pronoun by if we find a verb there, change it into Gerund (V₁+ing) as we need a Noun there.

(**Preposition** के बाद **Noun** या **Pronoun** का प्रयोग होता है परंतु अगर **Verb** का प्रयोग हो तो **Verb** को **Noun** बना दे यानि **Gerund (V₁ + ing)**)

See the examples given below. (नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें)

1. He is accustomed to **drinking** coffee with his meals.
V₁+ing
2. I am averse to **getting** late.
V₁+ing

3. The police personnel came with a view to **inspecting** the premises.

के इरादे से

$V_1 + \text{ing}$

4. I am looking forward to **meeting** you.

संतुष्टि के साथ इंतजार करना

$V_1 + \text{ing}$

5. He was prone to **getting** infected as he was in containment zone.

संभावित

$V_1 + \text{ing}$

Explanation 3, 4, 5 :- All phrasal verbs are also followed by Noun/Gerund
(सभी phrasal verbs के बाद भी Noun/Gerund आते हैं)

6. Students are prohibited (1)/ to bring cycles (2)/ into the college. (3)/ No error.(4)

(SSC (10+2) Level DEO & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (1st Sitting (Delhi Zone)

7. They are looking forward (1)/ to meet (2)/ their parents (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC CGL-2016, (11th September, Morning)

8. I meant nothing (1)/ less than (2)/ to compel you to come. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 30.09.2007 (Second Sitting)

9. You should have used the money (1)/ for paying your debts (2)/ instead of buy a motor cycle. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level DEO & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (1st Sitting))

10. After he was caught cheating he was disqualified to appear at the examination.

(1) After he was caught cheating

(2) he was disqualified

(3) to appear at the examination

(4) No error

(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam, 30.08.2015)

11. I am sorry worrying you (1)/ with my troubles (2)/ but I could not help. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016, 27th Jan, Evening

Answers

6. (2) Replace 'to bring' with 'from bringing'.

7. (2) After preposition Gerund is used. Hence replace 'meet' with 'meeting'.

8. (3) Replace 'to compel' with 'compelling'. 'Than' is followed by ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ '.

9. (3) Replace 'buy' with 'buying'. After preposition '-ing' form of verb is used.

10. (3) Replace 'to appear' with 'from appearing'.

11. (1) Structure:

Sorry + for/ about + $V + \text{ing}$

Sorry + to have + V_3

for past actions

sorry + to + $V_{b.f}$ } for present action

In Part A

Replace 'sorry worrying you' with 'sorry for worrying you'.

In Part B

USED TO

as Adjective

Expresses habit

Sub + verb + used to + V₁ + ing

as Modal

Expresses Past Routine

Sub + used to + V_{b.f}

1. I got used to driving on the right when I was in London.

V₁ + ing

2. I use to going for a morning walk when I was living in Dehradun.

(1) living in Dehradun (2) for a morning walk

(3) when I was (4) use to going

CGL MAINS 2018, 11 September, 2019

2. **Answer (4):-** Replace 'use to going' with 'used to go'. For 'Past Routine', S + used to + base form of verb is used.

★ 1. I stopped playing cricket. 2. I stopped to play cricket.

V₁ + ing

to + V_{b.f}

STOP

Example 1

Meaning – बंद करना

If meaning of stop is to cease, stop takes 'Gerund'.

(अगर 'stop' का अर्थ है 'बंद करना' तो 'stop' के बाद 'Gerund' आएगा)

Example 2

Meaning – रुकना

If meaning of stop is to halt, stop takes 'Infinitive'.

(अगर 'stop' का अर्थ है 'रुकना' या 'ठहरना' तो stop के बाद 'Infinitive' आएगा)

★ 1. I regret to inform you that your flight has been cancelled.

2. I regret trusting people blindly.

REGRET

Example 1

'Formal use' – a feeling of sadness about something that you did or did not do.

(औपचारिक अर्थ → एक अफसोस कुछ करने या कुछ ना करने के लिए)

Here 'regret' is followed by 'Infinitive'.

(यहाँ 'regret' के बाद 'Infinitive' आता है)

Example 2

A feeling of sadness about something that you repent for and you cannot change now. / (अफसोस कुछ ऐसी बात के लिए जिसका आपको अफसोस है और जो अब परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता)

Here 'regret' is followed by 'Gerund'.

(यहाँ 'regret' के बाद 'Gerund' आता है)



1. I avoid cutting trees.
V₁+ing
2. Children love watching television.
V₁+ing
3. He quit drinking.
V₁+ing
4. My father doesn't mind being disturbed while he is asleep.
V₁+ing
5. It's worth trying once.
V₁+ing
6. There is no use crying over spilt milk.
V₁+ing

Explanation

There are certain verbs like 'avoid' after which if a 2nd Verb comes, the 2nd Verb will be in V₁ + ing form.

('Avoid' के जैसे कुछ ऐसे verbs होते हैं जिनके बाद 'V₁ + ing' आता है।)

Such Verbs

Avoid, Consider, Like, Love, Enjoy, Hate, Mind, No use, Wake up,

से बचना विचार करना

बुरा मानना कोई फायदा नहीं जानना

Deny, Dislike, Feel, Finish, Stop, Worth, Imagine, Quit, Miss, Begin, Start,

खंडन करना

बंद करना के लायक

छोड़ देना

Tolerate, Resent, Cannot stand/bear, Catch, Find, See, Notice, Watch and Hear, recall.

नापसंद करना

बर्दाश्त नहीं कर सकना

7. You should avoid (1)/ to travel (2)/in the rush hour. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)
8. The lawyer asked (1)/ if it was worth to take (2)/ the matter to court. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Combined Graduate Level Tier-I, Exam. 19.06.2011 (Second Sitting))
9. Several guests noticed Mr. Sharma (1)/collapsing in his chair (2)/ and gasping for breath. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Steno (Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 09.01.2011))
10. Another change that (1)/ I notice in her is that she (2)/ avoids to speak to me (3)/ No error
SSC CHSL-2016,19th Jan, Afternoon
11. Jayan woke up have a sore throat and by evening his voice had disappeared.
(1) woke up (2) by
(3) had disappeared (4) have
Stenographer – 2018, 6 Feb., 2019 Morning

12. Intrigued by this (1)/ problem, I began search (2)/ for a solution. (3)/ No Error (4)
 (SSC (steno.) 2017, 11 Sept., Morning)
13. I always enjoy (1)/ to read (2)/ books (3)/ No Error (4)
14. She doesn't mind to be disturbed.
 (1) being disturbed (2) to being disturbed
 (3) being disturbing (4) No improvement
 (SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 31.7.2005)
15. I have not finished to paint the door.
 (1) painting (2) the paint of
 (3) the painting (4) No improvement
 (SSC Multi-Tasking (Non-Technical) Staff Exam. 27.02.2011)
16. We saw a tiger approached to us.
 (1) approaching to us (2) approaching us
 (3) approaching towards us (4) No improvement
 (SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)
17. He avoids to speak to me.
 (1) to talk (2) speaking
 (3) speech (4) No improvement
 (SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam, 30.08.2015)

Answers

7. (2) Replace 'to travel' with 'travelling'.
 'Avoid' is followed by a Gerund (-ing form).
8. (2) Replace 'worth to take' with 'worth taking'. After 'worth' V₁+ing comes.
9. (4) No error
10. (3) These are certain verbs which are commonly followed by Gerund.
 e.g. admit, advise, avoid, consider, delay etc. Change 'to speak' into 'speaking'.
11. (4) Replace 'have (V₁)' with 'having'.
12. (2) Change 'Search' into 'to search' or 'Searching' because both 'Gerund' and 'Infinitive' can be used after begin.
13. (2) After 'enjoy' Gerund is used. Hence replace 'to read' with 'reading'.
14. (1) After 'mind' if any verb comes, it must be in Gerund form.
15. (1) After 'finish' if any verb comes, it must be in Gerund form.
16. (2) 'Approach' is not followed by any Preposition.
17. (2) After 'avoid' if any verb comes, it should be in Gerund form.
 Hence 'avoids speaking' should be used.

- ★ 1. I love going there.
2. I love to go there.

There are certain verbs like 'love' after which both 'Infinitive' and 'Gerund' can come mostly without any change in meaning

('Love' के जैसे कुछ ऐसे 'Verbs' होते हैं जिनके बाद 'Infinitive' और 'Gerund' दोनों का प्रयोग हो सकता है बिना अर्थ में कोई अंतर के।)

Such Verbs

Love, Like, Begin, Start, Continue, Hate, Intend, Dislike, Prefer.

इशारा
रखना

नापसंद
रखना

परिपूर्ण

More Explanations

1. I prefer riding to walking.
2. I prefer to go to school on foot.
3. I intend to learn French.
4. I intend learning French.
5. I like to sleep late at night.
6. I like sleeping late at night.
7. I remember going to London when I was a kid.
8. Please remember to post the letter.

'Remember' takes Gerund to refer some past time and Infinitive to refer some future time. / (**Remember** के बाद **Gerund** का प्रयोग भूतकाल के समय को सूचित, करता है और 'Infinitive' भविष्य के समय को)

In Newspapers headlines too, 'Infinitive' indicates future action. (**Newspaper के headlines में भी Infinitive future action दर्शाता है।**)

More Explanations

1. Russia to test new vaccine soon.
2. India to raise the issue of cross-border terrorism before the UN in the next meeting.

★ Can't help but + V_{b.f}

Can't help + V₁ + ing

See the difference in structure.

1. I couldn't help but laugh.
2. I can't help laughing at his silly acts.
3. He couldn't but help (1)/ shed tears at the plight of the villagers (2)/ rendered homeless by a devastating cyclone.(3)/ No error (4)

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

4. I could not help to laugh at the joke.

(1) laughing

(2) laugh

(3) to laughing

(4) No improvement

(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam.
16.11.2014, Patna Region : Ist
Sitting)

5. We **could not help** admire his inventive genius.

- (1) could not help to (2) No Improvement
(3) could not but (4) could not help but

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.
12.04.2015)

6. She could not help **but laugh**.

- (1) but laughing (2) laughter
(3) No Improvement (4) laughing

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam, 16.08.2015
(Ist Sitting) TF No. 3196279)

Answers

3. (1) Replace 'couldn't but help with' couldn't help but'. 'Can't help' is the correct structure.
4. (1) After 'help' if any verb comes, it should be in Gerund form. Replace 'to laugh' with 'laughing'. 'Help but' is followed by 'Bare Infinitive (V_{b.f})'.
5. (4) 'Help but' is followed by 'Bare Infinitive (V_{b.f})'.
6. (3) No Improvement
'Could not help but' is followed by 'V_{b.f}'

1. Mahatma Gandhi is believed to divide India. (×)

Mahatma Gandhi is believed to have divided India. (✓)

2. Subhash Chandra Bose is claimed to survive the air crash. (×)

Subhash Chandra Bose is claimed to have survived the air crash. (✓)

3. People reported to see aliens. (×)

People reported to have seen aliens. (✓)

Explanation

See the three sentences and the verbs in them.

1. is believed

2. is claimed

3. **reported**

Finite Verbs (Action)

2nd

~~to + V_{b.f}~~

to + have + V₃

Non-Finite Verbs (Action)

1st

If Non-finite verb precedes the finite verb, we use '**to have v₃**' in place of '**to + V_{b.f}**'
Perfect Infinitive **Infinitive**

अगर Non-finite Verb, Finite verb के पहले हुआ हो तो '**to + V_{b.f}**' के बदले '**to have v₃**' का प्रयोग होगा।

Infinitive **Perfect Infinitive**

4. He denied (1)/ to have (2)/ been there. (3)/ No error (4).
 (SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)
5. I remember (1)/ meet him/ (2) five years ago. (3)/ No error (4).
 (SSC Higher Secondary Level DEO & LDC Exam. 28.11.2010 (IInd Sitting))
6. It was very unfortunate of him to have lost the battle.
 (1) It was (2) very unfortunate (3) him to have (4) No error
 (SSC (CPO) Pre- 2016)

4. (4)
 5. (2)
 Change
 'met' into
 'to have
 met'.
 6. (4)

★ See the examples of Narration given below:-

Indirect Speech

1. He said, "No, I will not do it." **He refused to do it.**
 1st action 2nd action
2. He said, "No, I have not done it." **He denied to have done it.**
 2nd action 1st action
3. He said, "I will do it." **He agreed to do it.**
 1st action 2nd action
4. He said, "Yes, I have done it." **He admitted to have done it.**
 2nd action 1st action
5. He said, "I have committed the crime." **He confessed to have committed the crime.**
 2nd action 1st action

1. Sonu Nigam is said to have been singing since her childhood.
 2. Bollywood is believed to have been favouring Nepotism for a long time.

See the examples given above and the verbs.

(ऊपर दिए गये उदाहरण देखें और 'verbs' का भी)

1. is said to have been singing
 2. is believed to have been favouring
- Finite Verb** 2nd action
Non-Finite Verb 1st action
 (Perfect Continuous Infinitive)

In the examples given above the Non-finite Verb Continues till the time Finite Verb takes place hence Perfect Continuous Infinitive will be used.

(दिए गये उदाहरण में Non-finite verb उस समय तक जारी रहता है जब Finite verb हुआ यहाँ Perfect Continuous Infinitive का प्रयोग होगा)

★	Infinitive	to + V_{b.f}
★	Perfect Infinitive	to + have + V₃
★	Perfect Continuous Infinitive	to have been V₁ + ing
★	Bare Infinitive	V_{b.f} (Base form of verb)

The guards won't let the children _____ .

- (a) to swim (b) swim (c) swimming **Ans. (b)**

Explanation

'Let' is such a verb that is followed by Bare Infinitive (base form of verb (V_{b.f}))
 'Let' ऐसा verb है जिसके बाद Bare Infinitive (verb का base form (V_{b.f})) आता है।

Such Verbs Let, See, Watch, Observe, Notice, Hear, Feel, Bid, Help and Make.

More Examples

1. He noticed him leave the room quietly.

V_{b.f}

2. She bade me go out. (✓)

V_{b.f}

3. Help make Delhi safe. (✓)

V_{b.f}

as
Causative
verb

Note:-

Help is followed by both 'Infinitive' and 'Bare Infinitive'.
 (Help के बाद Infinitive एवं 'Bare Infinitive' दोनों का प्रयोग होता है।)

Help us to make Delhi safe. (✓)

1. I heard him shouting.

V₁+ing

2. I heard him ring the bell twice.

V_{b.f}

3. I saw him crossing the road.

V₁+ing

4. I saw the old man cross the road safely.

V_{b.f}

5. I watched him fall.

(1) him fall

(2) him to fell

(3) him to falling

(4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry
Operator & LDC Exam.
21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting))

Answer :- 5. (1) Here the structure followed should be: Subject + Verb + Noun/
Pronoun + Bare infinitive I + watch + him + fall.

See, Watch, Notice, Hear and Feel (Finite verbs) are followed by $V_1 + \text{ing}$ as well as Bare Infinitive. If the action is shown to have completed and the end is emphasised, 'Bare Infinitive' is used. However if the Finite Verb happens when the non-finite verb is going on, $V_1 + \text{ing}$ comes.

(See, Watch, Notice, Hear एवं Feel (Finite Verbs) के बाद Bare Infinitive एवं $V_1 + \text{ing}$ दोनों का प्रयोग हो सकता लेकिन अर्थ अलग होंगे। अगर कार्य के खत्म होने पर ज़ोर हो तो Bare Infinitive का प्रयोग होगा जबकि अगर ये दर्शाया जाये कि Finite Verb तब हुआ जब Non-finite verb चल रहा था तो $V_1 + \text{ing}$ आयेगा।)



1. I had rather stay at home.

$V_{b.f}$

2. You had sooner see a doctor.

$V_{b.f}$

Had rather, Had sooner, Had better, Would rather show preference or strong suggestions. They are followed by Bare Infinitives ($V_{b.f}$)

(Had rather, Had sooner, Had better एवं Would rather प्राथमिकता या मजबूत सुझाव को दर्शाता है। इनके बाद Bare Infinitive ($V_{b.f}$) आता है।)

Note

With a different subject V_2 comes. (अगर Subject अलग हो, तो V_2 आएगा।)



1. I would rather he stayed at home.

V_2

2. I would rather stay at home.

$V_{b.f}$

If a Noun is followed by an Infinitive, we should use a suitable Preposition if needed. / (अगर Noun के बाद Infinitive आए तो जरूरत होने पर एक Preposition का प्रयोग होगा।)



1. They have no bed to sleep in.

N Infinitive Prep

2. Do you have a chair to sit on?

N Infinitive Prep

3. I have no pen to write with.

N Infinitive Prep



Gerund (Noun) used as **Subject** or **Object** is preceded by **Possessive Adjectives (My, His, Her, Our, Your, Its & Their)** and not by a **Pronoun**.
(Gerund (Noun) का प्रयोग Subject एवं Object के रूप में होता है जिनके पहले Possessive Adjectives (My, His, Her, Our, Your, Its & Their एवं Their) आ सकता है, Pronoun नहीं।)

1. Due to me being a new comer (1)/ I was unable (2)/ to get a good house (3)/ . No error (4)
 (FCI Assistant Grade-III Exam. 25.02.2012 (Paper-I) North Zone (1st Sitting))
2. Her mother does not approve of (1)/ her to go to the party (2)/ without dressing formally. (3)/ No error (4)
 (SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.11.2012, 1st Sitting)
3. The fact of me (1)/ being a stranger (2)/ does not excuse his conduct. (3)/ No error. (4)
 (SSC Tax Assist. (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 14.12.2008)

Answers

1. (1) Replace 'due to me being' with 'due to my being'. Generally when a pronoun comes before a Gerund, it is wrong. We need a possessive Adjective.
2. (2) Replace 'to go' with 'going'. A preposition is followed by a Gerund.
3. (1) Replace 'me' with 'my'. When a pronoun is followed by a Gerund, it is wrong. We need a Possessive Adjective

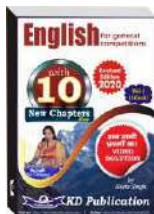
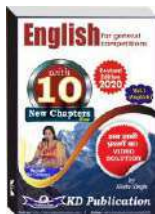


1. I wanted to outright decline his offer.
 Adverb V_{b.f}
2. I liked to either sleep or have fun.
 V_{b.f} V_{b.f}

The examples given above are of 'Split Infinitive'.

Split Infinitive → when we put some Adverb or Conjunction between 'to + V_{b.f}'.
 (जब 'to + V_{b.f}' के बीच **Adverb** या **Conjunction** आ जाए)

Note For Passive Voice of Infinitive and Gerund, See Chapter 'Passive Voice'.



A word having the characteristics of both Verb and Adjective is called Participle.
(ऐसा शब्द जिसमें **Verb** एवं **Adjective** दोनों के गुण मौजूद हो **Participle** कहलाता है।)

- India is a developing country.

V₁+ing
as Adjective

Noun
- Boiling water has scalded him.

V₁+ing
as Adjective

Noun
- I need a writing pad

V₁+ing
as Adjective

Noun
- America is a developed country.

V₃
as Adjective

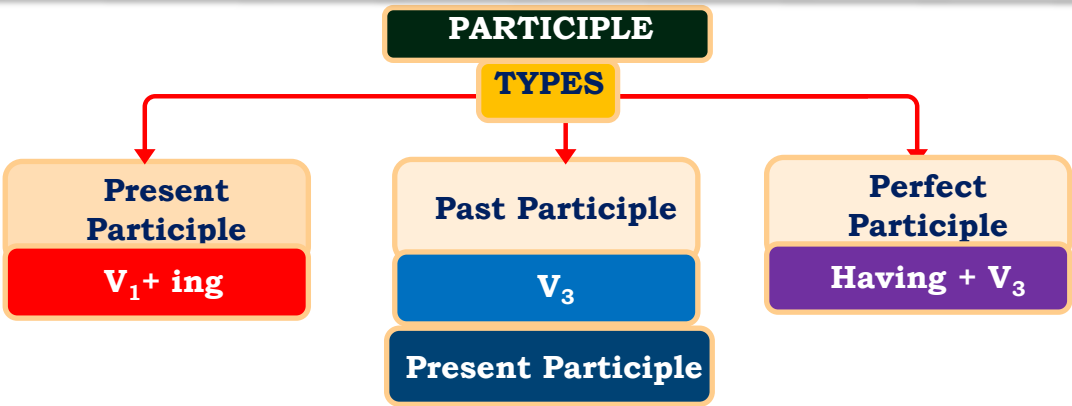
Noun
- Mash the boiled potatoes.

V₃
as Adjective

Noun
- Please show me the written agreement.

V₃
as Adjective

Noun



Non-finite verb, used as adjective, which expresses present action in relation to the time expressed by the finite verb and is in V₁ + ing form, is called Present Participle.
(Non-finite verb जो **Adjective** की तरह कार्य करे, **Present Action** को **finite verb** के संदर्भ में दर्शाये एवं V₁ + ing form में प्रयुक्त हो वे **Present Participle** कहलाते हैं)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

V₁ + ing

If two actions/states take place simultaneously, the subject of the 2nd one automatically becomes the subject of the 1st one. This sometimes does not change the meaning of the sentence but many times the 1st part of the sentence needs a separate subject. See the examples given below.

अगर दो कार्य एक साथ हो रहे हों तो 2nd action का Subject अपने-आप 1st action का भी Subject बन जाता है। ये वाक्य के अर्थ की कई बार परिवर्तित नहीं करता परंतु कई बार प्रथम भाग को अलग Subject की जरूरत पड़ती है। नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें

Example

- (1) Being ill, I did not come. (✓)

Who was ill → I

Who did not come → I

(बीमार कौन था)

(कौन नहीं आया)

Hence 'I' can play the subject of both the parts. Here 'being' is dangling Participle. Dangling Participle occurs at the beginning of a sentence and so hangs on to some subject (Here 'I')

यहाँ 'being' dangling Participle है। Dangling Participle सामान्यतः वाक्य के शुरू में आता है और किसी का सहाय लेता है। (यहाँ 'I' का)

Example

- (2) Being a rainy day, I did not come (×)

Which was a rainy day → I (×)

Who did not come → I (✓)

(वर्षा का दिन कौन है)

(कौन नहीं आया)

We need a separate subject for a rainy day and a suitable subject for a day is 'it'.
(दिन के लिए अलग से subject की जरूरत है और दिन के लिए subject 'it' का प्रयोग होगा)

Correct Sentence → It being a rainy day, I did not come.

1. Being (1)/ a rainy day (2)/ I could not go out. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 25.11.2007)

2. Standing at (1)/ the top of the hill, (2)/ the houses below were hardly visible. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 10.12.2006)

3. Being very dark, (1)/ the visitors found it difficult (2)/ to locate the switch. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting))

4. Being a rainy day (1)/ we didn't (2)/ go out. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.10.2012 (1st Sitting))

5. Riding across the battle field (1)/ the famous Bhishm (2)/ saw a large number of dead warriors. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.11.2012, 1st Sitting)

6. Being a holiday (1)/ we went out (2)/ for a picnic. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

7. The hurrying crowds (1)/ of people past (2)/ each other amazed him. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5))

8. Visitors to the zoo (1)/ are amused by the monkeys (2)/ play in the cages. (3)/ No error (4) SSC CHSL-2016, 17th Jan, Morning
9. Being a sunny day (1)/ I decided to stay at home (2)/ and take a nap. (3)/ No error (4) SSC CHSL-2016, 21st Jan, Afternoon
10. Being in awe of them, (1)/ the young man followed (2)/ their direction to a tee (3)/ No error (4) SSC CHSL-2016, 27th Jan, Afternoon
11. While crossing the road, a snake was seen.
 (1) a snake was moving. (SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006)
 (2) he saw a snake.
 (3) a snake was observed.
 (4) No improvement.
12. Riding upon his horse, the tiger jumped at him.
 (1) Riding upon the tiger, the horse jumped at him.
 (2) The tiger jumped at him while he was riding upon his horse.
 (3) The tiger rode at him while he was jumping upon his horse.
 (4) No improvement (SSC (CGL) Tier-I, Exam. 19.06.2011 (First Sitting))
13. Walking along the road, an old man ran over the lorry.
 (1) Walking along the road, an old man ran behind the lorry
 (2) Running along the road, the lorry ran over an old man
 (3) The lorry ran over an old man walking along the road
 (4) No improvement (SSC (CGL) Tier-I Exam. 26.06.2011 (Second Sitting))
14. Being a rainy day, we had to abandon the match.
 (1) Having been a rainy day (FCI Assistant Grade-II, Exam. 22.01.2012)
 (2) It being a rainy day
 (3) It been a rainy day
 (4) No improvement
15. Sitting on the hill top, the sun went down watching before him.
 (1) he watched the sun go down
 (2) the sun went down with him watching.
 (3) the sun went down when he watched.
 (4) No improvement (SSC CGL Tier-I Exam. 19.10.2014 TF No. 022 MH 3)
16. Being ill, he came to work.
 (1) He came to work and fell ill
 (2) Despite coming to work, he was ill
 (3) In spite of being ill, he came to work
 (4) No improvement (FCI Assistant Grade-II, Exam. 22.01.2012)
17. Being a wet day, he stayed at home.
 (1) Though (FCI Assistant Grade-II, Exam. 22.01.2012)
 (2) As it was
 (3) No improvement
 (4) Since

Answers

1. (1) Add 'it' before 'being' a rainy day or 'I' will become the subject of the 1st part of the sentence and then the sentence will have a wrong meaning.
2. (1) Add 'As I was' before 'standing' else 'the houses' become the subject of the 1st part too which gives a wrong meaning to the sentence.

3. (1) If we won't put a subject in the first part of the sentence, 'the visitor' will become the subject of 'being very dark' and will give a wrong meaning to the sentence. Hence we should put 'it' before 'being very dark'. The sentence should read as:
 'It being very dark ...'
4. (1) Replace 'Being a rainy day' with 'It being a rainy day'
5. (2) 'Bhism' a Proper Noun will not take article 'the'.
6. (1) Replace 'Being a holiday' with 'It being a holiday'. If we don't put a subject in the first part of the sentence 'we' will become the subject of 'being a holiday' and will give a wrong meaning to the sentence.
 Hence replace 'being a holiday' with 'it being a holiday'.
7. (2) Replace 'of people past' with 'of people passing'. 'Each other' change into 'one another'.
8. (3) 'Play' will change into - 'Playing'.
9. (1) If 'It' is not mentioned before 'being', 'I' will automatically become the subject of 'sunny day' and will give a wrong meaning to the sentence. Hence add 'It' before 'being'.
10. (4) 'To a tee' means 'perfectly'.
11. (2) The given sentence is in Active Voice hence 'He saw a snake' should be used.
12. (2) Here 'subject' is missing from the first clause. Hence add proper subject 'while he was' in first part of the sentence. The sentence should read as ... While he was riding upon the horse, the tiger jumped at him.
13. (3) 'Run over somebody' means 'to drive over someone with a vehicle'.
 (कुचलना)
 Since 'a man' cannot run over 'a lorry' so here the main subject should be 'The lorry'.
 Here option (3) is correct.
14. (2) From the structure it seems that 'we' is the subject of the clause 'being rainy day' which gives the sentence a wrong meaning. Hence add 'it' before 'being a rainy day' to give it a proper subject.
15. (1) Here from the given structure it seems that 'The sun' is the main subject of the sentence which gives a wrong meaning to the sentence. 'He' is the subject of both the parts hence option (1) which will be the best choice. Hence replace 'the sun went down watching before him' with 'he watched the sun go down'.
16. (3) The use of 'inspite of' (के बावजूद) makes the sentence meaningful.
17. (2) Replace 'being' with 'as it was' to make the sentence meaningful.

PAST PARTICIPLE

A.V → V₃

P.V → been + V₃

1. Driven by poverty, the migrants moved to metropolises.
2. Blinded in hatred, he went there with a gun.

See the examples of Past Participle given above. Participle that expresses completed action and takes V₃ form is called Past Participle.

(ऊपर दिए गये उदाहरण देखें) **Participle** जो पूर्ण **action** को व्यक्त करता है और **V₃ form** लेता है वह **Past Participle** कहलाता है।)

In the examples you can see that the first action has led to the 2nd and it has been the reason for the second action. See how—

(उदाहरण में आप देख सकते हैं कि **1st action** **2nd action** का कारण है और **2nd action** **1st action** के बाद हुआ और **1st action** के नतीजतन हुआ। नीचे देखें-)

1. The migrants were driven by poverty so they moved to metropolises.
2. He was blinded in hatred so he went there with a gun.

More examples

1. Burnt beyond recognition, the bodies remained unclaimed.
Meaning → The bodies were burnt beyond recognition so they remained unclaimed.
2. Injured in the accident, he was taken to hospital.
Meaning → He was injured in the accident so he was taken to hospital.
3. Enchanted with the beauty of the mountain, I continued my trekking.
Meaning → I was enchanted with the beauty of the mountain so I continued my trekking.
4. Encouraged by his father, he persevered.
Meaning → He was encouraged by his father so he persevered.

In these examples you can see that Passive Voice is formed from Past Participle.

(ऊपर उदाहरण में हम देख सकते हैं कि **Past Participle** से **Passive Voice** बनते हैं।)

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

A.V → Having V₃

P.V → Having + been + V₃

1. Having rested for the whole night, he resumed his journey.
2. Having failed in his first attempt, he tried even harder.
3. Having done with all fun and frolic, he got down to work.
4. Having been an employee of the postal department for thirty years, he knows the ins and outs of his work.

See the examples given above. the 1st part cannot change into Passive Voice and moreover either the 2nd action is not a direct outcome of the 1st action (eg 1, 3) or even if it is (eg 2, 4) Passive structure that was possible in case of Past Participle is not possible here and there is some time gap between them.

(अगर दिए गये उदाहरण देखें) को में बदला नहीं जा सकता और या तो का सीधा-सीधा नतीजा नहीं है (eg 1, 3) और अगर है भी (eg 2, 4) तो संभव नहीं है।)

5. Having broken down (1)/the driver sent the car (2)/to the garage. (3)/No error (4).
(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 31.7.2005)
6. Having deprived of their houses (1)/ in the recent earthquake (2)/ they had no other option but to take shelter in a school. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector, (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)
7. Much harassed (1)/ he left hostel (2)/ bag and baggage. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC CGL Tier-I, Re-Exam-2013, 27.04.2014)
8. Having just(1)/taking a heavy lunch,(2)/she was not ready to have any fruit.(3)/No error(4)
SSC PRE – 2018, 12th June, 2019 Evening

Answers

5. (1) From the given structure it seems that 'the driver was broken down' which is wrong. Hence the correct structure should be as follows:
The car having broken down, the driver sent the car to the garage.
6. (1) 'Perfect Participle' is used when the 1st action has already finished before the 2nd starts. Here we need Passive Voice. 'Having been deprived ...
7. (1) Add 'been' before 'harassed'. The structure needed is of Passive Voice.
8. (2) Having is followed by V₃. Change 'taking' into 'taken'.

Join the given two sentences in each case using Participle

1. (A) I was your student.
(B) I found it easy to pass the exam.
2. (A) The sun rose.
(B) The fog disappeared.
3. (A) The godman was arrested.
(B) His followers ran amok.
4. (A) I lost my passport.
(B) I applied for a new one.
5. (A) Mayawati was trained by a past master.
(B) She became a seasoned politician.

Answers

1. Having been your student, I found it easy to pass the exam.
2. The Sun having risen, the fog disappeared.
3. The godman having been arrested his followers ran amok.
Ran amok means violently uncontrollable frenzy
4. Having lost my passport, I applied for a new one.
5. Having been trained by a past master, Mayawati become a seasoned politician. (Here there is a time gap.)

Use the correct form of verbs given in the bracket.

1. _____ the noise, we ran out. (hear)
2. We met a girl _____ a basket. (carry)
3. _____ by the dust storm, they ran helter-skelter. (blind)
4. _____ high and dry, she didn't know what to do. (leave)
5. _____ by hunger, he resorted to crime (drive)
6. A _____ stone gathers no moss. (roll)
7. The _____ door terrified us. (creak)

Answers

1. Hearing
2. Carrying
3. Blinded
4. Having been left
5. Driven
6. rolling
7. creaking

अंग्रेजी बोलना सीखें मात्र 60 दिनों में

BY NEETU SINGH



- Accent Improvement.
- Interview Preparation.
- Situational Conversation.
- Coloured PDF With Each Session.
- Interesting Stories In Easy English.
- Important Session On Body Language.
- Learn All Daily Use Vocab In Sentences.
- Learn English Through Easy Translation.
- Complete Grammar of Spoken English Covered.

Beginner
Basic
Intermediate
Advance

VOD BATCH

ONLY 999/-
Validity 1 Year

NEETU SINGH
Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 9555108888, 9555208888

Download Now **KD LIVE** Subscribe Now **KD LIVE YOUTUBE CHANNEL**



Your End-to-End Exam Preparation

FOR COURSE ENQUIRY
9555108888 / 9555208888

FOR WHATSAPP SUPPORT
8586903756 / 8586903746 / 9899503155

FOR EMAIL SUPPORT
online@kdcampus.org



Active Voice

If 'y' comes after a consonant, we need to change 'es', 'ed' or 'er'. This rule is applicable to 'verb', अगर 'y' का प्रयोग consonant के बाद हो तो es से नियम verb, noun एवं adjective में प्रयुक्त है।

Cry (verb)	cried (V ₂ , V ₃)
Fry (verb)	fried (V ₂ , V ₃)
Dry (verb)	dried (V ₂ , V ₃)
Dry (adj)	dried, driest
City (noun)	cities



Subject
(कर्ता)

does

Verb
(क्रिया)

on

Object
(कर्म)

Eg:-
I
I
You
Students

teach
wrote
will help
make

English
the book
her
notes

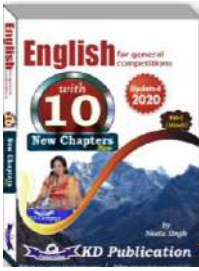
- Here 'Doer' (Subject) does the 'Verb' on the 'object'. (Here कर्ता क्रिया को कर्म पर करता है।)

Now let us assume we want to

- Put 'object' at the beginning of the sentence (object को वाक्य के शुरू में रखना हो)
Eg:- This book has been written by me.
ये किताब मेरे द्वारा लिखी गई है।
- We don't know who the doer is (हमें कर्ता ज्ञात ना हो)
Eg:- He was killed.
उसकी हत्या हो गई।
- The doer is not important and we do not need to mention it (कर्ता महत्वपूर्ण ना हो और हम उसका उल्लेख करना जरूरी नहीं समझते हैं)
Eg:- He was declared dead.
उसे मृत घोषित कर दिया गया।

We use Passive Voice in these three conditions.
(इन तीन हालात में Passive Voice का प्रयोग होता है।)

Passive Voice



**Verb
(क्रिया)**

on

does



**Verb
(क्रिया)**

on

does

Now let us see Passive Voice one by one.
(अब **Passive Voice** एक-एक कर के देखें।)

Present Indefinite Tense

Active Voice

Subject + V₁ + object.

Passive Voice

Object + is/ am/ are + V₃ + by + Subject.

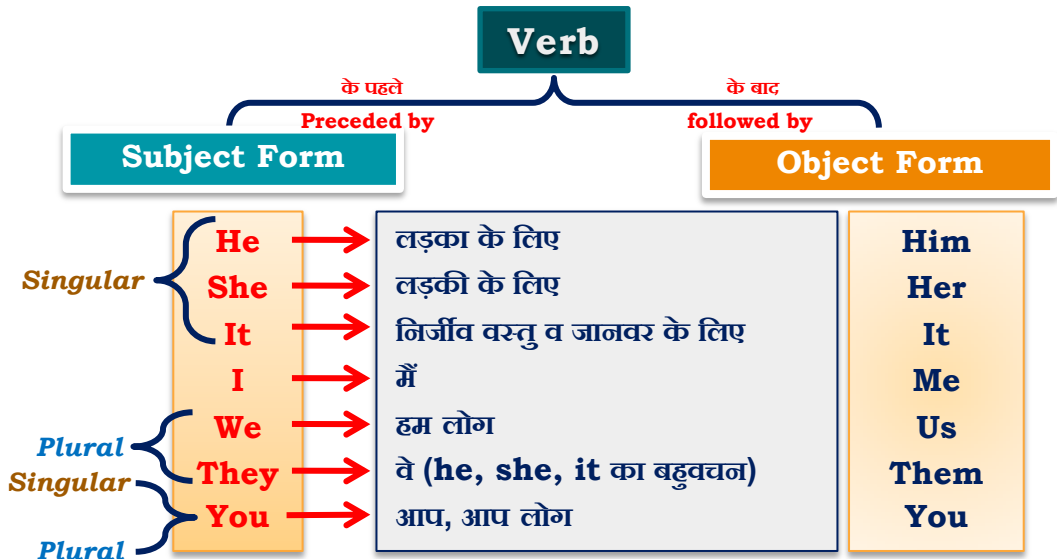
Examples

- I teach English.
- I write books.
- She helps all.
- Prashant understands her.
- We send messages
- She needs help.
- Mukesh sings classical songs.
- I watch television every night.
- She plays Hockey.
- Soldiers follow commands.

Answers

- English is taught by me.
- Books are written by me.
- All are helped by her.
- She is understood by Prashant.
- Messages are sent by us.
- Help is needed by her.
- Classical songs are sung by Mukesh.
- Television is watched by me every night.
- Hockey is played by her.
- Commands are followed by soldiers.

Change in Pronoun with Change of Voice



Past Indefinite Tense

Active Voice

Subject + V₂ + object.

Passive Voice

Object + was/ were + V₃ + by + Subject.

Examples

- I helped them.
- Some Americans saw an alien.
- He made a plan.
- She shed tears.
- Rashmi liked him.
- He bought a gun.
- The man stole my purse.
- The bird made a nest to lay eggs.
- My brother bought a dress.
- Parul answered all the questions correctly.

Answers

1. They were helped by me.
2. An alien was seen by some Americans.
3. A plan was made by him.
4. Tears were shed by her.
5. He was liked by Rashmi.
6. A gun was bought by him.
7. My purse was stolen by the man.
8. A nest was made by the bird to lay eggs.
9. A dress was bought by my brother.
10. All the questions were correctly answered by Parul.

Future Indefinite Tense

Active Voice

Subject + will/ shall + V_{b.f.} + object.

Passive Voice

Object + will/ shall + be + V₃ + by + Subject.

Ex

1. I shall inform you.
2. She will sweep the floor.
3. She will spread the butter.
4. Rohan will post the letter.
5. I will need a gun.
6. Your boss will question you.
7. Media will raise the issue of fake encounter.
8. My mother will not punish me.
9. Harish will pack the bags soon.
10. I will soon give the relieving letter.

Answers

1. You will be informed by me.
2. The floor will be swept by her.
3. The butter will be spread by her.
4. The letter will be posted by Rohan.
5. A gun will be needed by me.
6. You will be questioned by your boss.
7. The issue of fake encounter will be raised by Media.
8. I shall not be punished by my mother.
9. The bags will be packed by Harish soon.
10. The relieving letter will be soon given by me.

Present Continuous Tense

Active Voice

Subject + is/am/are + V₁ + ing + object.

Passive Voice

Object + is/am/are + being + V₃ + by + Subject.

Examples

1. He is teaching us
2. The labourers are digging a well.
3. We are watching a movie.
4. The government is not taking the pandemic seriously.
5. I am teaching the students.
6. She is feeding the poor.
7. The PMO is investigating the case.
8. We are demanding our rights.
9. The chief is discussing the matter.
10. He is drafting a case.

Answers

1. We are being taught by him.
2. A well is being dug by the labourers.
3. A movie is being watched by us.
4. The pandemic is not being taken seriously by the government.
5. The students are being taught by me.
6. The poor are being fed by her. ('The poor' means poor people (गरीब लोग)).

- Here the poor is plural noun and will take plural verb.
7. The case is being investigated by the PMO.
 8. Our rights are being demanded by us.
 9. The matter is being discussed by the chief.
 10. A case is being drafted by him.

Past Continuous Tense

Active Voice

Subject + was/were + V₁ + ing + object.

Passive Voice

Object + was/were + being + V₃ + by + Subject.

Examples

1. I was thinking of a new plan.
2. She was looking into the matter.
3. Rajesh was taking care of the old people.
4. My parents were looking for a suitable match.
5. He was cleaning the mess.
6. She was helping the poor.
7. Mohan was making a noise.
8. Rajesh was attending the music class.
9. You were always disturbing the class.
10. Some countries were trying new medicines to control corona.

Answers

1. A new plan was being thought of by me.
2. The matter was being looked into by her.
3. The old people were being taken care of by Rajesh.
4. A suitable match was being looked for by my parents.
- (1-4) : If Preposition comes in Active Voice, it must be used in Passive Voice.
5. The mess was being cleaned by him.
6. The poor were being helped by her.
7. A noise was being made by Mohan.
8. The music class was being attended by Rajesh.
9. The class was always being disturbed by you.
10. New medicines were being tried by some countries to control corona.

Future Continuous Tense

Active Voice

Subject + will/ shall + be + V₁ + ing + object.

Passive Voice

Present Perfect Tense

Active Voice

Subject + has/have + V₃ + object.

Passive Voice

Object + has/ have + been + V₃ + by + Subject.

Examples

1. I have seen this movie.
2. Sheela has supported me.
3. Rishi has made the bed.
4. You have cleaned all the clothes.
5. My brother has bought this car.
6. The government has launched some schemes.
7. India has already made Corona vaccine.
8. She has performed her duty well.
9. My mother has scolded me very badly.
10. The Judiciary has taken this matter seriously.

Answers

1. This movie has been seen by me.
2. I have been supported by Sheela.
3. The bed has been made by Rishi
4. All the clothes have been cleaned by you.
5. This car has been bought by my brother.
6. Some schemes have been launched by the government.
7. Corona vaccine has already been made by India.
8. Her duty has been performed well by her.
9. I have been scolded very badly by my mother.
10. This matter has been taken seriously by the Judiciary.

Past Perfect Tense

Active Voice

Subject + had + V₃ + object.

Passive Voice

Object + had + been + V₃ + by + Subject.

Examples

1. I had completed the work till then.
2. My mother had seen the thief.
3. A pilot had predicted such an accident.
4. The staff had informed the police.
5. He had already destroyed the documents.
6. My sister had fired the servant.
7. The WHO had given wrong information about Corona.
8. Such a pandemic had crippled the world 100 years ago too.
9. The boys had left a frog in the drawer.
10. The teacher had lodged a complaint against you.

Answers

1. The work had been completed by me till then.
2. The thief had been seen by my mother.
3. Such an accident had been predicted by a pilot.
4. The police had been informed by the staff.
5. The documents had already been destroyed by him.
6. The servant had been fired by my sister.
7. Wrong information about Corona had been given by the WHO.
8. The world had been crippled by such a pandemic 100 years ago too.
9. A frog had been left in the drawer by the boys.
10. A complaint had been lodged against you by the teacher.

Future Perfect Tense

Active Voice

Subject + will/ shall + have + V₃ + object.

Passive Voice

Object + will/shall + have + been + V₃ + by + Subject.

Examples

1. She will have sorted out the matter.
2. The shopkeeper will have given some discount.
3. The milkman will have stopped the service by then.
4. We shall have taken the test by this time next week.
5. The ED officers will have arrested him by then.
6. The Indian Army will have pushed back the Chinese Army by then.
7. My mother will have cooked the finest meal before I reach home.
8. Scientists will have invented the vaccine by the end of this year.
9. Millions of people will have lost their jobs.
10. This pandemic will have changed our society, economy and mindset too if it doesn't go soon.

Answers

1. The matter will have been sorted out by her.
2. Some discount will have been given by the shopkeeper.
3. The service will have been stopped by the milkman by then.
4. The test will have been taken by us by this time next week.
5. He will have been arrested by the ED officers by then.
6. The Chinese Army will have been pushed back by the Indian Army by then.
7. The finest meal will have been cooked by my mother before I reach home.
8. The vaccine will have been invented by scientists by the end of this year.
9. Jobs will have been lost by millions of people.
10. Our society, economy and mindset too will have been changed by this pandemic if it doesn't go soon.

Modals

Modals Indefinite

Active Voice

Subject + modal + V_{b,f} + object.

Passive Voice

Object + modal + be + V₃ + by + Subject.

Modal Perfect

Active Voice

Subject + modal + have + V₃ + object.

Passive Voice

Object + modal + have + been + V₃ + by + Subject.

Examples

1. She must understand her duty.
2. Satish should take the test.
3. Our army must avenge the martyrdom of the soldiers
4. I can lift this box.
5. The doctor could not save him.
6. The schools must not conduct online classes.
7. You need not take his advice seriously.
8. The government should impose lockdown again.
9. The poor cannot buy these expensive medicine.
10. China could not hide its real intention.

Answers

1. Her duty must be understood by her.
2. The test should be taken by Satish.
3. The martyrdom of the soldiers must be avenged by our army.
4. This box can be lifted by me.
5. He could not be saved by the doctor.
6. Online classes must not be conducted by the schools.
7. His advice need not be taken seriously by you.
8. Lockdown should be imposed again by the government.
9. These expensive medicines cannot be bought by the poor.
10. Its real intention could not be hidden by China.

Examples

1. She will have delivered the letter.
2. The doctors could have saved him.
3. She should have put on the new sari.
4. The students ought to have respected the teachers.
5. My mother need not have watered the plants.
6. My mother should have taken care of her health.
7. People should have voted him to power.
8. The police could have arrested him easily.
9. You need not have filed a complaint.
10. The government should not have allowed social gatherings.

Answers

1. The letter will have been delivered by her.
2. He could have been saved by the doctors.
3. The new sari should have been put on by her.
4. The teachers ought to have been respected by the students.
5. The plants need not have been watered by my mother.
6. Her health should have been taken care of by my mother.
7. He should have been voted to power by the people.
8. He could have been arrested easily by the police.
9. A complaint need not have been filed by you.
10. Social gatherings should not have been allowed by the government.

Q. 7, 8, 10

In these sentences we need not write by the people, by the police or by the government because the actions mentioned here are generally done by these subjects only.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

1. Wh family (Open questions)

Who
(A.V)



By whom
(P.V)

Who
(A.V)



To whom
(P.V)
in case of verb
know & marry

Helping verb will
come before object
as the sentence is
interrogative

1. Who loves chocolate?
2. What did you say?
3. Where have you kept the pen?
4. How can you do this?
5. Why shall I take the exam again?
6. Why are you making a noise?
7. Who likes her?
8. What have you done?
9. Why couldn't they use public wells?
10. When did he fill the form?

Answers

1. By whom is chocolate loved?
2. What was said by you?
3. Where has the pen been kept by you?
4. How can this be done by you?
5. Why will the exam be taken by me again?
6. Why is a noise being made by you?
7. By whom is she liked?
8. What has been done by you?
9. Why couldn't the public wells be used by them?
10. When was the form filled by him?

2. Without Wh family (Closed Questions)

1. Are you reading the book?
2. Was he taking medicines on time?
3. Did he understand the lesson?
4. Has he understood the consequences?
5. Had the boys misplaced the equipment?
6. Are you taking the exam?
7. Did he see you?
8. Has he scolded you?
9. Is he taking her to the school?
10. Does he know the answer?

Answers

1. Is the book being read by you?
2. Were medicines being taken by him on time?
3. Was the lesson understood by him?
4. Have the consequences been understood by him?
5. Had the equipment been misplaced by the boys?
6. Is the exam being taken by you?
7. Were you seen by him?
8. Have you been scolded by him?
9. Is she being taken to the school him?
10. Is the answer known to him?

IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

Sentences of Orders, Requests, Commands, Suggestions etc.

1. With obj.

Let + obj + be + V₃ ?

2. With/Without obj.

You are ordered/ requested etc + to + V_{b.f} + object

3. Mild or Moral Suggestion

Obj. + should + be + V₃ + by + Sub.

Examples

1. Lock the gate.

- P.V (i) Let the gate be locked.
(ii) You are ordered to lock the gate.

2. Go away.

P.V You are ordered to go away.

3. Help the needy.

P.V The needy should be helped.

Answers

1. Shut the door.
2. Please keep quiet.
3. Hands up.
4. Take the medicine on time.
5. Come in.
6. Go from here.
7. Please complete this work today.
8. Don't move.
9. Help the poor.
10. Don't press the button.

1. Let the door be shut.
OR You are ordered to shut the door.
2. You are requested to keep quiet.
3. You are ordered to raise your hands.
4. The medicine should be taken on time.
OR You are advised to take the medicine on time.
5. You are allowed to come in.
6. You are ordered to go from here.
7. You are requested to complete this work today.
8. You are warned not to move.
9. The poor should be helped.
10. You are instructed not to press the button.
OR You are forbidden to press the button.
OR Let not the button be pressed.

★ If the subject is Vague i.e. unclear such as one, they, people, someone, somebody, nobody or None, we avoid adding 'by + Subject' in Passive Voice.
(अगर subject अस्पष्ट हो जैसे कि One, they, people, someone, somebody nobody या none तो हम 'by + subject' को Passive Voice में नहीं लगाते हैं)

Examples

1. One must keep one's promise.
2. No one desires riots.
3. Someone has stolen my shoes.
4. They elected him to power again.
5. People speak English all over the world.

Answers

1. Promise must be kept.
2. Riots are not desired.
3. My shoes have been stolen.
4. He was elected to power again.
5. English is spoken all over the world.

★ If the subject is that Noun which usually does the action mentioned in the sentences, we avoid using 'by + subject' in Passive Voice.

(अगर **Subject** वो **Noun** है जो अक्सर किया को करने वाला एकमात्र **subject** होता है तो 'by + Subject' का प्रयोग **Passive Voice** में नहीं होता है)

Examples

1. The police arrested him.
2. Farmers are harvesting the crops.
3. The court sentenced the accused to death.
4. He was obliged to resign.
5. He has been rusticated from the college.

Answers

1. He was arrested.
2. The crops are being harvested.
3. The accused was sentenced to death.
4. Circumstances obliged him to resign.
5. The principal has rusticated him from the college.

Explanation to 4 to 5 : If no subject is given in Passive Voice, we must use that subject in Active Voice that usually does that action.

There are certain Verbs that take fixed Preposition in Passive Voice and this fixed Preposition replaces 'by'.

(कुछ ऐसे Verb होते हैं वो Passive Voice में Fixed Preposition लेते हैं और ये Fixed Preposition 'by' के स्थान पर आते हैं)

Verbs	Fixed Preposition	Verbs	Fixed Preposition
Known	to	Astonished	at
Contained	in	Startled	at
Embodied (में समावेश)	in	Amazed	at
Engulfed (घिर जाना)	in	Annoyed (परेशान)	with someone
Crammed (ढूँसा हुआ) with		Annoyed	at something
Filled	with	Vexed (परेशान)	with someone
Tired (थका)	of	Vexed	at something
Comprised (बना हुआ)	of	Surprised	by
Married	to	Surprised	at (When opposite to expectation happens)

Examples

1. He annoys me.
2. I know you.
3. Our Constitution embodies six fundamental rights.
4. A thick cloud of dust engulfed the village.
5. This jar contains six packets.
6. The atmosphere comprises many rare gases.
7. He married a pretty girl.
8. The sweet songs of birds have filled the air.
9. The news surprised me.
10. His insolent behaviour surprised me.

Answers

1. I am annoyed with him.
2. You are known to me.
3. Six fundamental rights are embodied in our constitution.
4. The village was engulfed in a thick cloud of dust.
5. Six packets are contained in this jar.
6. The atmosphere is comprised of many rare gases. ('Comprise' takes no preposition in Active Voice but takes 'of' in Passive Voice. Comprise means (1) to form (बनाना), (2) Consist of (से बना होना). Hence the subject and object do not exchange position.
7. He was married to a pretty girl. Here too, we need not change the position of subject and object.
8. The air has been filled with the sweet songs of birds.
9. I was surprised by the news.
10. I was surprised at his insolent behaviour.

Fill in the blanks

1. I am tired _____ his tantrums.
2. The suitcase was crammed _____ clothes.
3. The hall was decorated _____ flowers.
4. The jar was filled _____ milk.
5. The street was thronged _____ people.

Answers

1. Of
2. with
3. with
4. with
5. with

Infinitive

Active Voice

to V_{b.f}

1. I have to finish the work
2. She is to deliver a speech.
3. I am about to start a new business.
4. I want the CA to check the accounts.
5. Women like men to flatter them.

Passive Voice

to be V₃

6. I am not going to tolerate this nonsense.
7. Women use tongs to make chapatis.
8. They gave me a book to read.
9. It's time to buy new shoes.
10. It's time to inform the police.

Answers

1. The work has to be finished by me.
2. A speech is to be delivered by her.
3. A new business is about to be started by me.
4. I want the accounts to be checked by the CA.
5. Women like to be flattered by men.
6. This nonsense is not going to be tolerated by me.
7. Tongs are used by women to make Chapatis.
8. I was given a book to read. or, A book was given to me to read.
9. It's time for new shoes to be bought.
10. It's time for the police to be informed.

Verbs followed by Adjectives

Eg:- Rose smells sweet.
Rose is sweet when it is smelt.

Answers

1. This surface feels smooth.
 2. Those mangoes tasted sour.
 3. Medicines usually taste awful.
 4. The dumbbell weighs 10 kgs.
1. This surface is smooth when it is felt.
 2. Those mangoes were sour when they were tasted.
 3. Medicines are usually awful when they are tasted.
 4. The dumbbell is of 10 kgs when it is weighed.

Passive Voice

Vis – a Vis

Verb

Eg:-

1. He bid the highest price.
2. Small strokes fell great oaks.
3. They ground the spices.
4. They ground such pilots.
5. They hang pictures on the wall.

Answers

1. The highest price was bid by him.
2. Great oaks are felled by small strokes.
3. The spices were ground.
4. Such pilots are grounded.
5. Pictures are hung on the wall.

Passive Voice vis-a-vis Subject-Verb Agreement

1. The robbers killed the merchant as well as his sons.
2. I helped neither him nor his accomplices.
3. We saw nothing but two birds.
4. God helps none but the brave.
5. They killed more than one deer.

Answers

1. The merchant as well as his sons was killed by the robbers.
2. Neither he nor his accomplices were helped by me.
3. Nothing but two birds was seen by us.
4. None but the brave are helped by god.
5. More than one deer was killed.

Miscellaneous

1. They fear that ghosts live here.
2. They say that dreams come true.
3. They reported that two traders were killed.
4. We expect that the problem will be resolved soon.
5. I suppose you know your duty well.

Answers

1. It is feared that ghosts live here.
2. It is said that dreams come true.
3. Two traders were reported to have been killed.
4. The problem is expected to be resolved soon.
5. You are supposed to know your duty well.

Verbs followed by Direct and Indirect Objects

1. He gave me a book.
2. The woman gave biscuits to the dog.
3. She gave him a glass of water.
4. They conferred him with the title.
5. The guards refused him admittance.

Answers

1. (i) I was given a book by him.
(ii) A book was given to me by him.
2. (i) The dog was given biscuits by the woman.
(ii) Biscuits were given to the dog by the woman.
3. (i) He was given a glass of water by her.
(ii) A glass of water was given to him by her.
4. (i) He was conferred with the title.
(ii) The title was conferred upon him.
5. (i) Admittance was refused to him.
(ii) He was refused admittance.

When the object is a sentence

1. You cannot undo what you have done.
2. Do you understand what I teach?

Answers

1. What has been done cannot be undone.
2. Is what is taught by me understood by you?

SSC CGL TIER-II : 2019

Exam held on : 15-11- 2020

Direction (1-20) : In the following question, a sentence has been given in Active/Passive Voice. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Passive/Active Voice.

1. He was given another chance by his employer.
(A) His employer is giving him another chance.
(B) His employer gave him another chance.
(C) His employer has given him another chance.
(D) He gave his employer another chance.
2. The man eating tiger will be captured tomorrow by the forest officers.
(A) The forest officers will have captured the man eating tiger tomorrow.
(B) The forest officers will capture the man eating tiger tomorrow.
(C) The forest officers will be capturing the man eating tiger tomorrow.
(D) The man eating tiger will capture the forest officers tomorrow.
3. The terrorist was arrested by Mumbai Police.
(A) Mumbai Police has arrested the terrorist.
(B) Mumbai Police arrested the terrorist.
(C) Mumbai Police is arresting the terrorist.
(D) The terrorist arrested Mumbai Police.
4. Let this email be sent immediately.
(A) Send this email immediately.
(B) Ask him to send this email immediately.
(C) We can send this email immediately.
(D) You could send this email immediately
5. The light was switched off by her before sleeping.
(A) She is switching off the light before sleeping.
(B) She switches off the light before sleeping.
(C) She had switched off the light before sleeping.
(D) She switched off the light before sleeping.
6. The ticket will be sent to you by the airlines on e-mail.
(A) The airlines had sent you the ticket by e-mail.
(B) The airlines will have sent you the ticket by e-mail.
(C) The airlines will send you the ticket by e-mail.
(D) The airlines will be sending you the ticket by e-mail.
7. Success cannot be achieved without hard work and sincerity.
(A) Hard work and sincerity one cannot achieve without success.
(B) One cannot achieve hard work and sincerity without success.
(C) No one could achieve success without hard work and sincerity.
(D) One cannot achieve success without hard work and sincerity
8. All his faults were forgiven by her.
(A) She forgave all his faults.
(B) She has forgiven all his faults.
(C) She will forgive all his faults.
(D) She is forgiving all his faults

9. The audience was surprised by the ending of the play.
(A) The ending of the play was surprising for the audience.
(B) The ending of the play surprised the audience.
(C) The ending of the play has surprised the audience.
(D) The audience surprised the ending of the play.
10. They were refused entry in Delhi by the police.
(A) The police refused them entry in Delhi.
(B) The police had refused them entry in Delhi.
(C) The police have refused them entry in Delhi.
(D) The police can refuse them entry in Delhi.
11. Her failure to get admission in the Science stream surprised us.
(A) We are surprised about her failure to get admission in the Science stream.
(B) We were surprised about her failure to get admission in the Science stream.
(C) We had been surprised about her failure to get admission in the Science stream.
(D) We have been surprised about her failure to get admission in the Science stream.
12. He was eating a large pizza.
(A) A large pizza was eating him.
(B) A large pizza has been eaten by him.
(C) A large pizza was being eaten by him.
(D) A large pizza was eaten by him.
13. Why did the editor give such a rude comment?
(A) Why had such a rude comment been given by the editor?
(B) Why is such a rude comment being given by the editor?
(C) Why was such an editor given by the rude comment?
(D) Why was such a rude comment given by the editor?
14. We expect good news about the corona vaccine.
(A) Good news has been expected by us about the corona vaccine.
(B) Good news expected us about the corona vaccine.
(C) Good news is expected by us about the corona vaccine.
(D) Good news was expected by us about the corona vaccine.
15. The masons are building the house.
(A) The house has been built by the masons.
(B) The house is being built by the masons.
(C) The house was being built by the masons.
(D) The house is building the masons.
16. Animals cannot make tools.
(A) Animals cannot be made by tools.
(B) Tools cannot be made by animals.
(C) Tools are not to be made by animals.
(D) Tools could not be made by animals.

17. Our advocate is arguing the case very effectively.
 (A) The case has been argued very effectively by our advocate.
 (B) The case is arguing very effectively by our advocate.
 (C) The advocate is being argued very effectively by our case.
 (D) The case is being argued very effectively by our advocate
18. Somebody has already tipped the custom authorities about the drugs.
 (A) Custom authorities have already been tipped by the drugs.
 (B) Custom authorities have already been tipped about the drugs.
 (C) Custom authorities have already tipped someone about the drugs.
 (D) Custom authorities were already tipped about the drugs.
19. Who has broken the chair?
 (A) By whom was the chair been broken?
 (B) By whom is the chair been broken?
 (C) By whom has the chair been broken?
 (D) By whom had the chair been broken?
20. Our team scored 350 runs in the Inter-college Cricket Tournament.
 (A) Our team was scored by 350 runs in the Inter-college Cricket Tournament.
 (B) 350 runs have been scored by our team in the Inter-college Cricket Tournament.
 (C) 350 runs were scored by our team in the Inter-college Cricket Tournament.
 (D) 350 runs were scoring our team in the Inter-college Cricket Tournament

Answer Key

1. (B)	6. (C)	11. (B)	16. (B)
2. (B)	7. (D)	12. (C)	17. (D)
3. (B)	8. (A)	13. (D)	18. (B)
4. (A)	9. (B)	14. (C)	19. (C)
5. (D)	10. (A)	15. (B)	20. (C)

KD Campus

STARS OF KD CAMPUS

SSC (CGL) 2015



NPCIL 2015



CDS 2016



SSC (Steno.) 2016



DMRC 2015



CPO 2017



CPO 2017



SSC (CGL) 2016



DELHI HIGH COURT 2015



CPO 2017



SSC- (JE) 2015



SSC (CGL) 2015



SSC (CGL) 2016



CPO 2017



SSC CGL TIER-I : 2018

Direction (1-20) : In the following question, a sentence has been given in Passive Voice. Out of four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Passive Voice.

1. Every passing vehicle was being thoroughly checked by the guards.
(A) The guards were thoroughly checkubg every passing vehicle.
(B) The guards have thoroughly checked every passing vehicle.
(C) Every passing vehicle were thoroughly checking the guards.
(D) The guards have been thoroughly checking every passing vehicle.
4th June Morning, 2019
2. The main gate of the building was being guarded by gun-totting guards.
(A) Gun-totting guards have been guarding the main gate of the building.
(B) The main gate of the building were guarding gun-totting guards.
(C) Gun-totting guards were guarding the main gate of the building.
(D) Gun-totting guards guarded the main gate of the building.
4th June Afternoon, 2019
3. The crop was adversely affected by the inadequate rainfall.
(A) The adversely rainfall has affected the inadequate crop.
(B) The inadequate rainfall was adversely affecting the crop.
(C) The inadequate rainfall adversely affected the crop.
(D) The inadequate crop adversely affected the rainfall.
4th June Evening, 2019
4. Their children were brought up with great care.
(A) They had brought up their children with great care.
(B) Their children brought them up with great care.
(C) They brought up their children with great care.
(D) They have been bringing up their children with great care.
6th June Morning, 2019
5. The wall of this park is being painted by children.
(A) Children are painting the wall of this park.
(B) The wall is painting children of this park.
(C) Children have been painting the wall of this park.
(D) Children painted the wall of this park.
6th June Afternoon, 2019
6. The injured were being removed to the hospital by the police.
(A) The police removed the injured to the hospital.
(B) The injured was removing the police to the hospital.
(C) The police were removing the injured to the hospital.
(D) The police has been removing the injured to the hospital.
6th June Evening, 2019
7. One of the passengers was being thoroughly checked by the custom officers.
(A) The custom officers have been thoroughly checking one of the passengers.
(B) The custom officers thoroughly checked one of the passengers.
(C) One of the passengers was thoroughly checking the custom officers.
(D) The custom officers were thoroughly checking one of the passengers.
7th June Morning, 2019

8. The chairs were being arranged in the examination hall by the staff.
 (A) The chairs were arranging the staff in the examination hall.
 (B) The staff was arranging the chairs in the examination hall.
 (C) The staff has been arranging the chairs in the examination hall.
 (D) The staff has arranged the chairs in the examination hall.
7th June Afternoon, 2019
9. The hunchback was being laughed at by everyone.
 (A) Everyone was laughing at the hunchback.
 (B) Everyone is laughing at the hunchback.
 (C) Everyone laughed at the hunchback.
 (D) Everyone laughs at the hunchback.
7th June Evening, 2019
10. She was seen sitting in the last row.
 (A) We see her sitting in the last row.
 (B) We saw her sitting in the last row.
 (C) We had seen her sitting in the last row.
 (D) We have seen her sitting in the last row.
10th June Morning, 2019
11. Let the bell be rung every forty minutes.
 (A) The bell should be rung every forty minutes
 (B) Ring the bell every forty minutes.
 (C) The bell ought to be rung every forty minutes
 (D) Let the bell keep ringing every forty minutes.
10th June Afternoon, 2019
12. You will either be taken prisoner or shot by the enemy.
 (A) The enemy will be either taking you prisoner or shooting you.
 (B) The enemy either takes you prisoner or shoots you.
 (C) The enemy would either take you prisoner or shoot.
 (D) The enemy will either take you prisoner or shoot you.
10th June Evening, 2019
13. We will all be greatly benefitted by this scheme.
 (A) This scheme has greatly benefitted us all.
 (B) This scheme would greatly benefit we all.
 (C) This scheme will greatly benefit us all.
 (D) This scheme is going to greatly benefit us all.
11th June Morning, 2019
14. Heavy taxes have been imposed on luxury items by the government.
 (A) The government is imposing heavy taxes on luxury items.
 (B) The government has imposed heavy taxes on luxury items.
 (C) The government imposed heavy taxes on luxury items.
 (D) The government had imposed heavy taxes on luxury items.
11th June Afternoon, 2019
15. Superstitions are still believed in by people.
 (A) People have still believed in superstitions.
 (B) People are still believing in superstitions.
 (C) People still believe in superstitions.
 (D) People still believed in superstitions.
11th June Evening, 2019

16. It was decided by the members that the report would be placed before the Chairman for his comments.
 (A) The members decided to place the report before the Chairman for his comments.
 (B) The Chairman's comments were to be placed on the report of the members.
 (C) Did the members decide to place the report before the Chairman?
 (D) The Chairman decided to place the report before the members.
12th June Afternoon, 2019
17. By whom were you taught Mathematics?
 (A) Who taught you Mathematics?
 (B) Who teaching you Mathematics?
 (C) Who will teach you Mathematics?
 (D) Whom are you teaching Mathematics?
12th June Evening, 2019
18. He was given a book for his birthday.
 (A) She has gave him a book for his birthday.
 (B) She give a book to him for his birthday.
 (C) She gave him a book for his birthday.
 (D) She will by giving him a book for his birthday.
13th June Morning, 2019
19. Rudra was laughed at by all his friends when he wore his socks inside -out.
 (A) If Rudra wears his socks inside-out all his friends will laugh at him.
 (B) When Rudra wore his socks inside-out all his friends were laughing at him.
 (C) All his friends will be laughing at Rudra for wearing his socks inside-out.
 (D) All his friends laughed at Rudra when he wore his socks inside-out.
13th June Afternoon, 2019
20. Dinesh was looked after by his grandmother when his parents went abroad.
 (A) Dinesh's grandmother looks after him when his partents went abroad.
 (B) Dinesh's grandmothers looked after him when his partents aborad.
 (C) Dinesh's looked after his grandmother when his parents went abroad.
 (D) Dinesh's grandmother was looking after him when his parents went abroad.
13th June Evening, 2019

Answer Key

1. (A)	6. (C)	11. (B)	16. (A)
2. (C)	7. (D)	12. (D)	17. (A)
3. (C)	8. (B)	13. (C)	18. (C)
4. (C)	9. (A)	14. (B)	19. (D)
5. (A)	10. (B)	15. (C)	20. (B)

He says, "I work hard."

Direct

- Direct Speech is not used in
Precis & Comprehension

He says that he works hard.

Indirect

Reporting
Verb

Reported
Speech

1 ASSERTIVE SENTENCES:

i Conjunction — that

(Subject) (Object) (No Change)

ii Change of Pronoun — S O N

1

2

3

1st person

2nd person

3rd person

I, We

You

He, She, It, They, Noun, Others

Eg:-

He says to me, "You work hard."
He tells me that I work hard.

iii

Say	→	Say
Said	→	Said
Say to	→	Tell
Said to	→	Told

Eg:-

He says, "She works hard."
He says that she works hard.

iv If Reporting Verb is in present/ future tense, the tense/ time/ place of the Reported Speech does not change.

Eg:-

1. He says, "I know her and her family."
2. He has said to me, "You know economy is in problem now."
3. People will say, "We will vote for him this time too."
4. Hari is saying to me, "You are disturbing me."
5. **DETECT ERROR :—**
5. He was told to leave.
6. We told him to leave some manners. (×)
7. He said me that he was unwell. (×)
8. Our teacher told (A)/ to open (B)/ our book. (C)/ No error.

Answers

1. He says that he knows her and her family.
2. He has told me that I know economy is in problem now.
3. People will say that they will vote for him this time too.
4. Hari is telling me that I am disturbing him.
5. No error. Here 'to leave' is Infinitive (to + V_{b.f})
6. Remove 'to'. Tell/ Told does not take 'to' when followed an object.
7. Change 'said' into 'said to' or 'told'.
Said cannot take object without 'to'.
8. Ans. (A)
Our teacher told us to open our books. Tell and told need an object.



1. He said, "The Sun is a star." **Universal truth**
2. He said, "Honesty is the best policy." **Proverb/ Phrase**
3. He said, "Too many cooks spoil the broth." **Idiom**
4. He said, "I go to school daily." **Present routine**
5. He said, "I used to go to school daily." **Past routine**
6. He said, "Mahatma Gandhi started the Quit India Movement."
7. He said, "Women are more sincere workers than men."

Historical fact

Sweeping Generalization

Note: If the Reporting Verb is in past tense and Reported Speech is Idiom, phrase, Universal truth etc, the tense, time & place of Reported Speech will not be changed.

Answers

1. He said that the Sun is a star.
2. He said that honesty is the best policy.
3. He said that too many cooks spoil the broth.
4. He said that he goes to school daily.
5. He said that he used to go to school daily.
6. He said that Mahatma Gandhi started the Quit India Movement.
7. He said that women are more sincere workers than men.



He said to me, "I studied here ten years ago."

He told me that he had studied there ten years before.

If Reporting Verb is in past time and Reported Speech is not an Idiom, Phrase etc, change the tense, time & place, as follows—

Change in Tense



V_1	V_2	had+ V_3
is/ am/ are	was/ were	had been
has/ have V_3	had V_3	No change
has/ have been	had been	No change

Change in Modals			Change in Place		
Can	—	Could	Here	—	There
May	—	Might	This	—	That
Will/ Shall	—	Would/ Should	These	—	Those

Change in Time

Now	—	Then
Today	—	That day
Tonight	—	That night
Yesterday	—	The previous day/ the day before
Tomorrow	—	The next day/ the following day
Ago	—	Before
Last	—	The previous
Hence onwards	—	Thence onwards

Change into Indirect Speech

1. He said to me, "I will meet you tonight."
2. She said to him, "We cannot tolerate these tantrums now."
3. 'Rekha' he said, "We will finish today's work today because tomorrow never comes."
4. Rohan said, "I slept early last night. I missed many calls."
5. He said, "This is unacceptable. I won't tolerate this nonsense."
6. My father said today, "I will return late tonight."
7. He said to me last night, "I may buy a car this Diwali."
8. The queen said, "I am the most beautiful woman on this planet."
9. He has said, "All is well here."
10. He said, "I am feeling giddy" and collapsed.

Answers

1. He told me that he would meet me that night.
2. She told him that they could not tolerate those tantrums then.
3. He told Rekha that they would finish that day's work that day because tomorrow never comes.
4. Rohan said that he had slept early the previous night so he had missed many calls.
5. He said that that was unacceptable and he wouldn't tolerate that nonsense.
6. My father said today that he would return late tonight.
7. He told me last night that he might buy a car this Diwali.
8. The queen said that she was the most beautiful woman on this planet.
9. He has said that all is well here.
10. He said that he was feeling giddy and collapsed.

Interrogative Sentences



Indirect Speech में कभी भी Inversion नहीं आता

1. He said to me, "Are you coming?"
Indirect Speech → He asked me if I was coming.
2. He said to me, "When are you coming?"
Indirect Speech → He asked me when I was coming.

Changes

Said to

Asked, Interrogated, Enquired etc.

Question Mark (?)

Full stop (.)

H.V comes after the subject

Tense, Pronoun, Time & Place Change according to rules.

Conjunction

If 'wh' family present — No conjunction

If no 'wh' Present — Conj.- 'if' or 'whether'.

Change into Indirect Speech

1. He said to me, "Why did you come here yesterday?"
2. He said to the clerk, "When does this office open?"
3. He said to us, "Don't you know that honesty is the best policy?"
4. He said to me, "Haven't you booked these tickets from this counter?"
5. He said to me, "Are you coming or not?"

Answer

1. He asked me why I had come/ gone there the previous day.
2. He asked the clerk when that office opened.
3. He asked us if we didn't know that honesty is the best policy.
4. He asked me if I had not booked those tickets from that counter.
5. He asked me whether I was coming or not.

Optative Sentences



Sentences of Wish, Prayer or Curse

He said, "May god bless you."

Indirect Speech → He prayed that god might bless me.

Changes

Said

wished/ prayed

Conjunction

that

May

(hidden/ given) — Might. Might comes after the subject

Tense, Time, Pronoun and Place

change according to rules.

Examples:

1. He said, "God bless you."
2. She said to me, "Go to hell."
3. They said, "Long live the king."
4. He said, "May you prosper in life."
5. She said, "May you succeed in this attempt."

Answer

1. He wished that god might bless me.
2. She cursed me to go to hell.
OR
She cursed me that I might go to hell.
3. They wished that the king might live long.
4. He prayed/ wished that I might prosper in life.
5. She prayed/ wished that I might succeed in that attempt.

Imperative Sentences

1. He said to me, "Please help me."
2. He requested me to help him.

Changes

Said to → **ordered/ requested/ advised/ forbade etc**

Conjunction → **to**

'To' is followed by $V_{b.f}$

Pronoun, Time, Place & Tense change according to rules

Change into Indirect Speech

1. He said to me, "Please help me today."
2. He said to me, "Sir, don't lean against the wall."
3. He said to the judge, "Your Honour, Please help me in getting Justice."
4. He said to the servant, "Get out of this room right now."
5. He said to me, "Please help me."
(A) He yelled for help. (B) He yelled at me for help.
6. He said to her, "Dear, are you sad?" She said, "No. / Yes."
7. He said to me, "Don't forget to post this letter today."
8. He said to her, "Go to your grandmother's house as it is high time that she saw you."

Answer

1. He requested me to help him that day.
2. He asked me respectfully not to lean against the wall.
OR
He respectfully forbade me to lean against the wall.
3. He requested the judge respectfully to help him in getting justice.
4. She ordered the servant to get out of that room right then.
5. Ans. (A) He requested me to help him.
6. He asked her lovingly if she was sad.
She replied/ answered in the negative (for 'No') She replied/ answered in the affirmative (for 'yes').
7. He reminded me to post that letter that day.
8. He asked her to go to her grandmother's house as it was high time that she saw her.

- (ii) "Sir/ Madam" etc are replaced by adverb "respectfully".
"Dear/ My beloved" etc are replaced by lovingly/ affectionately.

It is time/ it is high time के बाद subject + V_2 (except was) आता है और ये change नहीं हो सकता

Sentences of Let

1. He said to me, "Let me go." (Seeking permission)
2. (i) He said to me, "Let us give a party." (Suggestion)
(ii) I said, "Let us not."
3. He said, "Let it rain, I have to go." (Insisting)
4. He said, "Let them say so." (Don't care attitude)
5. He said, "Let her do her worst. She cannot harm me." (Declaration)
6. He said, "Mohan has made this mess. Let him clean it." (Forced Action)

Answers (Sentences of Let)

1. He asked me to let him go.
2. (i) He suggested to me that we should give a party.
OR
He suggested that we should give a party.
OR
He suggested giving a party.
I opposed the idea.
3. He insisted on going even if it was raining.
OR
He persisted in going even if it was raining.
4. He did not care for what they said.
OR
He did not care even if they said so.
5. He declared that she couldn't harm him even if she did her worst.
6. He said that Mohan had made that mess and he would have to clean it.

इन सभी वाक्यों में कोई **Fixed** नियम नहीं है बल्कि **Speaker** का **Mood Important** है।

Mood Based Sentences

1. He said, "Babies, drink milk." (Order)
2. He said, "Babies drink milk." (Universal truth)
3. He said to her, "Why not stay in this hotel tonight?"
4. He said to me, "Why to help him now when nothing can be done?"
5. He said to himself, "What to do now?"
6. He said to her, "Suppose your son goes to the water park today."
7. He said to me, "Would you repeat the question?"
8. He said to me, "May I help you.?"

Answers (Mood Based Sentences)

1. He ordered the babies to drink milk.
2. He said that babies drink milk.
3. He suggested to her that they should stay in that hotel that night and sought her opinion.
4. He told me that there was no use helping him then when nothing could be done.
5. He wondered what to do then.
6. He proposed to her to take her son to water park that day.
7. He requested me to repeat the question.
He asked me if I would repeat the question. (×)
8. He offered me his help.

Use of 'To' when followed by Indirect Object

Use 'to' (with Indirect object)

Suggest	Listen	Propose
Describe	Say	Explain
Speak	Write	Talk
Pray	Report	Reply Complain

Don't use 'to'

Encourage	Tell	Welcome
Ask	Compliment	Beg
Request	Command	Warn
Thank	Congratulate	Order
Inform	Forbid	Remind

EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES

TYPE – 1

Eg:-

He said, "Alas! I am undone."

He exclaimed with sorrow that he was undone.

Rules:

- Said + Alas! exclaimed with sorrow
 Hurray! exclaimed with joy
 Oh! exclaimed with regret/ surprise
 Fie!/ Ugh! exclaimed with despise / disgust
 Phew! exclaimed with respite/ relief
 Wow! exclaimed with joy
- Remaining rules of Assertive Sentences will be applied.

TYPE – 1

- He said, "Phew! We are safe now."
- He said, "Hurray! We have won the match."
- She said, "Fie! It is stinking."

Answers (Type – 1)

- He exclaimed with relief that they were safe then.
- He exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
- She exclaimed with disgust that it was stinking.

TYPE - 2

1. He said, "Hurray" and jumped.
2. She said, "Phew" and slipped into the sofa.
3. The woman said, "Alas!" and fainted.
4. He said, "Damn!"

Answers (Type - 2)

1. He exclaimed with joy and jumped.
2. She exclaimed with relief and slipped into the sofa.
3. The woman exclaimed with sorrow and fainted.
4. He exclaimed with disgust.
OR
He exclaimed with anger.

TYPE - 3

1. He said, "A beggar and this attitude!"
2. He said, "A college student in this luxury car!"
3. Akbar said, "Fie! a soldier and afraid of fighting!"

Answers (Type - 3)

1. He exclaimed that a beggar should not have that attitude.
2. He exclaimed that a college student is generally not seen in that luxury car.
3. Akbar exclaimed with disgust and said that a soldier must not be afraid of fighting.

TYPE - 4

1. He said, "What a beautiful city Simla is!"
2. She said, "How beautiful the rain is!"

3. He said, "How beautifully she sings!"
4. She said, "What nonsense!"

Answers (Type - 4)

1. He exclaimed with joy that Simla is a very beautiful city.
2. She exclaimed with joy that the rain was very beautiful.
3. He exclaimed with praise that she sang very beautifully.
4. She exclaimed with disgust that it was nonsense.

TYPE - 5

Many times the use of most appropriate words is more important.

1. He said, "Good!".
She said, "Thank You."
2. He said to me, "Bravo! You have done well."
3. The thief said, "Help me O' heaven, I will never steal again."
4. The poor examinee said, "O God, have pity on me."
5. He said to me, "Welcome!"
6. He said to me, "Congratulations!"

Answers (Type - 5)

1. He appreciated her effort. She thanked him.
2. He applauded me saying that I had done well.
3. The thief called upon heaven to help him and witness his resolution of never stealing again.
4. The poor examinee invoked god imploring him to have pity on him.
5. He welcomed me.
6. He congratulated me.

MODALS BASED SENTENCES

1. MAY

1. He said, "It may rain tonight." (Possibility)
2. He said to me, "You may go home now." (permission granted)
3. He said to me, "May god bless you." (Optative sentence)
4. He said to me, "May I come in?" (Permission sought)

Answers (MAY)

1. He said that it might rain that night.
2. He permitted/ allowed me to go home then.
3. He prayed that god might bless me.
4. He requested me to let him come in.

2. MUST

1. He said, "We all must die one day." (High possibility)
2. He said, "I must leave for the station now." (Strong suggestion of Present)
3. He said, "You must get up early tomorrow." (Strong suggestion of Future)
4. He said to me, "You must keep quiet as this is a hospital. (Order)

Answers (Must)

1. He said that we all must die one day.
2. He said that he had to leave for the station then.
3. He said that I would have to get up early the next day.
4. He ordered me to keep quiet as that was a hospital.

3. NEED

1. He said to me, "You need to finish this work today." (Necessity of Present)
2. She said to me, "You need to clear the dues tomorrow."
(Necessity of Future)

Answers (NEED)

1. He told me that I had to finish that work that day.
2. She told me that I would have to clear the dues the next day.

4. CAN & COULD

1. He said, "I can lift this box."
2. He said, "I could not do this."
3. She said, "We could not leave the hostel premises after 5 pm."
4. He said to me, "Could you type these letters for me?"

Answers (CAN & COULD)

1. He said that he could lift that box.
2. He said that he could not do that.
3. She said that they were not permitted/ allowed to leave the hostel premises after 5 pm.
4. He requested me to type those letters for him.

IDIOMATIC MODALS

1. He said to me, "I have to go now."
2. He said to me, "I will have to go tomorrow."
3. He said to me, "I had to go yesterday."
4. She said to me, "I had sooner see my parents."
5. He said to the boy, "You had better leave the dog alone."

Answers (Idiomatic Modals)

1. He told me that he had to go then.
2. He told me that he would have to go the next day.
3. He told me that he had had to go the previous day.
4. She told me that she had sooner see her parents.
5. He warned the boy that he had better leave the dog alone.

OR

He warned the boy to leave the dog alone.

VERB BASED

1. He said, "I bid the highest price."
2. He said, "I bid him good night."
3. He said, "I lie about my experience."
4. He said, "I lie on this mattress."
5. He said, "I fell trees."
6. He said, "I fell asleep."
7. He said, "Help."
(i) He yelled at him for help.
(ii) He yelled for help.

Answers (Verb Based)

1. He said that he had bid the highest price.
2. He said that he bade him good night.

3. He said that he lied about his experience.
4. He said that he lay on that mattress.
5. He said that he felled trees.
6. He said that he had fallen asleep.
7. Answer → (ii)

TENSE BASED

1. He said, "I had a strange experience last night."
2. She said, "I saw you the last night."
3. He said to me, "Have you ever dressed in black?"
4. He said, "I haven't stolen anything."
5. He said to me, "Have you ever seen the Taj Mahal?"
6. He said, "It's high time that I went home."

Answers (Tense Based)

1. He said that he had had a strange experience the previous night.
2. She said that she had seen me the previous night.
3. He asked me if I had ever dressed in black.
4. He said that he hadn't stolen anything.
5. He asked me if I had ever seen the Taj Mahal.
6. He said that it's high time that he went home.



3, 4, 5 when action is complete and the given action is important and past time is not given, we use Present Perfect Tense.

GREETINGS BASED

1. He said, "Hi."
2. He said, "Hello Rahul, Good Morning."
3. He said to me, "Good night. I am going to bed now."
4. He said to me, "Hello, Happy Birthday."

Said + Hi/ Hello

Good morning/ evening/ afternoon

Good Night / Good bye / Farewell

Answers (Greetings Based)

1. He greeted me.
2. He greeted Rahul and wished him good morning.
3. He bade me good night and added that he was going to bed then.
4. He greeted me and wished me Happy Birthday.

Greeted

Said changes into Wished

Said changes into Bade

Addressing & Calling Someone with Some Noun

1. The leader said, "Brothers and sisters, I need your support".
2. He said to the boy, "Scoundrel, Get out."
3. He said, "Uncle, Good Morning."
4. He said to the hawker, "Fool, liar!"

Answers (Addressing & Calling Someone with Some Noun)

1. Addressing people as brothers and sisters, the leader said that he needed their support.
2. Calling the boy a scoundrel, he ordered him to get out.
3. (A) He wished his uncle good morning.
(B) Addressing him as uncle, he wished him good morning.
4. He called the hawker a fool and liar.

INFINITIVE BASED

1. He said, "I will do it."
2. He said, "No, I will not do it."
3. He said, "Yes, I committed this crime."
4. He said, "I haven't stolen anything."

Answers (Infinitive Based)

1. He agreed to do it.

2. He refused to do it.
3. He confessed to have committed that crime.
4. He denied to have stolen anything.

QUESTION TAG

1. He said to me, "Dear, you are happy now, aren't you?"
2. She said to him, "It is not good for health, is it?"
3. He said to me, "Hi! You are coming to meet me today, aren't you?"

Answers (Question Tag)

1. (i) He lovingly told me that I was happy then and asked me if I wasn't.
(ii) He asked me lovingly if I wasn't happy then.
2. (i) He told him that it was not good for health and asked him if it was.
(ii) She asked him if it was good for health.
3. (i) He greeted me and said that I was coming to meet him that day and asked me if I wasn't.
(ii) He greeted me and asked me if I was not coming to meet him that day.

Where 'Shall' Changes into 'Would'

1. He said to me, "I shall come."

मैं आऊँगा

He told me that he should come.(×)

उसे आना चाहिए

He told me that he would come.(✓)

SSC CGL TIER-II : 2019

INDIRECT/DIRECT SPEECH
Exam held on : 15/11/2020

- Amit said to me, "Your parents are waiting for you."
(A) Amit told me that his parents were waiting for me.
(B) Amit told me that your parents are waiting for you.
(C) Amit told me that my parents were waiting for me.
(D) Amit asked me if my parents were waiting for me.
- Esha said, "Avika is not going to school today as she has fever."
(A) Esha said that Avika had not gone to school that day as she was having fever.
(B) Esha said that Avika was not going to school today as she has fever.
(C) Esha said that Avika was not going to school that day as she had fever.
(D) Esha said that Avika is not going to school today as she has fever.
- Rani said to me, "A monkey bit me in the park."
(A) Rani asked me if a monkey bit me in the park.
(B) Rani told me that a monkey bit me in the park.
(C) Rani told me that a monkey had bitten her in the park.
(D) Rani told me that a monkey has bitten her in the park.
- Mother said to me, "Will you help me in cleaning the house?"
(A) Mother asked me if you would help her in cleaning the house.
(B) Mother asked me will you help me in cleaning the house.
(C) Mother told me that I should help her in cleaning the house.
(D) Mother asked me if I would help her in cleaning the house.
- The professor said to Piyush, "Will you clean the data and get back to me tomorrow?"
(A) The professor told Piyush clean the data and get back to him the next day.
(B) The professor asked Piyush if he would clean the data and get back to him the next day.
(C) The professor asked Piyush will you clean the data and get back to me tomorrow.
(D) The professor ordered Piyush that he should clean the data and get back to him the next day.

6. The driver said to the passerby, "Do you know the way to the market?"
(A) The driver asked the passerby did he know the way to the market.
(B) The driver asked the passerby if he knows the way to the market.
(C) The driver asked the passerby if he knew the way to the market.
(D) The driver asked the passerby whether you know the way to the market.
7. Taru said, "Kavya is going to her grandmother's house today for the weekend."
(A) Taru said that Kavya is going to her grandmother's house today for the weekend.
(B) Taru said that Kavya has gone to her grandmother's house that day for the weekend.
(C) Taru said that Kavya was going to her grandmother's house today for the weekend.
(D) Taru said that Kavya was going to her grandmother's house that day for the weekend.
8. The teacher said to the parents, "Young children are very restless."
(A) The teacher said the parents that young children are very restless.
(B) The teacher told the parents that young children had been very restless.
(C) The teacher told the parents that young children were very restless.
(D) The teacher asked the parents if young children are very restless.
9. "Press button A to start the machine," said the instructor to the trainees.
(A) The instructor said to the trainees that you should press button A to start the machine.
(B) The instructor told the trainees to press button A to start the machine.
(C) The instructor requested the trainees press button A to start the machine.
(D) The instructor told the trainees that pressing button A would start the machine.
10. She said, "Is anyone there in the house?"
(A) She asked if anyone was there in the house.
(B) She enquired if someone is there in the house.
(C) She told there is someone in the house.
(D) She asked there is anyone in the house.
11. The thief said to the judge, "Pardon me."
(A) The thief begged the judge to pardon him.
(B) The thief requested the judge for pardon me.
(C) The thief said to the judge to pardon.
(D) The thief urged to pardon to the judge.
12. I said to you, "He should be trusted."
(A) I asked you if he should be trusted.
(B) I told you that he should be trusted.
(C) I told you that you should be trusted.
(D) I told you that I should be trusted.
13. Our Principal says, "Rules are to be followed at any cost."
(A) Our Principal advised that rules need to be followed at any cost.
(B) Our Principal says that rules are to be followed at any cost.
(C) Our Principal told that rules are to be followed at any cost.
(D) Our Principal said that rules had to be followed at any cost.

14. I said to Promod, "How did you break your leg?"
(A) I asked Promod how did you break your leg.
(B) I asked Promod how he had broken his leg.
(C) I asked Promod how he had broken your leg.
(D) I asked Promod how you broke your leg.
15. I said to my friend, "Please help me arrange these books on the shelf."
(A) I asked my friend to help me arrange these books on the shelf.
(B) I requested my friend to help me arrange those books on the shelf.
(C) I ordered my friend to help me arrange those books on the shelf.
(D) I told to my friend to please help me arrange those books on the shelf.
16. The salesman said that he had verified all the bills while the goods were being packed.
(A) The salesman said, "He had verified all the bills while the goods was being packed."
(B) The salesman said, "I am verifying all the bills while the goods are being packed."
(C) The salesman said, "I have verified all the bills while the goods are packed."
(D) The salesman said, "I verified all the bills while the goods were being packed."
17. My brother told me that I could see any film I wanted on TV.
(A) My brother said to me, "You could see any film you wanted on TV."
(B) My brother said to me, "I could see any film I wanted on TV."
(C) My brother said to me, "I can see any film I want on TV."
(D) My brother said to me, "You can see any film you want on TV."
18. I asked Rahul why he was back so soon.
(A) I asked to Rahul, "Why was he back so soon?"
(B) I said to Rahul, "Why he was back so soon?"
(C) I said to Rahul, "Why are you back so soon?"
(D) I said to Rahul, "Why you are back so soon?"
19. Madhuri told me that I could stay in her flat whenever I was in Kolkata.
(A) Madhuri said to me, "I could stay in her flat whenever I was in Kolkata."
(B) Madhuri said to me, "You could stay in her flat whenever she was in Kolkata."
(C) Madhuri said to me, "I can stay in my flat whenever I am in Kolkata."
(D) Madhuri said to me, "You can stay in my flat whenever you are in Kolkata."
20. She exclaimed that I looked very beautiful in that dress.
(A) She said, "How beautiful you look in this dress!"
(B) She said, "How beautiful I look in this dress!"
(C) She said, "How beautiful she looks in this dress!"
(D) She said, "How beautiful I looked in that dress!"
21. Anurag says that he would like to be an electronics engineer when he grows up.
(A) Anurag says, "He likes to be an electronics engineer when he grows up."
(B) Anurag said, "I will like to be an electronics engineer when I grow up."
(C) Anurag says, "I like to be an electronics engineer when I grow up."
(D) Anurag says, "I would like to be an electronics engineer when I grow up."

22. The policeman told the inspector that he had arrested a man for breaking the lock-down rules.
- (A) The policeman said to the inspector, "He arrests a man for breaking the lock-down rules."
 - (B) The policeman said to the Inspector, "He would arrest a man for breaking the lock-down rules."
 - (C) The policeman said to the inspector, "I am arresting a man for breaking the lock-down rules."
 - (D) The policeman said to the inspector, "I have arrested a man for breaking the lock-down rules."
23. Garima told her friends that she couldn't go with them to the movie that night as she was very busy.
- (A) Garima said to her friends, "She couldn't go with them to the movie that night as she was very busy."
 - (B) Garima said to her friends, "I can't go with you to the movie tonight as I am very busy."
 - (C) Garima said to her friends, "I can't go with them to the movie that night as I was very busy."
 - (D) Garima said to her friends, "I couldn't go with you to the movie tonight as I was very busy."
24. Taru said that she could not leave the children alone.
- (A) Taru said, "I cannot leave the children alone."
 - (B) Taru said, "I could not be leaving the children alone."
 - (C) Taru said, "I will not leave the children alone."
 - (D) Taru said, "She would not leave the children alone."
25. He regretted the mistake he had made in his calculations.
- (A) He said, "I regretted the mistake I made in my calculations."
 - (B) He said, "I am sorry for the mistake I made in his calculations."
 - (C) He said, "He regrets the mistake he made in my calculations."
 - (D) He said, "I regret the mistake I made in my calculations."
26. Anshul told me that his mother was not at home and that she would be back the following day.
- (A) Anshul said to me, "My mother is not at home. She will be back tomorrow."
 - (B) Anshul said to me, "My mother is not at home. She would be back the following day."
 - (C) Anshul said to me, "His mother was not at home. She would be back tomorrow."
 - (D) Anshul said to me, "My mother was not at home. She will be back the following day."
27. Taru told me that Avika was having her online cooking class then.
- (A) Taru said to me, "Avika will be having her online cooking class now."
 - (B) Taru said to me, "Avika is having her online cooking class at that time."
 - (C) Taru said to me, "Avika is having her online cooking class now."
 - (D) Taru said to me, "Avika was having her online cooking class at this time."

Answer Key:- 1. (C), 2. (C), 3. (C), 4. (D), 5. (B), 6. (C), 7. (D), 8. (C), 9. (B), 10. (A), 11. (A), 12. (B), 13. (B), 14. (B), 15. (B), 16. (D), 17. (D), 18. (C), 19. (D), 20. (A), 21. (D), 22. (D), 23. (B), 24. (A), 25. (D), 26. (A), 27. (C)

NOUN

Naming word

1. He is a very good teacher. (N)
 2. Neetu ma'am teaches English. (N Sub. (N) Obj.)
 3. I am fond of sweets. (N)
 4. I have no information. (N)
 5. He bought two oranges. (N)
 6. I need a little sugar. (N)
 7. He is addicted to drinking. (N)
 8. This is my book. (N)
1. Article is followed by a Noun.
 2. Noun comes in place of Subject (कर्ता) and object. (क्या-what, किसको-whom का जवाब)
 3. Noun follows Preposition.
 4. No, any, many, some, few, little, one, two, 1st, 2nd etc are followed by Noun. These are called Determiners.
 7. Preposition is followed by Noun/ Pronoun Gerund.
 8. My, his, her, your, its, their, our are followed by Noun. (My, his etc are called Possessive Adjectives and come under Determiners)

Types

1	2	3	4	5
Proper Noun	Common Noun	Abstract Noun	Material Noun	Collective Noun
Exact Name सटीक नाम	Generic Name सामान्य नाम	That can be felt but cannot be touched इसे महसूस किया जा सकता है लेकिन छुआ नहीं जा सकता	Denotes a Physical Substance एक भौतिक पदार्थ को निरूपित करता है	A collection of a number of people or things (एकसंग्रह या बहुत से लोग या वस्तु का नाम)
E.g. • India • Delhi • Ram	E.g. Boy • City • Planet	E.g. • Joy • Love	E.g. • Gold • Cotton • Silver	E.g. • Army • Jury • Team

Common Noun

1	2	3	5
Masculine	Feminine	Common	Neuter
If the common Noun has male characteristics. (यदि Common Noun में पुरुष गुण हैं, तो वे Masculine Gender में आते हैं।)	If the Common Noun has female characteristics. (यदि Common Noun में महिला विशेषताएं हैं, तो वे Feminine Gender में आते हैं।)	If the same Noun can be used for both man and woman (अगर एक ही Noun पुरुष और महिला दोनों के लिए प्रयुक्त हो, तो वे Common Gender में आते हैं।)	Refers to the names of things/ objects (वस्तुओं के नाम के बारे में बताता है।)

Masculine	Feminine	Common	Neuter
Bridegroom = दूल्हा, वर	Bride = दुल्हन, वधू	Teacher = अध्यापक	Chair = कुर्सी
Tiger = बाघ	Tigress = बाघिन	Student = छात्र	Desk = मेज़
Master = शिक्षक	Mistress = अध्यापिका	Client = ग्राहक	Bench = बेंच
Milkman = दूधवाला	Milkmaid = दूधवाली	Customer = ग्राहक	Table = मेज
Landlord = मकान मालिक	Landlady = मकान मालकिन	Lawyer = वकील	Book = पुस्तक
Man servant = नौकर	Maid servant = नौकरानी	Relative = संबंधी	Chocolate = चॉकलेट
Fox = लोमड़	Vixen = लोमड़ी	Child = बच्चा	Pen = कलम
Horse = घोड़ा	Mare = घोड़ी	Parent = माता-पिता	Pencil = पेंसिल
Billy Goat = बकरा	Nanny goat = बकरी	Enemy = दुश्मन	Fan = पंखा
Wizard = जादूगर	Witch = जादूगरनी/चुड़ैल	Doctor = चिकित्सक	Road = सड़क
Gander = बत्तख (नर)	Goose = बत्तख (मादा)	Employee = कर्मचारी	Key = चाबी
Rooster = मुर्गा	Hen = मुर्गी	Neighbour = पड़ोसी	Wallet = बटुआ
Bull dolphin	Cow dolphin	Musician = संगीतकार	Glass = गिलास
Buck rabbit	Doe rabbit	Guardian = अभिभावक	Car = गाड़ी
Debutant	Debutante	Worker = मज़दूर	Kit = किट
Confidant = विश्वासपात्र (पुरुष)	Confidante = विश्वासपात्र (महिला)	Person = व्यक्ति	Headphone = हेड फोनस
Heir = वारिस	Heiress = वारिस (स्त्री)	Singer = गायक	Window = खिड़की
Benefactor = दानकर्ता	Benefactress = दान करनेवाली	Dancer = नर्तकी	Radio = रेडियो
Fiance = मंगेतर	Fiancee = मंगेतर (स्त्री)	Director = निदेशक	Board
Actor = अभिनेता	Actress = अभिनेत्री	Bird = चिड़िया	Bag

Common Noun

Uncountable Noun

That cannot be counted
(जिसकी गिनती नहीं हो सकती है)

E.g.

Knowledge (ज्ञान) →

~~Knowledges~~

Air (वायु) →

~~Airs~~

Countable Noun

That can be counted
(जिनकी गिनती हो सकती है)

Singular Noun

E.g.

Boy
Pen

Plural Noun

E.g.

Boys
Pens

	Uncountable Noun	Singular Noun	Plural Noun
Verb	Singular Verb	Singular Verb	Plural Verb are/were/ have/ V₁
Pronoun	It is/was/has/ V₁+s/es	She, He, It	They
Article	×/ the	a / an / the	×/ the
Adjective	Quantity of (की मात्रा)	×	Number of
	Little (मात्रा में कम)	×	Few (संख्या में कम)
	Much (मात्रा में ज्यादा)	×	Many (संख्या में ज्यादा)
	Plenty of (काफी)	×	Plenty of (काफी)
	Great deal of (काफी)	×	Numerous (कई)
	Some (कुछ)	Some (कोई)	Some (कुछ)
	Lots of (बहुत)	×	Lots of
	A lot of (बहुत)	×	A lot of
E.g →	Money	Star	Stars (Countable but countless)

Uncountable Noun It has no plural form

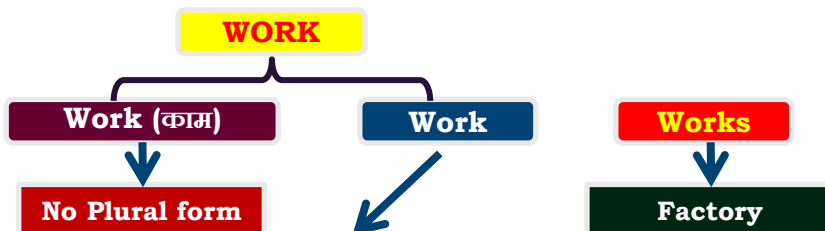
E.g.: Knowledge (ज्ञान) → ~~Knowledges~~

If we find Plural form of Uncountable Noun, it is either wrong or has an entirely different meaning. **For E.g.:** Air – हवा. 'Airs' means 'affectation' (बनावटी व्यवहार)

List of Uncountable Nouns:-

Uncountable Noun	Meaning in Hindi	Uncountable Noun	Meaning in Hindi
Scenery	दृश्य, नजारा	Luggage	सामान
Poetry	काव्य	Baggage	सामान
Advice	सलाह	Postage	डाक-शुल्क
Furniture	फर्नीचर	Wastage	क्षय/ बचा-खुचा चोज
Hair	बाल	Knowledge	ज्ञान
Information	जानकारी	Jewellery	आभूषण
Business	व्यापार	Breakage	टूटे हुए टुकड़े
Bread	ब्रेड	Equipment	उपकरण
Stationery	लिखने की सामग्री	Evidence	सबूत
Crockery	चीनी मिट्टी के बर्तन	Work	काम

Percentage	प्रतिशत	Cost	लागत
News	समाचार	Behaviour	व्यवहार
Paper	कागज़	Gratitude	कृतज्ञता
Traffic	यातायात	Dirt	गंदगी
Dust	धूल	Filth	गंदगी
Electricity	बिजली	Beauty	सुंदरता
Music	संगीत	Word	वादा, संदेश
Confectionary	केक-पेस्ट्री	Machinery	कल-पुर्जे
Pottery	मिट्टी के बर्तनों	Note:- Poetry is uncountable while poem is countable. Stationary — Not movable (Adjective)	
Bakery	बेकरी (ब्रेड/बिस्कुट इत्यादि)		
Fuel	ईंधन		



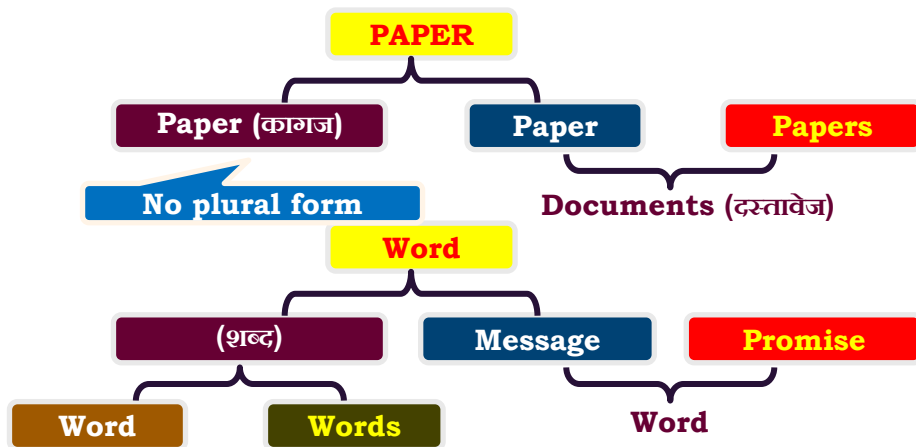
Can come in plural form if it means literary pieces. (अगर इसका अर्थ साहित्य लेख हो, तो work का Plural form 'works' होगा)

1. Mr. Sharma is my confidante.
2. The debutante will surely make her parents proud.
3. How many eggs and milk do you need?
4. The sceneries of Kashmir enchanted me.
5. Please order some bakeries for the party.
6. We have two bakeries/ confectionaries in our colony.
7. (i) The costs of oxen are too high for the farmers to bear.
(ii) The Ox costs Rs. 20,000.
8. I have many works to do today.
9. I have read many works of John Keats.
10. I wrote two poetries last night.

1. Confidant
2. No error
3. Add 'how much' before milk
4. Scenery
5. Bakery
- * Enchant – to attract (मंत्रमुग्ध करना)
6. No error.

Confectionary/
Bakery { Bread & Cakes → **only singular form**
Shop/Shops where cakes etc. are sold → **both singular and plural form**

7. (i) Cost
(ii) No error. Here 'costs' is S.V.
8. Much work or many pieces of work.
9. Work can take Plural form if it means literary pieces
(**Work Plural Form** ले सकता है अगर इसका अर्थ **literary pieces** होता हो)



Answers

11. He gave me two papers to write the essay.
12. Where are the property papers?
13. Don't utter a word.
14. The essay must be of 250 words.
15. What is the words limit?

11. sheets of paper
 12. No error
 13. No error
 14. No error
 15. Change 'words' into 'word'.
If any 'Noun' is used as an 'Adjective', it must be in Singular Form.
(यदि कोई 'Noun', 'Adjective' के रूप में है, तो यह 'Singular form' में होना चाहिए।)
- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| Lung Cancer | Eye Infection |
| Six-foot tall boy | Five-star hotel |

16. He is a man of words.
17. He sent me words to meet him at the earliest.
18. I took his word for it and handed over the papers.
19. Such a behaviour is deplorable.
20. We need some equipments for this experiment.

Answers

16. Change 'words' into 'word' as here it means promise.
17. Change 'words' into 'word' as here it means message.
18. 'To take someone's word for' means to believe what some one says'
19. Behaviour is uncountable so it will not take 'a'.
20. Equipment is an uncountable noun. Remove 's'.

How to use Uncountable Nouns as Countable Nouns:-

Bread, Ice, Snow etc are uncountable nouns but many times we want to use them in countable nouns (singular or plural form). See the word added to them to change them as per our requirement. The word that is added takes singular/ plural form. / (**Bread, Ice, Snow** इत्यादि **Uncountable Nouns** हैं पर कई बार हम उन्हें **Countable** के रूप में प्रयुक्त करना चाहते हैं। ऐसे में उनके साथ एक शब्द जोड़ा जाता है जिसका **Singular** या **Plural** बनाया जा सकता है।)

Examples

1. A loaf/ slice of bread (Plural – Loaves/ Slices of bread) 2. An ice cube (Plural – Ice cubes) 3. A flake of snow 4. A blade of grass 5. A particle of dust/ dirt 6. A speck of dust/ dirt (धूल का कण) 7. A cake/ bar of soap (साबून की टिकिया) 8. A bar of chocolate 9. An ear of corn (एक भुट्टा) 10. A fit of rage (गुस्से का आवेश) 11. An act of kindness 12. A sense of humour (मजाक का लहजा) 13. A pang of hunger (भूख की टीस) 14. A strand of hair (एक बाल) 15. A lock of hair (बालों का लट) 16. A scoop/ bar/ brick of ice cream	17. A ray of hope (आशा की किरण) 18. A ray of sunlight (सूरज की किरण) 19. A beam of sunlight (सूरज की किरणें) 20. A sigh of relief (चैन की सांस) 21. A morsel of food (खाने का निवाला) 22. A breath of fresh air (ताज़ी हवा का झोंका) 23. A stroke of luck 24. A flash of lightning (बिजली की चमक) 25. A gust of wind (हवा का झोंका) 26. A shower of rain (बारिश की बौछार) 27. A pinch of salt (एक चुटकी नमक) 28. An iota of evidence (रत्ती भर सबूत) 29. A piece of furniture/ advice/ information/ work etc 30. A piece of / an article of jewellery

Eg:-

1. He committed the murder in a fit of rage
2. I cannot repay such a kindness.
3. Such a behaviour is intolerable.
4. Put few ice in the juice.
5. The gift basket contains a pastry, an eclairs and a chocolate.
6. The lab assistant bought an equipment.
7. I need an advice.
8. The police have a few information.

Explanations

1. No error
2. Change 'a kindness' into 'an act of kindness.'
3. Remove 'a' as behaviour is an Uncountable Noun.
4. Put a little ice in the juice.
Put a few ice cubes in the juice.
5. Change 'a chocolate' into 'a bar of chocolate'.
6. Change 'an' into 'some'. Equipment is uncountable.
7. Change 'an advice' into 'a piece of advice'.
8. Change 'a few information' into 'a few pieces of information'.

COUNTABLE NOUNS

★ Singular Countable Noun (S.C.N) → into Plural Countable Noun (P.C.N).

S.C.N.		P.C.N.
1. Girl	+	s → Girls
2. Bench	+	es → Benches

Notes:-

V + s/es becomes Singular Verb
N + s/es becomes Plural Noun

If a noun ends in s, ss, ch, sh, z, x and o, it takes 'es' to become plural in form otherwise it takes 's'.

(अगर Noun s, ss, ch, sh, z, x और o में खत्म हो, तो 'es' लेकर plural form बनाता है वना सिर्फ 's' लगता है।)

There are certain nouns that always come in Plural form. They always take plural verb and they cannot take singular form (by removing s/es)

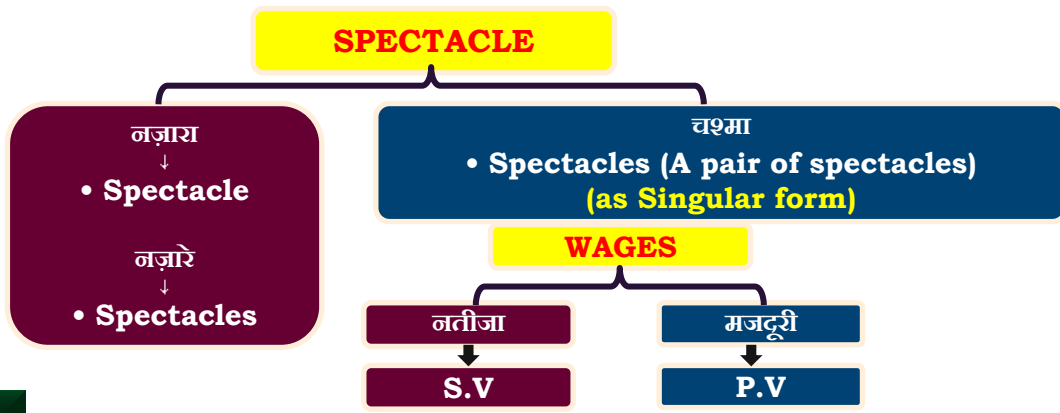
(कुछ ऐसे Nouns हैं जो हमेशा Plural Form में आते हैं। वे हमेशा Plural Verb लेते हैं तथा वे Singular Form में नहीं आ सकते हैं (s/es को हटाकर))

(I) CLOTHES AND ACCESSORIES: Jeans, Pants, Trousers (पैंट), Shorts, Braces (निकले हुए दाँत सही करने वाले तार), Sunglasses, Reading glasses, Goggles, Spectacles

(II) INSTRUMENTS: Binoculars (दूरबीन), Forceps (चिमटी), Handcuffs (हथकड़ी), Scissors (कैंची), Tongs (चिमटा), Gloves (दस्ताने), Pliers (प्लास), Bellows (फूँकनी), Pincers (कील निकालने वाला यंत्र)

(III) **OTHERS:** Gallows (फाँसी का फंदा), *Arrears (बकाया), Fangs (साँप के दाँत), Archives, Congratulations (मुबारकबाद), Thanks (धन्यवाद), Fireworks (पटाके), Savings (बचत), Riches (धन-संपत्ति), embers (राख), lodgings*, outskirts (बाहरी इलाका), regards (सम्मान), shambles (बुरी अवस्था), remains (बचा-खुचा जो है), surroundings (आस-पास का इलाका), tidings (समाचार (News)), troops (झुंड), tactics (युक्ति), valuables (मूल्यवान चीजें), belongings (सामान), eatables (खाने की चीजें), fetters (बेड़ियाँ), tethers (गाय, बकरी को बांधने वाली रस्सी), entrails (किसी जानवर के अंतड़ियाँ इत्यादि), nuptials (शादी), *proceeds, ashes (राख), *goods, premises (जगह), auspices (समर्थन), alms (दान), contents (जो अंदर मौजूद है), whereabouts (अता-पता), wages (मजदूरी/नतीजा), dues (बकाया), *assets.

- *Proceeds — the total amount of money or profit that is made by sale.
- *Goods — movable property (सामान)
- *Assets — Immovable property (सम्पत्ति)
- *Archives — where historical documents are kept (जहाँ ऐतिहासिक दस्तावेज रखे जाते हैं)



Eg:-

- Where is my spectacles? - Sunrise is a beautiful spectacles. - Riches has wings. - His jeans is always flashy. - He bought a pant and two shorts. - Wages of hard work is sweet. - Wages are paid in cash. - The proceeds has been deposited. - The nuptial has taken place recently. - The contents of my book has been updated.	- The monument is lying in shambles. - Alms is given to the poor. - No more supply will be made unless the arrear is paid. - Tiding about torrential rain is causing great concern. - He was robbed of his valuable (×) his valuable things (✓) his valuables (✓)

16. Eatables is not allowed in theatres.
17. We pay Rs. 5000 for boarding and lodging.
18. The lodging were uncomfortable as the landlord's child threw tantrums all the time.
19. The house is built of stones.

Explanations

1. Change 'is' into 'are'.
2. Change 'spectacles' into 'spectacle'.
3. Change 'has' into 'have'.
4. Change 'is' into 'are'.
5. Change 'a pant' into 'a pair of pants' and 'two shorts' into 'two pairs of shorts'.
6. No error.
7. No error.
8. Change 'has' into 'have'.
9. Change 'nuptial has' into 'nuptials have'.
10. Change 'has' into 'have'.
11. No error.
12. Change 'is' into 'are'.
13. Change 'arrear' into 'arrears' and 'is' into 'are'.
14. Change 'tiding' into 'tidings' and 'is' into 'are'.
16. Change 'is' into 'are'.
17. The correct phrase is 'board and lodging'. 'Board and lodging' means 'the meals and room' that are provided when someone pays to stay somewhere.
18. Change 'lodging' into 'lodgings'.
'Lodgings' means a room in somebody's house.
19. Change 'stones' into 'stone'.

- Stone { stone – building material
stones (छोटे-छोटे पत्थर).
- Marble { Marble (S.N) – संगमरमर
Marbles (P.N) – कंचे
- Wood { Wood (S.N) – लकड़ी
Woods (P.N) – जंगल
- Iron { Iron (S.N) – लोहा
Irons (P.N) – बेड़िया
- Brick { Brick (Building material)
Bricks – (ईंट)

Certain Nouns are plural in form but singular in meaning. They take singular verb with them

Subjects	Mathematics, Civics, Physics, Statistics, Economics, Politics, Ethics (नीति), Linguistics (भाषाओं की पढ़ाई).
Diseases	Measles, Mumps, Rickets, Psoriasis, Shingles, Diabetes, Rabies
Books & Movies	Gulliver's Travels, Arabian Nights, Two States, Three Musketeers etc
Games	Chess, Darts, Billiards
Others	Summons (कोर्ट का बुलावा), Athletics (वे खेल जिसमें शारीरिक बल चाहिए), News

Linguistics — the study of languages

- * Measles — खसरा * Mumps — गलाफड़ा
- * Rickets — सूखा रोग * Shingles — दाद
- * Psoriasis — (एक प्रकार का) चर्म रोग

- I have received
(i) Two summonses
(ii) One summons
- No news _____ good news. (be)
- Statistics _____ my favourite subject.
- Politics _____ not my cup of tea.
- Politics of Marx and Gandhi _____ poles apart.
- Economics of Tata and Reliance _____ better than those of many other companies.
- Three idiots _____ an interesting movie.

2. is

3. is

4. is

5. are

6. are

7. is

Explanation — 5 & 6

Politics

Economics

Statistics

One Subject
(विषय)

→ S. Verb follows

Politics

Statistics

Economics

→ Political views

→ Data

→ Money Management skills

P.V follows

Certain Nouns look singular but are plural in meaning. Use plural verb with them.

6 Ps — Police, People, Poultry, Peasantry, Personnel (staff), Public

3 Cs — Cattle (मवेशी), Clergy (पादरी), Cavalry,

Electorate, Infantry, Gentry, Vermin, Youth

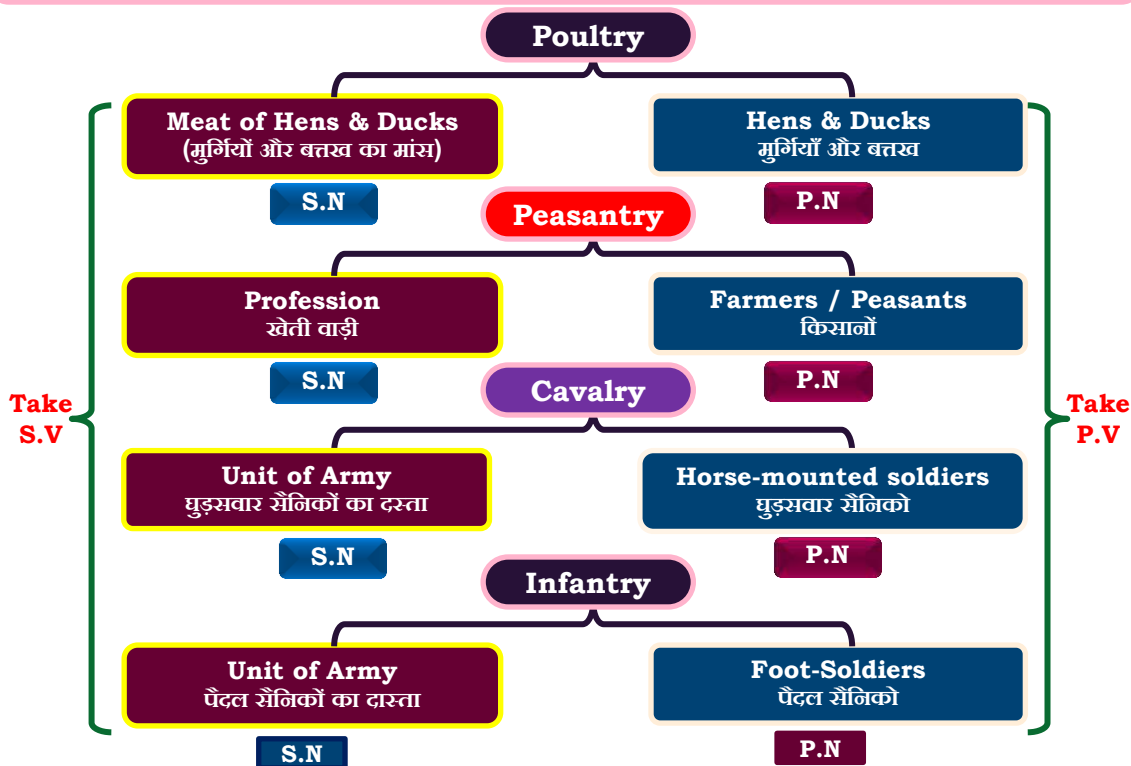
- _____ are small insects and animals harmful to plants and crops.
- _____ means very unpleasant and offensive people.
- The police _____ arrived. (has/ have)
- _____ have voted against the Congress Party.
- The youths needs jobs.

ELECTORATE — People who are eligible to vote
YOUTH — Young people

6. _____ means high class people.
7. Cattles are grazing in the field.
8. Local clergy _____ come to resolve the issue. (has/ have)
9. Five persons have come.
10. Many persons come to see the Taj Mahal.
11. The Greeks were brave peoples.
12. A clergy member has come.

Explanations

1. **Vermin** • **Vermin** — वो छोटे जानवर और कीड़े जो plants and crop को खराब करते हैं।
2. **Vermin** — परेशान करने वाले लोग
3. **have**
4. **Electorate** • **Electorate** — people who can vote
5. **Youth** ^(P.N) — young people.
Change 'youths' into 'youth' and 'needs' in 'need' youth is a P.N.
6. **Gentry** — High class people
7. **Cattle** — मवेशी
8. **Clergy** — priests. Use P.V 'have'.
9. **No error**
10. **Change 'persons' into 'people'.**
11. • **Person** — व्यक्ति
• **Persons** — व्यक्तियों
• **Peoples** — of different races (एक ही नस्ल के हैं तो **Peoples** नहीं आएगा बल्कि 'People' आएगा)
12. **Clergy** is a plural noun. As a singular noun use 'clergy member'.



13. Peasantry _____ a thankless profession. (be)
14. Peasantry _____ raising slogans against the government. (be)
15. Poultry _____ better than red meat. (be)
16. Poultry _____ culled to check bird flu. (be)
17. Infantry _____ taught how to camouflage themselves. (be)
18. Infantry _____ an essential unit of army. (be)
19. Police personnels have arrived.
20. Public knows everything.

Explanations

13. is 14. are 15. is
16. are/were + culled
 ➤ Cull — to kill animals or birds in a large number (पंक्षी/जानवर की भारी संख्या में हत्या करना)
17. are
 ➤ Camouflage — to hide oneself by getting unrecognizable and mixed with nearby object.
18. is
19. Change 'Personnels' into 'Personnel'.
20. Change 'knows' into 'know'.

There are certain Nouns that do not take plural form but are both singular and plural in meaning. They will take plural Verb and Plural Adjective if used in plural sense.

Eg:-

Deer

Sheep

Offspring (वंशज)

Aircraft

Vacation (छुट्टियाँ)

Fish

1. Three _____ killed. (deer, be)
 One _____ killed. (deer, be)
2. He bought one _____ and cooked it. (Fish)
3. He bought two _____ and cooked them. (Fish)
4. _____ look beautiful in aquarium. (Fish)
5. He died intestate as he had no _____.
6. The poachers killed three deers.

Answers

1. deer, were
 deer, was
2. fish
3. fish
4. Fishes
5. offspring
6. Changes 'deers' into 'deer'.

Note:-

- Plural of fish is 'fish'.
- The Proper Noun of the different species of fish will also be in singular form
 Rohu, Katla, Salmon
- Fishes — fish of different species

Certain 'Nouns' are always in plural form but they can come in both singular and plural structures.

Eg:-

Headquarters
(मुख्यालय)

Species
(प्रजाति)

Series
(श्रृंखला)

Innings
(पारी)

Premises
(परिसर)

1. Many _____ are endangered and this _____ of flies has become extinct.
2. We won the last _____
3. We won two _____
4. The headquarter of UNICEF is in New York.

Answers

1. species, species
2. series
3. series
4. Change 'headquarter' into headquarters.

There are Certain Nouns, that take one more meaning when converted into Plural Form.

Letter → अक्षर, चिट्ठी

Custom → चलन

Manner → तरीका

Quarter → 1/4

Letters → साहित्य, अक्षरों, चिट्ठियां

Customs → चलन, सीमा-शुल्क

Manners → तरीके, शिष्टाचार (Etiquettes)

Quarters → 1/4 (Plural में), Residence

1. There are 26 _____ in English Alphabet.
2. You have no _____.
3. He became a _____ officer.
4. Serving tea is an English _____.
5. Economy will improve in three _____.
6. He lives in a government _____.
7. He is a man of _____.

Answers

1. letters
2. manners
3. customs
4. custom
5. quarters
6. quarters
7. letters

Explanation to question 4:-

(i) Custom

चलन जो एक आदत बन जाती है।
(Common Practice)

(ii) Tradition

Custom जब बहुत पुराना हो जाए और हमारे धर्म में समा जाए।

Eg:- Sati pratha was a Hindu tradition

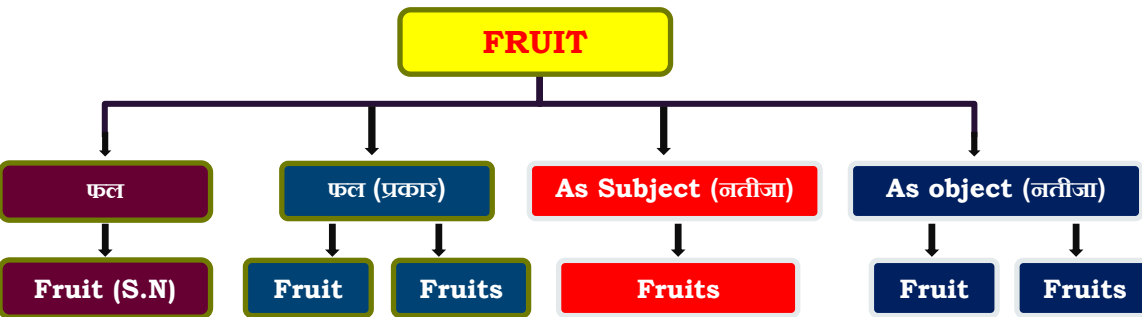
(iii) Habit

व्यक्तिगत होता है।
(Individual)

*** Practice – चलन, अभ्यास**

There are certain 'Nouns' that take a different meaning when changed into plural form.

Pain	→ दर्द	Pains	→ अथक प्रयास (effort)
Air	→ हवा	Airs	→ बनावटी व्यवहार (affectation)
Return	→ वापसी	Returns	→ लेखा-जोखा
Force	→ बल	Forces	→ सेना/पुलिस की टुकड़ियाँ
Sand	→ रेत	Sands	→ रेगिस्तान (desert)
Abuse	→ दुर्प्रयोग (wrong use)	Abuses	→ गालियाँ (expletives)
Water	→ पानी	Waters	→ समुद्र (ocean)
Work	→ काम	Works	→ factory, साहित्य
Fruit	→ फल	Fruits	→ types (फल का), नतीजा (consequences)
Wit	→ वाक्पटुता (oratory)	Wits	→ Intelligence
Wood	→ लकड़ी	Woods	→ जंगल (forest)
Money	→ पैसा	Monies	→ amount
Ground	→ जमीन	Grounds	→ आधार (basis)
Brain	→ एक अंग	Brains	→ बुद्धिमत्ता (Intelligence)



Fill in the blanks with a suitable Noun given above:-

1. Increase the intake of _____ and _____ .
2. _____ of hard work _____ (be) sweet.
3. This book is the _____ of my hard work.
4. These books are the _____ of my hard work.
5. _____ like mango, lichi and watermelon make summer desirable.
6. I have many _____ today.
7. I have read many _____ of Shakespeare.
8. He toils in an iron _____ for the whole day.

9. Grey matter means _____ or _____ .
10. _____ of power breeds corruption.
11. When he entered his bed room, he saw a snake crawling on the _____.
(floor/ground)
12. What are the _____ of his conviction?
13. He _____ as he is foul-mouthed. His _____ are intolerable.
14. He takes pain in his work.
15. He gives himself _____ .

Answers

1. Ans:- fruit and vegetables. In general sentence (फल-सब्जी), fruit is in singular and vegetables is in plural form.	9. Answer is 'wits' or 'brains' (बुद्धिमत्ता)
2. Fruits, is	10. Answer is 'Abuse' (दुर्प्रयोग)
3. Fruit	11. Answer is 'floor' (फर्श). 'Floor'-फर्श, 'ground'-जमीन
4. Fruits	12. Answer is 'grounds' (आधार)
5. Fruits (फलों के प्रकार)	13. Answer is 'abuses _(S.V) ' (गाली देना), 'abuses _(P.N) ' (गालियों)
6. I have many pieces of work today. I have much work today.	14. Answer is 'pains' (अथक प्रयास). 'Pain' (दर्द)
7. Answer is 'works'	15. Answer is 'airs'. Gives himself airs — throws tantrums (नखरे करना)
8. Answer is 'works'	

If a Noun ends in 'f' or 'fe', then 'f' and 'fe' gets converted into 'ves'.

Exception

Eg:-

Knife

Wife

Sheaf (गट्टर)



Knives



Wives



Sheaves

Explanation

- Believe (V) → विश्वास करना
- Grieve (V) → मातम मनाना
- Safe (N) → तिजोरी
- Safe (Adj) → सुरक्षित
- Chief (Adj) → मुख्य (Main)
- Chief (N) → मुखिया
- Brief (Adj) → छोटा
- Brief (N) → कार्य-संबंधी सूचनाएँ
- Brief (V) → सूचित करना

Singular Noun

Meaning (अर्थ)

Plural Noun

Belief	→ मान्यता/ विश्वास
Grief	→ दुख/तकलीफ
Cliff	→ नुकीला चट्टान
Safe	→ तिजोरी
Turf	→ घास की परत (मिट्टी के साथ)
Chief	→ मुखिया
Handkerchief	→ रुमाल
Gulf	→ खाड़ी
Scarf	→ गले में डालने वाला कपड़ा
Brief	→ कार्य-संबंधी सूचनाएँ
Dwarf	→ बौना
Roof	→ छत

- | |
|-----------------|
| Beliefs |
| Griefs |
| Cliffs |
| Safes |
| Turfs |
| Chiefs |
| Handkerchiefs |
| Gulfs |
| Scarfs |
| Briefs |
| Dwarfs/ Dwarves |
| Roofs |

1. The _____ of Hindus brought them close to nature.
2. He _____ you word for word.
3. His _____ know no bound.
4. He _____ day in, day out.
5. The police will _____ the press tomorrow.
6. The police released the _____ after the investigation.

Answers

1. Answer is 'beliefs'
2. Answer is 'believes'.
'Word for word' (शब्दशः)
3. Answer is 'griefs'
4. Answer is 'grieved' / 'grieves'
5. Answer is 'brief'
6. Answer is 'brief'

The Nouns that end in 'O' takes 'es'.

S.N

P.N.

Examples

Hero	→ Heroes
Potato	→ Potatoes
Studio	→ Studios
Solo ^(N) (अकेला Performance)	→ Solos
Memento (स्मृतिचिन्ह)	→ Mementos
Piano	→ Pianos
Photo (तस्वीर)	→ Photos
Dynamo (बिजली पैदा करने का एक यंत्र)	→ Dynamos
Ratio (अनुपात)	→ Ratios
Embryo (भ्रूण)	→ Embryos
Zoo (चिड़ियां घर)	→ Zoos

Exceptions

Certain Nouns that end in 'is' change into 'es'

S.N

P.N.

a long piece of writing
on some topic

Thesis	→	Theses
Hypothesis	→	Hypotheses

Hypothesis^(N)

An idea or theory not proven but that leads to further studies.

Brain disorder

Neurosis	→	Neuroses
Basis (आधार)	→	Bases
Crisis (संकट)	→	Crises
Analysis (आंकलन)	→	Analyses
Oasis	→	Oases

Two nouns end in 'on', they change into 'a'

S.N

P.N.

-on	→	-a
Phenomenon (process, घटना)	→	Phenomena
Criterion (मापदंड)	→	Criteria

Certain Nouns end in 'um', they change into 'a'

S.N	P.N.	Exception
um	→ a	
1. Datum (आकड़ा)	→ Data	
2. Agendum (कार्य सूची)	→ Agenda	
3. Memorandum (ज्ञापन)	→ Memoranda	
4. Ovum (डिम्ब)	→ Ova	
5. Dictum (धार्मिक शिक्षा)	→ Dicta	
6. Stratum (तबका)	→ Strata	
7. Bacterium	→ Bacteria	
S.N	P.N.	
1. Asylum	→ Asylums	
2. Forum	→ Forums	
3. Premium	→ Premiums	
4. Museum	→ Museums	
5. Pendulum	→ Pendulums	
6. Spectrum	→ Spectrums, Spectra	
7. Stadium	→ Stadiums	

- These are many hypothesis regarding the age of our planet.
- You will face many criterions of selection procedure.
- Photosynthesis and transpiration are two phenomenonons found in plants only.
- Things to be considered or done in a meeting are put in the _____ .
- The official record of the proceedings of a meeting. → _____
- A place of/ group meeting on a particular issue _____ .
- A religious group meeting at a place _____ .
- _____ means shelter or refuge.
- A person who takes care of _____ is called a curator.
- _____ means religious teachings.
- A _____ of seven colours is seen when white light passes through a prism.
- _____ of views on Article 370 were seen at T.V.

Answers

- Replace 'hypothesis' with 'hypotheses' - Replace 'criterions' with 'criteria' - Replace 'phenomenonons' with 'phenomena' - agenda - minutes - forum - congregation	- Asylum - museum - Dicta - spectrum - Spectra

Spectrum

Spectrums

Spectra

S.N

P.N.

1. Cloth

Cloths — (कपड़े के टुकड़े)

Clothes (garment)

2. Die

Dies (साँचे)

Dice (पासे)

3. Brother

Brothers (भाईयों)

Brethren (people of the same community)

4. Index

Indexes (lists of chapters etc at the end of book)

Indices (mathematical signs)

The Nouns given above have two plural forms with different meanings

Digits

S.N

P.N.

5

→

5s

2

→

2s

1

→

1s

+s

Letters

S.N

P.N.

i

→

i's

u

→

u's

+s

1. Mind your _____ means to have proper manners.
2. Dot your _____ and cross your _____ means to do something completely.

Answers

1. p's and q's
2. i's, t's

Two Nouns given below take 'en' and form their plural forms.

S.N

P.N.

Child

→

Children

Ox

→

Oxen

The Four Nouns given below have their 'us' replaced by 'i'.

S.N

P.N.

Focus

→

Foci

Syllabus

→

Syllabi

Nucleus

→

Nuclei

S.N

P.N.

Locus

→

Locii

Radius

→

Radii

Alumnus (छात्र)

→

Alumni

Certain Nouns have their internal vowel changed:-

S.N

Mouse (चूहा) → Mice
Louse (जू) → Lice
Man (पुरुष) → Men
Woman (महिला) → Women

P.N.

S.N

Goose (कलहंस) → Geese
Foot (पैर) → Feet
Tooth (दांत) → Teeth

P.N

Certain Nouns take 'e' after them

S.N

Alumna → Alumnae
(भूतपूर्व छात्रा)
Alga → Algae
Formula → Formulae

P.N

In compound Nouns add 's' to the main word

S.N

1. Mother-in-law (सास)
2. Brother-in-law (साला, जीजा)
3. Step son (सौतेला बेटा)
4. Half brother
5. Assistant commissioner
6. Tooth brush
7. Bed room
8. Code of conduct
9. Passer by (गुजरने वाला राहगीर)
10. Man eater
11. Man hater
12. Man servant
- ★ 13. Woman doctor
- ★ 14. Major General
15. Lieutenant General
16. General Manager
17. Secretary General
18. Attorney General
19. Advocate General
20. Governor General
21. Spoonful (चम्मच भर कर)
22. Mouthful (मुंह भर कर)
23. Handful (मुट्ठी भर कर)

P.N.

- Mothers-in-law
- Brothers-in-law
- Step sons
- Half brothers
- Assistant commissioners
- Tooth brushes
- Bed rooms
- codes of conduct
- Passers by
- Man eaters
- Man haters
- Men servants
- Women doctors
- Major Generals
- Lieutenant Generals
- General Managers
- Secretaries General
- Attorneys General
- Advocates General
- Governors General
- Spoonfuls
- Mouthfuls
- Handfuls

Use of Apostrophe (Possession = अधिकार दर्शाता है।)

1. Ram's book.
2. The girl's conduct.

Apostrophe

- ★ 3. { A boy's conduct → Boys' school } Plural
Singular { A girl's attitude → Girls' hostel }

If Plural form is made by adding s/es, add apostrophe (') after 's' and do not add 's' again

★ 4. { Man's superiority → Men's wear } *Singular* { A woman's rights → Women's hostel } *Plural*

If Singular form is different from the plural form, use ('s) with both of them.

- ★ 1. Peace' sake
2. My boss' mother.

If the noun ends with a hissing sound only apostrophe is added not followed by s

- ★ 3. This is not my book. This is
(i) someone's else
(ii) Someone else'
(iii) Someone else's

Ans. (iii) This is an exception to hissing sound rule.

Note:- Mend your ways for god's sake. / (भगवान के वास्ते अपनी चाल सुधारो)

1. Amitabh and Ajitabh's father was a great poet.
2. Ria and Raman's joint account has been freezed.

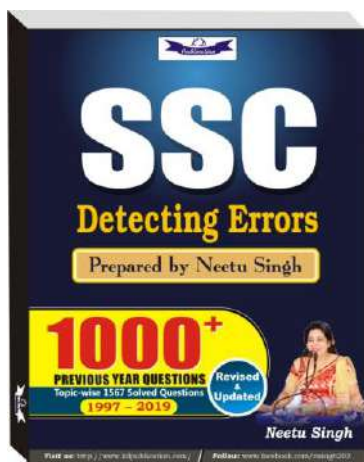
X Y's
└──────────┘

A (both X & Y possess the same thing)

3. I love Lata's and Asha's songs.
4. I have read all William wordsworth's and Keats' works.

X's Y's
↓ ↓
A B
(Lata) (Asha)

In 3 & 4 both do not possess the same thing



Possessive Pronoun

His
Hers
Yours
Ours
Theirs
Mine
Its → Possessive Adjective

Note:-

**We do not use apostrophe
with Possessive Pronoun**

1. This book is her's. (×)

This book is hers. (✓)

2. The dog had a chain around it's neck. (×)

The dog had a chain around its neck. (✓)

3. This is my car and that is theirs.

4. _____ bus arrived on time.

(i) their

(ii) theirs

(iii) their's

Ans. (i)

5. Its raining. (×)

It's raining (✓)

1. This is my friend's Ram's house. (×)

This is my friend Ram's house. (✓)

2. My father's boss' mother has expired. (×)

The mother of my father's boss has expired. (✓)



We use 'of' to express possession of 'Non-living thing'.

Fan's blade (×)



The blade of fan. (✓)

Table's leg (×)



The leg of table. (✓)

Exceptions

1. **Heavenly bodies.**

Eg: The Earth's atmosphere comprises many gases. (✓)
Mars' temperature

2. **Idioms & Phrases**

Eg: Keep such people at arm's length.
My house is within a stone's throw.

3. **Respectable things**

Eg: We have heard the court's order.
It is our duty's call.

4. Units of Time, Space and Weight

- Eg:
1. We were at a kilometre's distance.
 2. The rabbit crossed the fence in a second's time.
 3. A pound's weight is sufficient.
 4. It is 8 O'clock.

5. Days, Currency, Government, Personification (निर्जीव का मानवीयकरण)

- Eg:
1. Today's weather is fine.
 2. Rupee's value is falling.
 3. We have to obey the government's decision.
 4. The Sun's fury knows no bound in deserts.

LEARN AT YOUR OWN TIME
STUDY FROM HOME

Classes from KD CAMPUS can be viewed on any device like a laptop, mobile or tablet. You can access the videos anytime



COLLECTIVE NOUNS

1.	People discussing issues	Forum
2.	People discussing religious issues	Congregation
3.	Singers	Choir
4.	Stars	Galaxy
5.	Stars in a particular pattern	
	Constellation	
6.	Shots/bullets	Volley
7.	Shots or bullets fired very quickly	Fusillade
8.	Simultaneous discharge of guns in a military action as a salute	Salvo
9.	Ships/cars	Fleet
10.	Vehicles behind an escort	Convoy
11.	Moving vehicles	Caravan
12.	Puppies	Litter
13.	Dogs(कुत्ते)/wolves (भेड़िया)/ hounds (शिकारी कुत्ते)	Pack
14.	Lions	Pride
15.	Islands	Archipelago
16.	Directors	Board
17.	Birds	Flock
18.	Bees/Insects	Swarm
19.	Stairs/Flying birds	Flight
20.	Merchants/smugglers	Syndicate
21.	Keys/Flowers/Crooks	Bunch
22.	Flowers	Bouquet
23.	Girls/ Officers	Bevy
24.	Criminals/Labourers	Gang
25.	People	Crowd/Horde
26.	Angry people	Mob
27.	Fish	School/Shoal
28.	People with same interest or taste	Coterie/Clique
29.	Musicians	Band
30.	Policemen/People with same occupation	Posse
31.	Grass	Tuft
32.	Hair	Lock
33.	Warships	Armada
34.	Judges	Jury/Bench
35.	Stick/Cloth	Bundle
36.	Paper	Stack
37.	Hidden illegal things	Cache
38.	Representatives	Delegation
39.	Apes	Shrewdness
40.	Alligators	Congregation

41.	Bats(चमगादड़)	Cauldron
42.	Bears	Sloth/sleuth
43.	Buffaloes	Gang/Obstinacy
44.	Cats	Clowder
45.	Caterpillars	Army
46.	Camels	Caravan
47.	Cheetahs	Coalition
48.	Crows	Murder
49.	Dogs	Cowardice/Pack
50.	Dolphins	Pod
51.	Eagles	Convocation
52.	Elephants	Pride/herd
53.	Cattle	Herd
54.	Frogs	Army
55.	Kangaroos	Mob/Troop
56.	Soldiers	Army/Troop
57.	Monkeys	Troop
58.	Squirrels	Scurry
59.	Zebra	Zeal (उत्साह)
60.	Servants/Attendants	Retinue
61.	Mountains	Range/Chain
62.	Laws	Code
63.	Studies	Curriculum
64.	Corns/Arrows	Sheaf
65.	Stone/Garbage	Heap
66.	Trees	Clump/Grove
67.	Dancers, Actors or Entertainers who work and travel together	troupe


KD DEFENCE BRIGADE

BEST COACHING FOR
NDA



 **011-49123978**

CONFUSING NOUNS

SL	Word	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
1.	Arrogance _(N)	an attitude of superiority in an overbearing manner	घमंड
	Pride _{(N)/(V)}	a feeling of deep pleasure or satisfaction of one's achievements, to have a sense a pleasure due to an achievement	गर्व/ गर्व करना
2.	Principle _(N)	Ideal	आदर्श/ सिद्धांत
	Principal _(N)	head of a school	प्रधानाचार्य
	Principal _(Adj)	main	मुख्य
3.	Air _(N)	the invisible mixture of gases that people and animals breathe	हवा (ठंडी हुई)
	Air _(V)	to make something known in public	प्रसारित करना
	Airs _(V)	affectation	बनावटी व्यवहार
	Breeze _(N)	a light gentle wind	हवा (हल्की बहती हुई)
	Wind _(N)	a current of air	हवा का तेज और स्वाभाविक बहाव
	Gale _(N)	a strong wind	प्रचंड वायु
	Storm _(N)	a violent disturbance of the atmosphere with strong winds	तूफान
4.	Space _(N)	• out of the earth • empty place	अन्तरिक्ष खाली जगह
	Room _(N)	empty space that can be occupied	स्थान, खाली जगह
	Place _(N)	empty place, an available seat or a particular position, area	खाली जगह या क्षेत्र
5.	Astrologer _(N)	one who studies stars and predicts your destiny	ज्योतिषी
	Astronomer _(N)	one who studies the arrangement of stars, planet etc.	खगोलशास्त्री
6.	Half Brother _(N)	either the father/ mother in common	माता-पिता से कोई एक दोनों के पिता-माता हो
	Step Brother _(N)	when neither of the parents is common	सौतेला भाई
	Cousin _(N)	Don't use brother/Sister with cousin	ममेरा/चचेरा भाई/ बहन
	Brethren _(N)	members of the same community	एक ही समुदाय के सदस्य
7.	Altar _(N)	raised platform for sacrifice or seen in church	बेदी
	Alter _(N)	to change	बदलना
8.	Blunder _(N)	big mistake (blunder mistake superfluous)	बड़ी गलती
	Mistake _{(V)/(N)}	to make a wrong judgement, that is not correct	गलती करना
	Err _(V)	to make a mistake	गलती करना
	Error _(N)	Mistake	गलती
	Emend _(V)	to correct errors in (something written)	सुधारना
	Amend _(V)	act of improving, to change for better	बेहतर बनाना

SL	Word	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
9.	Corpse _(N)	dead body of a human being	मृत शरीर (इंसान का)
	Corps _(N)	military unit	सैन्य दल
	Cops _(N)	police	पुलिस
	Carcass _(N)	dead body of an animal	पशु शव
	Cadaver _(N)	dead body of a human being for medical purpose/ study	चिकित्सा जाँच के लिए शव
10.	Rail _(V)	to scold badly	बुरी तरह डाँटना, फटकार लगाना
	Derail _(V)	to leave its track (of a train)	पटरी से उतरना
11.	Custom _(N)	the usual way of doing things by people of a place	चलन
	Habit _(N)	individual behaviour	आदत
	Tradition _(N)	a belief or custom handed down from one generation to another for a long time	प्रथा
	Practice _(N)	the activity of doing something again and again in order to become better at it/ custom	अभ्यास/ चलन
12.	Rites _(N)	practice (Eg- last rite)	संस्कार, कर्म-काण्ड
	Ritual _(N)	a ceremony or series of acts that is always performed the same way	कर्मकाण्ड, रीति-रिवाज
13.	Disinterestedness _(N)	impartiality	निष्पक्षता
	Uninterestedness _(N)	no interest	अरुचि
14.	Emigrant _(N)	One who leaves the country	प्रवासी
	Immigrant _(N)	One who enters the country	अप्रवासी
	Migrant _(N)	one who leaves one's native place for livelihood	जीवन यापन के लिए एक स्थान से दूसरे स्थान पर जाने वाला
	Native _(N/A)	original inhabitant of a place, of that place	मूल निवासी, मूल
15.	Itinerant _(N)	wanderer	भ्रमणकारी
	Domicile _(N)	a place where someone lives	निवास स्थान
	Nomad _(N)	that doesn't settle at one place	घुमवकड़
	Fate _(N)	destiny	भाग्य
16.	Fateful _(Adj)	having serious results (in negative way)	दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण
	Fatal _(Adj)	deadly, hazardous	घातक, खतरनाक
	Fatalist _(N)	one who believes in destiny	जो भाग्य में विश्वास रखता हो
	Gourmand _(N)	a voracious eater, glutton	पेटू
17.	Gourmet _(N)	a food connoisseur, gastronomist	अच्छे खान-पान का जानकार
	Epicure _(N)	fond of eating and drinking	अच्छे खान-पान का शौकीन
	Connoisseur _(N)	specialist in art	पाक कला का पारखी
	Dabbler _(N)	a person with interest in an art but not in a serious way, Dilettante	कला का शौकीन लेकिन गंभीर रूप से नहीं
18.	Amateur _(N)	a person who does something for pleasure and not as a job	जो बस शौक में कोई काम करता हो, नौसिखिया
	Professional _(N)	One who is paid in a sport or activity.	पेशेवर
18.	Invention _(N)	making of something that didn't exist	आविष्कार
	Discovery _(N)	finding out of something that already existed	खोज

SL	Word	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
19.	Jealousy _(N)	the feeling that comes due to the fear of losing that we have	ईर्ष्या
	Envy _(N/V)	the feeling of wanting to have what someone else has	द्वेष
20.	Lighting _(N)	the equipment that provides light, the use of light for a purpose	प्रकाशयंत्र
	Lightning _(N)	the flashes of light that is produced during rain	मेघ विद्युत
	Lighten _(V)	to make light or bright, to relieve of a burden to make light in colour	प्रकाशमय करना, बोझ कम करना, रंग हल्का करना
21.	Eminent _(Adj)	known and respected	प्रख्यात
	Imminent _(Adj)	upcoming/ about to happen	जो घटित होने वाला है
	Notorious _(Adj)	known but disrespected	कुख्यात
	Anonymous _(Adj)	without name	गुमनाम
	Living legend _(N)	a person who is alive and very successful	प्रसिद्ध एवं सफल व्यक्ति जो जीवित हो
22.	Personal _(Adj)	belonging or relating to a particular person	व्यक्तिगत
	Personnel _(N)	a group of people employed in a business or an organization	कर्मचारी
23.	Pray _(V)	to hope or wish very much for, implore	प्रार्थना करना/ गिड़गिड़ाना
	Prey _(N/V)	an animal that is hunted, to hunt	शिकार, शिकार करना
	Birds of prey _(N)	hunting birds	शिकारी पंक्षी
24.	Canon _(N)	rule	नियम
	Cannon _(N)	a large automatic gun that is shot	तोप
25.	Autopsy _(N)	Post-mortem, examination of dead cells	शव परीक्षण
	Biopsy _(N)	examination of living cells	जीवित कोशिकाओं का परीक्षण
26.	Pane _(N)	the glass covering of a windows/ door	खिड़की का शीशा
	Pain _{(V)/(N)}	to make to suffer or cause distress to/ sufferings	दर्द/पहुँचाना/दर्द
	Pains _(N)	hard work, effort	कठिन मेहनत
	Pale _(Adj.)	light yellow	हल्का पीला
	Pail _(N)	bucket	बाल्टी
	Tale _(N)	story	कहानी
	Tail _(N)	the rear end part of an animal or something	पूँछ
27.	Ordinance _(N)	law/ act/ statute	कानून
	Ordinance _(N)	military supply	युद्ध सामग्री
28.	Palate _(N)	the top part of the inside of mouth, the ability to taste and judge good food and wine	तालु (गुँह का ऊपरी परत), स्वाद परखने की क्षमता
	Palette _(N)	painting board	रंग मिलाने का प्लेट
	Pellet _(N)	small round balls	छर्छ
29.	Pedal _{(V)/(N)}	to ride a bicycle with help of foot, a part of cycle on which you keep your foot	पैरो की मदद से साईकिल चलाना, साईकिल का पैर रखने का भाग
	Peddle _(V)	to roam about and sell things	घुम-घुम कर सामान बेचना
	Peddler _(N)	one who roams and sells things	घुम-घुम कर सामान बेचने वाला
30.	Story _(N)	a long narration	कहानी
	Storey _(N)	floor	मंजिल/ तल

SL	Word	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
31.	Fable _(N)	a moral story with animal characters	नैतिक कहानी (जिसमें मुख्य किरदार जानवर हो)
	Parable _(N)	moral story	नैतिक कहानी
	Legend _(N)	a story, the authenticity of which is not proved	काल्पनिक कहानी
	Myth _(N)	that many believe but is not true	मिश्रया
	Epic _(N)	a long poem or book that usually tells a story about heroic and exciting event	महाकाव्य
	Anecdote _(N)	a short story of interesting events	किस्सा
	Raconteur _(N)	one who is good at telling stories	मजेदार कहानी कहने वाला
	Folktale _(N)	stories famous among the people	लोक-कथा
	Regale _(V)	to entertain or amuse	मनोरंजन करना
	Allegory _(N)	a story in which, the characters or symbols stand for ideas about human life or for political/ historical events	नीति कथा
32.	Dais _(N)	a raised platform where a person stands to perform or speak, stage	मंच
	Altar _(N)	a raised place on which sacrifices and gifts are offered or some religious ceremony is performed in a temple or a church	बेदी
	Pulpit _(N)	a raised platform where a priest or minister stands to lead a worship or religious service	धर्मोपदेशक का आसन
	Rostrum _(N)	a small raised platform on a stage	व्याख्यान मंच
	Proscenium _(N)	the part of a theatre stage in front of the curtain	रंगमंच पर पर्दे के आगे का भाग
	Thrust stage _(N)	a stage that extends into the audience on three sides.	रंगमंच जो तीनों ओर से दर्शकों से घिरा हो।
	Arena _(N)	a level area surrounded by seats for public event	अखाड़ा
	Coliseum _(N)	a large stadium	बहुत बड़ा स्टेडियम
	Amphitheatre _(N)	a circular building without a roof and with rows of seats that rise in steps around an open space	गोलाकार रंगमंडल
33.	Affection _(N)	closeness, love	लगाव, स्नेह
	Affectation _(N)	unnatural behaviour	बनावटी व्यवहार
34.	Devotion _(N)	the use of money, time etc for a particular purpose	समर्पण
	Spend _(V)	to use (money) to pay for something	खर्च करना
	Waste _{(V)/(N)}	to spend on useless things of no further use	बर्बाद करना/ बर्बादी
35.	Reason _(N)	to think in a logical way	कारण
	Cause _{(N)/(V)}	something or someone that produces an effect or result/the act of doing so	कारक, कारक बनना
36.	Balk _(N)	a piece of land let unploughed as a dividing line	खेत का मुंडेर
	Balk _(V)	to suddenly refuse to do something that others expected you to do.	करने से मना करना
	Bark _(N)	the outer covering of the stem of the tree	पेड़ का छाल
	Bark _{(V)/(N)}	the sound that a dog makes	भौंकना /भौंकने की आवाज
	Bulk	large part of something.	ढेर
37.	Capital _(N)	the principal amount	पूंजी
	Capital _(Adj)	having death as a possible punishment	फौसी
	Capital _(Adj)	letters (A, B, C, D) of English Alphabet	
	Capital _(N)	the place with main offices of a government	राजधानी

SL	Word	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
	Capitol _(N)	the building in which the people who make the laws of a U.S. state meet	इमारत जहाँ मंत्रीगण के द्वारा U.S में कानून बनाये जाते हैं
38.	Chord _(V)	musical tone, in same accord	संगीत की धुन/ सामंजस्य
	Cord _(N)	something like a rope but thinner than string	पतली रस्सी
39.	Council _(N)	a group of people chosen to make rules and law	(मंत्री) मंडल
	Counsel _{(N)/(V)}	advocate (one who gives advice)/ to give advice	वकील, सलाह देना
40.	Dual _(Adj)	having two of something	दो से लैस
	Duel _(N)	a fight between two people	हँडयुद्ध
41.	Envelop _(V)	to completely cover	ढक लेना
	Envelope _(N)	that covers	लिफाफा
42.	Flair _(N)	natural ability to do something	स्वभाविक रुझान
	Flare _{(N)/(V)}	N- a light that shines brightly	तेज रोशनी
		V- 1. to shine brightly	चमकना
		V -2. to become suddenly angry or excited	भड़कना
43.	Foul _(Adj)	very unpleasant	बहुत गंदा
	Fowl _(N)	a bird that is raised for its meat	मुर्गी/बतक के बच्चे
44.	Idol _(N)	Statue	मूर्ति
	Ideal _(N)	greatly admired person	आदर्श
	Idle _(Adj)	not active	बिना काम का, सुस्त
45.	Loath _(Adj.)	unwilling	बेगम
	Loathe _(V)	to hate very much	नफरत करना
46.	Metal _(N)	A type of solid substance that shines	धातु
	Mettle _(N)	spirit, strength, vigour	क्षमता
47.	Oar _(N)	a long pole with wide end to steer a boat	नाव चलाने वाला डंडा
	Ore _(N)	mineral containing metals	अभ्रस्क, कच्ची धातु
48.	Amusement _(N)	the feeling of being entertained	मन बहलाव
	Amuse _(V)	to entertain	जी या मन बहलाना
	Bemuse _(V)	to confuse	हतबुद्धि कर देना
49.	Simile, Metaphor _(N)		
	Metaphor _(N)	The figure of speech where we compare without using words 'like' and 'as'. Eg- 1. He was a lion in the battle field.	
		2. This fighter plane is a hawk of the US army.	
	Simile _(N)	The figure of speech where we use 'like' or 'as' to make a comparison. Eg-1. He was like a lion in the battle field.	
		2. He is like a hawk of the US Army.	
50.	Demur _(N)	polite way of disagreement.	विनम्र इंकार
	Demur _(V)	to disagree politely	विनम्रता के साथ इंकार कर देना
	Demure _(Adj.)	quiet and polite	शांत और नम्र
51.	Didactic _(Adj.)	designed to teach something e.g. Mahabharata is a didactic epic.	शिक्षाप्रद
	Pedantic _(N)	1. unduly showing off one's knowledge or emphasizing minute details 2. blue stocking → a pedantic woman	ज्ञान दिखावे वाला
52.	Irony _(N)	the use of words that means the opposite of what you really think especially in order to be funny or to make fun	विड़बना

SL	Word	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
	Satire _(N)	the use of words that means opposite and especially used to insult a person	व्यंग
	Sarcasm _(N)	a way of using humour to show something is bad or weak.	कटाक्ष
	Pun _(N)	use of word or phrase in a humorous way with a different meaning	अनेकार्थी शब्द
53.	Morale _(N)	how happy, sad, confident etc a group of people feel at a particular time	मनोबल
	Moral _(Adj/N)	related to what is right and what is wrong	नैतिकता
54.	Siren _(N)	very attractive but dangerous woman	सुंदर पर खतरनाक स्त्री
	Amazon _(N)	tall and strong woman	लंबी व शक्तिशीली स्त्री
	Shrew _(N)	a bad tempered woman	गुरसैल स्त्री
	Harridan _(N)	an angry or unpleasant woman	झगड़ालू औरत
	Vamp _(N)	a woman who uses her charm to seduce men	अपने लावण्य से मर्दों को आकर्षित करने वाली
	Coquette _(N)	a woman who likes to win the attention or admiration of men but does not have serious feelings for them	दिलफेंक महिला
55.	Turbid _(Adj)	muddy, not clear	मटमैला
	Turgid _(Adj)	1. Larger or fuller than normal 2. Pompous	फूला हुआ, भरा हुआ अति शोभित
56.	Riot _(N)	a situation where people behave in a violent manner	दंगा
	Rite _(N)	an act that is a part of religious ceremony	धार्मिक रिवाज
	Right _(N)	privilege	अधिकार
	Right _(Adj.)	accurate, correct	सही
57.	Metre _(N)	unit of length	लंबाई मापने का इकाई
	Meter _(N)	instrument	यंत्र

SL	To Measure	Name of instruments
1.	Temperature	Thermometer
2.	Height	Altimeter
3.	Electric current	Ammeter
4.	Air pressure	Barometer
5.	Time	Clock/chronometer
6.	Direction	Compass
7.	Ocean depth	Fathometer
8.	Distance travelled	Odometer
9.	High temperature	Pyrometer
10.	Electricity	Galvanometer
11.	Blood Sugar	Glucometer
12.	Density of liquid	Hydrometer
13.	Humidity	Hygrometer
14.	Specific gravity of milk	Lactometer
15.	Gas pressure	Manometer
16.	Low temperature	Cryometer
17.	Intensity of earthquake	Seismometer on Richter scale
18.	Blood pressure	Sphygmomanometer
19.	Wind direction	Wind wane

CONFUSING NOUNS (PRACTICE SET)

1. The strong _____ blew away my cap.
(A) wind (B) breeze (C) air
2. They _____ the programme yesterday.
(A) aired (B) telecasted
3. There is no _____ in the compartment.
(A) room (B) place (C) space
4. He consults an _____ before starting any new business.
(A) astrologer (B) astronomer
5. He made a big _____.
(A) blunder (B) mistake (C) error
6. He is a man of _____.
(A) principles (B) principals
7. The police found a dead body on the _____ of his bedroom.
(A) ground (B) floor
8. The _____ of the cow was emanating foul smell.
(A) corpse (B) carcass (C) cadaver
9. He went to the airport to receive his cousin _____.
(A) brother (B) sibling (C) no word needed
10. Sachin Tendulkar is the _____ of India.
(A) pride (B) arrogance
11. We were shocked at the _____ of the debutant.
(A) pride (B) arrogance
12. The attack on Hiroshima _____ the course of History
(A) altered (B) altared
13. This book needs to be _____ as it has many errors.
(A) amended (B) emended
14. The Constitution has been _____ many times.
(A) amended (B) emended
15. Singular form of brethren is _____.
(A) brethren (B) brother
16. Astronauts go to _____.
(A) space (B) the space
17. Serving tea is an English _____.
(A) custom (B) tradition
(C) habit
18. He _____ his staff for being late.
(A) railed (B) derailed
19. The _____ of Sati Pratha disturbed Raja Ram Mohan Roy.
(A) tradition (B) custom
20. He went home for his father's last _____.
(A) rite (B) ritual
21. The _____ of the voters in the recent election surprised the leaders.
(A) disinterestedness (B) uninterestedness

22. Bangladesi_____ have created law and order problems.
(A) emigrants (B) immigrants
(C) migrants (D) wanderers
23. _____ is a person who goes from one place to another especially in search of work.
(A) emigrants (B) immigrants
(C) migrants (D) wanderers
24. A member of a group who moves from one place to another is_____.
(A) vagabond (B) nomad
(C) gypsy (D) wanderer
25. On that _____ night he met with an accident
(A) fateful (B) fatal
26. One _____ mistake while driving may cost your life.
(A) fateful (B) fatal
27. I am not a _____. I believe in hard work.
(A) fateful (B) fatalist
28. A_____ is an expert in the art of food making.
(A) gourmand (B) gourmet
29. One who dabbles in an art _____.
(A) connoisseur (B) dilettante
30. The _____ of America was done by Columbus.
(A) invention (B) discovery
31. He is now a _____ boxer as he has joined WWE.
(A) amateur (B) professional
32. _____ strikes a woman the moment she sees her husband talking to another woman.
(A) Jealousy (B) Envy
33. Where is the _____ ?
(A) itinerary (B) schedules
34. This cream will _____ your skin.
(A) lighten (B) light
35. I won't interfere in your _____ matter.
(A) personal (B) personnel
36. Some police _____ have come.
(A) personal (B) personnel
37. Carnivores _____ on herbivores
(A) prey (B) pray
38. You cannot violate the _____ of religion in Afganistan.
(A) cannons (B) canons
39. They entered the territory of their enemies under the cover of the firing _____.
(A) cannons (B) canons
40. A moral story with animal characters is called _____.
(A) fable (B) parable
41. It is a ten-_____ building.
(A) story (B) storey

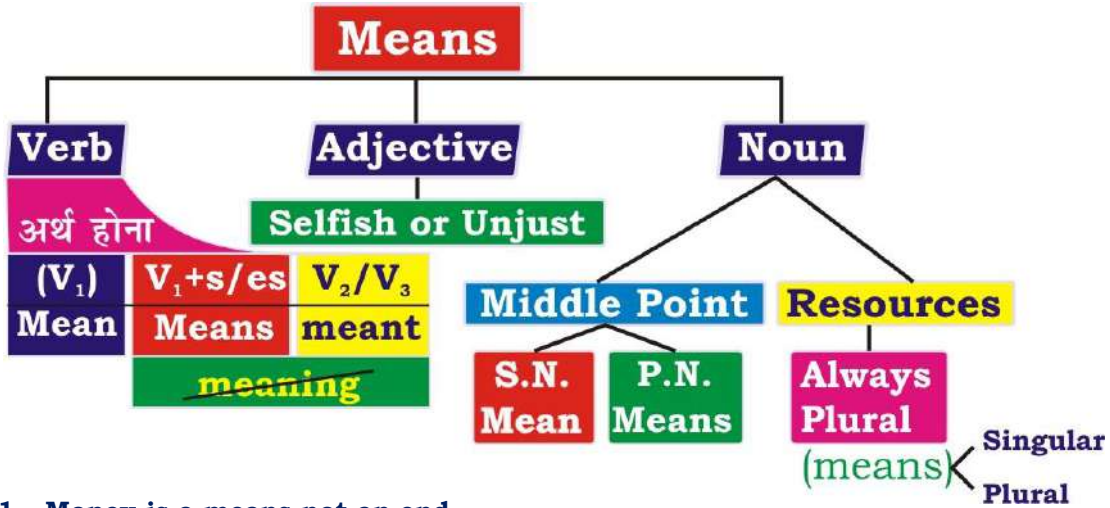
42. A speech praising some one who has died _____.
(A) eulogy (B) tribute (C) homage
43. The window _____ has broken.
(A) pane (B) pain
44. The _____ report of the deceased has come.
(A) autopsy (B) biopsy
45. The _____ report has confirmed that the tumour is cancerous.
(A) autopsy (B) biopsy
46. The government is doing its best for the _____ of women.
(A) upbringing (B) upliftment
47. He scored _____ marks
(A) passing (B) pass
48. He scored _____ marks.
(A) full (B) cent percent
49. There are 26 letters in English _____.
(A) Alphabet (B) Alphabets
50. _____ guns are used to disperse the mob.
(A) pellet (B) palette
51. Jack and Jill went up the hill to fetch a _____ of water.
(A) pale (B) pail
52. Mix the colours in the _____.
(A) palette (B) pellet
53. A person good at story telling _____.
(A) Raconteur (B) story teller
54. _____ is the part of the theatre stage in front of the curtain.
(A) Proscenium (B) Rostrum
(C) Pulpit (D) Dais
55. Thick fog _____ the city in winter.
(A) envelopes (B) envelops
56. Don't sit _____.
(A) idle (B) ideal (C) idol
57. She was _____ to admit her mistake.
(A) loath (B) loathe
58. Discover your _____.
(A) metal (B) mettle
59. We extract metal from _____.
(A) ore (B) oar
60. We go to park for _____.
(A) amusement (B) bemusement
61. She is without any affectation and has a _____ nature .
(A) demure (B) haughty
62. He hesitated to _____ to my idea.
(A) demure (B) demur
63. One who unnecessarily shows off his knowledge is called _____.
(A) didactic (B) pedantic

64. What is the _____ of this story?
(A) moral (B) morale
65. The team's _____ is high.
(A) moral (B) morale
66. The _____ of Shakespeare are immortal.
(A) work (B) works
67. All the _____ were destroyed.
(A) machines (B) machineries
68. _____ and _____ are expected by all.
(A) Thanks, admiration
(B) Thank, admirations
(C) Thank, admiration
69. The ox was in _____.
(A) tether (B) tethers
70. _____ are not allowed in Metro.
(A) Eatables (B) eatable
71. _____ of lynching are coming from every corner of the country.
(A) news (B) tidings
72. The robber robbed him of his _____.
(A) valuable (B) valuables
73. Thanks for your _____ advice.
(A) valuable (B) valuables
74. Let us have smoked _____.
(A) salmon (B) salmons
75. _____ is one's partner in crime.
(A) accomplice (B) conspirator

Answer Key

1. (A)	16. (A)	31. (B)	46. (B)	61. (A)
2. (A)	17. (A)	32. (a)	47. (B)	62. (B)
3. (A)	18. (A)	33. (A)	48. (A)	63. (B)
4. (A)	19. (A)	34. (A)	49. (A)	64. (A)
5. (B)	20. (A)	35. (A)	50. (A)	65. (B)
6. (A)	21. (B)	36. (B)	51. (B)	66. (B)
7. (B)	22. (B)	37. (A)	52. (A)	67. (A)
8. (B)	23. (C)	38. (B)	53. (A)	68. (A)
9. (C)	24. (B)	39. (A)	54. (A)	69. (B)
10. (A)	25. (A)	40. (A)	55. (A)	70. (A)
11. (B)	26. (B)	41. (B)	56. (A)	71. (B)
12. (A)	27. (B)	42. (A)	57. (A)	72. (B)
13. (B)	28. (B)	43. (A)	58. (B)	73. (A)
14. (A)	29. (B)	44. (A)	59. (A)	74. (A)
15. (B)	30. (B)	45. (B)	60. (A)	75. (A)

CONFUSING NOUNS WITH PHRASES



1. Money is a means not an end.
2. Money is a means to an end.
3. I mean to say that it is not feasible.
4. How mean of you!
5. Our mathematics teacher taught us Mean, Mode and Median.
6. Our means are limited.
7. To the whale, its tail is the sole means of propulsion. (Propulsion means 'the force that pushes and drives forward')

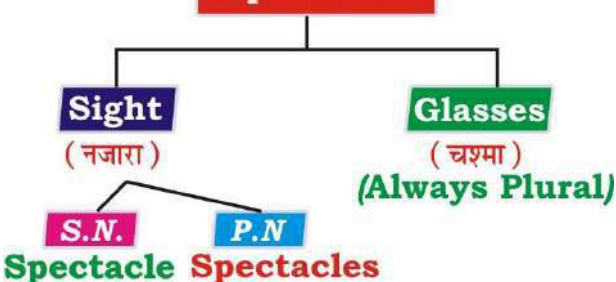
PHRASE

1. By all means : certainly (निश्चित रूप से)
2. By means of : through (के जरिये)
3. By no means : in no way

Use of Phrases in sentences:

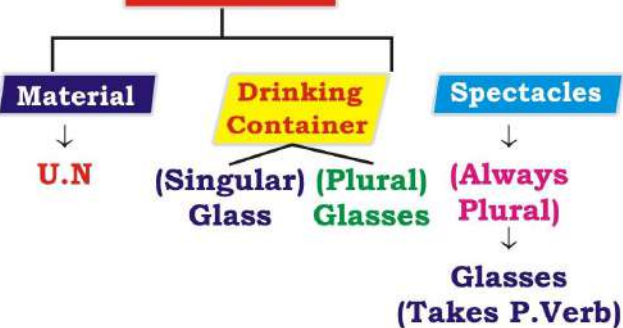
1. He amassed a lot of wealth by means of sharp practices. (Sharp practices → dishonest dealings)
2. By no means can we allow corruption to flourish.
3. By all means he is a crook. (crook means a dishonest person)

Spectacles



1. Sunset is an enchanting spectacle.
2. Sunset and sunrise are enchanting spectacles.
3. Where are my spectacles?
4. A pair of spectacles is kept on the table.

Glass

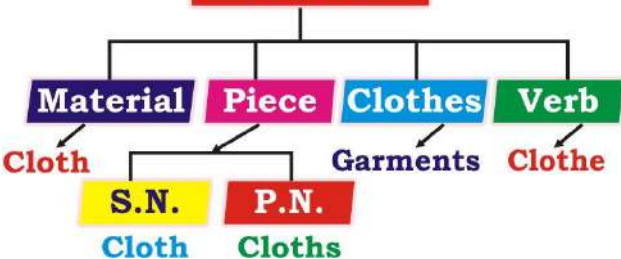


1. The building is made of glass.
2. Where are my reading glasses?
3. (a) One glass of water.
(b) Two glasses of water.
4. The glass window panes have broken. (Pane means glass covering of doors and windows so glass pane is superfluous.)

PHRASES

1. **Look through rose coloured glasses:** to have very cheerful and optimistic attitude. (कुछ ज्यादा आशावादी होना)
2. **People who live in glass houses should not throw stones :** to be prone to same type of problem. (शीशे के घर में रहने वाले को दूसरे के घर पर पत्थर नहीं फेंकना चाहिए)
3. **See the glass half empty :** to see a situation in a pessimistic manner.
(निराशावादी)
4. **See the glass half full :** to see a situation in an optimistic manner.
(आशावादी होना)

Cloth

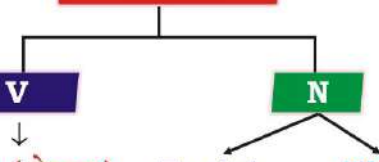


1. I dressed my son in new clothes.
2. This dress is made of cotton cloth.
3. Keep those cloths on the kitchen rack.
4. He earns enough to feed and clothe his family.

PHRASES

1. **Out of the whole cloth :** utterly false. (सफेद झूठ)
2. **Man of the cloth :** clergy man. (पादरी)
3. **To take the cloth :** to become a clergy man. (पादरी बनना)
4. **Cut from the same cloth :** very similar in behaviour etc. (व्यवहार, विचार इत्यादि में एक जैसा होना)
5. **Cloth ear :** A humorous name for a person who hasn't heard what has been said. (एक व्यंग्यात्मक नाम जो उन लोगों के लिए प्रयुक्त करते हैं जो कई बार कुछ सुन नहीं पाते)
6. **Cut one's coat according to one's cloth :** to act according to one's financial limits. (अपनी आमदनी के अनुसार खर्च करना)
7. **Sack cloth and ashes :** remorse for one's misdeed. (अपने कुकर्म का पश्चाताप)

Look



- **to see (देखना)**
- **seem (दिखना)**

1. He looks sad.
2. He looked at me.
3. He gave me a stern look.
4. Her looks helped her carve a niche in the film industry.

always 'looks'

PHRASES

1. **To look oneself** : to look normal or usual. (सामान्य दिखना जैसा हमेशा दिखते हो।)
2. **Look into** : investigate. (जाँच-पड़ताल करना)
3. **Look through** : to look quickly/ examine. (जाँच करना)
4. **Look up** : find information. (सूचना के लिए ढूँढना)
5. **Look back** : to think something of the past. (अतीत में देखना)
6. **Look ahead** : to plan for future. (भविष्य के तरफ देखना)
7. **Look after** : to take care of. (देखभाल करना)
8. **Look for** : search (ढूँढना)
9. **Look forward to** : anticipating with satisfaction. (संतुष्टि के साथ इंतजार करना)
10. **Look out** : to be careful (सावधान हो)
11. **Look up to** : to respect or admire. (सम्मान देना)
12. **Blank look** : no facial expression. (किसी तरह की भावना के बिना दिखना)

Good

Adjective

Noun

(अच्छा)

- **Goodly (adj.)**
- **Well (adv.)**

Goods (always plural)

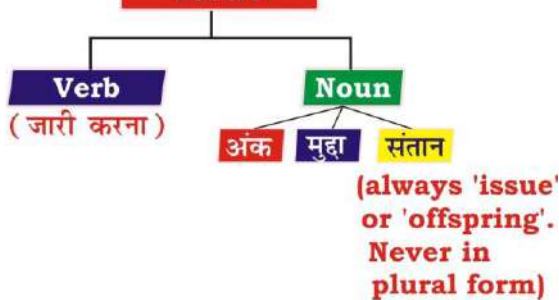
Movable properly.

1. He is a good boy.
2. He behaved well.
3. The goods are lying in the godown.
4. A goodly number of people turned up for the show.

PHRASES

1. **For good** : permanently (हमेशा के लिए)
2. **No good** : worthless (बेकार)
3. **Good for nothing** : useless (बेकार)
4. **No good crying over spilt milk** : getting upset of past events is worthless. (जो बीत गया उस पर रोने से कोई फायदा नहीं)
5. **As good as gold** : obedient and well behaved. (सोने जैसा खरा)
6. **All good thing must end** : all good things surely end one day. (सभी अच्छी चीज़ एक ना एक दिन खत्म होगी ही)
7. **A bill of goods** : A lie or something intentionally misrepresented. (झूठ जो सच की तरह परोसा गया हो)
8. **Good egg** : A good person or some one who you can rely on. (एक सच्चा/अच्छा और विश्वनीय व्यक्ति)
9. **Bad egg** : a bad, dishonest and unreliable person. (एक झूठा और मक्कार व्यक्ति)

Issue

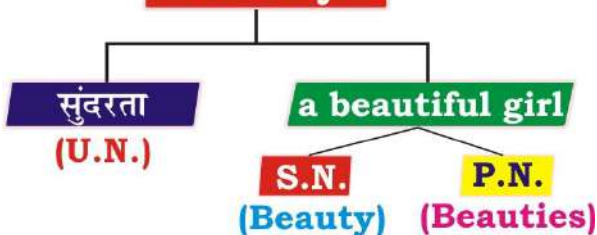


1. He has issued certain guidelines.
2. The latest issue of the magazine has come.
3. Is there any issue that is bothering you?
4. He died intestate as he had no issue.
 without a will वसीयत

PHRASES

1. **Force the issue** : to compel a decision. (निर्णय के लिए बाध्य करना)
2. **Fudge the issue** : avoid doing something. (Fudge means to speak or act in a way that is meant to avoid dealing with a problem.) (कुछ करने से बचना)
3. **Side issue** : a topic related to something but less important. (जो कम महत्वपूर्ण मुद्दा हो)
4. **At issue** : under discussion. (जो मुद्दा अभी चल रहा हो)
5. **Take issue with someone** : to disagree. (किसी से विचार में मतभेद होना)
6. **Make an issue of** : to exaggerate a minor issue (बात का बतंगड़ बनाना). We have two more phrases with the same meaning.
 (a) To make a mountain out of a mole hill. (तिल का ताड़ बनाना)
 (b) Storm in a tea cup. (तिल का ताड़)

Beauty

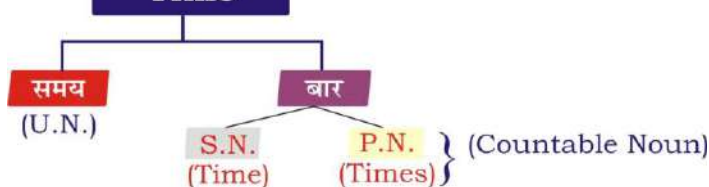


1. The beauty of Kerala is no less than that of Kashmir.
2. The beauty from India defeated the beauties of the other nations to bag the Miss Universe title.
3. A thing of beauty is a joy forever.

PHRASES

1. **Beauty lies in the eyes of the beholder** : the way beauty is perceived is different for different people. (देखने वाले के आँखों में सुंदरता होती है)
2. **Beauty is only skin deep** : physical beauty cannot equate substance or character. (शारीरिक सुंदरता सतही होती है)
3. **Beauty sleep** : sleep that one needs to look refreshed or healthy. (जिस नींद के बाद आप तरोताजा हो जाओ)

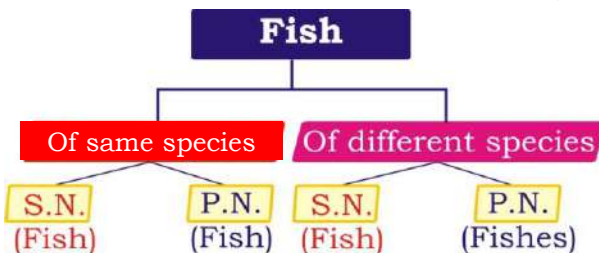
Time



1. We have been celebrating these festivals since time immemorial.
2. How much time do you have?
3. How many times do you come here?
4. Many a time I see him here?
5. Many times we make silly mistakes.
6. (i) My house is four times bigger than yours. (×)
(ii) My house is four times as big as yours. (✓)
- Do not use comparative degree with 'times'.

PHRASES

1. **Time and tide wait for no man** : we must value time. (समय और ज्वार किसी का इंतजार नहीं करते)
2. **At the eleventh hour** : At the last moment. (आखिरी समय पर)
3. **In the long run** : over a long period of time, ultimately. (अंततः)
4. **Make up for the lost time** : to do something fast to reach where you should be. (जो समय गवाँ चुके हैं उसकी पूर्ति करना)
5. **In the nick of time** : just before it is too late. (ऐन मोके पर)
6. **Round the clock** : 24 hours (चौबिसो घंटे)
7. **In one stroke** : immediately (तुरंत)
8. **Against time** : with quickly approaching time limit. (समय खत्म हो रहा है और इसी बात के दबाव में)
9. **At one time** : simultaneously. (एक साथ)
10. **From time to time** : once in a while. (कभी-कभी)
11. **In no time** : almost instantly (One more phrase of the same meaning - in two shakes) (तुरंत)
12. **Time and again** : again and again. (बार-बार)



1. He cooked two fish.
2. Fishes look beautiful in aquarium.
3. Salmons swim a long distance to reach their breeding ground. (Change 'Salmons' into 'Salmon')

PHRASES

1. **Fishy** : suspicious. (संदेहास्पद)
2. **Queer fish** : a strange person. (अजीब व्यक्ति)
3. **A cold fish** : an unfriendly person. (जो दोस्ताना स्वभाव का ना हो)
4. **A different fish** : a different situation. (एक अलग ही हालात)
5. **Fish out of water** : uncomfortable. (असुविधाजनक)
6. **Fish to fry** : interest to pursue. (कुछ और रुचिकर चीज़)
7. **Neither fish nor fowl** : belonging to neither class. (दोनों में से कुछ नहीं)
8. **To fish bait** : a phrase used to tell a person to take action or stop telling that he will. (एक वक्तव्य जो किसी व्यक्ति को ये कहने के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है कि या तो जो कहा है वे करें या चुप रहे)
9. **To fish in troubled water** : to take undue advantage of a situation. (किसी मजबूरी का फायदा उठाना)

10. **Small fry** : **unimportant person**. (महत्वहीन व्यक्ति, छोटी मछली)

11. **Big fish** : **the main person involved**. (महत्वपूर्ण व्यक्ति, बड़ी मछली)

12. **Loaves and fishes**: **Tangible benefits that motivate one to act**. (लाभ जो किसी व्यक्ति को काम करने के लिए प्रोत्साहित करें)

Metropolis/ Metropolitan

N
महानगर
(Metropolises)
(Plural)

Adjective
महानगरीय

1. Metropolitan life is fast and full of cut-throat competition.
2. Life of a metropolis does not suit me.
3. Delhi is a metropolis.
4. Metropolises attract gullible villagers.

Fruit

फल

Types of फल

Consequence

Fruit

Fruits

as
subject

Fruits

as
object

(S.N.)
Fruit

(P.N.)
Fruits

1. Increase the intake of fruit and vegetables.
2. Fruits like Mango, Watermelon and Lichi make summer desirable.
3. Fruits of sin is misery.
4. This book is the fruit of my hardward.
5. These books are the fruits of my hard work.

PHRASES

1. **Forbidden fruit is the sweetest** : things that are not allowed tempt us more. (जिस चीज़ के लिए मना किया जाता है वही ज्यादा लुभाता है।)
2. **Bear fruit** : **yield desired result**. (फल देना)
3. **The bitter fruit** : **negative consequences**. (नकारात्मक नतीजा)
4. **Low hanging fruit** : **the easiest person to sell something**. (जिस व्यक्ति को ज्यादा सुविधाजनक तरीके से माल बेचा जा सकता है।)

Hair

In general

Hair

Strand

S.N.
Hair

P.N.
Hairs

1. His hair is curly.
2. The boarders found a few hairs in the food every day.

PHRASES

1. **To split hair** : **to make petty distinction**. (बाल की खाल निकालना)
2. **Turn a hair** : **to show fear or excitement**. (डर या उत्तेजना दर्शाना)
3. **Get in one's hair** : **to irritate**. (तंग करना)
4. **Let one's hair down** : **to relax**. (आराम करना)
5. **Tear one's hair out** : **to manifest one's anxiety or fear**. (अपनो से तंग आ कर अपने बाल नोचना)
6. **Hirsute** : **covered with hair**. (बालों से भरा)

Air

हवा

air
U.N.

बनावटी व्यवहार

airs

प्रसारित करना

V_1 V_1+s/es V_2/V_3
air airs aired

1. The programme was aired last night.
2. The fragrance filled the air.
3. The strong wind blew off my cap

PHRASES

1. **To give oneself airs:** to act in a way that shows you think that you are better than the others. (नखरे करना)
2. **In the air:** prevalent. (चलन में)
3. **Up in the air:** uncertain. (अनिश्चित)
4. **Into thin air:** leaving no trace. (गायब (बिना सबूत छोड़े))
5. **Clear the air:** to clear the misunderstanding or to get rid of tension or discord. (गलतफहमी, मतभेद इत्यादि दूर करना)
6. **Off the air:** not being broadcast. (जिसका प्रसारण रुक गया हो)
7. **On the air:** being broadcast. (जिसका प्रसारण अभी भी जारी है)
8. **Walk/ tread on air:** to feel happy. (खुश होना)

S.N.	Slang English	Formal English
1.	Bookish language	Theoretical language
2.	Little child	Small child
3.	Cousin brother	He-cousin.
4.	Poisonous snake	Venomous snake
5.	Mutual friend	Common friend.
6.	Lady doctor	Woman doctor
7.	Man shoes	Male shoes
8.	Woman accessories	Female accessories
9.	Woman dress	Female dress
10.	Lady nurse	Nurse
11.	Man friend	Male friend
12.	Woman friend	Female friend
13.	Female student	Woman student
14.	Male teacher	Man teacher
15.	Elderly lady	Elderly woman
16.	Male toilet	Men's toilet
17.	Real brother	Brother

MOST APPROPRIATE NOUN

1. I sat in the shadow of the tree.
2. The Sutlej has changed its path.
3. A group of fish is swimming.
4. He is a mental patient.
5. He gave me an ending time to finish the work.
6. The police found the dead body of a cow in the park.
7. Tea leaves are kept in a tea box.
8. Work at the request of your conscience.
9. Nawaj Sharif could have taken shelter in any country.
10. After the written exam, we had the oral exam.
11. People coming from other states are forced to take up menial jobs.
12. He was kept in a place, where people with chronic illness are kept.
13. During recession companies start cutting down cost of working.
14. The strong breeze blew away my cap.
15. The ground of my bed room has not been cleaned.
16. The ticket window has opened.
17. I owe a lot to my place of study.
18. What is your good name and last name.
19. I had a bad dream last night.
20. There is no escape from heat in the deserts.
21. I need to pay the auto rent but let me check the metre first.
22. America is a space power.
23. The price of air conditioners has shot up because the compounds have become costly.
24. She is humble, down to earth and without unnatural form of behaviour.
25. I am too afraid to speak because of the intimation.
26. The freedom struggle soon gained speed.
27. Serving tea is an English habit.
28. My grandmother is good in story telling.
29. Feeling of happiness and sadness gripped me when I remembered my school days.
30. The sailors usually exchange short account of the incidents they experience.
31. My speech was without preparation and made at that very moment.
32. The storm left a trial of misery.
33. Sati Pratha was a Hindu practice.
34. The acrobat was deft at tight-rope walking.
35. He is a person who takes care of the museum.
36. The political murder of Indira Gandhi created an upheaval in the country.
37. The postponement of the case caused great unrest among the petitioner.
38. He is an idiot and doesn't have any brain.

1. Change 'shadow' into 'shade'.
2. Change 'path' into 'course'.
3. Change 'group' into 'school/ shoal'.
4. Change 'mental patient' into 'lunatic'.
5. Change 'an ending time' into 'a deadline'.
6. Change 'dead body' into 'carcass'.
7. Change 'tea box' into 'caddy'.
8. Change 'request' into 'behest'.
9. Change 'shelter' into 'asylum'.
10. Change 'oral exam' into 'viva voce'.
11. Change 'people coming from other states' into 'migrants'.
12. Change 'a place, where people with chronic illness are kept' into 'sanatorium'.
13. Change 'cutting down cost of working' into 'retrenchment'.
14. Change 'breeze' into 'wind'. 'Breeze' is light not strong.
15. Change 'ground' into 'floor'.
16. Change 'window' into 'counter'.
17. Change 'place of study' into 'alma mater'.
18. Remove the word 'good' and change 'last name' into 'surname'.
19. Change 'bad dream' into 'nightmare'.
20. Change 'escape' into 'respite'.
21. Change 'rent' into 'fare' and 'metre' into 'meter'.
22. Change 'space power' into 'space giant' or 'super power'.
23. Change 'compounds' into 'components'.
24. Change 'unnatural form of behaviour' into 'affectation'.
25. Change 'intimation' into 'intimidation'.
26. Change 'speed' into 'momentum'.
27. Change 'habit' into 'custom'.
28. Change 'good in story telling' into 'a raconteur'.
29. Change 'feeling of happiness and sadness' into 'nostalgia'.
30. Change 'short a count of the incidents they experience' into 'anecdotes'.
31. Change 'without preparation and made at that very moment' into 'extempore/ impromptu'.
32. Change 'trial' into 'trail'. 'Trial' is the noun form of 'try'. 'Trial' also means 'formal examination of something'. 'Trail' means 'the things left by something that has passed by'.
33. Change 'practice' into 'tradition'.
34. Change 'acrobat' into 'funambulist'.
35. Change 'a person who takes care of the museum' into 'curator'.
36. Change 'political murder' into 'assassination'.
37. Change 'postponement' into 'adjournment'.
38. Change 'brain' into 'brains'. 'Brain' is an organ but 'Brains' means 'intelligent'.

Replaces Noun (जो Noun के स्थान पर आता है।)

Questions based on this definition are asked

(इसी परिभाषा पर प्रश्न आधारित होते हैं।)

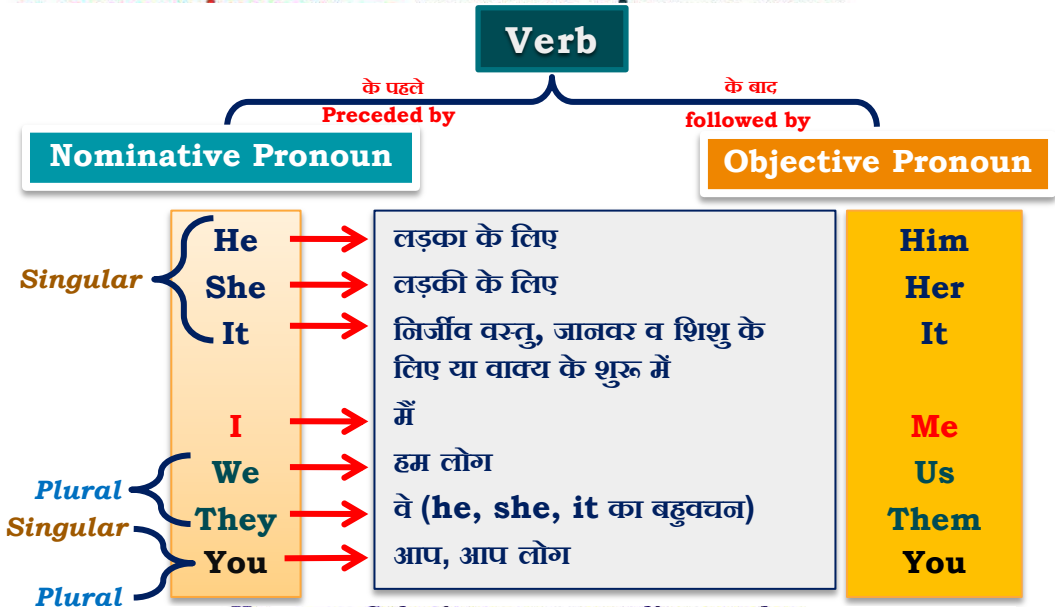
- Que.** 1. Mother Teresa, who was a philanthrope, she was loved by all.
 2. Those who work hard, they will succeed.
 3. The one, who has suffered the most, let him speak.

- Ans.** 1. Remove 'she'.
 2. Remove 'they'
 3. Remove 'him' and put 'let' at the beginning of the sentence.

Pronoun does not come with noun or words that can be replaced by a Noun (Pronoun Noun और Noun के स्थान पर आने वाले शब्दों के साथ नहीं आ सकता है)

Types of Pronoun

1. **Personal pronouns** → Substitute a person's name.



He → Substitutes a masculine gender.

She → Substitutes a feminine gender.

'It' comes for

- Non-living
- Animal
- Baby
- as Dummy

	Singular	Plural
1st Person →	I	We
2nd Person →	You	You
3rd Person →	He, She, It	They

Order of Pronoun

- ★ **The order of pronouns depends on the sentence whether it is an accusation or praise.** (Pronouns किस order में होगा यह इस बात पर निर्भर करता है कि हम तारीफ कर रहे हैं या नाकारात्मक वक्तव्य दे रहे हैं।)
- ★ **The order of pronouns also depends on the number of people.** (Pronoun का order लोगों की संख्या पर भी निर्भर करता है।)

Order of Personal Pronoun



- I, you and he went to see a movie.
- Rohit, I and you are to blame for this blunder.
- She, I and you work hard.
- They, we and you played well.
- They, I and you acted smartly.

- Ans.
- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. Order is | You, he and I |
| 2. Order is | I, You and Rohit |
| 3. Order is | You, she and I |
| 4. Order is → | We, you and they |
| 5. Order is → | You, they and I |

Remember a funny saying → 'the donkey comes the last'.

1. _____ is raining.	time, season, weather, month, days, dates take 'It'
2. _____ is 7 O'clock.	
3. _____ is getting dark.	
4. _____ is summer now.	
5. _____ is 7th of March/June/ 2020.	
6. _____ is O.K	
7. I bought a dress. _____ was beautiful.	
8. I bought two dresses. _____ were beautiful.	
9. Shake the medicine properly before giving _____ to the child.	
10. The book is well illustrated and attractively bound making altogether a presentable volume.	

Answer

1. It	6. It
2. It	7. It
3. It	8. They
4. It	9. It
5. It	
10. Add 'it' After 'making' because question arises making 'what' a presentable volume	

Use of 'Object form/Subject form of Pronoun'

1. It is me who wrote this book.
2. All of _____ will come. (we/ us)
3. There is no love lost between _____ and _____. (he/him & she/her)
4. He is like _____. (me/ I)
5. You are unlike _____. (me/ I)

Answer

1. Ans → Change 'me' into 'I'
It + be + Subject form of Pronoun.
2. Ans → us
Preposition ^{के बाद} followed by object form of Pronoun.
3. Ans → him and her.
between ^{के बाद} ... and ...
object form of Pronoun
4. Ans → me.
like ^{के बाद} followed by object form of Pronoun.
5. Ans → me.
unlike ^{के बाद} followed by object form of Pronoun.

6. Let _____ go. (him/he)
7. All, but _____ (she/her), have come.
8. You are better than _____. (me/ I)
9. I love him as much as _____. (her/she)

6. Ans → him.
Verb is followed by object form
7. Ans → her.
But/ Except are followed by object form of pronoun (But/ Except के बाद pronoun object form में आता है।)
8. Ans → I
Comparison is between Subject & Subject or Object & Object (तुलना Subject और Subject अथवा Object अथवा Object के बीच होता है।)
9. Ans → both correct.
(1) I love him as much as her- मैं him और her से समान प्यार करता हूँ।
(2) I love him as much as she - मैं और she एक समान प्यार him से करते हैं।

Gender Specific Pronouns for Inanimate Objects

(निर्जीव वस्तु के लिए Pronoun)

1. The Sun is a star. _____ is the only natural source of light.
2. The sun shines with all _____ fury in June.
3. The Sea screeched with all _____ might.
4. A cow is a milch animal. _____ is useful for mankind.
5. A lioness becomes very ferocious if _____ finds _____ cubs in danger.
6. Nature showers _____ love on all.

Answer

1. It
2. his
3. his
4. It
5. she, her
6. her

Non-living can take he/she or him/her in place of it/ its if masculine or feminine characters are expressed by them. (अगर मर्दाना या औरताना गुण दर्शाये जाए तो निर्जीव वस्तु के लिए भी he/she और his/ her का प्रयोग it/ its के स्थान पर किया जा सकता है।)

Masculine Characters → Bravery, Fury & Toughness, Might (वीरता, गुस्सा, दृढ़ता, ताकत)

Feminine Characters → Beauty, Love & Motherhood (सुंदरता, प्यार, ममता)

Possessive Case

Possessive Adjective

are Determiners	His	Determiners are followed by 'Noun'
	Her	
	Its	
	My	
	Your	
	Their	
	Our	

Possessive Pronoun

	His	Possessive Adjective } + Noun Replaced by Possessive Pronoun
	Hers	
	Its*	
	Mine	
	Yours	
	Theirs	
	Ours	

* Its and one's are not used as Possessive Pronoun except when followed by 'Own'.

Its और one's Possessive Pronoun के रूप में नहीं आते जब तक 'own' उनके बाद ना आएँ

Detect 'error' / choose correct answer

- This is my book and that is _____.
(1) yours book (2) your's (3) yours
- _____ bus arrived on time.
(1) Their (2) Theirs (3) Their's
- The dog had a chain around _____ neck.
(1) its (2) it's
- My a friend has come.
- The police will give her report in a week.

Answer

- (3)
- (1)
- (1)
- A friend of mine.
'My' and 'a' i.e possessive Adjective and Article cannot come together.
- Change 'her' into 'their'. Police (Plural Noun) will take plural possessive Adjective 'their'.

Order of Possessive Adjective

Order



Plural

Our
Your
Their

If 1st, 2nd and 3rd persons or two out of the above three of come in a sentence, the order of Possessive Adjective must be 123 (Plural) / (अगर 1st, 2nd और 3rd person या तीन में से दो का प्रयोग एक वाक्य में हो, तो Possessive Adjective का क्रम 123 (Plural होगा))

- I and you must mind _____ business.
- You and she must mend _____ ways.
- I, you and she must perform _____ duties properly.

1. **I and you** according to 1st person **our**
2. **You and she** according to 2nd person **your**
3. **I, you and she** according to 1st person **our**


Example :-

1. The company has appointed some telecallers to call their clients.
2. The Ganga has been revered by the civilizations flourishing on their banks.
3. I am writing my autobiography.
4. I need your favour now.
5. I would like to take your leave now.
6. I cannot tolerate your separation.

1. Change 'their' into 'its'. P.A will follow company
2. Change 'their' into 'its'. P.A will follow the Ganga.
3. Change 'my' into 'an'. 'Auto' means own (स्वयं). 'My' with 'autobiography' becomes superfluous.
4. Change 'your favour' into 'favour from you'.
5. Change 'your leave' into 'leave of you'.
6. Change 'your separation' into 'separation from you'. Favour, leave, separation, mention and sight are such nouns that cannot take Possessive Adjective.

Possessive Adjective + Gerund

(Possessive Adjective का प्रयोग Noun/Gerund के पहले होता है)

1. I am confident of me passing the exam.
2. Owing to me being an orient*, I had to face racism.
3. I know you love my cooking for you.
4. I don't like your working with him.

- Answer**
1. Change 'me' into 'my'.
 2. Change 'me' into 'my'.
 - * 'Orient' means 'of the east'.
'Occident' means 'of the west'.
 3. No error
 4. No error

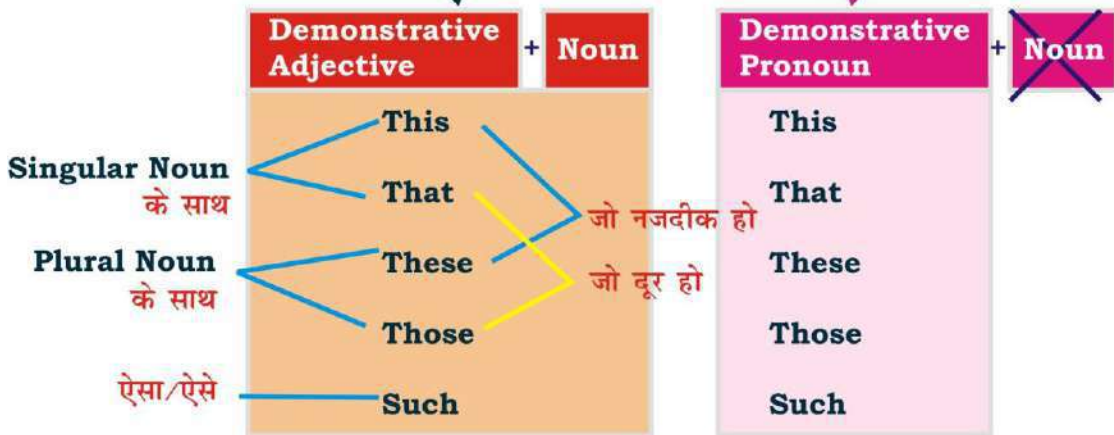
Reciprocal Pronoun

- **Each other** — दो (एक दूसरे से)
- **One another** — दो से अधिक (एक दूसरे से)

1. He was so afraid that his knees knocked against _____.
2. All the MPs co-operate with _____ when it comes to increasing their salaries.

- Answer**
1. each other
 2. one another

Demonstrative Case



Example :-

1. This types of books is useful.
2. These informations are reliable.
3. She loves this kinds of dresses.
4. Such a behaviour is deplorable.
5. Such an acts of terror should be condemned.
6. Such a gentry can influence the police.

The examples given above are of Demonstrative Adjective.

(उपरोक्त उदाहरण Demonstrative Adjective के हैं)

Answer

1. Change 'types' into 'type'.
2. Change 'informations' into 'pieces of information'.
Information is uncountable
3. Change 'kinds' into 'kind'
4. Remove 'a'. Behaviour is U.N.
5. Change 'acts' into 'act'
Such + a/an + S.C.N'
6. Remove 'a'. Gentry is a plural noun

Now let us see Demonstrative Pronoun.

(अब Demonstrative Pronoun के उदाहरण देखें)

1. The streets of Delhi are wider than Mumbai.
2. The population of China is greater than India.
3. The laws of Iraq are not less severe than Egypt.

Answer

1. Add 'those of' before Mumbai. Streets of Delhi can be compared with the streets of Mumbai and not with Mumbai. Replace Streets (P.N) with 'those' because Noun should not be repeated.
2. Add 'that of' before India. We can compare population of China with the population of India and not with India. Replace population (S.N) with 'that' because Noun should not be repeated.
3. Add 'those of' before 'Egypt'.

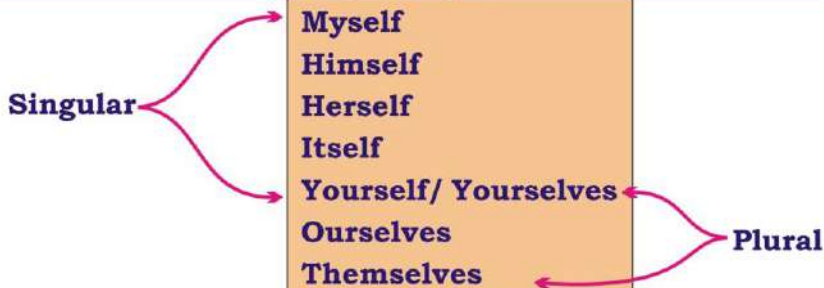
4. The Climate of Mumbai is not as extreme as Jaipur.
 (i) Jaipur's
 (ii) those of Jaipur
5. Those were useless comments.
6. This is sufficient.

Answer

4. (i) We have no option like 'that of Jaipur'. Climate (S.N) can be replaced by 'that' and not 'those'. So we have only Jaipur's as the correct option.
5. No error. 'Those' is pronoun here.
6. No error. 'This' is pronoun here.

Reflexive/ Emphatic Pronoun

जब वाक्य में स्वयं/ खुद/ खुद ही/खुद को या अपने आप का प्रयोग हो।



- One must do his duty himself.
- We must protect ourselves from this pandemic.
- The poor man killed him and his own son.
- I do my work _____.
- She _____ is responsible for her problems.
- He hurt _____.
- We adapt ourselves to the changing climate.
- Fishes are adapted to an aquatic life.

Answer

- Change 'his' into 'one's' and himself into oneself. One ... one's ... oneself.
- Change 'ourselves' into 'ourselves'.
- Change 'him' into 'himself'.
- myself.
- herself
- himself

Adapt

- V** to make fit often by modification (ढालना)

Adapted

- Adj.** suited by nature, character or design to a particular use (के अनुकूल ढला होना)

- I availed myself of the golden opportunity.
- An umbrella is of no avail when it comes to thunderstorm.

Reflexive Pronoun follows

No Reflexive Pronoun follows

Avail

V To make use of or take advantage of (लाभ उठाना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

N Advantage towards attainment of a goal (लाभ या सहायता हेतु कोई वस्तु) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

11. I enjoyed the party.

12. Please enjoy yourself.

13. I enjoyed myself at the party.

Enjoy

V If followed by an object (अगर enjoy के बाद object हो) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V If not followed by an object (अगर enjoy के बाद object ना हो) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

14. I was absent.

15. I absented myself.

Absent

V To keep oneself away (अनुपस्थित होना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

Adj. Not present (अनुपस्थित) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

16. The court acquitted the accused.

17. The soldiers acquitted themselves well during the Kargil War.

Acquit

V To discharge completely from any accusation (बरी करना) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V To conduct oneself satisfactorily especially under stress (तनाव जैसे हालात से संतोषजनक तरीके से निपट कर निकलना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

18. He reconciled with his business partner.

19. She reconciled herself to the demand of her in-laws.

Reconcile

V to restore harmony (समझौता करना) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V to submit to accept something unpleasant (किसी अप्रिय हालात इत्यादि के आगे घुटने टेक देना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

20. He resigned from his post.
 21. The farmers resigned themselves to yet another year of famine.

Resign

V to give up one's office or position (त्यागपत्र देना) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V to accept something as inevitable (अटल मान कर स्वीकार कर लेना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

22. Water exerts pressure in all directions.
 23. Do not exert yourself during the examination.

Exert

V to put forth (strength, effort etc) लगाना (ज़ोर, बल, इत्यादि) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V To put (oneself) into action or to tiring effort (पुरजोर कोशिश करना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

24. She applied for the post of manager.
 25. She applied the ointment on the wound.
 26. Rules apply to freshmen only.
 27. She applied herself whole-heartedly as she wanted to be a surgeon.

Apply

V To make a request especially in the form of a written application (आवेदन करना) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V To lay or spread on (लगाना- फैलाकर) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V To have relevance (पर लागू होना) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V To work with effort and attention (मेहनत व ध्यान के साथ करना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

28. Late Abdul Kalam was the pride of India.
 29. He prides himself for thinking out of the box.

Pride

N delight arising from some, person, possession, act etc. (किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु, कार्य इत्यादि से प्राप्त खुशी व गर्व) **No Reflexive Pronoun follows**

V taking pride in one's ability, quality etc. (गर्व करना) **Reflexive Pronoun follows**

30. Behave yourself.
 31. He lived by himself.
 32. Please help yourself.
 33. I see myself as an IAS Officer after 5 years.
- **Certain verbs have an altogether different meaning when a Reflexive Pronoun is added.** (कुछ verbs का अर्थ Reflexive Pronoun लगाने पर परिवर्तित हो जाता है।)

30. Behave yourself — behave properly (शिष्ट तरीके से व्यवहार करना)
 31. By himself — without any external help (बिना बाहरी सहायता के)
 32. Help yourself — to serve food and drink for oneself (खुद के लिए खाना अथवा पेय परोसना)
 33. See oneself — to imagine (कल्पना करना)

Note:- For Indefinite Pronoun and Distributive Pronoun see 'Subject-Verb Agreement'

34. He hid himself behind the curtain.	34. Remove 'himself'.
35. Keep yourself fit.	35. Remove 'yourself'.

Explanation

Keep, stop, turn, bathe, move, rest, hide, shave, think and qualify do not take Reflexive Pronoun.

Interrogative/ Relative Pronouns



Interrogative Pronoun

Who / Whom / Which

- _____ has come?
- _____ did you meet?
- _____, you think, is guilty?
- _____ knows you?
- To _____ are you known?
- _____ is your room?
- _____ is your book?
- _____ dress did you buy?
- _____, you feel, will win the race?
- By _____ was this done?
- _____ of the rooms is yours?
- _____ of the workers is the most efficient?

⊗ In place of subject

⊗ In place of object
⊗ Replaces 'who' if preceded by a preposition (Preposition के बाद who नहीं whom आता है।)

⊗ कौन-सा के अर्थ में
* If followed by 'of' (अगर 'of' के पहले हो)

Answer

- Who
- Whom
- Who
- Who
- whom
- Which
- Which
- Which
- Who
- whom
- Which
- Which

Interrogative Pronoun

Fill in the blanks with appropriate 'Wh' word:

- _____ book is this?
- _____ room is that?
- _____ do you live?
- _____ did he reach?
- _____ are you crying?
- _____ will the exam start?

Answer

- Whose
- Whose
- Where
- When/Where
- Why
- When

WH Family

- I know _____ has come.
- I know _____ he had met.
- I know _____ boy is at fault.
- The government _____ is chosen by the people has the right to govern.
- The Saraswati is the river whose disappearance is a mystery.
- My friend Rohan lives in a colony whose name I have forgotten.
- I know _____ the problem is and _____ to solve it.
- I wondered _____ to do.
- I know _____ to swim.
- He taught me _____ to drive.

Answer

- Who. Here 'who' is the subject.
- Whom. Here 'whom' is the object and he is the subject here.
- Which. जहाँ कौन-सा का एहसास हो वहाँ which आता है।
- Which. For 'non-living' we use 'which'.
- In traditional Grammar we do not use 'whose' for non-living things. Change 'whose disappearance' into 'the disappearance of which'.

Answer

- Change 'whose name' into 'the name of which'. Explanation is same as that of 5.
 - What, how.
 - what
 - how
 - how
- If know, wonder, teach, learn and discover are followed by Infinitive (to + V_{inf}), a 'wh' word precedes the Infinitive.

11. It was in Delhi that I met him.
12. It was in 2009 that I came to Delhi.
13. The reason why I did not come was because I was not well.
14. She forgot to bring her admit card which caused the problem.
15. The rain flooded the roads which brought life to a standstill.

Answer

11. Change 'that' into 'where'. For place (Delhi) use 'where'.
12. Change 'that' into 'when'. For time (2009), use 'when'.
13. The reason why (क्योंकि) cannot be followed by 'because' because the sentence will become superfluous. Superfluous means more than what is needed, redundant. Change 'because' into 'that'.
- 14 & 15. Here 'which' refers to 'admit card' and 'roads' while the second action was the outcome of the first action. Hence join the second action by conjunction 'and' and use pronoun 'this' for the 1st action. Remove 'which'.

That

1. All _____ glitters is not gold.
2. All is well _____ ends well.
3. He is the same locksmith _____ I saw in that shop.
4. This is the same dress as mine.
5. He is so weak _____ he cannot walk.
6. We eat _____ we may live.
7. This is the best offer _____ I can give.
8. We tried everything _____ was feasible.
9. We can provide all facilities _____ a tenant requires.
10. Your shop has nothing _____ I need.
11. She can't buy anything _____ can provide comfort to her grieving soul.
12. He is the boy _____ won the race.
13. This is the horse _____ won the race.

Answer

1. All is followed by that not what, which etc. Moreover this is a phrase.
अर्थ → हर चमकने वाली चीज़ सोना नहीं होती।
2. Ans. 'that'. This is also a phrase.
अर्थ → अंत भला तो सब भला।
3. 'the same' is followed by 'that' if we find a verb in the latter part. 'The same ... that'
correlative
4. 'the same' is followed by 'as' if there is no verb in the latter part. 'The same ... as'
correlative
5. So ... that is a pair of conjunction.
6. So that ताकि (Compound conjunction)
7. Superlative degree is followed by 'that'.

Answer

8, 9, 10 & 11. Ans.— 'that'

Everything, all, nothing, anything are followed by 'that' and not any other Relative Pronoun.

12. Boy takes who.
(person)

13. Horse takes which.
(animal)

14. The jockey and the horse _____ won the race are missing.

15. The accused and the gun _____ the police were looking for have been found.

16. He is such an idiot _____ he understands nothing.

17. He is such an idiot _____ I have never seen.

Answer

14. **Jockey** (person) + horse (animal) take 'that'.
पेगोवर घुड़सवार

15. **Accused** (person) + gun (non-living) take 'that'.
(आरोपी)

16. Such ... that (If 'that' is followed by a sentence that substantiates what is in the 1st part) (अगर दूसरा भाग पहले भाग के लिए सबूत का काम करें)

17. Such ... as. ('as' is followed by a sentence that categorizes the 1st part) (अगर दूसरा भाग category बता रहा हो जिसके बारे में पहले भाग में बताया गया हो। (see chapter conjunction))

Compound Pronouns

to emphasize

जो कोई भी	—	whoever	—	whosoever
जिस किसी को भी	—	whomever	—	whomsoever
जो कुछ भी	—	whatever	—	whatsoever
जो सा भी	—	whichever	—	whichsoever
जब कभी भी	—	whenever	—	whenever
जहाँ कहीं भी	—	wherever	—	wheresoever
जैसे भी (in whatever manner)	—	however	—	howsoever
जितना भी/ जिस हद तक भी (to whatever degree or extent)				

- Buy _____ you want.
- Come _____ you are free.
- _____ wants to succeed must burn the midnight oil.
- Now you are of age. You can marry _____ you desire.
- _____ sins will have to remit.
- To _____ this certificate may concern.
- You can buy _____ dress you want.
- You can't break it _____ hard you try.
- I will help you _____ I can.
- _____ wants to meet me may come between 10 am and 5 pm.

Answer

- Whatever
- Whenever
- Whosoever
- Whomsoever
- Whosoever
- Whomsoever
- Whichever
- However
- However
- Whoever or whosoever

- An Adjective tells about the quality, quantity, number etc of Noun/ Pronoun. (**Adjective Noun** अथवा **Pronoun** के गुण, संख्या अथवा मात्रा इत्यादि बताता है)
- Adjectives generally come before a Noun or after the Verb. (ये सामान्यतः **Noun** के पहले या **verb** के बाद आता है)

Eg.: (1) He is a good boy.

(quality)

(2) I have much tension.

(quantity)

(3) I have two friends.

(number)

(1) He is good

after verb

(2) He is a good boy.

before Noun

Suffix

- There are certain natural Adjectives but some Adjectives ends in various suffixes. (कुछ तो **natural Adjectives** होते हैं लेकिन कुछ **Adjectives** विभिन्न **suffixes** में खत्म हो सकते हैं)

Suffix

Example

1.	-al	Exceptional (अपवाद), Traditional (पारम्परिक)
2.	-ous	Adventurous (जोखिम उठाने वाला), Pompous (दिखावे से भरा)
3.	-ish	Childish (बचकाना), Selfish (स्वार्थी)
4.	-like	Warlike (युद्धरत), Childlike (मासूम)
5.	-ic	Horrific (भयावह), Terrific (उत्कृष्ट)
6.	-ive	Suppressive (दबाने वाला), Adhesive (चिपकाने वाला),
7.	-ent	Silent (शांत), Decent (सभ्य),
8.	-ant	Blatant (मुखर, खुल्लम-खुल्ला), Exuberant (उल्लासपूर्ण),
9.	-y	Stony (कठोर), Bloody (रक्तपातपूर्ण)
10.	-en	Golden (सुनहरी), Wooden
11.	-some	Handsome, Awesome (बहुत बढ़िया)
12.	-ful	Beautiful, Awful (बहुत खराब)
13.	-less	Hopeless (निराश), Merciless (क्रूर)
14.	-able	Capable (योग्य), Palpable (जो स्पर्श किया जा सकता है)
15.	-ble	Tangible (जो छू कर महसूस किया जा सके), Visible (जो दिखाई दे)
16.	-ly	Friendly (दोस्ताना), Cowardly (कायर)

Note: If we use two or more than two adjectives to qualify a noun, pay attention to the order in which Adjectives come. (अगर दो या दो से अधिक **Adjectives** एक वाक्य में आए तो ये निम्नलिखित क्रम में होंगे)

NOSASCOMP

Examples

1.	Number	—	one, two, many
2.	Opinion	—	decent, beautiful
3.	Size	—	tall, short
4.	Age	—	ancient, old, modern
5.	Shape	—	oval, triangular
6.	Colour	—	red, blue
7.	Origin	—	Indian, Chinese
8.	Material	—	wooden, woolen
9.	Purpose	—	sleeping, dining, wedding

Examples

1. I bought a cotton, cosy, sleeping mattress.
2. She was wearing a woolen, red, pretty wedding gown.
3. My son bought three, red, round balloons.

Answer

1. Cosy > cotton > sleeping
(OP) (M) (P)
2. Pretty > red > woolen > wedding
(OP) (C) (M) (P)
3. Three > round > red
(N) (Sh) (C)

- There are certain adjectives which are often used in a particular order and that has become a common practice although they don't follow the above given rule. (कुछ **Adjectives** उपरोक्त नियम का पालन नहीं करते और एक निश्चित क्रम में हमेशा से प्रयुक्त होते आए हैं)

1. Tall, dark and handsome	6. Fast and furious
2. Fair and beautiful	7. Each and every
3. First and foremost	8. Creative and constructive
4. Happy and gay	9. Pale and sad
5. Black and shiny	

- If a Noun is used as an Adjective (Noun-qualifier), it comes closest to the Noun. (अगर **Noun** का प्रयोग **Adjective** के रूप में हो, तो वो **Noun** के निकटतम प्रयुक्त होगा)

Examples

1. I need a hot water bag.
2. He has two rickety bullock carts.
3. There were two inexperienced women ministers in the cabinet.
4. I bought two soft brown bread rolls.

- If noun comes as an Adjective, the Noun will be in singular form. (अगर Noun का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में हो, तो Noun singular form में होगा)

Examples

- Lungs cancer
- Knees replacement
- Eyes infection
- Three-years imprisonment
- Two-hours lecture
- Five-stars hotel

Answer

- Change 'lungs' into 'lung'.
- Change 'knees' into 'knee'.
- Change 'eyes' into 'eye'.
- Change 'years' into 'year'.
- Change 'hours' into 'hour'.
- Change 'stars' into 'star'.

- If Verb comes as an adjective, it is called Participle. (See Chapter Participle)
- Certain Nouns like verb take 'ed' forms and are used as Adjective. (कुछ Nouns verb की तरह 'ed' forms लेते हैं)

Examples

Four – chambered heart
Three – cornered hat

- See how 'ly' changes the parts of speech. (देखें कैसे 'ly' parts of speech परिवर्तित कर देता है)

Several Nouns + ly — Adjective

Cowardly (कायर), Miserly (कंजूस),
heavenly, earthly, worldly, womanly
(औरताना)/ feminine, friendly, oily,
smelly, bodily (शरीर से सम्बंधित), costly,
ghostly (भूतिया), westerly/ western,
manly (मर्दों वाला), niggardly (कंजूस),
Scholarly (पढ़ा-लिखा)

Several Adjectives +ly-Adverb

Politely (विनम्रतापूर्वक), sincerely
(निष्ठापूर्वक), smoothly (बाधा रहित तरीके से),
honestly (ईमानदारी से), badly (खराब से),
roughly (रूखे तरीके से), foolishly
(मूर्खतापूर्वक), efficiently (समक्ष तरीके से),
effectively (प्रभावी तरीके से), manfully
(हिम्मत से), affectionately (प्रेम भरे तरीके से),
slowly (धीरे से), mentally (दिमागी रूप से),
lovingly (स्नेहपूर्वक), beautifully (सुन्दरता से),
quickly (तेजी से)

Note: Weekly, daily, monthly & yearly
are both Adjective & Adverb.

- Good_(Adj) (अच्छा). Goodly_(Adj) means (excellent, attractive or considerable in size and quantity). 'Good' takes 'ly' but the form of speech remains the same.

- Straightly, Fastly — कोई शब्द नहीं है

- Straight / Fast

Adj. / Adv.

Examples

1. He has few _____ characters. (man)
2. He must behave _____. (man)
3. He is a _____ trader. (miser)
4. He is a _____ (miser).
5. You shouldn't act niggardly.
6. You should come straightly to me if you have any problem.
7. He has friendly nature.
8. She treated me friendly.
9. I have _____ subscription for this magazine. (year)
10. My yearly visit to the U.S. is very rejuvenating.
11. It was a _____ affair. (cost)

Answer

1. **Manly**_(Adj) - मर्दों वाला
2. **Manfully**_(Adv) - मर्दों के जैसा, हिम्मत के साथ
3. **Miserly**_(Adj)
4. **miser** (Noun). Article takes Noun.
5. **Ans.** In a niggardly manner. In + Adj + manner → Adverb. This structure is used because Adjective here is ending in 'ly' so we have no option of adding 'ly' again.
6. Change 'straightly' into 'straight'. 'Straight' is both Adjective and Adverb.
7. No error
8. Change 'friendly'_(Adj.) into 'in a friendly manner'_(Adv.). 'Treated' is a verb that is qualified by an Adverb.
9. **Annual , yearly**
Both are Adjectives
Annually is Adverb
10. No error
11. **costly**_(Adj.)

In a/an Adjective manner = Adverb

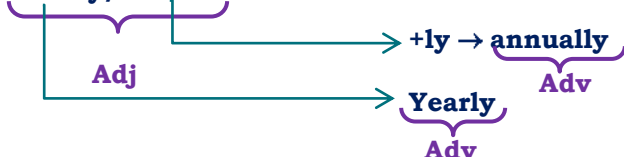
Examples

- (1) **in a polite manner = politely.**
(2) **in an honest manner = honestly.**
(3) **in a ~~miser~~ miserly manner → adv**
- Adj

Explanation of 8 & 9

The adverb of annual_(Adj) is annually_(Adv) and the Adjective of year_(Noun) is yearly and annual. Yearly is both Adjective and Adverb.

Year + ly → Yearly/ Annual



See the following sentences
(निम्नलिखित वाक्य देखें)

Eg.:

1. I am fine (ठीक)
2. She is arrogant (घमंडी)
3. You are intelligent (बुद्धिमान)
4. Radha was helpless (असहाय)
5. People were gullible (भोला-भाला)
6. We are laborious (मेहनती)
7. My mother is affectionate (स्नेही)
8. My son is ambitious (महत्वाकांक्षी)
9. Our soldiers are courageous (वीर)
10. I am honest (ईमानदार)
11. He is sad (दुखी)
12. She was optimistic (आशावादी)
13. My father and uncle are broad-minded (खुले विचारों वाले)
14. Some leaders are not conscientious (ज़मीर वाले)
15. The watchman is alert (चौकस)

In the above sentences, you saw that the subject's (Noun/ Pronoun) quality has been discussed. The subject may be singular or plural.

(ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में आपने देखा कि **Subject (Noun/ Pronoun)** की विशेषता बताई जा रही है। **Subject Singular** अथवा **Plural** दोनों ही हो सकता है।)

But what shall we do if we want to make a comparison between two?
(लेकिन जब दो के बीच तुलना करनी हो तो क्या किया जाए?)

For eg. (जैसे कि):-

- Father's nature $\xrightarrow[\text{की तुलना}]{\text{Compared with}}$ Mother's nature
(पिता का व्यवहार) (माँ का व्यवहार)
- Father's nature $\xrightarrow[\text{की तुलना}]{\text{Compared with}}$ the nature of other members of the family

In such cases we use Comparative Degree.
(ऐसे में **Comparative Degree** का प्रयोग होता है।)

16. My brother is more adventurous than my sister.
(ज्यादा जोखिम उठाने वाला)
17. You are more obese than I am.
(ज्यादा मोटा)
18. My son is more courteous than your daughter.
(ज्यादा शिष्टाचारी)
19. You are wiser than she is.
(ज्यादा समझदार)

20. Ratan Tata is **more generous** than any other industrialist.

Did you note the following points in the examples given above ?

He Subject	.....	I Subject	You Subject	.....	I Subject
She Subject	.....	he Subject	him Object	.....	her Object

Subject is compared with subject and object is compared with object .
Subject की तुलना Subject से होती है और Object का Object से

But see 30 and 31:- 'to' is followed by object form.
(लेकिन 30 और 31 देखें:- 'to' के बाद **object form** आता है।)

- 'to' replaces 'than' in e.g 30 and 31
(**'than'** के स्थान पर **'to'** उदाहरण 30 और 31 में आता है।)

Note: Adjective ending in 'ior' takes 'to'.

Such Adjectives (वैसे Adjectives): Senior (वरिष्ठ), Junior (कनिष्ठ), Superior (बेहतर), Inferior (बदतर) & Prior (से पहले).

**Apart from these (इनके अलावा) Elder & Younger to take 'to' and not 'than'.
(Elder & Younger भी 'to' लेते हैं न कि 'than'.)**

- What shall we do if we want to choose 'one' out of 'all'?

(जब सब में से एक को चुनना हो तो क्या करें?)



Fittest of all

Shortest of all

Tallest of all

Most Intelligent of all

In such cases we use Superlative degree of Adjective.

(ऐसे में **Superlative degree of Adjective** का प्रयोग होता है।)

32. He is the **most qualified** teacher.

(सबसे ज्यादा योग्य)

33. This is the **filthiest** place.

(सबसे गंदा)

34. Mount Everest is the **highest** peak.

(सबसे ऊँचा)

35. Indira Point is the **southernmost** point.

(सबसे दक्षिणी)

36. This is our **best** effort.

(सर्वश्रेष्ठ)

37. It was the **worst** experience.

(सबसे खराब)

38. It was our **biggest** mistake.

(सबसे बड़े)

39. We had the **most wonderful** experience.

(सबसे अद्भुत)

40. He is the **most energetic** person.

(सबसे ज्यादा ऊर्जावान)

Did you notice that we used 'the' or possessive Adjective (your, my, his, her, our, their, its) before Superlative degree of Adjective?

(क्या आपने गौर किया कि हमने **Superlative degree of Adjective** के पहले 'the' अथवा **Possessive Adjective (your, my, his, her, our, their its)** का प्रयोग किया है?)

Ways To Change Positive Into Comparative & Superlative Degree

Rule - 1

To change an adjective into comparative degree 'er' is added to the positive degree and 'est' is added to change it into superlative degree.

(Positive degree में 'er' और 'est' लगाकर Comparative और Superlative degree बनाया जाता है)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Bold (हिम्मती)	Bolder (ज्यादा हिम्मती)	Boldest (सबसे ज्यादा हिम्मती)
Deep (गहरा)	Deeper (ज्यादा गहरा)	Deepest (सबसे गहरा)
High (ऊँचा)	Higher (ज्यादा ऊँचा)	Highest (सबसे ऊँचा)
Strong (मजबूत)	Stronger (ज्यादा मजबूत)	Strongest (सबसे मजबूत)
Thick (गाढ़ा)	Thicker (ज्यादा गाढ़ा)	Thickest (सबसे ज्यादा गाढ़ा)
Weak (कमजोर)	Weaker (ज्यादा कमजोर)	Weakest (सबसे कमजोर)

Rule - 2

If 'e' is present at the end of a positive degree, 'r' is added to change into a comparative degree and 'st' to change it into superlative degree.

(अगर Positive degree 'e' में खत्म हो, तो 'r' और 'st' लगा कर Comparative degree और Superlative degree बनाया जाता है)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Able (योग्य)	Abler (ज्यादा योग्य)	Ablest (सबसे ज्यादा योग्य)
Brave (बहादुर)	Braver (ज्यादा बहादुर)	Bravest (सबसे ज्यादा बहादुर)
Fine (अच्छा)	Finer (ज्यादा अच्छा)	Finest (सबसे ज्यादा अच्छा)
Noble (कुलीन)	Nobler (ज्यादा कुलीन)	Noblest (सबसे ज्यादा कुलीन)
True (सच्चा)	Truer (ज्यादा सच्चा)	Truest (सबसे ज्यादा सच्चा)
Wise (समझदार)	Wiser (ज्यादा समझदार)	Wisest (सबसे ज्यादा समझदार)

Rule - 3

If the positive degree ends in a consonant and one vowel comes before it, the last consonant is doubled and then 'er' and 'est' are added to change it into comparative and superlative degree respectively.

(अगर **Positive degree consonant** में खत्म हो, और **Consonant** के पहले एक **vowel** हो, तो **Consonant** को **double** करके 'er' व 'est' लगाये)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Big (बड़ा)	Bigger (ज्यादा बड़ा)	Biggest (सबसे बड़ा)
Fit (उपयुक्त)	Fitter (ज्यादा उपयुक्त)	Fittest (सबसे ज्यादा उपयुक्त)
Hot (गरम)	Hotter (ज्यादा गरम)	Hottest (सबसे गरम)
Sad (दुखी)	Sadder (ज्यादा दुखी)	Saddest (सबसे ज्यादा दुखी)
Thin (पतला)	Thinner (ज्यादा पतला)	Thinnest (सबसे पतला)
Wet (गीला)	Wetter (ज्यादा गीला)	Wettest (सबसे ज्यादा गीला)

If last consonant is preceded by double vowel, the last consonant does not change. (अगर आखिरी consonant के पहले दो vowel हो, तो आखिरी consonant double नहीं होगा)

Sweet (मीठा) **Sweeter** (ज्यादा मीठा) **Sweetest** (सबसे ज्यादा मीठा)

Rule - 4

When a positive degree ends in 'y' and a consonant is present before 'y' the 'y' is converted into 'i' and then 'er' and 'est' are added respectively.

(अगर **Positive degree** में खत्म हो और 'y' के पहले **consonant** हो , तो 'y' को 'i' में परिवर्तित करे तब 'er' और 'est' लगाये)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Dry (सुखा)	Drier (ज्यादा सुखा)	Driest (सबसे ज्यादा सुखा)
Happy (खुश)	Happier (ज्यादा खुश)	Happiest (सबसे ज्यादा खुश)
Heavy (भारी)	Heavier (ज्यादा भारी)	Heaviest (सबसे भारी)
Pretty (सुंदर)	Prettier (ज्यादा सुंदर)	Prettiest (सबसे ज्यादा सुंदर)
Merry (प्रसन्न)	Merrier (ज्यादा प्रसन्न)	Merriest (सबसे प्रसन्न)

Note: If a vowel is present before 'y' only 'er' and 'est' should be added. (अगर 'y' के पहले **vowel** हो, तो 'y' 'y' ही रहेगा और फिर 'y' के बाद 'er' और 'est' लगाये)

Grey (स्लेटी रंग) **Greyer** **Greyest**

Rule - 5

Adjectives that are of more than two syllables, are changed to comparative and superlative degree by adding more and most respectively.

(जो **Adjectives** दो से अधिक शब्द खंडों से बने हों, उनके साथ **'more'** और **'most'** लगा कर **Comparative degree** व **Superlative degree** बनाया जाता है)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Beautiful (सुंदर)	More Beautiful (ज्यादा सुंदर)	Most Beautiful (सबसे ज्यादा सुंदर)
Courageous (हिम्मती)	More courageous (ज्यादा हिम्मती)	Most courageous (सबसे ज्यादा हिम्मती)
Intelligent (बुद्धिमान)	More intelligent (ज्यादा बुद्धिमान)	Most intelligent (सबसे बुद्धिमान)
Pleasant (सुहावना)	More pleasant (ज्यादा सुहावना)	Most pleasant (सबसे ज्यादा सुहावना)

Note:- Certain Adjectives do not follow any rule. They get changed completely. (कुछ Adjectives पूरी तरह से परिवर्तित हो जाते हैं |)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Good _(Adj) /Well _(Adv) (अच्छा)	Better (ज्यादा सुंदर)	Best (सर्वश्रेष्ठ)
Bad _(Adj) /ill _(Adj./Adv) (खराब)	Worse (बदतर)	Worst (सबसे ज्यादा खराब)
Little (थोड़ा)	Less (और कम) lesser (कम-मात्रा, महत्व इत्यादी में)	least (सबसे कम)
Fore (अग्र)	former (पूर्व)	Foremost/first (सर्वप्रथम)
Late (देर)	Later (बाद में) Latter (बाद वाला)	Last (आखिरी) Latest (नवीनतम)
Far (दूर)	Farther (और दूर)	Farthest (सबसे दूर)
Near (नजदीक)	Nearer (और नजदीक)	Nearest (सबसे नजदीक) Next (अगला)
Old (उम्र में)	Older (उम्र में और बड़ा) Elder (खून के रिश्ते में बड़ा)	Oldest (उम्र में सबसे बड़ा) Eldest (खून के रिश्ते में सबसे बड़ा)
Much (मात्रा में ज्यादा) Many (संख्या में ज्यादा)	More (और ज्यादा)	Most (सबसे ज्यादा)

Examples

Fill in the blanks with suitable degree of Adjective given in the bracket.

1. She is _____ than I. (fast)
 2. He is senior _____ me. (than/ to)
 3. Vajpayee was a _____ leader. (great)
 4. They served the _____ food. (fine)
 5. The nephew is _____ than the uncle. (old)
 6. He is my _____ brother. (old)
 7. I cannot walk any _____. (farther/ further)
 8. We did not receive any _____ order. (farther/ further)
 9. I have bought the _____ issue of the magazine. (late)
 10. When did you meet him _____? (late)
 11. Revenge is _____ served cold.
 12. She is better than all the other students of the class. (Change Comparative Degree to Positive Degree without changing the meaning of the sentence)
 13. Her house is farther than mine. (Change Comparative Degree to Positive Degree without changing the meaning of the sentence)
 14. She is the most intelligent student of my class. (Change Superlative Degree into Comparative Degree without changing the meaning of the sentence)
 15. Ram is _____ to Shyam. (old)
 16. Who will be our _____ PM? (near)
 17. Would you drop me at the _____ hospital? (near)
 18. I will call you up _____. (late)
 19. Rohit and Rashmi are two friends. The _____ is a lawyer and the _____ is a gynaecologist.
 20. The _____ and _____ duty of a citizen is to respect his country. (fore)
 21. This is the _____ price that the shopkeeper can charge (little)
 22. He is the _____ man of the village. (old)
 23. She is the _____ of the four siblings. (old)
 24. Gold is more precious than any metal/ all metals.
 25. Diamond is more precious than any metal/ all metals.
 26. Beating one's wife is as heinous as any crime.
 27. My house is four times bigger than yours.
 28. This is a most unique art of Medieval India.
 29. She is fairer but not as beautiful as her sister.
 30. He is not so efficient as but more experienced than you.
 31. Good deeds are more _____.
- (a) lasting  टिकाऊ (b) everlasting  जो हमेशा के लिए टिके
32. I am feeling comparatively/ relatively better today.
 33. He is wiser and sincere than you.
 34. He is the youngest and the most talented of all the leaders.
 35. She is wiser than intelligent.
 36. Internet services are getting cheaper and faster day-by-day.
 37. The condition turned from bad to worse.

38. (i) He looks sad.
(ii) He looked at me sadly.
39. It smells _____ (good / well)
40. It worked _____ (good/ well)
41. She ran _____ (slow) but I ran _____ (fast/ fastly)
42. He is _____ (slow/ slowly)
43. It tastes _____ (delicious/ deliciously)
44. The Chips are crispy and _____ cooked (delicious/ deliciously)
45. It feels _____ (soft)
46. She felt the baby _____ (soft)
47. Tata makes **safe** cars.
48. Airbags make cars **safe**.
49. He is a **perfect** man.
50. Practice makes a man **perfect**.
51. I bought a **cheap** shirt.
52. I bought the shirt **cheap**.
53. The police found the **missing** boy.
54. They found the boy **missing**.
55. She is _____ (ill/ sick)
56. _____ leave (ill/ sick)
57. _____ gotten, _____ spent (ill/ sick)
58. He was _____ (timid/ afraid)
59. They are _____ boys. (timid/ afraid)
60. I live in a _____ country. (foreign/ abroad)
61. He went _____ (foreign/ abroad)
62. He was fast _____ (sleep/ asleep)
63. He is an honest businessman.
64. He is an honest businessman in his dealings.
65. He is a capable athlete.
66. She is a capable athlete of winning a gold medal.
67. Two lakhs students have taken the test.
68. Lakhs of students are going to appear for the test.
69. Two pair of shoes were bought by me.
70. My both brothers are here.
71. My all books are in the almirah.
72. Go and play with some others children.
73. He is happy but other are sad.
74. He held the bag in one hand and the child in other.
75. He is sad but the other traders are happy.
76. I am present, the others are not interested.
77. I need another glasses of water.
78. This room is stinking. Can you provide me another one?
79. He is as happier as you are.
80. She ran as faster as she could.
81. The Ganga is longer than any river of India.
82. The Nile is longer than any other river of India.

1. She is compared with I. (Rule of parallelism).



Than is preceded by Comparative Degree of Adjectives.

2. Adjectives ending in 'ior' take 'to' and not 'than'.

Eg.- senior, junior, prior, superior, inferior, anterior, posterior.

3. 'A' and 'an' generally take Positive Degree of Adjective if we find no comparison at all.

Certain Adjectives have positive and Superlative Degree but not Comparative.

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Senior	×	Seniormost
Junior	×	Juniormost

Senior and Junior too do not take more. They however take superlative degree Seniormost and Juniormost

4. 'The' takes superlative degree of Adjectives.

5. Ans. - older. Here focus is on age, so we use older (old- older-oldest)

6. Ans. - elder, eldest. If blood relation is emphasised, use elder and eldest (old-elder-eldest).

7. Ans. farther

8. Ans. further

- 7 & 8 : Farther - दूरी में और अधिक (at a great distance)

Further - और अभी (to a great degree)

9. 'The' takes superlative degree of Adjective. Degrees → late - later - latest - last.

Here latest (नवीनतम) is appropriate if we see the meaning of the sentence.

10. Here last is superlative degree of Adverb and not superlative degree of Adjective as Adjective qualifies Noun and Article comes with Noun.

11. Here 'best' is an Adverb that is qualifying verb 'served'. Hence no article 'the' is needed here.

12. No other student of the class is as good as she.

13. My house is not so far as hers.

14. No other student of my class is more intelligent than she.

OR She is more intelligent than all other students of the class.

15. Ans. elder. Elder and younger take 'to'.

16. Ans. Next.

Degrees → Near - Nearer - Nearest/ Next.

17. Ans. Nearest.

If we are injured or ill, we go to the nearest hospital.

18. Ans. Later.

Degrees → late - later - latest/ last

19. **Former** – पहले वाला, **latter** – बाद वाला
20. **Ans. First and foremost.**
Degrees → fore – former – foremost / first
21. **Ans. → least.** 'The' is followed by Superlative Degree of Adjective.
22. **Ans. → Oldest.** 'The' is followed by Superlative Degree of Adjective. Here the age is emphasised so we use 'oldest' not 'eldest'.
23. **Ans. → eldest.** Here siblings (भाई-बहन) denote blood relation. Here 'the' is followed by eldest and not oldest.
24. **Gold comes in any metal/ all metals.** To compare gold with any 'other' metal, use word 'other' after any/all.
25. **Any metal/ all metals is correct** because diamond is not a metal.
26. **Beating one's own wife is also a crime.** So use 'any other crime' to compare 'one crime' with 'the other crimes'.
27. **Twice/ Thrice/ n times cannot take Comparative Degree of Adjective.** Use as + positive degree + as.

Structure:-

(1) Twice / thrice / n times + as + Positive degree + as

(2) Twice / thrice / n times + not so + Positive degree + as

28. **Certain adjective are complete in their meaning. They do not take Comparative or Superlative degrees.** Eg- **unique** (सबसे अलग), **universal** (सार्वभौमिक), **ubiquitous** (सार्वभौमिक), **eternal** (हमेशा के लिए), **everlasting** (हमेशा के लिए), **forever** (हमेशा के लिए), **vacant** (खाली), **empty** (खाली), **fatal** (घातक), **free**, **perfect**, **ulterior** (छिपा हुआ), **perpendicular**, **parallel**, **triangular**, **spherical**, **infinite** (अनंत), **prime** (मुख्य), **extreme**, **excellent**, **major**, **minor**, **last**, **supreme** (सर्वोच्च) and **paramount** (सर्वोच्च), **Chief**

Certain Adjectives have positive and Superlative Degree but not Comparative.

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Top	×	Topmost
Bottom	×	Bottommost
Eastern	×	Easternmost
Western	×	Westernmost
Northern	×	Northernmost
Southern	×	Southernmost
Northeastern	×	Northeasternmost
Southeastern	×	Southeasternmost
Northwestern	×	Northwesternmost
Southwestern	×	Southwesternmost

29. **Ans. → add 'than' after 'fairer'.** If both Positive Degree and Comparative Degree come in a sentence, we follow the following structure —

as so	Positive Degree	as so	... Comparative Degree +	'than' or 'to' according to requirement

30. Ans. → No error. In negative sentences, we use so ... as or as ... as for comparison.
31. Ans. (a). Everlasting means forever (हमेशा के लिए). 'More' and 'everlasting' cannot come together due to their meaning.
32. Comparatively and relatively do not take Comparative Degree otherwise the sentence will become superfluous.
33. Ans. → Add 'more' before 'sincere'. If conjunction joins Adjectives, the Adjectives must be in the same degree.
34. Superlative degree of Adjectives takes article 'the' but for one person only one article will come. Most talented will not take 'the' before 'it'.
35. Comparative degree comes when two Nouns/ Pronouns are compared with each other. If two Adjectives are compared, we use 'more + Positive Degree'. Change 'wiser' into 'more wise'.
36. Ans. → No error. 'Day-by-day'/ 'with each passing day'/ 'gradually' show gradual change. Here comparative degree is needed.
37. Ans. → No error. When 'from ... to' comes, we need to use next degree of Adjective after 'to'.
38. (i) Verbs of sensation and some other verbs take adjective and not adverb.

जैसे:- **verbs of sensation**
seem, look, appear

certain other verbs
be, become, turn, get (होना), go, remain, stay
grow, make and prove, aim

दिखना

feel, smell, taste, sound

- (ii) Here 'look at' means (देखना). It is an action not a verb of sensation. So we need an Adverb here.

39. Ans. → good_(Adj) 'smells' takes an Adjective as it is a verb of sensation.
40. Ans. → well_(Adv) 'Work' is a normal verb that takes an Adverb.
41. Ans. → Slowly_(Adv) Run_(V) is qualified by an Adverb 'slowly'. There is no word like fastly. Fast is both Adjective and Adverb.
42. Ans. → Slow_(Adj) 'Be' is followed by an Adjective.
43. 'Taste' (verb of sensation) is followed by an Adjective. So answer is delicious.
44. Ans. → deliciously. 'Cooked_(V)' is qualified by an Adverb.
45. Here 'feel' means 'महसूस होना'. Verbs of sensation take Adjective.
Ans. → soft (Adj)
46. Here feel means 'छू कर महसूस करना'. It is an action here. Hence we need adverb 'softly'.
- 47, 49, 51 & 53 → Adjectives that qualify a noun come before the noun or after the verb.
- 48, 50, 52 & 54 → Here the nouns acquired the quality because of reasons mentioned (airbags or practice) or because of some unknown reason (in 52 & 54). Hence the Adjective follows the Noun and does not come before the Noun.
55. 'ill' is the correct answer. 'Ill' is predicative. Predicative Adjective comes after 'Sub + verb' and not before Noun.

56. Ans. — 'sick'. Sick is an Attributive Adjective. It comes before the Noun (here-leave (छुट्टी))
57. Ans. — 'ill', 'ill'.
Gotten and spent are Adjectives that need an Adverb 'ill' to qualify them. Here we have a hidden noun that is qualified by Adjective (gotten & spent) and the Adjective is qualified by Adverb (ill).
58. Ans. — timid/ afraid.
59. Afraid is only a Predicative Adjective. So it cannot come before a Noun. Other examples of Predicative Adjective → asleep, afloat, ablaze.
60. 'Foreign' is an Adjective. 'Country' (Noun) can be qualified by an Adjective (foreign).
61. 'went' (verb) is qualified by an Adverb. 'Abroad' is an Adverb.
62. Here we need an Adjective 'asleep'. 'Sleep' is a verb. 'Was' (form of 'be') takes Adjective.
63. The sentence is correct.

An honest businessman
 Article + adjective + noun

64. The correct sentence is — He is a businessman honest in his dealings. Here 'honest in his dealings' gives correct meaning.
65. No error
66. She is an athlete capable of winning a gold medal is the correct sentence.
67. Change 'lakhs' into 'lakh' as we need Adjective here to qualify noun 'students'. When a noun comes as an Adjective, it must be in singular form.
68. Structure—

(1) Lakhs of students.
 Plural Noun
 Indefinite
 numeral
 Adjective

(2) Thousands of people. (3) Crores of rupees.

69. Change 'pair' into 'pairs'. 'Two pairs of shoes' is correct.
70. Both/ both of + my/ his etc + Noun in plural form is the correct structure.
The correct structure is—
(1) Both my brothers. (2) Both of my brothers.
- Note:- When we use a pronoun in place of noun (Eg.→ They both have come), the pronoun comes before both.
71. Structure— All + my, his, etc + Noun). 'All my books' is correct.
72. Change 'others' into 'other'. Here we need an Adjective (Other) to qualify Children (Noun).
73. Here 'others' is required as P.V (are) needs plural Pronoun 'others'.
74. Change other into 'the other'. With 'S.N, the other means the 2nd out of two.
75. No error. The other + P.N. means the remaining.

76. 'The others' means 'the remaining ones (of a group)' — बाकी बचे लोग इत्यादि
77. Another takes singular noun. Change 'glasses' into 'glass'.
Another means 'one more of the same kind' (उसी प्रकार का दूसरा, एक और)
78. 'Another' means 'any other' (कोई दूसरा)
79. 'As ... as' takes positive degree of Adjective. Change 'happier' into 'happy'.
80. 'As ... as' takes positive degree of Adverb. Change 'faster' into 'fast'.
81. Change 'any river' into 'any other river' because 'Ganga' is also in India.
82. Remove 'other'. Nile is not in India.

CONFUSING ADJECTIVES

1. Exhausted (Adj)	tired/run down	थका हुआ
Exhaustive (Adj)	extensive	वृहत
2. Principal (N)	headmaster	प्रधानाचार्य
Principal (Adj)	main	मुख्य
Principle (N)	doctrine	सिद्धांत
3. Alternate (Adj)	following regularly one out of two	एक छोड़कर एक
Alternative (Adj/N)	substitute	विकल्प
4. Aural (Adj)	related to ears	कान से संबंधित
Verbal (Adj)	of words	शब्दों का
Oral (Adj)	related to mouth	मुख से संबंधित
5. Apposite (Adj)	proper in the given circumstances	उचित, उपयुक्त (किसी परिस्थिति में)
Opposite (Prep)	facing each other	आमने-सामने
Opposite to	against	विरुद्ध
6. Amoral (Adj)	not following any moral rules	नैतिकता रहित
Immoral (Adj)	against humanity	मानवता के विरुद्ध
7. Bridal (Adj)	related to the bride	बधू-संबंधित
Bridle (N/ V)	rein/ to restrain	लगाम/ लगाम लगाना
8. Beneficial (A)	that provides benefits or advantages	लाभदायक
Beneficiary (N)	one who is benefitted	लाभार्थी
Benefactor (N)	one who helps or gives money to others	धन आदि से सहायता करने वाला
9. Childish (Adj)	foolish	बचकाना
Childlike (Adj)	innocent	मासूम
10. Continual (Adj)	regular, happening again and again	निरंतर
Continuous (Adj)	without break	लगातार, बिना रुके
11. Casual (Adj)	not serious, not formal	अनौपचारिक
Causal (Adj)	related to the cause	कारण से संबंधित
12. Climactic (Adj)	related to the climax	उत्कर्ष से संबंधित
Climatic (Adj)	related to the climate	जलवायु से संबंधित

13. Coarse (Adj) Course (N)	rough, not smooth the path over which something moves, a complete series of lesson	खुरदुरा रास्ता, पाठ्यक्रम
14. Confidant (N) Confident (Adj)	one who knows your secret showing that you have confidence	राजदार आत्मविश्वासी
15. Contagious (Adj) Contiguous (Adj) Infectious (Adj)	disease that spreads by touch next to each other disease spread by air or water	जो छूत से फैले एक सीमा वाला, संपर्शी वायु और जल द्वारा फैलने वाली बीमारी
16. Complacent (Adj) Complaisant (Adj)	satisfied ready to do that pleases someone	संतुष्ट विनयपूर्ण
17. Credible (Adj) Credulous (Adj)	truth worthy one who can be fooled easily	विश्वसनीय भोला-भाला
18. Discreet (Adj) Discrete (Adj)	not easily noticeable separate	आसानी से ध्यान न खींचने योग्य अलग-अलग
19. Disease (N) Deceased (Adj)	illness dead	बीमारी मृत
20. Desert (N/V) Deserted (Adj) Dessert (N)	arid place, to leave not inhabited sweet dish (that we have after the meal)	रेगिस्तान, त्याग देना विरान खाने के बाद वाला मीठा
21. Disinterested (Adj) Uninterested (Adj)	impartial, unbiased not interested	निष्पक्ष दिलचस्पी न रखना, उदासीन
22. Defective (Adj) Deficient (Adj)	having a defect or flaw, imperfect insufficient	दोषपूर्ण कमी
23. Elicit (V) Illicit (Adj) Illegal (Adj) Illegitimate (Adj)	to draw out not allowed by society not allowed by law illegal, born out of wedlock (of a child)	निकालना अवैध कानूनी रूप से गलत नाजायज
24. Economical (A) Economic (A) Frugal (A)	one who saves money and is not spendthrift related to economy miserly	किफायती अर्थव्यवस्था से संबंधित कंजूस
25. Expedient (Adj) Expeditious (Adj)	convenient or helpful for a purpose but possibly not completely honest or moral fast	उद्देश्यसिद्धि की दृष्टि से सुविधाजनक परन्तु पूर्णतया उचित या नैतिक नहीं तेजी से
26. Fatal (Adj) Fateful (Adj)	deadly having serious results (in negative sense)	घातक दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण

27. Graceful (Adj)	pleasing in shape or style	भव्य
Gracious (Adj)	kind	दयालु
28. Historic (Adj)	important	महत्वपूर्ण
Historical (Adj)	of history	ऐतिहासिक
Histrionic (Adj)	very dramatic or very emotional	नाटकीय या भावनात्मक
29. Human (Adj/N)	characteristic of people as	इंसानी, इंसान
Humane (Adj)	distinct from animals, a person	
30. Intense (Adj)	kind	दयालु
Intensive (Adj)	very great in degree	तीव्र
31. Ingenious (Adj)	serious	गंभीर
Ingenuous (Adj)	clever	चतुर
32. Industrial (Adj)	simple and craftless	निष्कपट
Industrious (Adj)	related to industry	उद्योग-संबंधी
33. Impetuous (Adj)	diligent, hard-working, laborious	मेहनती
Imperious (Adj)	acting or done quickly and	बिना विचारे, जल्द
	without thinking	बाजी में
	showing proud and	दबंग
	unpleasant attitude	
34. Jealous (Adj)	feeling that comes out of the fear of	ईर्ष्यालु (कुछ खोने के
	losing someone or something	डर से)
Envious (Adj)	feeling that comes out when you	ईर्ष्यालु (कोई चीज़ ना हो
	don't have that thing	तब)
35. Judicial (Adj)	related to judge or judiciary	न्याय संबंधित
Judicious (Adj)	wise, prudent, sagacious	समझदार
36. Loose (Adj)	not tightly fastened	ढीला
Lose (V)	to be unable to find, to no longer	खोना, हारना
	have, to fail to succeed	
Loss (N)	the state of no longer having	नुकसान, घाटा
	something	
37. Luxuriant (A)	in large amount or numbers	बड़ी मात्रा या संख्या में
Luxurious (A)	full of luxury	विलासितापूर्ण
38. Lovely (A)	very pleasing	प्यारा
Lovable (A)	that you feel like loving	जिसे प्यार करने का मन
		करें
	showing love	जो प्यार करता हो
Loving (A)	held in great affection	प्यारा
Loved (A)	very much loved	प्रियतम
Beloved (A)		क्षणिक
39. Momentary (A)	for a moment, ephemeral,	
	evanescent, transient, fleeting	
Momentous (A)	important, historic	महत्वपूर्ण
40. Naval (Adj.)	related to Navy	जलसेना से संबंधित
Navel (N)	the small, hollow area in stomach	नाभि

41. Eminent (Adj.)	known and respected	प्रसिद्ध
Notorious (Adj.)	known but disrespected	कुख्यात
Anonymous (Adj.)	without name	गुमनाम
Notable (Adj.)	to be noted	विशिष्ट
42. Official (Adj.)	related to office	दफ्तर का
Officious (Adj.)	too eager to tell others what to do	हस्तक्षेप करने वाला
43. Personal (A)	private	निजी
Personnel (N)	people working in an organisation	कर्मचारी
44. Abstract (Adj.)	not workable, Impractical	अव्यवहारिक
Pragmatic (Adj.)	practical	व्यवहारिक
45. Popular (Adj.)	famous	प्रसिद्ध
Populous (Adj.)	crowded (with too much population)	घनी आबादी वाला
46. Respectable (Adj.)	considered to be good, fit to be respected	सम्मान के लायक
Respectful (Adj.)	showing or having respect	सम्मानजनक
Respective (Adj.)	belonging and relating	अपना-अपना
Irrespective of (Adj.)	without considering	निपेक्ष, बिना आक्षेप के
Respectively (Adv.)	in the order given	क्रमशः
47. Regrettable (Adj.)	causing sorrow or disappointment	खेदजनक
Regretful (Adj.)	full of regret	पछतावे से भरा हुआ
48. Severe (Adj.)	very bad, serious or unpleasant	तीव्र, कष्टदायक
Sever (V.)	to cut off (forcibly)	काट के अलग कर देना (संबंध, अंग इत्यादि)
Sewer (N)	that carries sewage and dirty water	नाला
49. Stationary (Adj.)	static	स्थिर
Stationery (N)	books, copies etc	लेखन सामग्री
50. Temporal (Adj.)	relating to worldly not spiritual,	सांसारिक, कम समय
	relating to or limited to time,	के लिए, कनपट्टी से
	relating to the side of the head.	संबंधित
Temporary (Adj.)	of less time	अस्थायी
51. Topical (Adj.)	related to topic	किसी विषय संबंधित
Tropical (Adj.)	related to tropic	उष्णकटिबंधीय
52. Virtuous (Adj.)	morally good	अच्छाई से भरा हुआ
Virtual (Adj.)	not real	आभासी
53. Epidemic (N)	widespread disease	महामारी
Endemic (Adj.)	existing in one region or one society/tribe	क्षेत्र विशेष का या जनजाति
54. Illegible (Adj.)	not clear enough to read	जो पढ़ा ना जा सके
Indecipherable (Adj.)	cannot be decoded	जिसे समझा न जा सके

EXERCISE | (CONFUSING ADJECTIVES)

1. The _____ objective of many women is to marry a rich man.
(A) principal (B) principle
2. I completed the _____ syllabus in six months.
(A) exhausted (B) exhaustive
3. She went to see her ailing mother on _____ days.
(A) alternative (B) alternate
4. I was _____ after an hour long physical exercise.
(A) exhausted (B) exhaustive
5. After the written exam, we will have _____.
(A) oral exam (B) verbal exam (C) viva voce
6. _____ hygiene is equally important.
(A) Oral (B) Verbal
7. We need _____ quotations for this event that we can put on the notice board.
(A) opposite (B) apposite
8. He sat _____ me and gave me a stern look.
(A) apposite (B) opposite
9. Denying equal rights to women is an _____ act.
(A) immoral (B) amoral
10. This shop deals in _____ wear.
(A) bridal (B) bridle
11. You are too outspoken. You need to _____ your tongue.
(A) bridal (B) bridle
12. Walking is _____ to health.
(A) beneficial (B) benefactor (C) beneficiary
13. A rich _____ serves the society in many ways.
(A) benefactor (B) beneficiary
14. This minority college is the main _____ of the government's grants.
(A) benefactor (B) beneficiary
15. His _____ smile made my day.
(A) childish (B) childlike
16. I dislike his _____ attitude.
(A) childish (B) childlike
17. India has a history of _____ invasions.
(A) continuous (B) continual
18. You can see a _____ line of traffic for two kilometers.
(A) continuous (B) continual
19. He is not serious in his work. I hate his _____ attitude.
(A) causal (B) casual
20. Usually the _____ agent of any disease is the microbe that we cannot see with our naked eyes.
(A) causal (B) casual
21. His _____, Rohit, betrayed him.
(A) confidant (B) confident (C) confidante

22. She was his _____ till she was the _____ of his property.
 (A) confidante, beneficiary (B) confidant, beneficiary
 (C) confidante, benefactor (D) confidant, benefactor
23. _____ diseases spread by touch.
 (A) Contagious (B) Contiguous
24. I don't feel comfortable in this dress made of _____ cloth.
 (A) coarse (B) course
25. What will be your _____ of action now?
 (A) coarse (B) course
26. His strong financial condition made his family _____.
 (A) complacent (B) complaisant
27. His _____ character makes him a perfect slave.
 (A) complacent (B) complaisant
28. He is fooled by his family and friends because of his _____ nature.
 (A) credible (B) credulous
29. The court can rely on the statements of _____ witnesses.
 (A) credible (B) credulous
30. The spy followed them at a _____ distance.
 (A) discreet (B) discrete
31. This chapter has several _____ sections.
 (A) discreet (B) discrete
32. People pay homage to the _____.
 (A) disease (B) deceased
33. Leukoderma is not a _____.
 (A) disease (B) decease
34. The Sahara is a _____.
 (A) desert (B) dessert
35. We have chocolate ice-cream for _____ tonight.
 (A) desert (B) dessert
36. The kidnapper kept the boys in a _____ place.
 (A) desert (B) deserted
37. I would like to give you a piece of _____ advice.
 (A) disinterested (B) uninterested
38. The teacher was unable to elicit responses from the _____ students.
 (A) disinterested (B) uninterested
39. Please exchange this _____ piece.
 (A) defective (B) deficient
40. Junk food is _____ in essential minerals.
 (A) defective (B) deficient
41. Good teachers can _____ responses from students.
 (A) elicit (B) illicit
42. Khap panchayat consider such marriages _____.
 (A) illicit (B) illegal
43. Flesh trade is _____ in India.
 (A) illicit (B) illegal

These ebooks are free of cost, Join our telegram channel: @apna_pdf

44. House wives are generally _____.
(A) economical (B) economic
45. The _____ condition of a country determines its prosperity.
(A) economical (B) economic
46. He saves money at the cost of his health. He is _____.
(A) frugal (B) economical
47. It is _____ to negotiate with credulous tourists.
(A) expedient (B) expeditious
48. _____ delivery of goods is very essential in online shopping.
(A) Expedient (B) Expeditious
49. On that _____ night he met with an accident.
(A) fatal (B) fateful
50. He made a _____ mistake and dug his own grave.
(A) fatal (B) fateful
51. Red Fort has _____ importance.
(A) histrionic (B) historical
52. His _____ behaviour irritates me.
(A) histrionic (B) historical
53. Ban on triple talaq was a _____ judgement.
(A) histrionic (B) historic
54. To err is _____, to forgive divine.
(A) human (B) humane
55. _____ treatment of zoo animals is essential.
(A) Human (B) Humane
56. I felt _____ pain in my leg.
(A) intense (B) intensive
57. The patient was shifted to _____ care unit.
(A) intense (B) intensive
58. I have _____ ideas.
(A) ingenious (B) ingenuous
59. She is too _____ to fail in life.
(A) industrial (B) industrious
60. _____ pollution causes global warming.
(A) industrial (B) industrious
61. His _____ decision landed him in problem.
(A) impetuous (B) imperious
62. His _____ attitude hurts us.
(A) imperial (B) imperious
63. She feels _____ when her husband talks to another woman.
(A) jealous (B) envious
64. He is _____ of my success.
(A) jealous (B) envious
65. He is _____ in his decisions.
(A) judicious (B) judicial
66. _____ investigation has been ordered seeing the gravity of the case.
(A) judicious (B) judicial

67. I wore a _____ shirt.
(A) loss (B) loose
68. We see _____ growth of vegetation in evergreen forests.
(A) luxuriant (B) luxurious
69. Vijay Malya still enjoys a _____ life.
(A) luxuriant (B) luxurious
70. I can't afford to lose my _____ ones.
(A) loved (B) lovely
71. My _____ mother is always concerned about my health.
(A) loving (B) lovable
72. Do not risk your life for _____ pleasure.
(A) momentary (B) momentous
73. The _____ occasion was celebrated with great fanfare.
(A) momentary (B) momentous
74. Madhya Pradesh is the _____ of India.
(A) navel (B) naval
75. The arbitrator must give _____ advice.
(A) disinterested (B) uninterested
76. Her _____ smile made my day. She is a noble soul.
(A) ingenious (B) ingenuous
77. Some police _____ have come.
(A) personal (B) personnel
78. _____ ideas cannot be executed.
(A) Abstract (B) Pragmatic
79. Be _____ and choose subjects that will help you get a job.
(A) abstract (B) pragmatic
80. He is a boy _____ in school.
(A) popular (B) populous
81. India is more _____ than the U.S but not as _____ as China.
(A) popular (B) populous
82. She holds a _____ position in the society
(A) respectable (B) respective
(C) respectful (D) irrespectful
83. A, B and C got 10,20 and 30 Rupees _____.
(A) respectable (B) respectively
(C) respectful (D) respective
84. Be _____ to your parents.
(A) respectable (B) respectively
(C) respectful (D) respective
85. Please take your _____ seats.
(A) respectable (B) respectively
(C) respectful (D) respective
86. It was a _____ mistake
(A) regrettable (B) regretful
87. He is _____ of his misconduct.
(A) regrettable (B) regretful

88. I have a _____ headache.
 (A) severe (B) sever
 (C) sewer
89. His toe was _____ to prevent infection.
 (A) severed (B) sewered
 (C) maimed
90. His car hit the _____ bus.
 (A) stationary (B) stationery
91. We donated _____ to the school girls
 (A) stationary (B) stationery
92. This _____ phase will soon pass off.
 (A) temporary (B) temporal
93. The clergy have nothing to do with _____ matters.
 (A) temporary (B) temporal
94. The dead body had a _____ injury
 (A) temporary (B) temporal
95. The _____ current issues are important for the exam.
 (A) topical (B) tropical
96. In _____ climates, there are two seasons.
 (A) topical (B) tropical
97. The _____ killed hundreds of villagers.
 (A) epidemic (B) endemic
98. Certain diseases are _____ and not found in other regions.
 (A) epidemic (B) endemic
99. Your handwriting is _____
 (A) illegible (B) indecipherable
100. Certain manuscripts are _____ as no one can read them.
 (A) illegible (B) indecipherable

1. (A)	18. (A)	35. (B)	52. (A)	69. (B)	86. (A)
2. (B)	19. (B)	36. (B)	53. (B)	70. (A)	87. (B)
3. (B)	20. (A)	37. (A)	54. (A)	71. (A)	88. (A)
4. (A)	21. (A)	38. (B)	55. (B)	72. (A)	89. (A)
5. (C)	22. (A)	39. (A)	56. (A)	73. (B)	90. (A)
6. (A)	23. (A)	40. (B)	57. (B)	74. (A)	91. (B)
7. (B)	24. (A)	41. (A)	58. (A)	75. (A)	92. (A)
8. (B)	25. (B)	42. (A)	59. (B)	76. (B)	93. (B)
9. (A)	26. (A)	43. (B)	60. (A)	77. (B)	94. (B)
10. (A)	27. (B)	44. (A)	61. (A)	78. (A)	95. (A)
11. (B)	28. (B)	45. (B)	62. (B)	79. (B)	96. (B)
12. (A)	29. (A)	46. (A)	63. (A)	80. (A)	97. (A)
13. (A)	30. (A)	47. (A)	64. (B)	81. (B)	98. (B)
14. (B)	31. (B)	48. (B)	65. (A)	82. (A)	99. (A)
15. (B)	32. (B)	49. (B)	66. (B)	83. (B)	100. (B)
16. (A)	33. (A)	50. (A)	67. (B)	84. (C)	
17. (B)	34. (A)	51. (B)	68. (A)	85. (D)	

Adverb qualifies the nearest word (निकटतम शब्द के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है)

1. I work hard.

Hard qualifies **work**
Adv. Verb

2. I work very hard.

Very qualifies **hard**
Adv. Adv.

3. He is very smart.

Very qualifies **smart**
Adv. Adj.

4. Only Rahul came to meet me.

Only qualifies **Rahul**
Adv. Noun

5. Even she knows the truth.

Even qualifies **she**
Adv. Pronoun

6. The fan is exactly over your bed.

Exactly qualifies **over**
Adv. Prep.

7. I like him simply because he is honest.

Simply qualifies **because**
Adv. Conj.

8. Sadly, all were dead.

Sadly qualifies the whole sentence
Adv.

POSITION OF ADVERB

- Adverb comes near the word that it qualifies. (Adverb उस शब्द के नजदीक आता है जिसके लिए वह प्रयुक्त हुआ हो)

- He only died a week ago.
- Mother Teresa always asked for a building where she could take the homeless and orphans.
- He only works when he has nothing to eat.
- Only an idle man will preach and will do nothing.
- He only plays a subsidiary role in the management.
- Even in fact insects communicate.
- A soldier is never taught to fight in a cowardly manner.

8. He only married her for her money.
 (1) He married her for her money only.
 (2) He married her only for her money.
 (3) No improvement
 (4) Only for her money he married her.

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police
 SI Exam, 30.08.2015 TF No. 4039770)

8. Ans.-(2)
 We place 'only' before the word it modifies.
 Here 'only' is modifying 'money' so it should be placed just before 'money'.
 Hence the sentence should read as ...
 He married her only for her money.

Answers

1. 'Only' will come before 'a week ago'.
2. 'Always' will come before 'take'.
3. 'Only' will come before 'when'.
4. 'Only' will come before 'preach'.
5. 'Only' will come before 'a subsidiary role'.
6. 'Even' will come before 'insects'.
7. 'Never' will come before 'to fight'.

- In the given sentences, the position of Adverb is very important. If the Adverb is not used at the right place, the meaning that comes out will be wrong. (ऊपर दिए गये वाक्यों में, **Adverb** के **position** का काफी महत्व है। अगर **Adverb** सही स्थान पर ना हो, तो वाक्य का अर्थ गलत निकलेगा।)

Questions

1. वह एक सप्ताह पहले सिर्फ मर गया।
2. **Mother Teresa** एक **building** हमेशा माँगा करती थी जहाँ वह बेघर और अनाथ को ले जा सके।
3. जब उसके पास खाने को कुछ नहीं होता है, तब वह सिर्फ काम करता है।
4. सिर्फ एक निकम्मा आदमी उपदेश देता है, करता कुछ नहीं।
5. वह प्रबंधन में सहायक भूमिका सिर्फ निभाता है।
6. यहाँ तक की दरअसल कीट संवाद करते हैं।
7. एक सैनिक को कारगरपूर्ण तरीके से लड़ना कभी भी नहीं सिखाया जाता है।

Answers

1. वह सिर्फ एक सप्ताह पहले ही गुजर गया।
2. **Mother Teresa** ने एक **building** की माँग की जहाँ वह बेघर और अनाथ को हमेशा ले जा सके।
3. जब उसके पास खाने को कुछ नहीं होता वह सिर्फ तभी काम करता है।
4. एक निकम्मा आदमी सिर्फ उपदेश देता है, करता कुछ नहीं।
5. वह प्रबंधन में सिर्फ सहायक भूमिका ही निभाता है।
6. दरअसल कीट भी संवाद करते हैं।
7. एक सैनिक को सिखाया जाता है कि वह कारगरपूर्ण तरीके से कभी भी ना लड़े।

- Let us see how the shift of Adverb changes the meaning of the sentence.
(देखें कैसे **Adverb** के स्थान परिवर्तन से वाक्य के अर्थ में परिवर्तन होता है।)

Examples

- Only** Alok saw her dress. (सिर्फ आलोक ने **dress** देखा।)
- Alok **only** saw her dress. (आलोक ने **dress** सिर्फ देखा था।)
- Alok saw **only** her dress. (आलोक ने सिर्फ उसी की **dress** देखी।)
- Alok saw her **only** dress. (आलोक ने उसके उस एकमात्र **dress** को देखा जो उसके पास था।)
- Alok saw her dress **only**. (आलोक ने सिर्फ **dress** देखा, कुछ और नहीं।)

Kinds of Adverb

1. Adverb of Time	yesterday, ago, now, before etc.
2. Adverb of Frequency	seldom, usually, rarely, always etc.
3. Adverb of Place	Here, there, everywhere, near etc.
4. Adverb of Manner	politely, honestly, sincerely, hard etc.
5. Adverb of Affirmation and Negation	certainly, obviously, not etc.
6. Adverb of Degree	Almost, enough, quite, too etc.
7. Interrogative Adverb	when, where, why, how.
8. Relative Adverb	where, why, how

Position of Adverb

- ADVERB OF MANNER** — Comes after the Intransitive verb but can come before the Transitive verb or after the object. (**Adverb of Manner** **Intransitive verb** के बाद आता है लेकिन **Transitive verb** के पहले या **object** के बाद आ सकता है।)

Adverb of Manner is formed by adding 'ly' to **Adjective of quality**.

Adverb of Manner का निर्माण **Adjective of quality** में 'ly' जोड़ने से होता है।

Examples

- The police arrived immediately.
- He slept soundly.
- He expressed his ideas delightfully.
- He delightfully expressed what he had seen in the circus.

Answers

- Arrived is Intransitive verb. Adverb of Manner follows the Intransitive verb.
- Soundly (Adverb of Manner) follows Intransitive verb (slept).
- 3 & 4. 'Delightfully' can come before and after the Transitive verb. Adverb of manner comes before the 'verb' if the object is too long.

- Place the Adverb of Manner given in the bracket at the most appropriate place:-

Examples

- He works (**hard**)
- They solved the puzzle (**easily**)
- The witness explained what he had seen at the scene of crime (**vividly**)
- He behaved (**badly**)
- He was killed (**mercilessly**)

Answers

- After 'works'.
- After 'puzzle'.
- Before 'explained'.
- After 'behaved'.
- After 'killed'.

- We need to surround ourselves with (1)/ caring people particular loved ones who (2)/ bring hope and support to our hearts and minds and with whom we can communicate. (3)/ No error (4)/

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 24.03.2013, 1st Sitting)

- The doctor asked his patient to regularly take his medicine.

- asked his patient
- to regularly take his medicine
- No error
- The doctor

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam, 25.10.2015, TF No. 2148789)

- A borrower must have sufficiently collateral if he wants to take loan from any bank.

- Listen attention to what I say.

- attentively (2) attend
- attentive (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam, 25.10.2015, TF No. 2148789)

- Sunil was acting strange when I saw him.

- strangely (2) stranger
- more strange (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015
Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

- I want you to clearly understand that excuses will not do.

- you clearly to understand
- to clearly understand you
- you to understand clearly
- No improvement

(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam.
16.11.2014, IInd Sitting TF No. 545 QP 6)

7. Suraj looked at Sunil with a question.

- (1) questioningly
- (2) questionably
- (3) wistfully
- (4) No improvement

(SSC GL Tier-I Exam, 19.10.2014)

8. The warden told the boys to quickly clean their rooms.

- (1) clean their rooms hastily
- (2) clean their rooms quickly
- (3) cleanse their rooms quickly
- (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-I Re-Exam, 30.08.2015)

Answers

1. (2) Replace 'particular' with 'particularly'. An adverb is needed to qualify an adjective (loved)

particular loved ones

Adv

Adj

Noun

2. (2) Adverb 'regularly' should be used at the end of the sentence. Hence the last part of the sentence should read 'to take his medicine regularly'.

3. Change sufficiently into sufficient as we need an Adjective to qualify a noun collateral.

4. (1) Replace 'attention' with 'attentively'. Listen (a verb) will take 'Adverb of Manner' (attentively) to qualify it.

5. (1) Replace 'strange' (adjective) with 'strangely' (adverb).

6. (3) Replace 'you to clearly understand' with 'you to understand clearly'.

Adverbs of manners are placed after the Intransitive verb.

7. (1) 'questioningly' means 'in a questioning manner'. We need an adverb here.

8. (2) Here 'clean their room quickly' should be used.

Adverb of Frequency

ADVERB OF FREQUENCY – Adverb of frequency describes how often an action happens. It comes before the Main Verb and after the Helping Verb. (Adverb of Frequency Main Verb के पहले Helping Verb के बाद प्रयुक्त हैं। ये कार्य की आवृत्ति दर्शाता है।)

1. I often come to meet him.
M.V
2. She has never come late.
H.V M.V
3. People occasionally go to beaches.
M.V
4. I sometimes surf.
M.V
5. Pankaj has rarely paid the fee on time.
H.V M.V

If we use is, am, are, was and were which are forms of 'be', Adverb of Frequency comes after them, no matter whether it is used as Helping verb or Main verb. (अगर verb 'be' के forms का प्रयोग हो, तो Adverb of Frequency 'be' के forms के बाद आएगा चाहे 'be' Helping verb हो या Main verb')

1. He is always late.
M.V
2. He is always scolded.
H.V M.V

Adverb of Time

ADVERB OF TIME – Often works best when placed at the end of the sentence. (Adverb of time का सर्वाधिक उपयुक्त स्थान वाक्य के अंत में होता है।)

1. I am going to clean my house tomorrow.
2. He came to meet me yesterday.
3. They will arrive today night.
(1) at night (2) tonight
(3) at night today (4) No improvement

**(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator
& LDC Exam. 1.10.2012 (Ist Sitting))**

Answer

3. (2) 'tonight' is correct usage'.

Always (हमेशा), Often (अक्सर), Already, Just, Never, Ever, Sometimes (कभी - कभी), Still (अभी भी), Frequently, Generally (सामान्यतः), Recently (हाल-फिलहाल), Usually (अक्सर), Seldom (कभी-कभार), Hardly (मुश्किल से), Rarely (कभी-कभार) and Normally (सामान्यतः) are generally placed before the verb they modify. (उपरोक्त दिए गये Adverbs उन verbs के पहले आते हैं जिनको वे modify करते हैं।)

Examples

1. It is still raining.
2. He is never late.
3. He was already late.

Note:- 'Is' takes Adverb after it no matter it is used as Helping Verb or Main Verb.

3. The Beatles (1)/ will ever be my favourite (2)/ pop group. (3)/ No error (4)

Answers

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 22.06.2014)

3. (2) Replace 'ever' with 'always' or 'forever'.

4. He has just reached the station.

H.V Adv. M.V

5. She never comes late.

Adv. M.V

6. Sheela is rarely late to school.

M.V Adv.

Explanation of 6: **Note:-**

'Is, am, are, was, were' take the Adverbs given above after it no matter it comes as Helping verb or Main verb.
('Is, am, are, was, were' का प्रयोग वाक्य में Helping verb के रूप में, हो या Main verb के रूप में, दिए गये Adverbs 'be' के form के बाद ही आएंगे (sentence 6 देखें)

Adverb of Degree

ADVERB OF DEGREE - Tells us the extent to which something happens. (Adverb of Degree किसी कार्य के स्तर को बताता है) Eg.- Too, Much, Very, Completely, Almost.

Adverb of Degree is placed before the Adjective, Adverb or Verb that they modify. (Adverb of Degree उस Adjective, Adverb अथवा Verb के पहले आता है जिसे वह qualify कर रहा हो)

1. He is very tall.

Adv Adj

2. She is too talkative.

Adv Adj

3. Thank you, (1)/I am fine (2)/ completely. (3)/ No error (4)

(FCI Assistant Grade-II Exam. 22.01.2012 Paper-I)

Answers

3. Ans — (3)

Adverb is used to qualify an adjective and it is generally placed before an adjective that it qualifies.
Hence place completely (adv.) before fine (adjective).

Note: She is tall enough. (Enough is an exception)

Adj Adv

Adverb of Place

ADVERB OF PLACE - Talks about the location where the action is being carried out. (Adverb of Place कार्य होने का स्थान बताता है)

Eg.- Here, There, Everywhere.

Adverb of Place comes after the Main verb (in case of Intransitive verb) or the object (in case of Transitive verb). (Adverb of Place Main verb या object के बाद आता है)

Examples

1. He went far away.

Sub Verb Adv of Place

2. I looked for it everywhere.

Sub Phrasal verb Obj Adv of place

Adverb of Affirmation & Negation

- The word that declares that something is true or negates the sentence is called **Adverb of Affirmation/ Negation**. (जो शब्द किसी बात को सच साबित करने हेतु जोर देता है या बात को नकारात्मक अर्थ देता है वह **Adverb of Affirmation** एवं **Negation** कहलाता है।)

Examples

Not, never, surely, certainly, definitely, exactly, doubtlessly etc.

- This type of Adverb comes after Helping Verb and before the Main verb. (ये **Helping verb** के बाद व **Main verb** के पहले आते हैं।)

Examples

- He will **certainly** do it.
- You will **definitely** succeed.

Note:- 1. She is **not** coming.

- He is **indeed** a fool. (Exceptional case of 'is, am, are, was, were')

Adverb:- Interrogative & Relative Adverbs

- INTERROGATIVE ADVERB & RELATIVE ADVERB** – These are 'wh family' that we have already discussed in Pronoun. (सभी **Wh family** एक साथ **Pronoun** में वर्णित हैं।)

Relative Pronoun

Who, Whom, Whose, Which and That

Interrogative Pronoun

Who, Whom, Which, What, Whose

Relative Adverbs

When, Where & Why

Interrogative Adverb

Why, Where, how and when

Order of Adverbs (Adverbs का क्रम)

MPFTP

M → Manner

P → Place

F → Frequency

T → Time

P → Purpose

Examples

I had to run fast (**Manner**) down the lane (**Place**) every day (**Frequency**) after the prayer (**Time**) to catch the morning train (**Purpose**).

However to emphasise the purpose, we can start the sentence with Purpose too. (उद्देश्य पर जोर देना हो तो **purpose** से वाक्य शुरू किया जा सकता है।)

Examples

To catch the morning train, I had to run fast down the lane every day after the prayer.

Adverb of Manner comes before Adverb of Place (Order — MP) but if the verb is a verb of Motion (go, come, arrive, reach etc) the order becomes PM i.e Place comes before Manner. (Adverb of Manner Adverb of place के पहले आता है परन्तु अगर verb of Motion (go, come, arrive, reach इत्यादि का प्रयोग हो तो क्रम PMT हो जाता है)

1. I went there stealthily.

2. She came here quickly yesterday.

- Generally speaking, we tend to put Adverbs that are shorter and more concise before those that are longer regardless of which category they belong to. (सामान्यतः छोटे **Adverbs** पहले और बड़े **Adverbs** बाद में पयुक्त होते हैं चाहे वे किसी भी **Category** के क्यों ना हो)

I lived here with my friend (place) to save money (purpose) while I was preparing for competitive exams (time).

- When we use multiple Adverbs of the same category to modify the same verb, we order them based on how specific the information is that they provide. More specific information is kept the nearest. (अगर एक ही **Category** के एक से अधिक **Adverbs** का प्रयोग एक साथ हो, तो जो ज्यादा **specific Adverb** होगा वह पहले आएगा)

1. I live at home (more specific place) with my family (less specific place).
2. He works on a farm (more specific) in a far away land. (less specific place)
3. I came home at 5 O'clock (more specific) in the evening (less specific) yesterday. (the least specific)

- **In a sentence starts with an Adverb, the sentence will be in Inversion. (अगर वाक्य **Adverb** से शुरू हो, तो वह **Inversion** में होगा)**

1. Seldom if ever (1)/ nature does operate (2)/ in closed and separate compartments. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC GL Tier-II Exam. 21.09.2014)
2. Seldom we have been (1)/ treated in such (2)/ a rude manner. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC CHSL-2016, 19th Jan, Evening)
3. He did not know the answer, I did not neither.
(1) neither did I (2) either did I
(3) neither have I (4) No improvement
(SSC Section Officer (Commercial Audit) Exam. 29.07.2001)

4. He doesn't smoke, nor I did.
(1) nor I smoke (2) nor I do
(3) nor do I (4) No improvement
5. She did not like the movie, nor I did.
(1) nor did I. (2) nor I like it
(3) nor did I like it. (4) No improvement
6. He does not laugh, nor he smiles.
(1) nor he does smile (2) neither he does smile
(3) nor does he smile (4) No improvement

(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO &
LDC Exam. 09.11.2014)

(SSC CGL Tier-I Exam,
16.08.2015 (1st Sitting)
TF No. 3196279)

Answers

- (2) When a sentence begins with 'seldom if ever' it takes inversion form. Hence the sentence should read as ... Seldom if ever does nature operate...
- (1) When a sentence begins with a negative adverb like never, barely, seldom, etc the auxiliary verb comes before the subject. Hence place 'have' before 'we'.
- (1) Replace 'I did not neither' with 'neither did I'. Negative sentences take 'neither' in short answer.
- (3) Replace 'nor I did' with 'nor do I'.
- (1) Replace 'nor I did' with 'nor did I'.
- (3) Replace 'nor he smiles' with 'nor does he smile'.

Certain Negative Adverbs and their use

**Seldom, Nowhere, Never, Hardly, Scarcely,
Neither, Barely, Rarely and Not.**

- If a sentence starts with the Adverbs given above, the sentence becomes Negative Introductory and a Negative Introductory Sentence is followed by Inversion. (अगर वाक्य की शुरुआत उपरोक्त **Adverbs** से हो, तो वाक्य **Negative Introductory** वाक्य बन जाता है और फिर वाक्य **Inversion** में होता है।)

Examples

1. **Never have I seen** such a shrewd businessman.

H.V S M.V

2. **Not a word did I speak.**

H.V S M.V

**See- Negative Introductory
sentences in Inversion.**

- 'Not' and 'Never' are not interchangeable. (**Not** एवं **Never** एक दूसरे के स्थान पर नहीं आ सकते हैं।) Moreover the position is also important. (ये कहीं आएगा ये भी महत्वपूर्ण है।)

Examples

- I never went to Goa last year.
- I never remember to have come to this temple.

Answers

- (1) Change 'never went' to 'did not go'.
- (2) Change 'never remember' into 'do not remember' or 'remember never'.

Difference between no and not

We can make a word, expression or clause negative by putting 'not' before it. 'Not' comes after the helping verb and before the main verb when used in a sentence. (हम शब्द, विचार या **Clause** को 'not' लगा कर नकारात्मक बना सकते हैं। वाक्य में 'not' **helping verb** के बाद और **Main verb** के पहले आता है।) However 'not' can come before Noun and Adverb too.

- I do not want to go.
- Ask Rahul, not his friend.
- Not surprisingly, they got divorced within a year.
- You can come tomorrow, but not today.

No is used in a different way. It is used with a noun or 'V₁+ing' to mean 'not any'. ('No' का प्रयोग अलग तरीके से होता है। ये **Noun** या **V₁ + ing form** के साथ लगता है जहाँ अर्थ 'not any' निकलता है।)

1. (i) I do not have any car.
(ii) I have no car.
2. (i) He does not have any manners.
(ii) He has no manners.

Not + any = no

Exercise

Complete the following sentences not or no.

1. We have money. (no / not)
2. It is true. (not / no)
3. Now you see me, now you do (not / no)
4. She has got enemy. (not / no)
5. She has got any money. (not / no)

• The Negative Adverbs like Hardly, Rarely, Barely, Seldom and Scarcely cannot take another negative word. (Negative Adverbs जैसा की Hardly, Rarely, Barely, Seldom और Scarcely एक अन्य Negative शब्द नहीं ले सकते हैं।)

- Eg.
1. She rarely does not come here. (×) She rarely comes here. (✓)
 2. I seldom do not see him working. (×) I seldom see him working (✓)
 3. I hardly had -----

• These Negative Adverbs make a sentence negative. Hence the Question Tag is positive. (ये Negative Adverbs वाक्य को Negative बना देते हैं। अतः इनके Question Tag Positive होते हैं।)

- Eg.
1. I hardly find any good books here, do I?
 2. She seldom came late, did she?

Note: See Question Tag

• 'Some' comes in 'Positive Sentences' and 'Any' comes in 'Negative Sentences'. ('Some' का प्रयोग Positive वाक्यों में होता है और 'any' का प्रयोग Negative वाक्यों में।)

- Eg.
1. I have some problems.
 2. I do not have any problem.

- The Negative Adverbs like 'seldom, hardly, barely, rarely and scarcely' make a sentence negative. Hence use 'any' and not 'some' when Negative Adverbs come in a sentence. (Negative Adverbs 'seldom, hardly, barely, rarely और scarcely' वाक्यों को Negative बना देता है अतः 'Any' का प्रयोग करें ना कि some का अगर वाक्य में Negative Adverbs का प्रयोग हो, तो)

Eg.

- I hardly know some people here. (×)
I hardly know any person here. (✓) (Any takes S.N)
- I scarcely have some information. (×)
I scarcely have any information. (✓)

- Adverb 'as' should be avoided to introduce predicative of the following verbs. (Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित verb के साथ ना लगाये)

Name, Elect, Think, Consider, Call, Appoint, Make and Choose

Eg.

- I consider you as my brother. (×)
I consider you my brother. (✓)
- They called him as a fool. (×)
They called him a fool. (✓)

- Adverb 'as' should be used to introduce Predicative of the verbs. (निम्नलिखित verbs को 'as' के द्वारा introduce किया जा सकता है)

Regard, Describe, Define, Treat, View, Know

Eg.

- I regard him as my elder brother.
- Biology can be defined as the study of living things.
- We know him as a benefactor.

Eg.

- He left India with bag and baggage.
- It is raining like cats and dogs.
- They fought with tooth and nail.
- She worked with heart and soul.

Answers

- Remove 'with'. 'Bag and Baggage' means 'with all one's belongings'.
- Remove 'like'. 'Cats and dogs' means 'heavily'.
- Remove 'with'. 'Tooth and nail' means 'with all energy'.
- Remove 'with'. 'Heart and soul' means 'with a lot of energy and enthusiasm' / 'whole-heartedly'.



With

+

Noun

Adverb

1. With	+	sincerity	→	Sincerely
2. With	+	politeness	→	Politely
3. With	+	bravery	→	Bravely
4. With	+	wisdom	→	Wisely
5. With	+	foolishness	→	Foolishly

CONFUSING ADVERBS/ ADJECTIVES

19

Check the underlined words and make necessary corrections if needed.

1. He ran slowly but I ran fastly.
2. He looked at me in a way as if asking question.
3. The Beatles will ever be my favourite.

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 22.06.2014)

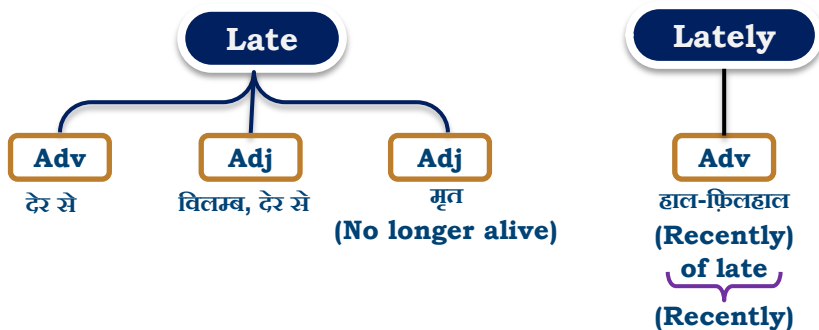
4. Listen with attention to what I say. SSC Tier-II, 2015
5. He behaved nobler this time.
6. Do like I do.
7. You look as your father.

Late & Lately

8. I came _____.
9. The _____ arrival of train caused discomfort.
10. I haven't seen him _____.
11. _____ comers are not allowed.
12. Prices have shot up _____.
13. His _____ wife was kind-hearted.
14. You shouldn't go out _____ at night.
15. He got success _____ in his career.

Answer

1. He ran slowly but I ran fast.
2. He looked at me questioningly.
3. The Beatles will always/forever be my favourite.
4. Listen attentively to what I say.
5. He behaved more nobly this time.
6. Do as I do. Do is a verb. It needs 'as' (an Adverb) and not 'like' (an Adjective)
7. You look like your father. Look (a verb of sensation) needs an Adjective (like) and not an Adverb (as)
8. I came late (देर से).
V Adv
9. The late arrival of train caused discomfort.
Adj N
10. I haven't seen him late (हाल-फिलहाल)
Adv
11. Late comers are not allowed.
Adj N
12. Prices have shot up late.
V Adv
13. His late wife was kind-hearted.
Adj N Late (मृत)
14. You shouldn't go out late at night.
V Adv
15. He got success late/late in his career.



In the following cases choose the appropriate options -

16. Sheela was reprimanded by the school Marshall for coming lately to school.

(SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D'
Exam. 31.01.2016 TF No. 3513283)

- (1) to school lately
- (2) late to school
- (3) to school later
- (4) No Improvement

17. Rohan's mother advised (1)/ him not to drive the (2)/ car lately at night. (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2017 5 July,
2018 Evening

Answer

- 16. (2) Replace 'lately to school' with 'late to school'.
Lately – recently
Late – after the usual time.
- 17. (3) Replace 'lately' by 'late'.
lately – हाल ही में
late – देर से

Hard & Hardly

- 18. Old habits die _____.
- 19. I worked _____ to pass the exam.
- 20. He _____ does any work.
- 21. He does _____ work.
- 22. Life turns _____ when you learn _____ any lesson from your mistakes.

Answer

- 18. old habits die hard (मेहनत से)
V Adv
- 19. I worked hard to pass the exam.
V Adv
- 20. He hardly does any work.
Adv V
- 21. He does hard work. (कड़ी मेहनत)
Adj N
- 22. Life turns hard when you learn hardly any lesson from your mistakes.
V of exception Adv Adv

23. He is a _____ task master.

24. He is a die- _____ fan of Salman.

25. It is _____ to bend this rod.

26. This rod can _____ be bent.

27. This exam is a _____ nut to crack.

Answer

23. He is a **hard** task master. (सख्त)

Adj

N

24. He is a die-**hard** fan of Salman.

25. It is **hard** to bend this rod.

26. This rod can **hardly** be bent.

27. This exam is a **hard** nut to crack.

Hard

Adj

difficult
कठीन

Adv

मेहनत से

Adj

मेहनत से भरा
सख्त

**Hard nut to
crack**

**A piece of work that is
difficult to do**

Hardly

Adv

काम करने में कामचोरी
(मुश्किल से)

Adj

करना मुश्किल है

Die-hard

Loyal

28. John is working very hard (1)/as the examinations (2)/are fast approaching. (3)/No error (4).

(SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 31.7.2005)

29. The old man felled (1)/some of the trees in the garden (2)/with hardly no effort at all. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC SAS Exam. 26.06.2010 (Paper-I))

30. His son (1)/ is working (2)/ very hardly. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Combined Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 26.06.2011 (First Sitting))

31. He works hardly (1)/ to make (2)/ both ends meet. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.12.2011 (Iind Sitting (North Zone))

32. Old habits (1)/ die (2)/ hardly. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 04.11.2012 (2nd Sitting))

33. The scientists (1)/could not hardly (2)/ complete all the experiments. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 21.04.2013)

34. After toiling very hardly (1)/ over a long period of time (2)/he found that he had met no profit at all. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC CHSL (10+2) DEO & LDC Exam. 02.11.2014, Patna Region : Ist Sitting)

35. Mother does not hardly (1)/ know what happened (2)/ in school yesterday. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016 (2nd February, Evening)

36. Travel blogging is hardly work (1)/ and will earn you nothing (2)/ in the first few years. (3)/ No Error (4)

SSC (steno.) 2017, 11 Sept., Morning

Answer

28. (1) Replace 'hardly' with 'hard'.
hardly (adv.) means 'almost not'.
hard (adv.) means 'with a great deal of effort'.
29. (3) Replace 'hardly no effort' with 'hardly any effort'.
'Hardly' is a negative word so it should not be used with 'not' or 'other negative words'.
30. (3) Replace 'hardly' with 'hard'.
31. (1) 'Hardly' (adverb) means 'almost not'.
'Hard' (adverb) means 'putting a lot of energy into an activity'.
Hence replace 'hardly' with 'hard'.
32. (3) Replace 'hardly' with 'hard'. We need a lot of effort to get rid of old habits.
33. (2) 'Hardly' itself is a negative word so it does not take another negative words with it.
Hence remove 'not' from the second part of the sentence.
34. (1) Replace 'hardly' with 'hard'.
35. (1) Hardly, scarcely, rarely etc are negative adverbs. They have negative meaning so we use them without another negative word. The correct sentence will be 'Mother hardly knows...'. So remove 'not' from part 'A'.
36. (1) Change 'is hardly work' into 'is hard work'.
Hardly - मुश्किल से
Hard - कठिन

Free & freely

37. I got this mug _____ with coffee.
38. We are not _____ from vices.
39. You can go _____ to any part of India.
40. _____ gifts are distributed.
41. I am not a _____ bird.
42. I have a _____ house to let.
43. _____ vessels make much noise.
44. Free time is called _____.
45. The kidnappers _____ the hostages.
46. Students are allowed _____.
47. (1) They agreed
(2) to repair the damage
(3) freely of charge
(4) No error

(SSC Data Entry Operator, Exam. 31.08.2008)

37. I got this mug **free** (मुफ्त) with coffee.
 V Adv
38. We are not **free** (मुफ्त) from vices (बुराइयाँ).
 'be' का form Adj
39. You can go **freely** (स्वतंत्रता) to any part of India.
 V Adv
40. x gifts are distributed.
41. I am not a **free** (स्वतंत्र) bird.
 Adj N
42. I have a **vacant** house to let.
43. **Empty** vessels make much noise.
44. Free time is called **leisure**.
45. The kidnappers **freed** (मुक्त करना) the hostages.
 Verb
46. Students are allowed **free**.
47. (3) Replace 'freely of charge' with 'free of charge'.
 'free of charge' means 'without payment'.



Too much & much too

48. There is _____ discomfort.
49. He has _____ worries/ problems/ questions.
50. He is _____ anxious/ tired/ worried/ annoyed.
51. I told the teacher (1)/ that the homework set for the day (2)/ was much too heavy for us to complete. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC GL Tier-II Exam. 21.09.2014)

too + much + U.N.
 with U.N

Too + many + P.C.N
 with C.N

much too + Adj

Answer

48. There is too much discomfort.
U.N
49. He has too many worries/ problems/ questions.
P.C.N.
50. He is much too anxious/ tired/ worried/ annoyed.
Adj.

Note:

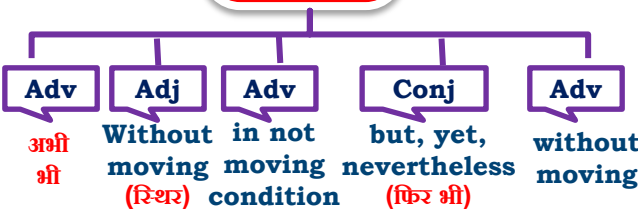
- Too + much + Uncountable Noun
- Too + Many + Countable Nouns
- Much too + Adjective

51. (4) 'Much too' is followed by an adjective.
 'Too much' is followed by a Noun.
 Hence 'much too + heavy' is correct.

Still

52. It is _____ raining.
53. _____ waters run deep.
54. He is rich _____ he is not happy.
55. Stand _____.
56. You have _____ some time left.

Still



57. Please go out and check if it is yet raining.
 (1) and check
 (2) if it is
 (3) yet raining
 (4) Please go out

CGL MAINS 2018 13 September, 2019

Answer

52. It is still raining.
Adv Verb
53. Still waters run deep.
Adj
54. He is rich still (फिर भी) he is not happy.
Conj
55. Stand still (बिना हिले).
V Adv
56. You have still (अभी भी) some time left.
Adv
57. (3) Replace 'yet' (अभी तक) with 'still' (अभी भी).

58. I am ____ happy.
59. I am ____ shocked.
60. She is ____ intelligent.
61. It is ____ hot that we cannot go out.
62. I am ____ glad to meet you.
63. He is ____ happy ____ control his feelings.
64. I was ill ____ I did not come.
65. The captain of the team was very criticized for the quality of his leadership.
(1) his (2) the
(3) for (4) very
66. He was **too glad** to see his friend.
(1) very glad (2) so glad
(3) to glad (4) No improvement
67. I am very happier.

Answer

58. I am **very** happy.
Adv (very + desirable Adjective)
59. I am **too** shocked.
Adv (too + undesirable Adjective)
60. She is **very** intelligent.
61. It is **so** hot that we cannot go out.
(‘So ... that’ — pair of conjunction.)
62. I am **very** glad to meet you.
63. He is **too** happy **to** control his feelings. Here ‘too ... to’ is a pair of conjunction. We can use both desirable and undesirable Adjectives here.
64. I was ill **so** I did not come.
(‘So’ is a Conjunction here. It means – therefore that’s why- इसलिए)
65. (4) Replace ‘very’ with ‘very much’ or ‘much’. ‘Very’ takes ‘Present Participle’ (V₁ + ing) which ‘much’ takes ‘Past Participle’ (V₃)
Eg.: **Very + Present Participle**
(1) Very interesting,
(2) Very exciting

Eg.: **Much + Past Participle**
(1) Much surprised.
(2) Much admired
66. (1) Replace ‘too glad’ with ‘very glad’.
‘too glad’ gives a negative sense.
Desirable Adjectives takes ‘very’.
67. Very cannot come with Comparative Degree of Adj. Remove ‘very’ or change ‘very’ into ‘much’.

So

too

very

So ... that

Adv.

Pair of conjunction with undesirable Adj.

with desirable Adj.

So

Too...to

can be converted

So...that

Conjunction - therefore (इसलिए)

can come with desirable Adj.

with same meaning and if the sentence is negative

as it is a pair of conjunction (see Conjunction)

Little or nothing, Vs Little if anything
& Seldom or never Vs Seldom if ever

Answer

67. They had little if _____ to eat.

68. She seldom or _____ comes here.

69. He calls me up seldom if _____.

67. They had little if anything to eat.

68. She seldom or never comes here.

69. He calls me up seldom if ever.

Quiet & Quite

Answer

70. I am _____ happy.

71. You are _____ right but you have missed some points.

72. Please keep _____.

73. He has _____ smoking.

74. Nothing can _____ the chirpy birds.

75. He left home _____.

70. I am quite happy.

Adv Adj

71. You are quite right but you have missed some points.

Adv Adj

72. Please keep quiet.

Adj.

'V' of exception

73. He has quit smoking.

74. Nothing can quieten the chirpy birds.

V- शांत करना

75. He left home quietly.

V

Adv

Quite

Adv.

Quiet

Adj.

Quieten

Verb

Quietly

Adv.

Quit

Adj.

पूरी तरह से upto to a large extent (काफी हद तक)
completely

शांत

शांत करना

चुपचाप

छोड़ना

Near, Nearby, Nearly

76. He lives _____ my house.
 77. He lives in a _____ lane.
 78. I am _____ done.
 79. In _____ future, we will travel to the Moon.
 80. As the date of exam _____, I grew anxious.
 81. She came _____ and sat down.

Answer

76. He lives near my house.
 Prep
 77. He lives in a nearby lane,
 Adj N
 78. I am nearly done,
 Adv V
 79. In near future, we will travel to the moon.
 Adj N
 80. As the date of exam neared, I grew anxious.
 V
 81. She came near and sat down.
 V Adv

Near
Adv

पास/नजदीक

Near
Verb

पास आना

Near
Adj/ Prep

निकट / पास में

Nearby
Adj.

पास वाले

Nearly
Adv.

लगभग
Almost

Enough

82. I have _____ information.
 83. She has _____ problems.
 84. He is tall _____ to qualify.
 85. _____ is enough.
 86. You have talked _____.
 87. Ramesh is smarter enough to get selected for the post without any recommendation.

(SSC CGL Tier-II, 2016)

Enough
as Adj

noun से पहले

+ U.N./ P.C.N/ S.C.N.

Enough
as Adv

generally 'adverb' comes before the 'Adjective' but 'enough' comes after the 'adjective'.

Answer

82. I have enough information.
 Adj U.N
 83. She has enough problems.
 Adj P.C.N
 84. He is tall enough to qualify.
 Adj Adv.
 85. Enough is enough.
 pronoun
 86. You have talked enough.
 verb Adv.
 87. Enough as Adverb comes with positive degree of Adjective. Change 'smarter' into 'smart'.

Such

88. He is _____ fool that he understands nothing.
89. Such a behaviour will not be tolerated.
90. She is _____ talented actress as I have never seen.
91. Such boys face problems.

Answer

88. He is such a fool that he understands nothing. S.C.N.
Such + a/an + S.C.N.
89. Such behaviour will not be tolerated. Behaviour is an Uncountable Noun so will not take 'a'. ~~Such + a/an~~ + U.N.
90. She is such a talented actress as I have never seen. S.C.N.
- Such ... as
Such ... that } pair of conjunction
(See Conjunction)
91. ~~Such + a/an~~ + P.C.N.

Direct & Directly

92. I came here _____ from airport.
93. He comes to questions _____ without explaining the concept.
94. If you have any problem come to me _____.
95. There is no _____ route to my village.
96. I can't _____ you in this matter.

Direct	Direct	Direct	Directly
Adv	Adj	Verb	Adv
going from one place to another without turning or stopping.	straight	निर्देश देना	Immediately

97. I am coming directly (1)/ to my office (2)/ from the station. (3)/ No error (4)

SSC CHSL-2016 (1st February, Morning)

Answer

92. I came here direct from airport.
verb Adv
93. He comes to questions directly without explaining the concept.
Adv
94. If you have any problem come to me direct (सीधे) / directly (तुरंत)
verb Adv Adv
95. There is no direct route to my village.
Adv Noun
96. I can't direct you in this matter.
Modal Verb
- Directly → immediately.
 - Direct → straight
97. (1) Change 'directly' to 'direct'. Here 'direct' means 'straight' without stopping anywhere. Both don't take 'ly'.

Present & Presently

98. I will submit the report _____.
 99. At _____ I am here.
 100. She will _____ leave for the U.S.
 101. I have bought a _____ for her.
 102. She _____ a watch to me.
 103. Presently, she is busy composing the music for her next play.
 (1) At the present
 (2) In the present
 (3) At present
 (4) No improvement

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013)

Loud, aloud, loudly

104. I heard a _____ noise.
 105. Don't play the music _____.
 106. Please speak _____. You are inaudible.

Loud

Adj

तेज (आवाज में)

Loudly

Adv

शोर - शराबे के साथ

Aloud

Adv

Atleast audible

Answer

98. I will submit the report presently.
 Verb Adv- soon
 99. At present I am here.
 Noun- वर्तमान
 100. She will presently leave for the U.S.
 Adv- soon Verb
 101. I have bought a present for her.
 Noun- उपहार
 102. She presented a watch to me.
 Verb- उपहार देना
 103. (3) Replace 'presently' with 'at present'.

Answer

104. I heard a loud noise.
 Adj N
 105. Don't play the music loudly.
 V Adv
 106. Please speak aloud, You are inaudible.
 V Adv

ENGLISH PRACTICE BATCH

100⁺
TEST PAPERS

मात्र
899/-

Useful for:-

All Objective Exams

**All Questions Explained In Detail
 BY NEETU SINGH**

**10:00 PM – 11:00 PM
 MON/ WED/ FRI
 8:00 PM – 9:00 PM
 TUE/ THUS/ SAT**

NEETU SINGH

Email: online@kdcampus.org

LIVE QUIZ BY PRAVEEN SIR

Download Now!

LIVE App

Subscribe Now

YOUTUBE CHANNELS

KD LIVE & ENGLISH BY NEETU MAM

Contact : 9555108888, 9555208888

Ago & Before

107. I haven't seen him _____.
108. I saw him two days _____.
109. She had left _____ we came.
110. Raise this issue _____ the court.
111. She said, "I came two days_____". (Direct speech)
112. She said that she had come two days _____. (Indirect speech)

106-107

ago
(direct) changes into **before**
(indirect)

Gently & softly

113. Please speak _____.
114. Touch the baby _____.

Small & little

115. He is a _____ boy.
116. _____ Johnny wants to play.
117. Have a _____ patience if you teach _____ children.
118. Liquor even in _____ quantity is harmful.

Answer

107. I haven't seen him before.
V Adv
108. I saw him two days ago.
V Adv
- x days/ months etc + ago
109. She had left before we came.
Conj
110. Raise this issue before the court.
Prep
111. She said, "I came two days ago."
(Direct Speech) Adv
112. She said that she had come two days before (Indirect speech)
Adv

Answer

113. Please speak **softly** (हल्के-आवाज़ में).
V Adv
114. Touch the baby **gently** (हल्के हाथों से).
V Adv

Answer

115. He is a small boy.
Adj- छोटा (उम्र में)
116. Little Johny wants to play.
छोटा (height में)
117. Have a little patience if you
Adj- थोड़ा
- teach small children.
छोटा (उम्र में)
118. Liquor even in small quantity is harmful.
- * little + quantity – superfluous.
(मात्रा में) कम मात्रा

Sometime, some time, sometimes

119. I have _____.
 120. I come here _____.
 121. He comes every year ____ in November.
 122. How _____ time do you need?
 123. How _____ times do you come here?

Answer

119. I have some time.
 कुछ / थोड़ा समय
 120. I come here sometimes.
 121. He comes every year sometimes in November. (not exactly at some specified time)
 122. How much time do you need?
 with U.N. U.N. - समय
 123. How many times do you come here?
 with P.C.N. P.C.N.- बार

Every day and everyday

124. I come here _____ day.
 125. It is his _____ problem.

Answer

124. I come here every day.
 Adj N
 प्रति दिन
 125. It is his everyday problem.
 Adj N
 हर दिन का

Like and as

126. You are _____ my brother.
 127. Do _____ I say.
 128. He resembles _____ his brother so much that it is difficult to tell one from the other.
 129. It is _____ soft _____ fur.
 130. She considers me _____ her brother.

Form of 'be' (verb of exception)

Answer

126. You are like my brother.
 Adj
 127. Do as I do.
 v Adj
 128. She resembles her brother so much that it is difficult to tell one from the other. (No word will come in the blank)
 'To tell one from the other' means 'to distinguish'
 129. It is as soft as fur.
 as ... as (pair of conjunction - used to compare)
 130. She considers me her brother. (No word will come in the blank)
 Note- 'As' does not come with consider, name, elect, think, call, appoint, make, choose, nominate and crown.

like Adj } = Resemble
as Adv }
look like }
 के जैसा के जैसा
 with verb

131. Look at what (1)/ I am doing (2)/ and do like I do (3)/ No Error (4)

Answer

SSC CGL-2016 (30th August, Afternoon)

131. (3) Replace 'like' with 'as'.

'As' is an adverb that qualifies an action

Eg: Nobody loves her as I do.

The same idea can be expressed using 'like' but differently.

Eg: Nobody loves her like me.

[here 'like' is followed by the object pronoun 'me'. 'Like' is an adjective that qualifies a noun or a pronoun]

Other, Another, the Other/ the Others

132. Go and play with some _____ children.

133. I am happy but the _____ are dissatisfied.

134. I need _____ assistant.

135. I need the _____ assistant.

136. He has no knowledge _____ the basic information.

137. I am very thirsty. I need _____ glass of water.

138. Where is the _____ book?

139. I do not have any _____ information.

140. He held the steering with one hand and the baby with _____.

Answer

132. Ans. - other. As Adjective we use other and never others.

133. I am happy but the others are dissatisfied.
Noun P.V

134. I need another (दूसरा) assistant.

135. I need the other assistant. Any + others (×)
Adj.

136. He has no knowledge other than the basic information.
(Adv)
को छोड़ कर

137. I am very thirsty. I need another (एक और) glass of water.
Another + S.N.

138. Where is the other book?
दूसरी

The + another (×)

one of these two articles can come.

139. I do not have any other information.

Any + others (×)

140. Ans.→ The other. The other means the 2nd out of two.

Ill and sick

140. _____ gotten, _____ spent.
141. I went to meet my _____ mother.
142. I am _____ of his tantrums.
143. She is _____.
144. She is on _____ leave.

Afraid & timid.

145. He was too _____.
146. He was a _____ man.
147. He was an afraid body.

Much, a lot of, many

148. I have _____ money.
149. I have _____ ideas.
150. I have _____ problems.
151. Don't talk _____.
152. He is _____ happy.
153. He is _____ happier.
154. He has _____ tension.

Much + undesirable U.N

Adj, Adv

मात्रा में (ज्यादा)

Answer

140. Ill gotten, ill spent.
adv Adj Adv Adj.
141. I went to meet my ailing mother.
बिमार
142. I am sick of his tantrums.
परेशान नखरे
143. She is ill.
Adj.- not well
144. She is on sick leave.
Adj

Answer

145. He was too afraid.
146. He was a timid man.
Afraid – not an Attributive
Adjective so cannot come before noun.
147. Change it into 'He was afraid' or 'He was a timid boy'.

Answer

148. I have a lot of money.
149. I have a lot of/ many ideas.
P.C.N
150. I have a lot of many problems.
P.C.N
151. Don't talk much.
V Adv
152. He is very happy. (very + Positive degree of Adjective.)
153. He is much happier. (Much + Comparative Degree of Adjective)
154. He has much tension.
U.N

155. He is _____ foolish.
 156. He is _____ intelligent.
 157. He is _____ fast. We will reach home in time.
 158. He is _____ fast. I will not go with you.
 159. The results of the survey were fairly disappointing.
 (1) of the survey were
 (2) The results
 (3) fairly disappointing.
 (4) No error
 160. Shut the window; it is **fairly** cold.
 (1) quiet (2) quite
 (3) rather (4) No improvement

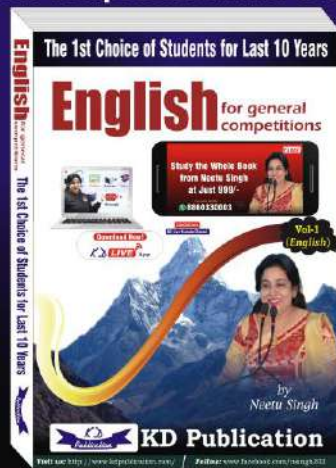
(SSC CGL
 Tier-II Exam,
 25.10.2015,
 TF No.
 2148789)

Answer

155. He is **rather** foolish. Rather comes with undesirable Adjectives.
 156. He is **fairly** intelligent. Fairly comes with desirable Adjectives.
 157. He is **fairly** fast. We will reach home in time. (His speed is desirable here.)
 158. He is **rather** fast. I will not go with you. (His speed is undesirable here.)
 Rather - to the contrary (के उलट)
 Fairly - moderately (ठीक-ठीक)
 159. (3) 'Fairly' is generally used with pleasant adjective. Here 'disappointing' is unpleasant adjective. Hence 'rather' should come in the place of 'fairly'.
 160. (3) Replace 'fairly' with 'rather'. 'Fairly' is used with pleasant Adjective whereas 'rather' is used for unpleasant Adjective'.

Best Seller

in
 General Competitive Exams Category



♥ Recommended by Toppers ♥



Also & Too

162. I was _____ there.
163. I was there and my friends _____.
164. My brothers will _____ accompany me.

Answer

162. I was also there. (no matter 'be' is H.V. or M.V. 'also' follows it.)
M.V
163. I was there and my friends too.
avoid using 'also' at the end of a sentence.
164. My brothers will also accompany me.
H.V See the position. 'Also' comes after the H.V and before the M.V (exception 'be')

Yet

165. He gave us _____ another reason to rejoice.
166. He hasn't paid the fee _____.
167. He worked hard _____ he failed.

Yet

Adv

to emphasise 'another' and 'again'

Adv

upto now
(अभी तक)

Conj.

But
(किर भी)

Answer

165. yet → is an Adverb here. It emphasises words like 'another' and 'again' to show an increase in amount or the number of times something happens.
166. yet → upto now (अभी तक). 'Yet' means 'so far' but 'yet' comes in negative sentences and 'so far' comes in both positive and negative sentences.
167. yet → but. Here yet is a conjunction.

Altogether & All together

168. I don't _____ agree with you.
169. We are _____ ten people
170. Although the toys are altogether in the cupboard they are not properly arranged.
- (1) in the cupboard
 - (2) are altogether
 - (3) are not properly arranged
 - (4) Although the toys

Answer

168. Altogether → completely (पूरी तरह से)
169. All together → every one together or everything together (कुल मिलाकर)
170. (2) Replace 'altogether' with 'all together'. 'Altogether' means 'completely' and 'fully'. 'All together' means 'all in one place or group'.

Specialy & Especialy

171. She loves flowers _____ roses.
172. I am grateful to all of you _____ the CEO.
173. The dress was _____ designed for the wedding.
174. Found in many parts of India, the frangipani tree is a small, low -branching tree which is especial used for several medicinal purposes.
(1) a small, low -branching tree
(2) Found in many parts
(3) The frangipani tree is
(4) which is especial used

Answer

171. especially
172. especially
173. specially
174. (4) Replace 'especial' with 'especially'. Is + Adverb + V₃. Verb 'used' is qualified by an Adverb.

Especialy

Adv

Particularly (विशेष कर)

Specialy

Adv

for specific purpose (किसी विशेष उद्देश्य या अवसर के लिए)



ENGLISH



Neetu Singh, Director of KD Campus

09555108888

704, Mukherjee Nagar, Delhi-9



ONLY 2499/-	English Special
ONLY 799/-	Practice Batch
ONLY 999/-	Spoken English
ONLY 1199/-	Volume 1 Batch

Download Now! KD LIVE

Subscribe Now YOUTUBE CHANNELS
KD LIVE & ENGLISH BY NEETU MAM

The examples given below clearly state that Article comes with Noun.

Eg.

1. He is a good boy.
2. She is x excellent. ← No Noun, No Article
3. She went for a walk/ ride/ drive/ stroll/ talk.
 'a + verb' → becomes → Noun
4. This degree is a must for this exam.
 Here 'a + Modal' → Noun

ARTICLE

- Comes before Noun (**Noun** के पहले आता है)

Indefinite

A / An

- Means 'One'
- Comes with Singular Countable Noun.
(**S.C.N.** के साथ आता है)
- Do not come with Plural Countable Noun and Uncountable Noun.
(**P.C.N.** एवं **U.N.** के साथ नहीं आता है)
- Come with Nouns which are getting introduced.
(जिन संज्ञा का परिचय हो रहा है उसके साथ आता है)

Definite

The

- Can come with Countable as well as Uncountable Noun.
(**C.N.** एवं **U.N.** दोनों के साथ आता है)
- Comes with Nouns that have already been introduced.
(जिन संज्ञा का परिचय दिया जा चुका है उसके साथ '**the**' आता है)
- Comes with Nouns that are definite, that can be visualised or pointed out.
(**Noun** के साथ होता है, जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं या जिसकी छवि दिमाग में बन चुकी है)

Eg.

1. He is a singer.
2. They are a singers. [×]
3. She gave an advice. [×]
4. Once upon a time, there lived a king.
5. He is a very good dancer.

Use of 'A' / 'An'

A	With Consonant Sound
An	With Vowel Sound

Vowels	a, e, i, o, u
Vowels Sound	'अ' से 'औ' तक

Fill in the blanks with A/An

1. _____ orange	9. _____ year
2. _____ eagle	10. _____ MP
3. _____ umbrella	11. _____ DCP
4. _____ European	12. _____ ewe
5. _____ university	13. _____ honorary lecturers
6. _____ one-rupee coin	14. _____ honesty
7. _____ honest man	15. _____ police.
8. _____ ear	16. _____ x-ray machine.

Answers

1. An	9. A
2. An	10. An
3. An	11. A
4. A	12. A
5. A	13. x
6. A	14. x
7. An	15. x
8. An	16. An

Article Vis-a-Vis Adjective

- Cowards die many a death, the brave dies but once.
- When the going gets tough, the tough gets going.
- The brave _____ rewarded. (be)
- The higher you rise _____ you fall. (i) harder (ii) hard (ii) the harder.
- The more electricity you use, _____ your bill will be. (high)
- This is the best dish served here.
- Revenge is best served cold.
- He is the first choice of the organizers.
- He stood first in class.

Questions 10 to 22 are based on 'few' and 'little':-

- The doctor advised me to rest for _____ days.
- The show was cancelled as _____ people turned up.
- _____ friends, whom I trusted, left me at the time of need.
- Police must have _____ sensitivity.
- The doctors lost _____ hope, that they had, when they saw the victim.
- _____ knowledge is a dangerous thing.
- Could you give me _____ water?
- He looked blank as he had _____ clue what was going on.
- I have _____ money. I can't buy anything.
- My teacher advised me to prepare _____ more chapters.
- The lockdown was imposed strictly and _____ people were seen on roads.
- _____ books that I have are useful for competitive exams.
- Very _____ books are available on statistics.
- Ashoka, the great / The great Ashoka/ The Great Britain.
- Kiran Bedi was _____ first IPS officer in India .
- I have _____ two friends.
- _____ two boys sitting there, are my brothers.
- The ten first admissions will get 50% discount.
- He is _____ of the two dancers. (good)
- She is _____ of the three singers. (good)

1. The brave (वीर लोग) is P.N. Change dies (S.V) into die (P.V).
2. The tough (मजबूत लोग) is P.N. Change gets (S.V) into get (P.V).
3. The brave (P.N) will take 'are' (P.V).
4. Ans. → The harder. The higher ↔ the harder (Rule of parallelism) If actions are directly or inversely proportional, Comparative Degree will come in both the parts preceded by article 'the'.
5. Ans. → the higher.
- Exception of (6 – 9): Article 'the' comes with Superlative Degree of Adjective and does not come with Superlative Degree of Adverb.

10. a few	14. the little	18. little
11. few	15. A little	19. a few
12. The few	16. a little	20. few
13. a little	17. little	21. The few

Exception of 16 – 20

with Countable Noun

- A few संख्या में कम है लेकिन है।
- Few संख्या में ना के बराबर।
- The few जितने हैं, सभी।

with Uncountable Noun

- A little मात्रा में कम है लेकिन है।
- Little मात्रा में ना के बराबर।
- The little जितने हैं, सभी।

Explanations:

22. Very takes 'few' and little'.

23. Sometimes we use an Adjective to emphasise the importance a Noun. In such a case we use 'the' with Proper Noun. The use of article 'the' makes a noun important.

Answer - (24-26)

Adjective of Number

Ordinal	Cardinal
First	One
Second	Two
Last, etc	Four, etc
The	No Article

27. First ten

O C



Order

OC { पहले - ordinal
बाद में - cardinal

Correct Order

28. If 'one' is chosen out of two, use Comparative Degree preceded by 'the'.
29. If 'one' is chosen out of more than 'two' use Superlative Degree preceded by 'the'.

Article Vis-a-Vis Abstract and Material Noun

1. Beauty lies in the eyes of the beholder.
2. A beauty from South Africa broke all the stereotypes.
3. Love is eternal.
4. Do you deserve the love of your parents?
5. A thing of beauty is a joy forever.
6. This alloy is made of half a gold and half a copper. (×)
This alloy is made of half gold and half copper. (✓)

Answers

Explanation of 1 - 6: Abstract Noun: that can felt but can't be touched.

Eg: Beauty, Honesty, Joy, Sorrow. They do not take Article A/An.

1. Beauty → सुंदरता (U.N)
2. A beauty → एक सुंदरी (S.C.N)
3. Love → प्यार (U.N)

The + Noun + of →

Structure generally seen. If Noun is followed by 'of', it is preceded by Article.

Article Vis-a-Vis Common Noun

1. A dog is a faithful animal.
2. A cow is a milch animal.
3. The farmer had a dog.
4. A cow is grazing in the field.
5. Man is mortal.
6. A man is standing there.
7. Children should go to school.
8. He was arrested and sent to jail.
9. The jail is behind the school.

10. The school is near a hospital.
11. Let the father in you decide whether your father deserves this treatment.
12. A mother was born in her when she saw the baby.
13. When will father return?
14. Take me to the station.
15. Take me to New Delhi railway station.

Answers

Explanation of 1 - 2: Here 'a dog' and 'a cow' refer to the whole species of dogs and cows but they take singular verb.

Explanation of 3: Here 'a dog' means 'one dog' (एक कुत्ता)

Explanation of 4: Here 'a cow' means 'one cow' (एक गाय)

5. Man → इन्सान

6. A man → एक पुरुष

Explanation of 7 - 8: When 'school', 'jail', 'hospital' etc refer to their 'primary purpose' (प्राथमिक उद्देश्य), no article comes. Here in sentence 7, 'school' means 'education' and in sentence 8, 'jail' means 'imprisonment'.

Explanation of 9 & 10: When we refer to 'premises', 'building' or 'location' and not the primary purpose, we use Article.

Explanation to 11: When we refer to the 'personality' (व्यक्तित्व) present inside a person, we use Article 'the'.

Explanation to 12: When the personality referred to is introduced i.e. seen for the first time, we use Article 'A/An'.

Explanation to 13: We don't use any article with the names of close relations.

Explanation to 14: We use article 'the' with station, circus, theatre, cinema, bus stand, bus terminal etc.

Explanation to 15: When a Proper Noun comes with station, circus etc, no article comes. Eg:- Gemini Circus.

Article Vis-a-Vis Proper Noun

Proper Noun

1. Ram was the king of Ayodhya.
2. Switzerland is a beautiful place.
3. Shakespeare was a great dramatist.

The
a/an + noun + of

We do not use any article with the name of any person or a place. (किसी भी व्यक्ति अथवा स्थान के नाम के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है)

4. He is **the Ram** of Modern India.
5. Kashmir is **the Switzerland** of India.
6. Kalidasa was **the Shakespeare** of India.
7. He is **a Hitler**.
8. America is a developed country.
9. The United States is a super power.

4, 5, 6, 7

If a person or place comes as an example because of a certain quality, we use article with that proper Noun. (अगर किसी गुण/दोष के कारण कोई व्यक्ति अथवा स्थान उदाहरण स्वरूप प्रयुक्त हो, तो **Article** का प्रयोग होता है)

8, 9

If we use Union, United, Republic or Kingdom in the name of the place we use article 'the'. (अगर स्थान के नाम में **Union, United, Republic** या **Kingdom** शब्द का प्रयोग हो, तो **Article 'the'** का प्रयोग होगा)

10. (i) The Ukraine	(ii) The Netherlands
(iii) The Hague	(iv) The Philippines
(v) The Sudan	(vi) The Great Britain

With the names of place given above we use article 'the'. (उपरोक्त स्थान के नाम के साथ **'the'** का प्रयोग होता आया है)

- Now let us see use of Article with Natural things one by one. (अब प्राकृतिक वस्तुओं के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग एक-एक कर के देखें)-

1. Space

- Space (अंतरिक्ष) — No article

Eg.: Astronauts go to space.

- Space (जगह) — Article — the

Eg.: Park your car in the space given to you.

2. Heavenly objects (भौगोलिक पिंड) — Article — The

Eg.: The Mars, The Sun.

- Article 'the' is used with the following Natural things Exceptions are also mentioned. (निम्नलिखित प्राकृतिक चीजों के साथ Article 'the' आता है। अपवाद भी दे रखें हैं)

- The atmosphere
- The environment
- The ecosystem
- The biosphere, the troposphere etc
- Poles — The South pole, the North pole
- The Equator
- Hemispheres — The Northern hemisphere, the Southern Hemisphere
- Tropics — The Tropic of Cancer, The Tropic of Capricorn.
- The Axis
- Circles — The Arctic circle, The Antarctic Circle
- Directions — The North, the South etc.
- Water bodies
 - Glaciers — The Siachen Glacier etc.
 - Oceans — The Pacific Ocean etc.
 - Seas — The Arabian Sea etc.
 - Rivers — The Yamuna etc.
 - Waterfalls — The Niagara Water Falls etc.
 - Canals — The Suez Canal etc.
 - Dams — The Sardar Sarovar Dam etc.
 - Deltas — The Sundarban Delta etc.
 - Lakes — No Article — Wular Lake etc.
- Mountains
 - Ranges (the) Eg.: The Himalayas
 - Peaks (No article) Eg.: Mount Everest
- Plateau — The Chota Nagpur Plateau etc.
- Hills (No article) — Malabar Hill etc.
- Volcanoes (No article) — Mount Vesuvius etc.
- Forests — The Amazon Rainforest etc.
- Bay/ Gulf — The Bay of Bengal etc.
- Islands (No article) — Sri Lanka
- Group of Islands (द्वीप का समूह) — take Article 'the'
 - The Lakshadweep. • The Andaman and Nicobar Islands
 - The West Indies. • The Bahamas
 - The Maldives
- Deserts — The Sahara desert
- Diseases (No Article) Eg.: Cancer, Diarrhoea.

Exception

The Measles (खसरा), The Mumps (गलसुआ), The Rickets (सूखा रोग), The Flu (फ्लू), The Plague (प्लेग).

- Seasons — No Article unless followed by word 'season'. (अगर season शब्द का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, तो कोई Article नहीं आता है)

- Summer
- Winter
- Autumn
- Spring

Note:-

- The summer season
- The winter season
- The rainy season

26. Winds — The Westerlies etc.

27. Continents — **No Article**

Eg.: Asia, Africa etc.

Note:-

The Indian subcontinent

Now see the use of Article with the following Man made things:-

1. Cups & Trophies — The World Cup, The Ranji Trophy etc.
2. Musical Instruments — The Flute, The Guitar etc.
3. Religious groups — The Hindus, The Muslims etc.
4. Temples — The Meenakshi Temple, The Lotus Temple etc.
5. Clubs — The lion's club, The Bachelors' etc.
6. Dynasties — The Mughal Dynasty, The Marathas Dynasty etc.
7. Artificial Satellites — The Mangalyan etc.
8. Armed Forces — The Navy, The Army etc.
9. Hotels — The Oberois etc.
10. Pillars of constitutions — The Executive, The Judiciary etc.
11. Constitutional posts — The Prime Minister, The President etc.
12. Castes as a whole — The Yadavs, The Jats etc.
13. Ships — The Titanic etc.
14. Political Parties — The Congress Party, The Samajwadi Party etc.
15. Statutes & Acts — The Hindu Marriage Act, The Indian Penal Code etc.
16. Dances — The Bharatnatyam, The Kathakali etc.
17. Unions — The United Nations, The Soviet Union etc.
18. Games (as organization) — The Olympics, the Common Wealth Games etc.
Names of Sports (No Article) — Football, Cricket.
19. Airways — The Jet Airways, The Air India etc.
Railways — The Rajdhani Express.
20. Banks — The Punjab National Bank, The Bank of India etc.

Note:- No article if name of a person comes with the name of the bank.

Eg. Lloyds Bank

21. Inventions — The Television, The Gramophone etc.

Note:- We are watching television. (Here we mean a programme so 'the' will not come.)

22. Wars & Battles (युद्ध / लड़ाई) — The Kalinga war, the World War etc.
23. Pilgrimage (तीर्थ यात्रा) — The Amarnath Yatra etc.
24. Empire (साम्राज्य) — The British Empire, The Mughal Empire etc.
25. Historical events (ऐतिहासिक घटना) — The Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (जनसंहार),
The Chauri Chaura incident etc.
26. Tribals (जनजाति) — The Santhalis, The Boro etc.
27. Movements & Revolutions (क्रांति) — The Quit India Movement, The French Revolution etc.
28. Civilizations (सभ्यता) — The Indus valley civilization.
29. Religious books (धार्मिक ग्रंथ) — The Ramayana, The Quran etc.

Note:- No article if the name of a person comes with Religious books. (अगर धार्मिक ग्रंथ के साथ व्यक्ति का नाम हो, तो Article का प्रयोग ना करें)

Eg. Valmiki's Ramayana

30. Monuments (ऐतिहासिक इमारत) — The Taj Mahal, The Red Fort etc

Note:- No article is used if the monument is on the name of a person. (अगर इमारत किसी व्यक्ति के नाम पर हो, तो Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है)

Eg. Humayun's Tomb

31. Newspapers — The Times of India etc.

32. Nationality (नागरिकता) — The English, The French etc.

Note:- • **The English** speak **English**

Nationality
(Article -the)

Language
(No article)

33. Parts of Parliament — The Lok Sabha, The Legislative Assembly. (The word Parliament does not take any Article)

34. Body parts — If a particular part is talked about we use Article 'A' / 'An' / 'The' otherwise we don't use any Article. (अगर किसी निश्चित भाग का उल्लेख हो, तो Article 'A' / 'An' / 'The' का प्रयोग होगा वरना कोई Article नहीं आता)

(i) Eyes give us the sensation of sight. (No article)

(ii) He opened the left eye and moved a finger of his left hand.

35. Unit of measurement Article 'the'.

(i) Cloth is sold by the yard. (ii) Eggs are sold by the dozen.

36. With certain words (Normally/ सामान्यतः) —

- The whole ... Eg.: The whole world is suffering from Pandemic.
- Both the ... Eg.: Both the brothers are missing.
- All the ... Eg.: All the students are present.
- The same ... Eg.: He is the same boy who cheated us.

No Article comes with the following Nouns.
(निम्नलिखित Nouns के साथ Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता)

- 1. Subjects — Physics, Chemistry etc.
- 2. Roads — Mall Road

Exception:- The Grand Trunk road

- 3. Streets — Park Street
- 4. Festivals — Diwali
- 5. University — Oxford University
- 6. National Parks — Kaziranga National Park
- 7. Language — English
- 8. Acronyms —

• If letters
are pronounced

Article 'the' comes

Eg.: The FBI, The CBI

• If Pronounced
as a word

No article comes

Eg.: UNESCO, NATO

9. 'What **kind** of' takes no article, not even 'A/An', even if a singular noun follows.

Eg.: What **kind** of bird the dodo is!

'What **sort** of' takes no article, not even 'A/An', even if a singular noun follows.

Eg.: What **sort** of problem it is!

'What **type** of' takes no article, not even 'A/An', even if a singular noun follows.

Eg.: What **type** of person he is!

'What **variety** of' takes no article, not even 'A/An', even if a singular noun follows.

Eg.: What **variety** of rose it is!

Miscellaneous

- Go to bed now.
- Go to the bed and pick up the baby.
- This ship was at _____.
(i) anchor
(ii) the anchor
(iii) an anchor
- He went to sea.
- He went to the sea.

Answers

- If 'bed' means 'Primary Purpose' (सोना), no article comes.
- If we add article before 'bed', it means furniture.
- Ans (i) Here 'anchor' refers to its primary purpose (लंगर डालना)
- 'Go to sea' means 'to become a sailor'.
- Here 'go to the sea' means 'to go to sea for some other purpose'.

Position of Article (A/An) in sentences

Examples

- He is a very tall boy.
- He is such a tall boy.
- What an idiotic demand it was!
- How great a leader he is!
- So nice a performance it was!
- Many a boy has come.
- Many boys have come.
- A great many leaders are here.
- A great many/ a good many $\xrightarrow{\text{means}}$ an extremely large number.
- Too stupid an act it was!
- Why on earth would I do so?

Position

a/an + Adv + Adj + S.N

Such + a/an + adj + S.N

What + a/an + Adj + S.N

How + adj + a/an + S.N

So + Adj + a/an + S.N

Many a/an + S.N. + S.V

Many + P.N + P.V

A great/good many + P.N + P.V

Too + adj + a/an + S.N

In 'Why on earth', 'the' does not come before earth though all the heavenly objects take Article 'the'. This is a phrase that is used to ask question with anger, disgust or annoyance./ (यहाँ 'On earth' में 'Earth' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ क्योंकि भौगोलिक पिंड के साथ 'the' आता है 'On earth' एक phrase है जिसका प्रयोग हम गुस्सा या चिड़चिड़ापन में प्रयुक्त करते हैं।)

SL	Idioms/ Phrases	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
1	In a hurry	in haste	हड़बड़ी में
2	In a nutshell	very briefly	संक्षेप में
3	Make a noise	to create loud and unpleasant sound	शोर करना
4	Within a stone's throw	very near	बहुत नजदीक
5	At a loss/ At sea	confused	उलझन में
6	Take a fancy to	become fond of	पसंद करना
7	Take a liking	become fond of	पसंद करना
8	Tell a lie	make an untrue statement	झूठ बोलना
9	Add fuel to the fire	make a conflict more intense	आग में घी डालना
10	Rule the roost ↓ resting place of birds	in complete control of	पूर्ण नियंत्रण
11	At the eleventh hour	at the last moment	आखरी क्षण में
12	Bolt from the blue	a sudden and unexpected problem	अचानक आई परेशानी
13	Break the ice	to initiate conversation	चुप्पी तोड़ना
14	Bury the hatchet	to make peace	दूश्मनी खत्म करना
15	Built castle in the air	to plan something that is impossible	हवाई किले बनाना
16	Catch a tartar	to face a problem or an enemy	दुश्मन या समस्या का सामना करना
17	Chew the cud	to ponder	सोचना, मनन करना
18	Cry for the moon	to want something impossible	ऐसी चीज का माँग करना जो असंभव हो
19	Give a piece of mind	to scold	डौटना
20	Have finger in the pie	to have an interest in or be involved in	किसी काम में शामिल होना या दिलचस्पी होना
21	Hit the nail on the head	to say or do something precisely right	सही तरह से काम करना
22	Keep the ball rolling/ Keep the pot boiling	to cause an activity to continue	जारी रखना
23	Keep the wolf from the door	to avoid starvation	भुखमरी से बचना

IDIOMS & PHRASES WITH ARTICLE

SL	Idioms/ Phrases	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
24	Live in an ivory tower To see through rose coloured glasses	to live with no experience or knowledge of practical problems of life	जिंदगी की वास्तविक समस्याओं से अनभिज्ञ जीवन जीना
25	Mad as a march hare.	to be crazy	सरफिरा
26	Make a mountain out of a mole hill	to be over-reactive	तिल का ताड़ बनाना
27	Storm in a teacup.	a small event that has been exaggerated	तिल का ताड़
28	In the nick of time.	at the last moment	ठीक समय पर
29	In the same boat	in the same condition	समान स्थिति
30	Make hay while the sun shines To strike the iron when it is hot	to do something while conditions are good	ठीक समय पर कार्य करना
31	Nip in the bud	to finish it when it start	शुरूआत में ही कुचल देना
32	Pull the wool over some one's eyes	to deceive	धोखा देना
33	Put the cart before the horse	to do something wrongly	गलत तरीके से काम करना
34	Put the cat among the pigeons	to put an undesirable person among a group	किसी समूह में किसी अवांछनीय व्यक्ति को रखना
35	Rock the boat	to cause imbalance	संतुलन बिगाड़ना
36	Set the Thames on fire	to do something amazing	आश्चर्यचकित काम करना
37	Snake in the grass	an unknown enemy	छिपा हुआ दुश्मन
38	In a rage	in anger	गुस्से में
39	Catch a cold	to become ill with common cold	जुकाम होना
40	Shake in the shoes	to tremble with fear	डर से काँपना
41	Steal a march on (someone)	to get an advantage over someone by acting before or better than they do	कोई काम पहले या ज्यादा अच्छे से कर के दूसरों के आगे निकल जाना, चुपके से लाभ प्राप्त करना

SL	Idioms/ Phrases	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
42	Stir/ lift a finger	to do slightest effort	थोड़ी सी भी कोशिश करना
43	Turn a deaf ear to	refuse to listen	अनसुना करना
44	Turn over a new leaf	to change for better	बुरे आचरण छोड़ कर अच्छा होना
45	Under the nose of	to happen in presence	ठीक आँखों के सामने होना
46	Under the thumb of	in the control of	के वश में होना
47	Weather the storm	to face or confront	समस्या से मुकाबला करना
48	With a grain of salt	with some doubt	शंका के साथ स्वीकार करना
49	By air/ car/ bus etc	mode of transport	यात्र के साधन (बस/कार इत्यादि)
50	On foot/ shanks' pony	walking	पैदल
51	Sow/mare dragon's teeth	to do something that leads to trouble	भविष्य के लिए परेशानी इकट्ठा करना
52	Take heart	to garner/ muster courage	हिम्मत होना
53	Lose heart	to be disappointed	निराश होना
54	Take to heart	to be moved or upset	बुरा मान जाना
55	Give ear/ lend ear	to listen	ध्यान से सुनना
56	At home	comfortable	आरामदायक
57	At sea	confused	उलझन में
58	Last but not least	last but equally important	आखरी परंतु किसी से कम नहीं
59	To catch fire	to start burning	आग लगना
60	In hand	in one's physical possession	हाथ में
61	Set on fire	aflame	आग लगाना
62	In danger	.....	खतरे में
63	At sunrise	.....	सूर्योदय
64	At sunset	.....	सूर्यास्त
65	By mistake	.....	गलती से
66	To set foot	to arrive	कदम रखना
67	Turn turtle	to turn upside down	उल्ट-पलट हो जाना
68	On duty, in doubt, on strike	.....	काम पर, शंका में, हड़ताल पर

IDIOMS & PHRASES WITH ARTICLE

SL	Idioms/ Phrases	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
69	On demand	when needed or desired	माँग पर
70	In demand	greatly desired	माँग में
71	Weal and woe	Joy and sorrow	सुख और दुख
72	Ups and downs	Success and failure	सफलता और विफलता
73	Pros and cons	Advantages and disadvantages	लाभ-हानि
74	Sum and substance	Meaning, gist or summary	सारांश
75	Flesh and blood	A human being with his natural limitations	मनुष्य (अपनी प्राकृतिक खामियों के साथ)
76	Fishes and loaves	Materialistic gains/ Tangible benefits	सांसारिक लाभ
77	Hard and fast	Strict	सख्त
78	To and fro	Backward and forward, in one direction and then in the opposite direction	आगे-पीछे
79	Cut and dried	Readymade	बना-बनाया
80	Alpha and omega	A to Z	शुरू से अंत तक
81	All and sundry	Everyone, without distinction	सब, बिना किसी भेद-भाव के
82	Ins and outs	Full detail	विस्तार में
83	Fire and sword	Anger, rage and rife /to go on a rampage	क्रोध, व्याप्त गुस्सा
84	Fire and brimstone	The torments (पीड़ा) suffered by sinners (पापी) in hell	नरक में पापियों द्वारा सामना की जाने वाली पीड़ाएं
85	Far and wide	In all directions	सब दिशाओं में
86	Far and near	From distant and near about places	दूर और पास से
87	Spic and span	Neat and clean, immaculate	साफ सुथरा
88	On and on	Continuously	लगातार
89	Again and again	Repeatedly	बार-बार
90	Now and then	Often/ occasionally	जब-तब
91	Off and on	Irregularly/ sporadic/intermittently	अनियमित/छिटपुट/रह-रह कर
92	By Fits and starts	Irregularly/ sporadically/ intermittently	अनियमित/छिटपुट/रह-रह कर

IDIOMS & PHRASES WITH ARTICLE

SL	Idioms/ Phrases	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
93	Hand and glove	working together especially to do something dishonest	बहुत करीब होना (कुछ गलत करने के लिए)
94	Heart and soul	whole-heartedly, with devotion	पूरे दिल से, भक्ति के साथ
95	Wear and tear	Damage	क्षति/टूट-फूट
96	Safe and sound	Unhurt	सुरक्षित
97	Fair and square	Honest, just and proper	ईमानदार, उचित
98	Hole and corner	Being in a secret place or conducted secretly	गुप्त जगह से किया जाने वाला
99	Under lock and key	At a safe place	सुरक्षित जगह पर
100	Move heaven and earth	To do one's best, to leave no stone unturned	कोई कसर न छोड़ना
101	Carrot and stick policy	A reward and punishment policy	ईनाम और सजा नीति
102	Part and parcel	Inseparable part	अविभाज्य अंग
103	Blow hot and cold	Be unreliable	अविश्वसनीय
104	Play fast and loose	To behave in a reckless or irresponsible manner	लापरवाह व्यवहार करना
105	Play ducks and drakes	Waste or squander	बर्बाद करना
106	By leaps and bounds	Very rapidly	बहुत तेज
107	Null and void	Ineffective	अप्रभावी
108	Rank and file	Ordinary people	आम आदमी
109	Out and out	Completely	पूरी तरह
110	Far and away	With much difference	ज्यादा अंतर के साथ
111	Hunt high and low	To look carefully in every possible place for someone or something	हर संभव जगह पर किसी चीज या किसी इंसान को ढूँढना
112	In every nook and corner	Everywhere	हर जगह
113	Touch and go	uncertain and with probably bad result	अनिश्चित एवं अप्रिय नतीजे से संभावित
114	Day in and dayout	For an indefinite number of successive days	लागातार कई दिनों के लिए

What is a determiner?

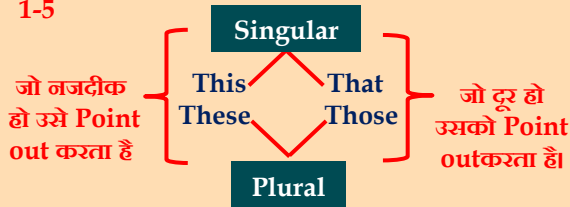
Determiners come before a Noun. The following are Determiners:-

- Article → A, An, The – See Article.
- Demonstrative Adjective → This, that, these, those, such
- Possessive Adjective → My, his, her, your, our, their, its
- Quantifiers → Few, little, a few, a little, some, any, enough, no
- Distributive adjective → Each, every

Exercise

1. _____ pen is mine. (this/these)
2. _____ boys are not playing.
(that / those)
3. _____ house is mine.
(that/those)
4. _____ idea is not good.
(this/these)
5. _____ books are mine.
(this/these)
6. Do _____ own work.
7. I know _____ rights.
8. We should do _____ work now.
9. Look at _____ face.
10. They crossed _____ limits.
11. How _____ milk do we need?
(many/much)
12. I have _____ friends.
(many/much)
13. He has _____ tension.
(many/much)
14. I have _____ issues.
(many/much)
15. She needs _____ help.(some/any)
16. I do not need _____ help.
(some/any)
17. Do you need _____ help?
(some/any)
18. I have _____ information.
(some/any)
19. I do not have _____ information.
(some/any)
20. Do you have _____ information?
(some/any)
21. May I have _____ coffee
(some/any)
22. Do you have _____ water?
(some/any)
23. I need _____ rest.
24. The doctor advised me to rest for _____ days.
25. He is at the 4th stage of Cancer.
There is _____ hope of his survival.
26. Very _____ people came so the show was cancelled.
27. He drank _____ milk that I had kept for tea.
28. She lost _____ books that she had on Grammar.
29. I need _____ help.
30. _____ help that they provided was not _____.
31. _____ boy is present.(every/any)
32. _____ boy is absent. (any/no any/no)
33. You can apply for _____ post.
(any/every)
34. _____ is _____.
35. My dog has a chain around _____ neck.
36. She looks pretty in _____ black gown. (her/their)
37. We had _____ problems.
(enough/few/little)
38. _____ has one's rights.
39. One must perform _____ duty.
40. Have _____ rice too.

1-5



6-7: Use appropriate possessive Adjective

11-13

Countable Nouns

↓ take

★ Many
★ few

Uncountable Noun

↓ take

★ Much
★ little

Desirable Nouns take 'lots of' / a lot of in place of much

15-20

In +ve sentences

'Some' is used

In -ve and Interrogative sentences

'Any' is used

21-22: If answer is expected in 'yes', use 'some' in place of 'any'.

Very few

मात्रा में ना के बराबर

a few

कुछ (संख्या में कम लेकिन हैं)

Some

Comes with both

Countable

Uncountable

26-30

Little, Very little

मात्रा में ना के बराबर

a little

थोड़ा है (कम है लेकिन हैं)

The little / The few

When some information is given about the noun; the comes with 'little & few'

Answers

1. This	22. some
2. Those	23. some
3. That	24. a few
4. This	25. little
5. These	26. few
6. your	27. the little
7. my	28. the few
8. our	29. some/ a little
9. his/her	30. The little/Very little, enough/sufficient
10. their	31. Every, each
11. much	32. No
12. many	33. any/ every
13. much	34. Enough, enough
14. many	35. its
15. some	36. her
16. any	37. enough, few
17. any	38. one
18. some	39. one's
19. any	40. some, a little
20. any	
21. some	

Enough

With Plural Countable Noun

With Uncountable Noun

A lot of / lots of

Much

& Many

P.C.N.
कोई

U.N.
काफी

U.N.
काफी

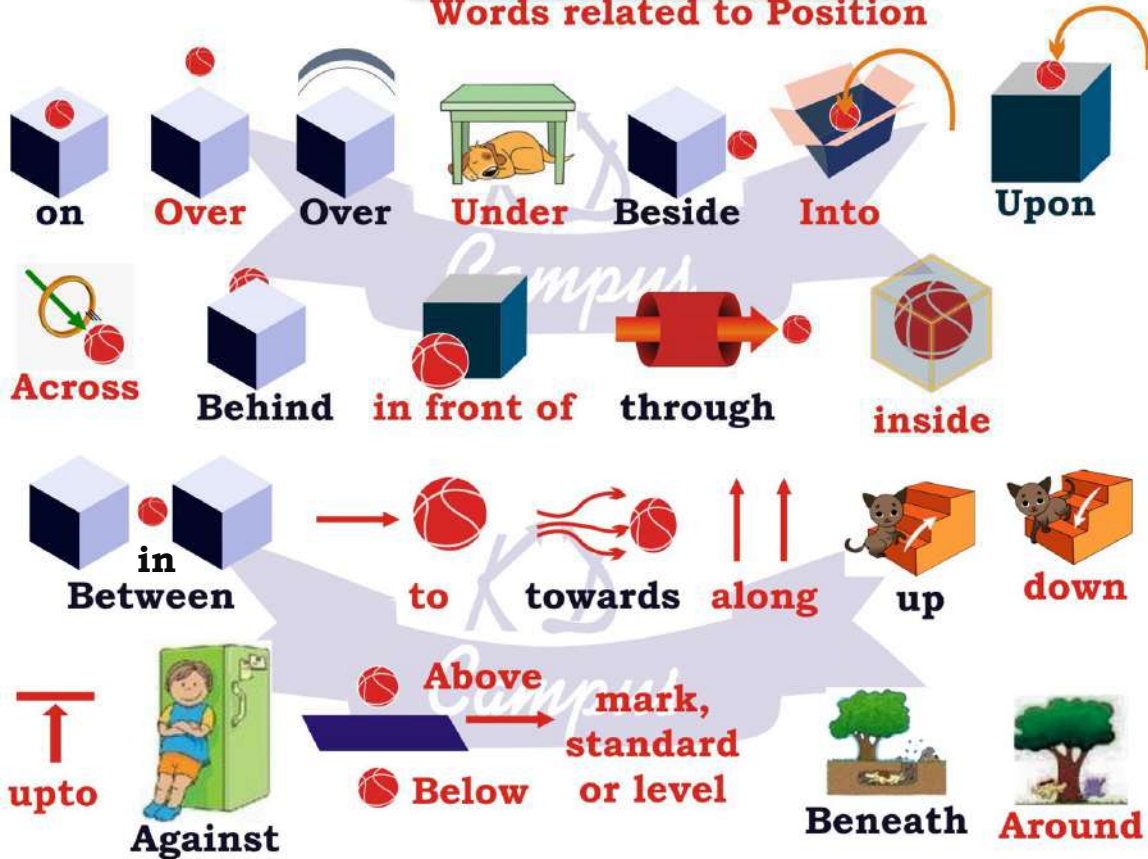
P.C.N.
कोई

Examples:-

1. I know a lot / much.
2. Lots of / A lot of / Many people have come.
3. It needs a lot of / much / lots of improvement.
4. I bought many / lots of / a lot of books.
5. No one is much interested.
6. He has a lot of money.

Note:- 'Much' does not come with desirable adjective

Words related to Position



Exercise

1. He is sitting _____ the chair/ stool/ bench.
2. He is sitting _____ the bed/ arm chair.
3. He is sitting _____ the tree.
4. He is sitting _____ the shade of the tree
5. The tiger jumped _____ the deer.
6. He fell _____ the well.
7. He jumped _____ his horse and rode away.
8. Trees are planted _____ the roads.

9. He walked _____ the road.
10. Come _____ me.
11. Put a blanket _____ the sleeping baby.
12. The fan is just _____ your bed.
13. A bridge was built _____ the river.
14. A bridge was built _____ the river joining the two villages.
15. The train passed _____ the tunnel.
16. He ran _____ the dense forest to his village that was situated _____ the forest.
17. He slept _____ the car.
18. I came _____ car/ road / air / bus/ flight.
19. I came _____ foot/ shanks' pony.
20. I came _____ bike/ scooter.
21. Birds live _____ trees/ nests.
22. Delhi is situated _____ the bank of Yamuna.
23. The rivers are flowing _____ the danger level due to incessant rain.
24. The snake is hiding _____ the bricks.
25. Indira point is _____ the South of India.
26. Sri Lanka is _____ the South of India.
27. Don't lean _____ the wall.
28. The train is _____ platform number 8.
29. I am _____ home
30. I am _____ my office.
31. He climbed _____ the tree.
32. Don't park your car _____ my gate.
33. He climbed _____ that branch of the tree.
34. The police produced him _____ the court.
35. The protesters assembled and marched _____ the railway station.
36. You are _____ arrest.
37. He entered _____ the hall.
38. They entered _____ an agreement/ pact/ alliance/ MoU/ argument.

39. Entry _____ this hall is prohibited.
40. Children can get free education _____ the age of 14.
41. The earth moves _____ the Sun.
42. I am _____ terrorism.
43. A tree fell _____ the railway line.
44. The matter is _____ the jurisdiction of the court.
45. She is better _____ he.
46. She is senior _____ him.
47. She is better _____ and senior _____ him.
48. Sit _____ the sofa.
49. The PM went _____ the U.S.
50. The bus is heading _____ the town.

Answers

1. on	20. on	38. into
2. in	21. in	39. into
3. under	22. on	40. upto
4. in	23. above	41. around
5. upon	24. beneath/ underneath	42. against (के विरुद्ध)
6. into	25. in	43. across
7. onto	26. to	44. (i) beyond (के बाहर)
8. along	27. against	(ii) within (के अंदर)
9. along	28. at	45. than
10. along with/ with/to	29. at	46. to
11. over	30. in	47. than, to
12. over	31. up/down	48. on
13. over	32. in front of	49. to
14. across	33. upto	50. towards.
15. through	34. before	
16. through, near/ across/ beside	35. towards / to	
17. in	36. under	
18. by	37. No Preposition	
19. on		

Preposition with Place

- **In** Delhi (In + City)
- **In** India (in + Country)
- **In** the Suburbs
- **In** the desert

relatively big place

At Dwarka **in** Delhi.

relatively small place

In + Place of work

1. **In** office
2. **In** a restaurant
3. **In** a factory
4. **In** the hotel

At + Particular place

1. **At** platform number 10
2. **At** Dilshad Garden Metro Station
3. **At** the station
4. **At** a public library

See the prepositions in the following sentence

1. The tourist resorts **of** Garhwal hills **in** Uttarakhand attract the tourists.
2. He works **in** the Manuscript department **of** the British Museum.

Preposition when state changes

1. Water changes **into** ice on cooling
2. The milk turned **into** curd.
3. Translate it **into** English.
4. Translate it **from** Hindi **to** English.
5. The milk turned **x** sour.

Examples

1. I live **in** Delhi.
2. I live **in** India.
3. She lives **in** the suburbs.
4. Several species are found **in** the deserts.
5. I live **at** Mukherjee Nagar **in** Delhi.

If the place of work is not a building

1. **On** the farm
2. **On** an estate

Examples

1. That man works **in** a restaurant.
2. I am waiting for you **at** the Rohini Metro Station.
3. The train is **at** the station.
4. The farmers are working **on** the farm.

Mode of Payment

1. I will pay **by** card.
2. I will pay **by** cheque.
3. I will pay **in** cash.
4. I will pay **through** net banking.

Send/ receive etc + on + Media

1. I saw it **on** T.V.
2. It was **on** facebook.
3. I got it **on** my WhatsApp.
4. Are you **on** Instagram?
5. His MMS went Viral **on** all social media.

CONFUSING PREPOSITION

We make mistakes as we get confused in the following cases.

(हम **confuse** हो कर निम्नलिखित **cases** में त्रुटि कर बैठते हैं)

HOME

1. I ~~go to~~ home on Sundays.
Verb of Motion Adv Nouns
2. He goes to Ram's/ his home on Sundays.

verb + 'to' + noun's / possessive Adj + home.

3. I am at home.
Noun
4. He is home by 7 pm.

at home
(घर पर)

Note: at home also
means comfortable

Explanation to sentence 1: Verb of motion like go, come, bring, return etc do not take any preposition if followed by word 'home'. Here Home is 'Adverb'.

Explanation to sentence 4: This sentence means 'He returns home 7pm'. The verb of motion is hidden here hence no preposition has been used.

Between

&

Among

Both 'between' and 'among' come with Countable Nouns.

2 के बीच

2 से अधिक के बीच

1. There is no love lost **between** him and her.
2. The teacher distributed the sweets **among** the children.
3. There are trade agreements **between** India and China.
4. There are trade agreements **among** all the developed nations.
5. MP is located **in between** Gujarat, Maharashtra, Chattisgarh, Rajasthan and U.P

Explanation

1. 'No love lost' means 'enmity' (दुश्मनी).
5. to express location, we use 'in between'.

Amid

Used for both Countable and uncountable Nouns.

6. The bill was passed **amid** pandemonium.
7. I came here **amid** heavy rain.
8. Nothing went amiss **in between**.

Explanation

6. '**Amid**' with U. N means during
- '**Amid**' with plural C.N. means among
8. '**go amiss**' means '**to occur**' (inappropriate incident)

By

&

Withcomes with 'doer'
(कर्ता के साथ)comes with instruments/ weapons
(औजार/हथियार के साथ)

1. We cannot catch a big fish **with** a small rod.
2. He was killed **by** his servant **with** a knife.
3. The paper was signed **by** him.
with a pen.
in red ink.

4. The birds filled the air with their sweet notes.
5. Write with a pen (Here 'a pen' means 'an instrument')
with a pencil (Here 'a pencil' means 'an instrument')
in ink (Here 'ink' means 'material')
in pencil (Here 'pencil' means 'material')



1. I live in Delhi.
2. I live at/in Dwarka.
3. I live at Dwarka in Delhi.
4. I live at Rathdhana in Sonipat, Haryana

village

district

State



1. The problems **of** Delhi are increasing day by day.
2. We disposed **of** the furniture.
3. Keep your dog **off** the flower beds.
4. Switch **off** the light.

Explanation

2. 'Dispose of' means 'to get rid of'.
3. 'Off' means 'away from'.



1. He sat beside me.
2. Besides being foolish, he is egoist too.
3. Except Ram, everyone came. (Ram was absent)
4. Besides Ram, everyone came. (Ram came late)

Before

- के समक्ष
- से पहले
- ago changes into before in Indirect Speech

In front of

- के सामने

Opposite

facing each other

Opposite to

in disagreement

1. The train arrived before time.
2. He was produced before the court.
3. Look before you leap.
4. Don't park your car in front of my gate.
5. She sat opposite me and I saw her face clearly.
6. Anushka was cast opposite Shahrukh in her first movie.
7. Autocrats cannot tolerate views opposite to theirs.
8. I had come before the guests arrived.
9. He said, "I came two hours ago." (Change in Indirect speech)

Ans. – He said that he had come two hours before.

10. He went in the opposite direction.

INSTEAD

&

INSTEAD OF

(Adverb)

(Preposition)

1. I asked him to study but he played instead.
2. Use CNG instead of petrol.

Round

&

Around

&

About

1. I entered the hall and looked around. (around → इधर-उधर)
2. The Earth moves around the Sun. (around → चारों तरफ)
3. He wandered around in search of water. (around → इधर-उधर)
4. A fence was built around the park. (around → के चारों तरफ से)
5. It costs around/ about Rs. 50. (around/ about → लगभग)

6. They sat around the table. (around → चारों तरफ)

7. This tree blooms all year round.

round the clock – 24 hours
round the year – 12 months

8. I know about him. (about → के बारे में)

9. It is about/ around 6 kms away from Delhi.

(about/around → approximately (लगभग))

10. He is about to come.

about to/ going to + V_{b.f} →
Intention to do (करने का इरादा)

Made of

(के बना हुआ)

when form does not change

&

Made from

use 'made from' when
form changes

1. The table is made of wood.

3. Bread is made from wheat.

2. Curd is made from milk.

4. Shoes are made of leather.

Deal in

to do business

&

Deal with

to handle/ tackle/
to cope with

&

Deal out

to distribute

1. He deals in garments.

2. I can deal with any problem.

3. I could not cope with the excessive heat.

4. The time table has been dealt out.

Note Cope up with (×)

Cope with (✓)

Marry

In Active Voice — no preposition.

In Passive Voice — 'to' come.

1. Ram married × Sita.

2. Sita married × Ram.

3. Ram was married to Sita.

4. King Dashrath married his son to Sita.

Born infamily, place,
month and year

&

Born of

से उत्पन्न होना

&

Born to

parents/ others

1. He was born **in** Delhi.
in May / **in** 2005.
on 17th May.
2. He was born **in** a rich family.
3. He was born **to** poor parents.
4. Misery is born **of** poverty.

Need of

lacking

&

Need for

when something additional is required

1. The poor man is in need **of** warm clothes.
2. There was a need **for** further explanation so we googled it.

Key to

when key is virtual

&

Key of

when key is real

1. Where is the key **of** my Almirah?
2. Hard work is the key **to** success.

Die from

reason given

,

Die of

disease/ hunger

,

Die in

place

&

Die for

के लिए मरना

1. He died **of** cancer.
2. He died **of** hunger.
3. He died **from** exhaustion.
4. He died **in** harness. (Idiom — कार्यकाल के दौरान मृत्यु (to die while in service))
5. Soldiers die **for** their motherland.
6. He was killed **in** an accident.
7. He died **in** Delhi.

Exp. 6When the death is
unnatural we use 'kill'.**Differ with**

disagree (असहमत होना)

&

Differ from

different from (से अलग)

1. Amphibians differ **from** reptiles.
2. I differ **with** you on this issue.

Compare to

&

Compare with**When both are completely different**

1. Life is compared **to** a journey.
2. Doctors are compared **to** gods

When both are almost same

1. Compare Jio **with** Airtel.
2. Compare this book **with** that book on grammar.

At the beginning**In the beginning (initially)****Vs****In the end (अंततः) (ultimately)****at the end.**

1. They play National Anthem **at** the beginning of a movie.
2. We had a farewell party **at** the end of our final semester.
3. Everything seems good **in** the beginning.
4. Truth triumphs **in** the end.

Partake in

&

Partake of**Participate**
(भाग लेना)**to take one's share**
(अपना-अपना हिस्सा लेना)

1. We will partake **in** the event.
2. They partook **of** the refreshment.

Reconcile with

&

Reconcile oneself to

समझौता करना

बेमन से स्वीकार करना

1. He reconciled **with** his rival company.
2. She reconciled **herself to** their demands.

Attend

&

Attend to**to be present**
(उपस्थित होना)**to deal with / serve**
(निपटना) (सेवा करना)

1. I attended **x** the class.
2. The nurse attended **to** the patient.
3. I have many issues to attend **to**.

Meet

&

Meet with

मिलना

to encounter something
(सामना करना)

1. He met **x** me.
2. He met **with** an accident.
3. His performance was met **with** derision.

उपहास

Sick of

&

Sick for

&

Ill with**tired of (पेशान)****longing for (के लिए तड़पना)****suffer from (से ग्रस्त)**

1. I am sick **of** his tantrums.
2. He is sick **for** his home and family.
3. He is suffering **from** fever.
4. He is ill **with** Jaundice.

Count

गिनना

&

Count on

to rely (निर्भर होना)

1. He counted **x** the eggs.
2. You can count **on** me.

Qualify

to pass

&

Qualify for

to be eligible for

1. He qualified **x** PMT and took admission in a medical college.
2. Hima Das has qualified **for** the Olympics.

Free of

मुफ्त

&

Free from

मुक्त

1. I got it free **of** cost.
2. He is free **from** vices.

Suffer

झेलना

&

Suffer from

से पीड़ित होना (बीमारी से)

1. He suffered **x** loss.
2. He is suffering **from** fever.

Change of

replacement

&

Change in

modification

1. A change **of** place is advisable.
2. A change **in** climate has been noted.

Decline

&

Decline in

&

Decline of

अस्वीकार करना

गिरावट

पतन

1. He declined_(V) x my offer.
2. The decline_(N) of Mughal Empire started.
3. A decline_(N) in temperature has been noted.

Resign from

&

Resign oneself to

त्यागपत्र देना

to accept because you can't change it

1. He resigned from his job.
2. He resigned himself to his fate.

Taste for

&

Taste in

Liking (पसंद)

Expertise (निपुणता)

1. I have taste for classical music.
2. Kishore Kumar had taste in both western and classical music.

PHRASE PREPOSITION

1. Under arrest → गिरफ्तार
Eg:- You are under arrest.
2. Under construction → निर्माणाधीन
Eg:- This building is under construction.
3. Under trial → विचारधीन
Eg:- He is under trial and has not been convicted.
4. Under treatment.
Eg:- The patient is under treatment.
5. By the way (A phrase used for adding something to a conversation on a new subject)
Eg:- By the way, you are late.
6. According to me. (x)
In my opinion. (✓) → मेरे विचार से
Eg:- In my opinion, he is efficient.
7. At risk → खतरे में
Eg:- His life is at risk.

8. At the speed of → की गति से
Eg:- The train is running at the speed of 60 kms/hr.
9. At the rate of → के दर से
Eg:- 100 oranges have been bought at the rate of Rs. 30 per dozen.
10. According to → के अनुसार
Eg:- According to the WHO, COVID 19 is a pandemic.
11. In accordance with → के अनुसार
Eg:- In accordance with your request, I am sending you a copy of the FIR.
12. On board/aboard → सवार
Eg:- 50 passengers were on board.
13. Above board/aboard → honest
Eg:- My accountant is above board.

14. In vain → बेकार में
Eg:- I worked hard in vain.
15. In debt → कर्ज़ में
Eg:- He is in debt.
16. With regard to → के संदर्भ में
Eg:- He made enquiries with regard to my staff.
17. In connection with → के संबंध में
Eg:- The police are interrogating him in connection with a criminal case.
18. Under observation → निगरानी में
Eg:- The patient is serious and under observation.
19. In relation to → के संबंध में
Eg:- I am trying to understand Literature in relation to History.
20. Out of order → खराब है (मरम्मत की जरूरत है)
Eg:- The lift is out of order.
21. For ages → लम्बे समय से
Eg:- We have been celebrating Diwali for ages.
22. By mistake → गलती से
Eg:- I sent this message by mistake.
23. Out of stock → Stock में नहीं है
Eg:- Volume 1 is out of stock now.
24. For sure → निश्चित
Eg:- She is in problem for sure.
25. Except for → को छोड़ कर
Eg:- This book is good except for some typographical mistakes.
26. For good → हमेशा के लिए (permanently)
Eg:- She left India for good.
27. For granted → बिना महत्त्व समझे
Eg:- He took his wife for granted.
28. For the sake of → के वास्ते
Eg:- Do not fight just for the sake of money.
29. In lieu of → किसी चीज के स्थान पर
Eg:- He surrendered his bike in lieu of the pending rent.
30. On behalf of → के और से
Eg:- I went to collect the payment on behalf of my sister.
31. In no way → किसी भी हाल में नहीं
Eg:- In no way, can we allow corruption to flourish.
32. On no condition → किसी भी हाल में नहीं
Eg:- On no condition, shall I let you come in.
33. On no account → किसी भी तरीके से नहीं
Eg:- On no account, let him know we are here.
34. Of age → क़ानूनी रूप से उस उम्र का
Eg:- Now you are of age. You can marry anyone of your choice.

We use preposition with certain verbs just because we are habitual of translating the sentence. We will not use any preposition with the following verbs in Active Voice.

हम **preposition** का प्रयोग कुछ **verbs** के साथ सिर्फ इसलिए करते हैं क्योंकि हमें वाक्य का अनुवाद करने की आदत है। हम **Active Voice** में निम्नलिखित **verbs** के साथ **preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं करेंगे।

- ❖ Stress (जोर देना)
- ❖ Emphasise (जोर देना)
- ❖ Accompany (के साथ जाना/ आना)
- ❖ Comprise (से बना होना)
- ❖ Investigate (तहकीकात करना)
- ❖ Consider (के तरह मानना)
- ❖ Violate (उल्लंघन करना)
- ❖ Discuss (विचार-विमर्श करना)

- ❖ **Pervade** (समा जाना)
- ❖ **Precede** (के पहले आना)
- ❖ **Reach** (पहुँचना - जगह पर)
- ❖ **Order** (आदेश देना)
- ❖ **Tell** (कहना)
- ❖ **Demand** (माँग रखना)
- ❖ **Control** (काबू करना)
- ❖ **Describe** (वर्णन करना)
- ❖ **Ridicule** (मजाक उड़ाना)
- ❖ **Succeed** (के बाद आना, **opposite of precede**)
- ❖ **Invade** (घुसपैठ करना)
- ❖ **Resist** (प्रतिरोध करना)
- ❖ **Attack** (आक्रमण करना)
- ❖ **Resemble** (की तरह दिखना)
- ❖ **Enter** (अंदर आना)
- ❖ **Eschew** (जान-बूझ कर कुछ करने से बचना)
- ❖ **Direct** (निर्देश होना)
- ❖ **Join** (शामिल होना)
- ❖ **Sign** (हस्ताक्षर करना)
- ❖ **Affect** (असर करना)
- ❖ **Ensure** (सुनिश्चित करना)
- ❖ **Board** (सवार होना)

Examples

1. He accompanied _____ me.
2. You must control _____ your children.
3. Have some control _____ your children.
4. He stressed/ emphasised _____ the use of generic medicines.
5. He laid stress/ emphasis _____ the use of generic medicine.
6. I will discuss _____ the problem and will describe _____ the consequences.
7. The police investigated _____ the matter.
8. He boarded _____ the bus.
9. They demanded _____ their right.
10. The demand _____ a referendum increased subsequently.
11. He attacked _____ her.
12. An attack _____ her has been reported.
13. You resemble _____ your mother.
14. He signed _____ the papers.
15. He deboarded _____ the bus.
16. 50 passengers were _____ board.
17. I reached _____ home/ the station/ my office.
18. We reached _____ an agreement/ a conclusion.
19. I consider you _____ my brother.
20. This play comprises _____ three acts.

Answers

1. Ans → ×
Come with = accompany ~~with~~
Verb
2. Ans → ×
Control on (के ऊपर नियंत्रण करना)
Verb
3. Ans → on
Control + on
4. Ans → ×
emphasise (V) / stress (V) = पर जोर देना
5. Ans → on
Emphasis (N)/ Stress (N) + on
6. Ans → ×
discuss/ describe + about/ on
7. Ans → ×
look into = investigate ~~into~~
8. Ans → ×
get onto = board ~~on~~
9. Ans → ×
ask for = demand ~~for~~
10. Ans → for
11. Ans → ×
(पर आक्रमण करना = **attack on**)
12. Ans → on
Attack + × , Attack + on
Verb Noun
13. Ans → ×
look like = resemble ~~like~~
14. Ans → ×
sign on
15. Ans → ×
get down from = deboard ~~from~~
16. Ans → on
On board = पर सवार
17. Ans → ×
reach + no preposition + destination
18. Ans → at
reach + at + agreement/ conclusion
19. Ans → ×
consider/ call/ appoint/ name/ make / choose/ elect/ think + as / like
20. Ans → ×
Consist of = comprise ~~of~~ (in Active Voice)

PREPOSITION VIS-A-VIS DIRECT & INDIRECT OBJECT

Answer to what
(क्या का जवाब)

Answer to whom
(किसको का जवाब)

1. He gave **me** a **pen**.
Id.O D.O
2. He gave a **pen** to **me**.
D.O Id.O
3. He presented a **watch** to **me**.
D.O Id.O
4. He presented **me** with a **watch**.
Id.O D.O
5. She gave the **dog** **biscuits**.
Id.O D.O
6. She gave **biscuits** to the **dog**.
D.O Id.O

Meaning is confusing so 6 is a better choice. The two meaning of 5 are as follows:-

5. (i) उसने कुत्ते को **biscuits** दिया
- (ii) उसने कुत्ते वाला **biscuit** दिया

7. I supplied/ provided the material to him.
D.O. Id.O
8. I supplied/ provided him with the material.
Id.O D.O
9. He bestowed the title upon him.
नवाज़ना D.O Id.O
10. He bestowed him with the title.
Id.O D.O
11. He entrusted certain responsibilities to him.
D.O Id.O
12. He entrusted me with the responsibility.
Id.O D.O

Give, present, supply, bestow, provide and entrust take 'to' as preposition if they are followed by direct object first and then the Indirect Object. If Present, Supply, Provide, Entrust and Bestow are followed by Indirect Object first they take 'with' and then the Direct Object.

PREPOSITION + SOMEONE/ SOMETHING

1. Agree <u>with</u> someone.	11. Vexed <u>at</u> something.
2. Agree <u>to</u> something.	12. Familiar <u>to</u> someone. परिचित
3. Agree <u>on</u> some point/ clause.	13. Familiar <u>with</u> something.
4. Annoyed <u>with</u> someone.	14. Part <u>from</u> someone.
5. Angry <u>with</u> someone.	15. Part <u>with</u> something.
6. <u>Disgusted with</u> someone.	16. Take leave <u>of</u> someone. से विदा लेना
7. <u>Vexed with</u> someone. निराश	17. Take leave <u>from</u> some place.
8. <u>Exasperated with</u> someone. परेशान	
9. <u>Annoyed at</u> something. हताश	
10. Angry <u>at</u> something.	

EXAMPLES

1. I didn't agree ____ your manager.	her children.
2. She agreed ____ my proposal.	6. You will get familiar ____
3. She didn't agree ____ certain points.	him soon.
4. She was annoyed ____ the mismanagement.	7. I am not familiar ____ this place.
5. The mother was angry ____	8. I cannot part ____ you.
	9. I would like to take leave ____ you.

10. I took leave _____ that strange place the very next day.
11. She cannot part _____ her jewellery.
12. The teacher is vexed _____ us.

1. with	2. to	3. on	4. at	5. with	6. to
7. with	8. from	9. of	10. from	11. with	12. with

Note

1. (A) Pay heed to (ध्यान देना)	(B) Heedless of (से बेपरवाह)
2. (A) Listen to (सुनना)	(B) Worth listening × (सुनने लायक)
3. (A) Consist of → made of	(B) Consist in → present inside it
4. (A) Admit × → to accept (स्वीकार करना)	(B) Admit to → दाखिला दिलाना

Admit **of** → to allow or permit

5. (A) By dint **of** → with the help of (effort, hard work etc)
- (B) By virtue **of** → with the help of (power, authority etc.)

6. **Blind**
 - (1) Blind **in** love/ hatred.
 - (2) Blind **to** his flaws/drawbacks.
 - (3) Blind **in** one eye.
 - (4) Blind **of** both the eyes.

Examples

1. (A) I pay heed _____ traffic rules.
(B) He drove heedless _____ the warnings of the traffic police.
2. (A) I listen _____ music when I am free.
(B) This song is worth listening _____.
3. (A) This block consists _____ ten flats.
(B) Morality consists _____ your character.
4. (A) I admit _____ my mistake.
(B) I will admit him _____ a good school.
(C) This pandemic does not admit _____ any negligence.
5. (A) He passed by dint _____ hard work.
(B) The judge passed the order by virtue _____ his power.

Answers

1. (A) to
(B) of
2. (A) to
(B) ×
3. (A) of
(B) in
4. (A) ×
(B) to
(C) of
5. (A) of
(B) of

SUPERFLUOUS CASES

1.	Go into	→	Enter ~~into~~
2.	Wait for	→	Await ~~for~~
	से बाहर	→	Beyond ~~of~~
3.	से ऊपर	→	Above ~~from~~
4.	Ask for	→	Demand ~~for~~
5.	Say to	→	Tell ~~to~~

- Eg:-**
1. They result is being awaited for by all the students.
 2. I told to him to wait.
 3. We should rise above from caste and religion.

1. Remove 'for'
2. Remove 'to'
3. Remove 'from'

If the same Noun is repeated before and after the prepositions, the Noun will be used in singular form and you should pay attention to the preposition too.

(अगर **Preposition** के पहले और के बाद **same Noun** आए तो दोनों **Noun Singular form** में होना चाहिए और **preposition** का भी ध्यान रखें)

1. Door **to** door.
2. Step **by** step.
3. Word **for** word (means 'verbatim', 'same words repeated')
4. By **and** by (means 'slowly')
5. On **and** on (means 'continuously')
6. One **by** one (means 'one at a time')
7. One **on** one (means 'between two persons without anyone's interference')

Many times Preposition changes with parts of speech

NOUN

1. Capacity **of/for**
2. Confidence **in**
3. Desire **for**
4. Ambition **for**
5. Affection **for**

ADJECTIVE

1. Capable **of**
2. Confident **of**
3. Desirous **of**
4. Ambitious **of**
5. Affectionate **to**

NOUN

1. Lack of	2. Want of
3. Answer to	4. Substitute for
5. Talk with	6. Result of
7. Pride in	

VERB

1. Fill **with**
2. Equal **x**

ADJECTIVE

1. Full **of**
2. Equal **to**

VERB

1. Lack x	2. Want x
3. Answer x	4. Substitute with
5. Talk to	6. Result in
7. Pride on	Proud of Adj.

EXAMPLES

1. (A) This hall was filled to capacity.
(B) What is the capacity of this hall?
(C) I am capable of solving this problem.
(D) Our capacity for providing free lunch to the poor is limited.
2. (A) I have confidence in my abilities.
(B) I am confident of his result.
3. (A) He has no desire for money.
(B) He is desirous of a government job.
4. (A) He has no ambition for money.
(B) He is ambitious of a good post.
5. (A) Mother Teresa had affection for children.
(B) Mother Teresa was affectionate to the destitute.
6. (A) Fill the jug with water.
(B) The jug is full of water.
7. (A) Nothing can equal x mother's love.
(B) Nothing is equal to Mother's love.
8. (A) There is a lack of confidence in her.
(B) She lacks x confidence.
9. (A) This room is in want of white wash.
(B) I want x a new assistant.
10. (A) I have no answer to your question.
(B) I cannot answer x your questions.
11. (A) There is no substitute for Mother's milk.
(B) Mother's milk can't be substituted with anything else.
12. (A) I had a talk with him.
(B) I will talk to him.
13. (A) This book is the result of my hard work.
(B) Reckless driving results in accidents.
14. (A) I take pride in my skills.
(B) His father prides on his success.
(C) I am proud of you.

Level-I

1. **Resort** (गलत रास्ता अपनाना) — to
Eg. (1) He resorted to crime.
(2) The police resorted to unfair means.
2. **Wait** (इंतजार करना) — for
Eg. (1) I waited for you.
(2) She is waiting for her result.
3. **Approve** (सहमति देना) — of
Eg. (1) He approved of my project.
(2) I don't approve of such pressurizing tactics of police.
4. **Deal** (व्यापार करना) — in
Eg. (1) He dealt in garments.
(2) We deal in food grains.
5. **Deal** (निपटना) — with
Eg. (1) He dealt with problems.
(2) We cannot deal with naughty boys.
6. **Differ** (से अलग होना) — from
Eg. (1) Amphibians differ from reptiles.
(2) This project differs from that one.
7. **Different** (से असमान) — from
Eg. (1) Amphibians are different from reptiles.
(2) This proposal is different from that one.
8. **Differ** (से अलग मत रखना) — with
Eg. (1) I differ with you on this matter.
(2) India differs with the UN on the matter of POK.
9. **Depend** (पर निर्भर करना) — on
Eg. (1) I depend on you.
(2) The government depends on the executive.
10. **On Monday** — सभी दिनों के साथ
Eg. (1) I came at 7 O'clock on Monday.
(2) She reached Delhi at quarter past 8 on Tuesday.
11. **In 2015** — सभी साल के साथ
Eg. (1) I came in 2010.
(2) India became independent in 1947.
12. **In May** — सभी महीनों के साथ
Eg. (1) I came in May.
(2) I completed the course in August.
13. **On the 7th of November** — सभी तारीख के साथ
Eg. (1) I came on the 7th of November.
(2) Teachers' day is celebrated on September 5.
14. **At 7 O'clock** — समय के साथ
Eg. (1) She came at quarter to seven.
(2) The meeting started at 10 minutes past 10.

15. In summer — सभी मौसम के साथ
 Eg. (1) It blooms in summer.
 (2) It is foggy in winter.
16. At sunrise — I go to temple at sunrise.
 At sunset — Cattle return to their shelter at sunset.
 At noon — I will come live on facebook at noon.
 At midnight — We heard his cries at midnight.
 At bed time — My son listens to fairy tales at bed time.
 At night — She checks the locks at night before going to bed.
17. In the morning — I go to temple in the morning.
 In the evening — I return home in the evening.
 In the afternoon — I come here in the afternoon.
18. On Tuesday afternoon — She returned home on Monday afternoon.
 On Wednesday evening — We will finalize the deal on Friday evening.
 On a holiday — We met our friends on a holiday.
 On weekdays — I work for ten hours on weekdays.
 On weekends — I sleep for twelve hours on weekends.
 Eg. We will organize a party on Sunday evening.
19. Injurious (हानिकारक) — to
 Eg. (1) Smoking is injurious to health.
 (2) Drinking is injurious to your liver.
20. Part (किसी व्यक्ति से अलग होना) — from
 Eg. (1) I cannot part from my friend.
 (2) She cannot part from her mother.
21. Part (किसी चीज़ से अलग होना) — with
 Eg. (1) He cannot part with his book.
 (2) I cannot part with my belongings.
22. Cope (से निपटना) — with
 Eg. (1) I cannot cope with hot weather.
 (2) She could not cope with the modern technology.
23. Filled (से भरा) — with
 Eg. (1) The bucket was filled with water.
 (2) I filled the mug with coffee.
24. Full (भरा) — of
 Eg. (1) The bucket was full of water.
 (2) Life is full of responsibilities.
25. Deprive (से वंचित) — of
 Eg. (1) He deprived me of my rights.
 (2) Autocrats deprive people of the most basic human rights.
26. Bereft (से वंचित) — of
 Eg. (1) He was bereft of his rights.
 (2) They are bereft of basic human rights.
27. Superior (से बेहतर) — to
 Eg. (1) He is superior to you.
 (2) I am superior to most of my classmates in the matter of technology.

Cope with

Syn.→

**Deal with
Tackle
Handle**

28. **Inferior** (से बदतर) — to
Eg. (1) *This is inferior to that brand.*
 (2) *This brand of cement is inferior to our brand.*
29. **Senior** (वरिष्ठ) — to
Eg. (1) *She is senior to me.*
 (2) *He is senior to most of us.*
30. **Junior** (कनिष्ठ) — to
Eg. (1) *He is junior to her.*
 (2) *Rohan is junior to my brother.*
31. **Prior** (से पहले) — to
Eg. (1) *The train arrived prior to time.*
 (2) *They constructed the flyover prior to the deadline.*
32. **Talk** (V- से बात करना) — to
Eg. (1) *I will talk to you.*
 (2) *We will talk to the manager regarding this issue.*
33. **Talk** (N- वार्तालाप) — with
Eg. (1) *The talk with Pakistan failed.*
 (2) *The PM had a talk with the CM of UP.*
34. **Listen** (सुनना) — to
Eg. (1) *Please listen to me.*
 (2) *I listen to old songs.*
35. **Suggest** (सलाह देना) — to
Eg. (1) *I suggested to him.*
 (2) *My teacher suggested to me that I should read books.*
36. **Agree** (किसी व्यक्ति से सहमत) — with
Eg. (1) *I agree with you.*
 (2) *She agreed with her mother.*
37. **Agree** (किसी बात से सहमत) — to
Eg. (1) *I agree to your proposal.*
 (2) *She agreed to the idea of court marriage.*
38. **Avail** (लाभ उठाना) — of
Eg. (1) *I availed myself of the opportunity.*
 (2) *You should avail yourself of this golden chance.*
39. **Annoyed** (किसी व्यक्ति से चिढ़ना) — with
Eg. (1) *I am annoyed with you.*
 (2) *People are annoyed with such opportunists.*
40. **Annoyed** (किसी बात से चिढ़ना) — at
Eg. (1) *I am annoyed at your idiocy.*
 (2) *We are annoyed at the cacophony.*
41. **Angry** (किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा) — with
Eg. (1) *I am angry with you.*
 (2) *She was angry with her children.*
42. **Angry** (किसी बात से गुस्सा) — at
Eg. (1) *I am angry at the mismanagement.*
 (2) *We are angry at the late delivery.*

Cacophony



शोरगुल

43. **Adapt** (ढालना) — to
 Eg. (1) *We adapt ourselves to the environment.*
 (2) *She could not adapt herself to a different culture.*
44. **Adjacent** (के बगल) — to
 Eg. (1) *Your house is adjacent to mine.*
 (2) *China is adjacent to Ladakh.*
45. **Surprised** (आश्चर्य) — at
 Eg. (1) *I am surprised at the result.*
 (2) *She was surprised at your behaviour.*
46. **Amazed** (आश्चर्य) — at
 Eg. (1) *She is amazed at his audacity.*
 (2) *I am amazed at his aggressive behaviour.*
47. **Astonished** (आश्चर्य) — at
 Eg. (1) *He was astonished at her misdemeanour.*
 (2) *We are astonished at China's Brazenness.*
48. **Abide** (अनुपालन करना) — by
 Eg. (1) *I abide by the traffic rules.*
 (2) *We have to abide by the law of the land.*
49. **Comply** (अनुपालन करना) — with
 Eg. (1) *I comply with the law of the land.*
 (2) *Please comply with all the rules.*
50. **Marry** (Active Voice) (शादी करना) — No preposition
 Eg. (1) *She married him.*
 (2) *She married an army officer.*
51. **Married** (Passive Voice) (शादी होना) — to
 Eg. (1) *He was married to Rohini.*
 (2) *She was married to an IAS Officer.*
52. **Favourable** (अनुकूल) — to
 Eg. (1) *CET seems favourable to the students.*
 (2) *Black soil is favourable to the growth of cotton.*
53. **Conducive** (अनुकूल) — to
 Eg. (1) *This climate is not conducive to my health.*
 (2) *This attitude is not conducive to the development of the country.*
54. **Prefer** (से ज्यादा पसंद करना) — to
 Eg. (1) *I prefer tea to coffee.*
 (2) *I prefer death to slavery.*
55. **Obliged** (कृतज्ञ/ एहसानमंद) — to
 Eg. (1) *I am obliged to you.*
 (2) *People are obliged to the government for free electricity.*
56. **Deficient** (कमी होना) — in
 Eg. (1) *This soil is deficient in Nitrogen.*
 (2) *It is deficient in vitamins.*
57. **Lack** (वंचित) — No preposition
 Eg. (1) *You lack common sense.*
 (2) *We lack basic amenities.*

Audacity ↓
 = **Boldness**

Aggressive ↓
 = आक्रामक

Misdemeanour

↓
 a wrong act.

Brazenness

↓
 Undue bravery (घृष्टता)

Amenities

↓
 सुविधाएं

58. Devoid (से वंचित) — of
Eg. (1) Women are devoid of basic human rights in certain countries.
(2) The prisoners are devoid of healthy food in jails.
59. Ashamed (शर्मिदा) — of
Eg. (1) He was ashamed of his conduct.
(2) Are you not ashamed of yourself?
60. Aim_(V) (मकसद होना/ निशाना लगाना) — at
Eg. (1) He aimed the pistol at her.
(2) I aimed my effort at my goal.
61. Suffer (से ग्रस्त) — from
Eg. (1) He is suffering from Cancer.
(2) She is suffering from severe headache.
Note: She suffered heavy loss.
62. Succeed (कामयाब होना) — in
Eg. (1) I succeeded in my first attempt.
(2) She succeeded in her motive.
Note: Jahangir succeeded Akbar.
63. Tired (थक जाना/ त्रस्त हो जाना) — of
Eg. (1) I am tired of this lockdown.
(2) She is tired of the problems.
64. Prevent (रोकना) — from
Eg. (1) They prevented me from entering the hall.
(2) I prevented him from boarding a running train.
65. Fond (पसंद) — of
Eg. (1) I am fond of sweets.
(2) I am fond of classical songs.
66. Sick (से परेशान) — of
Eg. (1) I am sick of his tantrums.
(2) I am sick of this lockdown now.
67. Laugh (पर हँसना/ मजाक उड़ाना) — at
Eg. (1) Don't laugh at the monkeys.
(2) He laughed at me.
68. Consist (से भरा) — of
Eg. (1) This compartment consists of ten rooms.
(2) The book consists of fifteen chapters.
69. Good (अच्छा) — at
Eg. (1) I am good at writing essays.
(2) She is good at singing.
70. Confident (विश्वास होना) — of
Eg. (1) I am confident of my performance.
(2) I am confident of your result.
71. Equal (Adj) (बराबर) — to
Eg. (1) 12 to the power 2 is equal to 144.
(2) His value is equal to yours.
72. Equal (V) (बराबर) — No preposition
Eg. (1) Nothing can equal mother's love.
(2) You can't equal your parents' generosity.
73. Proud (गौरवान्वित) — of
Eg. (1) I am proud of you.
(2) We are proud of Sachin's achievements.

Tantrums

↓
नखरे

Generosity

↓
उदारता

74. **Essential** — to
Eg. (1) Contentment is essential to happiness.
(2) Food is essential to life.
75. **Belong** (का होना) — to
Eg. (1) This luggage belongs to me.
(2) It belongs to the common people.
76. **Negligent** (लापरवाह होना) — of
Eg. (1) He is negligent of his duty.
(2) The police officers were negligent of their duties.
77. **In spite** (के बावजूद) — of
Eg. (1) He passed in spite of his illness.
(2) In spite of working hard, he failed.
78. **Despite** (के बावजूद) — No preposition
Eg. (1) Despite working hard, he failed.
(2) Despite running late, the train arrived on time.
79. **Fortunate** (भाग्यशाली) — of
Eg. (1) I am fortunate of having such loving students.
(2) I am fortunate of being an educated girl.
80. **Accompanied** (से साथ होना) — by
Eg. (1) He was accompanied by his friend.
(2) The PM was accompanied by the Home Minister.
81. **Accuse** (आरोप लगाना) — of
Eg. (1) They accused him of robbery.
(2) The police was accused of malpractices.
82. **Afraid** (डरा) — of
Eg. (1) I am afraid of darkness.
(2) We are not afraid of you.
83. **Aware** (से अवगत) — of
Eg. (1) We are aware of our rights.
(2) She was aware of the danger.
84. **Beware** (से सावधान) — of
Eg. (1) Beware of dogs.
(2) Delhi is a good place but beware of pollution.
85. **Busy** (ब्यस्त) — with
Eg. (1) She is busy with his work.
(2) The government was busy with the Lok Sabha election.
86. **Capable** (सक्षम) — of
Eg. (1) I am capable of doing anything
(2) I am capable of lifting this box.
87. **Close** (के नजदीक) — to
Eg. (1) We are close to our destination.
(2) You are close to fulfilling your dreams.
88. **Compare** (समान चीज से तुलना) — with
Eg. (1) Don't compare me with him.
(2) Compare Jio with Airtel.
89. **Compare** (असमान चीज से तुलना) — to
Eg. (1) Life is compared to journey.
(2) Life is compared to a stage.

Malpractices

↓
कुकृत्य, गलत काम

90. **Conscious** (से अवगत) — of
Eg. (1) I am conscious of my drawbacks.
(2) She is conscious of her duties.
91. **Contrary** (से विपरीत) — to
Eg. (1) He spoke contrary to the norms.
(2) Don't behave contrary to the law of the land.
92. **Convicted** (दोषी होना) — of
Eg. (1) He was convicted of murder.
(2) The four accused were convicted of raping and murdering Nirbhaya.
93. **Dear** (बहुत प्यारा) — to
Eg. (1) Life is dear to everyone.
(2) Self respect is dear to all.
94. **Desire** (इच्छा) — for
Eg. (1) He has no desire for wealth.
(2) I have a great desire for knowledge.
95. **Desirous** (इच्छुक) — of
Eg. (1) He is not desirous of wealth.
(2) She is desirous of a government job.
96. **Dream** (सपना देखना) — of
Eg. (1) I dream of a big house.
(2) She dreams of marrying a prince.
97. **Due** (के कारण) — to
Eg. (1) He failed due to his laziness.
(2) The accident was due to your negligence.
98. **Escape** (से बचना) — from
Eg. (1) He escaped from the jail.
(2) She escaped from getting punished.
99. **Envious** (से ईर्ष्यालु) — of
Eg. (1) She is envious of your beauty.
(2) I am envious of his success.
100. **Grateful** (कृतज्ञ) — to
Eg. (1) I am grateful to god.
(2) We must be grateful to our parents.
101. **Thankful** (कृतज्ञ / आभारी) — to
Eg. (1) I am thankful to you.
(2) She is thankful to him for his advice.
102. **Obedient** (आज्ञाकारी) — to
Eg. (1) She is obedient to her parents.
(2) Be obedient to your teachers.
103. **Object** (के विरुद्ध होना) — to
Eg. (1) I objected to his proposal.
(2) I objected to his advancements.
104. **Responsible for something** (जिम्मेदार) — for
Eg. (1) He is responsible for the bank robbery.
(2) You are responsible for all your actions.

Negligence

↓
लापरवाही

105. **Stare** (घूरना) — at
Eg. (1) He is staring at me. (2) The terrorist stared at us.
106. **Satisfied** (संतुष्ट) — with
*Eg. (1) I am satisfied with your performance.
 (2) She is satisfied with the result.*
107. **Think** (सोचना) — of
Eg. (1) He thought of a plan. (2) Think of a new idea.
108. **Worthy** (के लायक) — of
*Eg. (1) She is worthy of a reward.
 (2) You are worthy of a comfortable life.*

Some Phrase Preposition

1. According to (के अनुसार) → as stated by
E.g:- According to the terms and conditions, the company will have to finish it in two years.
2. In accordance with (के अनुसार) → as stated
E.g:- In accordance with the terms and conditions, you will have to work for us for next two years.
3. By dint of (के बल पर) → by force of, because of
E.g:- I passed the exam by dint of hard work.
4. In case of (अगर) → in the event of
E.g:- In case of emergency, call 100.
5. By virtue of (के बल पर) → by the authority of
E.g:- The judge can pass any order by virtue of his power.
6. Owing to (के कारण) → due to
'Owing to' means 'due to' but there are a few differences.
'Owing to' एवं 'due to' अर्थ में एक ही हैं। दोनों के बीच मुख्यतः दो अंतर हैं-
- E.g:-
- (1) वाक्य की शुरुआत 'Owing to' से करें 'due to' से नहीं
- (a) A sentence should start with 'owing to' and not 'due to'.
Due to heavy rain, I could not come. (×)
Owing to heavy rain, I could not come. (✓)
- (Note: SSC accepts that a sentence can start with 'due to')
(नोट : SSC 'due to' से वाक्य की शुरुआत को सही मानती है)
- This rule is not important as far as modern English is concerned.
- Note: 'Due to' comes after different forms of 'be'
(नोट : 'Be' के किसी भी form के बाद 'due to' का प्रयोग होता है)
- The accident was owing to heavy rain. (×)
Form of be
- The accident was due to heavy rain. (✓)
Form of be

• With reference to (के सम्बन्ध में) → in context of

E.g:-

With reference to your letter, dated 27th July 2020, I hereby submit my reply.

• In order to (ताकि) → for the purpose of

E.g:-

We vacated the premises in order to avoid litigation.

See the difference

1. I acted **according** to your order. / I acted **in accordance with** your order.
2. Mother Teresa had **affection for** all. / Mother Teresa was **affectionate to** all.
3. He has **ambition for** fame. / He is **ambitious of** fame.
4. I am **capable of** doing hard work. / I have **capacity for** doing hard work.
5. I have **confidence in** myself. / I am **confident of** his performance.
6. He has **desire for** money and fame. / He is **desirous of** money and fame.

Fixed Preposition

'To' comes with the following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abhorrent <i>to</i>	causing or deserving strong dislike	घिनौना
Access <i>to</i>	reach	पहुँच
Accountable <i>to</i>	obliged to accept responsibility	उत्तरदायी
Accustomed <i>to</i>	usual or regular	आदी होना
Addicted <i>to</i>	unable to stop using, habitual	लत लगना
Adhere <i>to</i>	to cause to stick fast	पालन करना, जुड़े रहना
Adjacent <i>to</i>	sharing a border	सटा हुआ
Affectionate <i>to</i>	feeling or showing love and affection	रुनेही
Agreeable <i>to</i>	ready or willing to agree	सहमत
Allegiance <i>to</i>	loyalty to a person, country, group, etc.	निष्ठा
Alternative <i>to</i>	substitute	विकल्प

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Answerable <i>to</i>	required to explain actions or decisions to someone	जवाबदेह
Antidote <i>to</i>	a substance that stops the harmful effects of a poison	विष-नाशक
Attention <i>to</i>	notice, interest, or awareness	ध्यान
Attune <i>to</i>	to bring into harmony	लय में करना
Averse <i>to</i>	having a feeling of dislike	प्रतिकूल
Beneficial <i>to</i>	producing good or helpful results or effects	फायेमंद
Blind <i>to</i>	unable to see (fault etc)	(के प्रति अंधा)
Comparable <i>to</i>	being similar or about the same	तुलनीय
Complement <i>to</i>	to complete something else or make it better	पूरक
Conform <i>to</i>	to obey or agree to something	अनुरूप
Detrimental <i>to</i>	causing damage or injury	हानिकारक
Devoted <i>to</i>	completely loyal	भक्त
Disgrace <i>to</i>	to cause to lose respect or be humiliated	अपमान
Due <i>to</i>	because	के कारण
Enmity <i>to</i>	a very deep unfriendly feeling	शत्रुता
Equal <i>to</i>	same	बराबरी
Equivalent <i>to</i>	almost same	लगभग बराबर
Essential <i>to</i>	extremely important and necessary	आवश्यक
Exception <i>to</i>	a case where a rule does not apply	अपवाद
Favourable <i>to</i>	showing approval	अनुकूल
Given <i>to</i>	habitual	आदी होना
Harmful <i>to</i>	causing or capable of causing damage or harm	नुकसान पहुंचने वाला
Heir <i>to</i>	a person who has the legal right to receive the property of someone who dies	वारिस
Immune <i>to</i>	not capable of being affected by a disease	प्रतिरक्षा
Important <i>to</i>	having serious meaning or worth	जरूरी

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Important <i>to</i>	having serious meaning or worth	जरूरी
Incidental <i>to</i>	happening as a minor part or result of something else	आकस्मिक
Indebted <i>to</i>	owing something (such as money or thanks) to someone or something	ऋणी
Indifferent <i>to</i>	not interested in or concerned about something	उदासीन
Indigenous <i>to</i>	produced, living, or existing naturally in a particular region or environment	स्वदेशी
Injurious <i>to</i>	causing injury	हानिकारक
Key <i>to</i>	to make something correspond to something else	मौलिक
Look forward <i>to</i>	anticipated with satisfaction	संतुष्टि के साथ आशा करना
Loyal <i>to</i>	having or showing complete and constant support for someone or something	निष्ठावान
Obstruction <i>to</i>	something that blocks	बाधा
Opposite <i>to</i>	not agree	के विरुद्ध
Postscript <i>to</i>	a note or series of notes added at the end of a letter, article, or book	परिशिष्ट भाग
Preface <i>to</i>	an introduction to a book or speech	प्रस्तावना
Prefer <i>to</i>	to like (someone or something) better than someone or something else	के तुलना में ज्यादा पसंद करना
Preferable <i>to</i>	better or more desirable	बेहतर
Profitable <i>to</i>	producing good results or effects	लाभदायक
Prone <i>to</i>	likely to do, have, or suffer from something	से ग्रस्त होने की संभावना
Reduced <i>to</i>	to make (something) smaller in size, amount, number, etc.	को कम करना
Relevant <i>to</i>	relating to a subject in an appropriate way	प्रासंगिक
Repugnance <i>to</i>	a strong feeling of dislike or disgust	घृणा
Resign oneself <i>to</i>	to accept something reluctantly because you cannot change it	बेमन से ही पर स्वीकार

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Sensitive <i>to</i>	likely to cause people to become upset	संवेदनशील
Sequel <i>to</i>	a book, movie, etc., that continues a story begun in another book, movie, etc.	का अगला भाग
Similar <i>to</i>	almost the same	समान
Stick <i>to</i>	to hold to	लगे रहना
Submission <i>to</i>	something that is submitted	प्रस्तुत
Submit <i>to</i>	yield or accept to a superior force	के आगे झुकना
Subscribe <i>to</i>	to pay money to get a publication or service regularly	सदस्यता लेने के लिए
Succumb <i>to</i>	to stop trying to resist something	मर जाना/हार मान जाना
Supplement <i>to</i>	to add something to (something) in order to make it complete	पूरक बनना
Surrender <i>to</i>	to give the control or use of (something) to someone else	समर्पण करना
Susceptible <i>to</i>	easily affected, influenced, or harmed by something	ब्रह्मणक्षम
Swing <i>to</i>	to move with a smooth, curving motion	झूलना
Taken <i>to</i>	to begin to like something	पसंद करना शुरू करना
Tantamount <i>to</i>	equal to something in value, meaning, or effect	समान
Temptation <i>to</i>	a strong urge or desire to have or do something	प्रलोभन
True <i>to</i>	faithful	वफादार होना



KD DEFENCE BRIGADE



SSB (Service Selection Board)

**Join Best Defence
Coaching Institute
to Crack Written Exam
& Interview**

011- 49123978

Fixed Preposition

‘OF’ comes with the following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abhorrence <i>of</i>	strong hatred	ब्रह्मण
Accused <i>of</i>	one charged with an offence	अभियुक्त
Afraid <i>of</i>	filled with fear	डरा हुआ
Ambitious <i>of</i>	having a desire of	महत्वाकांक्षी
Anxious <i>of</i>	causing or showing fear or nervousness	चिंतित
Ashamed <i>of</i>	feeling shame, guilt, or disgrace	शर्मिदा
Assurance <i>of</i>	the state of being sure or certain about something	आश्वासन
Aware <i>of</i>	knowing that something (such as a situation, condition, or problem) exists	अवगत
Bereft <i>of</i>	no longer having it, deprived	वंचित
Beware <i>of</i>	to be careful	सावधान रहना
Boast <i>of</i>	a reason to be proud	डींग मारना
Capable <i>of</i>	able to do something	सक्षम
Cautious <i>of</i>	careful about avoiding danger or risk	सर्तक
Certain <i>of</i>	not having any doubt about something	पक्का होना
Charge <i>of</i>	to make a person responsible for something	के प्रभारी
Composed <i>of</i>	calm and in control of your emotions	शांत
Consist <i>of</i>	to be made up of (something)	से बना हुआ
Confident <i>of</i>	showing that you have confidence	आश्वस्त होना

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Conscious <i>of</i>	aware	जागरूक
Convicted <i>of</i>	to prove or find guilty	अपराधी ठहराया हुआ
Convinced <i>of</i>	to cause (someone) to believe that something is true	यकीन करना
Deprived <i>of</i>	not having the things that are needed for a good or healthy life	वंचित
Devoid <i>of</i>	lacking	वंचित
Diffident <i>of</i>	lacking confidence	आत्मविश्वासहीन
Disapprove <i>of</i>	to officially refuse to approve or accept (something)	अस्वीकार करना
Dispose <i>of</i>	to get rid of something	छुटकारा पाना
Embarrassed <i>of</i>	ashamed	शर्मिंदा
Envious <i>of</i>	feeling or showing a desire to have what someone else has	ईर्ष्यालु
Formed <i>of</i>	organized in a way characteristic of living matter	के शैकीन
Frightened <i>of</i>	to cause to become afraid	का गठन
Get rid <i>of</i>	to become free from something	छुटकारा पाना
Guilty <i>of</i>	responsible for committing a crime or doing something bad or wrong	अपराधी
Lack <i>(N)</i>	deficient	की कमी
Need <i>(N)</i>	to require	जरूरत
Proof <i>of</i>	something which shows that something else is true or correct	प्रमाण होना
Scared <i>of</i>	to be frightened or worried	डरा हुआ
Shortage <i>of</i>	a condition in which there is not enough of something needed	कमी होना

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Sure <i>of</i>	ascertain	निश्चित होना
Void <i>(N)</i>	null or containing nothing	रिक्त
Want <i>of</i>	to need (something)	की इच्छा होना
Wary <i>of</i>	marked by being cautious	सावधान
Worthy <i>of</i>	deserving respect, attention	के योग्य

Fixed Preposition

‘For’ comes with the following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Affection <i>for</i>	a feeling of liking for someone or something	के लिए स्नेह
Affection <i>for</i>	feeling or showing love and affection	स्नेही
Ambition <i>for</i>	a particular goal or aim	महत्वाकांक्षा
Anxiety <i>for</i>	fear or nervousness about what might happen	चिंता
Appetite <i>for</i>	a physical desire for food	भूख
Contempt <i>for</i>	a feeling that someone or something is not worthy of any respect or approval	अवमानना
Canvass <i>for</i>	to ask (the people in an area) what they think about a candidate, project, idea, etc.	मत माँगना
Craving <i>for</i>	a very strong desire for something	तृष्णा
Desire <i>for</i>	to want or wish for (something)	इच्छा
Hope <i>for</i>	expect	आशा
Liking <i>for</i>	a feeling of regard or fondness	पसंद करना
Yearn <i>for</i>	to desire very much	के लिए लालसा करना

Fixed Preposition

‘From’ comes with the following words

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Abstain <i>from</i>	to choose not to do or have something	परहेज करना
Abstinence <i>from</i>	the practice of not doing or having something that is wanted	परहेज करना
Debar <i>from</i>	to officially prevent (someone) from having or doing something	निषेध करना
Derive <i>from</i>	to take or get (something) from (something else)	से निकालना या हासिल करना
Descent <i>from</i>	an act of coming or going down in location or condition	से नीचे जाना
Desist <i>from</i>	to stop doing something	करना बंद कर देना
Deviate <i>from</i>	tent or to be different from what is usual or expected	(रास्ते से हटना)
Emerge <i>from</i>	to become known or come from	उभरना
Escape <i>from</i>	to get away from a dangerous place or situation	सुरक्षित निकल जाना
Exemption <i>from</i>	permission not to pay or do something	छूट
Prevent <i>from</i>	to stop (something) from happening or existing	रोकना
Prohibit <i>from</i>	to order (someone) not to use or do something	निषेध
Protect <i>from</i>	to keep (someone or something) from being harmed	बचाना
Recover <i>from</i>	to become healthy after an illness or injury	स्वस्थ होना
Refrain <i>from</i>	to stop yourself from doing something	परहेज करना
Resign <i>from</i>	to give up (a job or position) in a formal manner	त्यागपत्र देना
Respite <i>from</i>	relief	सहत

Fixed Preposition

‘ON’ comes with the following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Comment	to make a statement about someone or something	टिप्पणी करना
Deliberate <i>on</i>	to think about or discuss something very carefully in order to make a decision	विचार करना
Depend <i>on</i>	to be subject to determination by the situation	पर निर्भर
Dwell <i>on</i>	to live in a particular place	में रहना
Embark <i>on</i>	to begin a journey	यात्रा शुरू करना
Encroach <i>on</i>	to gradually move or go into an area that is beyond the usual or desired limits	अतिक्रमण करना
Impose <i>on</i>	to cause (something, such as tax) to affect someone or something by using your authority	कर लगाना
Insist <i>on</i>	to demand that something happen or that someone do something	आग्रह करना
Intrude <i>on</i>	to come or go into a place where you are not wanted or welcome	पर अतिक्रमण करना
Trample <i>on</i>	to cause damage or pain by walking or stepping heavily on something or someone	पैर तले कुचलना

‘IN’ comes with the following words

Absorbed <i>in</i>	having one's attention wholly engaged or occupied	अवशोषित
Accomplished <i>in</i>	very skillful, having or showing the skill of an expert	निपुण
Assiduous <i>in</i>	very hard working	परिश्रमी
Bigoted <i>in</i>	blindly devoted to some creed, opinion, or practice	धर्मांध, कट्टर व्यक्ति
Dabble <i>in</i>	to take part in an activity in a way that is not serious	शौकिया तौर पर कुरु करना
Deficient <i>in</i>	not good enough, lacking	अपूर्ण, कमी
Diligent <i>in</i>	showing steady and earnest care and hard work	मेहनती
Excel <i>in</i>	to be better than others	श्रेष्ठ होना

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Experienced <i>in</i>	having knowledge or skill in a particular field	अनुभवी
Indulge <i>in</i>	to allow (yourself) to have or do something as a special pleasure	लिप्त होना
Interested <i>in</i>	wanting to learn more about something or to become involved in something	रूची
Involved <i>in</i>	connected with something	शामिल होना
Persist <i>in</i>	to continue to occur or exist beyond the usual, expected, or normal time	लगे रहना
Presevere <i>in</i>	to continue doing something though it is difficult	लगे रहना
Proficient <i>in</i>	good at doing something	कुशल
Remiss <i>in</i>	not showing enough care and attention	बेपरवाह
Versed <i>in</i>	skilled in something	निपुण

Fixed Preposition

‘With’ comes with following words :

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Acquaintance <i>with</i>	Knowledge as a result study or experience	जान-पहचान
Afflicted <i>with</i>	caused pain or suffering	पीड़ित
Alliance <i>with</i>	a union or association	संधि
Associate <i>with</i>	to combine or unite with another for mutual benefit	सहयोगी
Bear <i>with</i>	to suffer	सहना
Beset <i>with</i>	to cause problems or difficulties for (someone or something)	(किसी के लिए) परेशानी उत्पन्न करना
Busy <i>with</i>	full of activity or work	व्यस्त रहना
Clash <i>with</i>	a short fight	टकराव
Coincide <i>with</i>	to happen at the same time as something else	एक समय पर होना
Compatible <i>with</i>	capable of existing together in harmony	अनुकूल
Compliant <i>with</i>	inclined to agree with others	आज्ञाकारी
Quarrel <i>with</i>	to fight	लड़ाई करना

Words	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi
Remonstrate <i>with</i>	to disagree and argue or complain about something	प्रतिवाद करना
Replete <i>with</i>	having much or plenty of something	परिपूर्ण
Satiated <i>with</i>	to satisfy (a need, desire, etc.) fully	तृप्त
Satisfied <i>with</i>	to cause (someone) to be happy or pleased	संतुष्ट
Sympathize <i>with</i>	to feel sorry for someone who is in a bad condition	के साथ सहानुभूति रखना

Exercise-1

Please go through the chapter Preposition given in Volume – 1 and then attempt the questions given below.

- Cheese is made ____ milk.
- The table is made ____ wood.
- He deals ____ garments.
- I cannot deal ____ you.
- Amphibians differ ____ reptiles.
- I differ ____ the authority on this point.
- You can depend ____ me.
- You cannot depend solely ____ this book.
- My coming depends ____ whether I get a ticket to Calcutta or not.
- He is the best student ____ my class.
- Delhi is the best city ____ India.
- The exam will start ____ Monday.
- Smoking is injurious ____ health.
- Open your book ____ page 40.
- He died ____ cancer.
- He died ____ hunger.
- He died ____ harness.
- He was killed ____ an accident.
- He could not succeed despite ____ working hard.
- In spite ____ working hard, he failed.
- We are waiting ____ the result.
- The result is being awaited ____ .
- I cannot part ____ my parents.
- The miserly merchant could not part ____ his money.
- He sat ____ me as the seat next to mine was vacant.
- ____ being a coward, he is fickle-minded too.
- I can cope ____ with any problem.

Answers

- from
- of
- in
- with
- from
- with
- on
- On
- upon
- of
- in
- on
- to
- at
- of
- of
- in
- in
- No preposition required
- of
- for
- No preposition required
- from
- with
- beside
- Besides
- No preposition required

28. There is no co-operation ____ the students of our class.
29. Bi-lateral talks will surely improve the relation ____ India and Pakistan.
30. The boy fell ____ the well.
31. We were sitting ____ the classroom when the boys came the room.
32. All the students stood ____ respectfully when the principal entered the classroom.
33. The architect entered _____ an agreement with the contractor.
34. The bill was passed _____ pandemonium.
35. The lion jumped _____ the deer.

Answers

28. among
 29. between
 30. into
 31. in, into
 32. up, no preposition required
 33. into
 34. into
 35. upon

S.No	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
1.	Made from	When the form changes.	जब रूप बदल जाए	Ex. Bread is made from flour.
2.	Made of	When the form does not change.	किसी चीज का बना होना/जब रूप न बदले	Ex. Shoes are made of leather.
3.	Deal in	To buy and sell particular	व्यापार करना	Ex. He deals in books.
4.	Deal with	To manage with someone	किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु से निपटना	Ex. The court will deal with the culprit.
5.	Differ from	To be different from	भिन्न होना	Ex. His brother differs from her in habits.
6.	Differ with	to disagree with someone.	किसी (व्यक्ति से) अलग मत होना	Ex. He differed with his employees regarding the consequences of GST.
7.	Depend on	Put trust in some person with confidence.	किसी व्यक्ति पर निर्भर करना	Ex. His parents depend on him.

S.No	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
8.	Depend on	Put trust in a thing with confidence	किसी वस्तु पर निर्भर होना	Ex. I depend on this book for English.
9.	Depend upon	When an action depends on some condition.	जब कोई कार्य दूसरी स्थिति पर निर्भर करें	Ex. I can go to the movie but it depends upon whether my parents will let me go or not.
12.	On Monday/Tuesday etc.	we use 'on' with days.	'Days' के 'on' साथ का प्रयोग होता है	Ex. He reached Mumbai on Saturday.
13.	Injurious to	to have bad effect.	के लिए हानिकारक	Ex. Drinking is injurious to health.
14.	Died of	When a disease is the cause.	किसी बिमारी से मरना जो प्रत्यक्ष कारण है	Ex. He died of brain tumour.
15.	Died from	when some reason is the	किसी कारण से मृत्यु होना	Ex. He died from thirst.
16.	Die in harness	A phrase that means 'to die while in service'.	कार्यकाल के दौरान मृत्यु	Ex. Indira Gandhi died in harness.
17.	Die in harness	A phrase that means 'to die while in service'.	कार्यकाल के दौरान मृत्यु	Ex. Indira Gandhi died in harness.
18.	Killed in an accident	Note: In an accident, a person is killed. 'Died' is a wrong word here	नोट: Accident में 'Killed' शब्द का प्रयोग होता है ना कि 'died' होगा	Ex. Ramesh was killed in a plane crash.

S.No	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
19.	Despite does not take 'of'.	'In spite of' means 'despite'. Since both mean the same, we sometimes wrongly use of with 'despite'. Synonyms: Nevertheless, Notwithstanding	'In spite of' एवं despite का अर्थ है 'के बावजूद'। कई बार हम 'Despite' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग कर लेते हैं जो गलत है।	Ex. Despite being late, he was allowed to take the exam.
20.	Wait for	Wait for someone	की प्रतीक्षा करना	Ex. He is waiting for his reply.
21.	Waited for = awaited	'Awaited' does not take for because Waited for = awaited	'Awaited' के बाद 'for' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।	Ex. The latest news is being awaited.
22.	Part from	to go away from someone.	किसी व्यक्ति से अलग होना	Ex. You should not part from him in anger.
23.	Part with	to separate from something	किसी वस्तु से अलग होना	Ex. I don't want to part with any of my books.
24.	Beside	By the side of	के बगल में	Ex. He sat beside me.
25.	Besides	Apart from	के अलावा	Ex. Besides being intelligent, he is laborious too.
26.	Cope with	To handle Note: 'Cope up with' is wrong.	निपटना	Ex. She can cope with the present situation.
27.	Among	Refers to the association or in company of more than two.	दो से अधिक के बीच में	Ex. He distributed the sweets among the students of the school.

S.No	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
28.	Among	Refers to the association or in company of more than two.	दो से अधिक के बीच में	Ex. He distributed the sweets among the students of the school.
29.	Between	Refers to the association of two	दो के बीच में	Ex. There is no love lost between Rahul and Ramesh.
30.	Fall into	'into' shows motion	'into' किसी वस्तु/पानी इत्यादि के अंदर जाता हुआ दर्शाता है।	Ex. He fell into the pit.
31.	Sit in Come into	in  into 		Ex. Rajni was sitting in the room
32.	Enter does not take preposition 'into' if it means to 'come into'.	To go or come in	अंदर जाना	Ex. The goons entered the bedroom and shot the politician dead.
33.	Enter into	to make oneself a party to an agreement.	किसी समझौते का हिस्सा होना	Ex. He refused to enter into an agreement with his tenant.
34	'Amid' can come with both countable and uncountable nouns.	Amid means 'during in case of uncountable noun and 'among' in case of countable noun.	के बीच के/दौरान	Ex. 1) His is cry for help drowned amid the noise. 2) My wallet fell amid the fighting.
35.	upon	When something/someone strikes the surface of the other while in motion.	के ऊपर (गिरना/कूदना)	Ex. The robber jumped upon the running train.

Exercise-2

Answers

36. Put all the books _____ the table.
37. I told the truth _____ his face.
38. I was filled _____ wonder.
39. You should learn it word _____ word.
40. It is half past eight _____ my watch.
41. The king deprived the merchant _____ his belongings.
42. China is _____ the north of India.
43. I sat _____ the tree _____ a cemented platform.
44. I sat _____ the shade of the tree.
45. My watch is superior _____ yours.
46. His dress is different _____ mine.
47. The matter will be looked _____ by the committee.
48. I will talk _____ you later.
49. We had a talk _____ them.
50. Please listen _____ me.
51. I provided money _____ him.
52. I provided him _____ money.
53. I suggested _____ him to take the exam.
54. My teacher told _____ me to solve the easy questions first.
55. He proposed _____ me to take my children for a walk.
56. He said _____ me to be upfront in my attitude.
57. We reached _____ Delhi last night at 9 p.m.
58. Both the parties reached _____ an agreement.
59. We go _____ home at 8 p.m.
60. I left _____ college at 10 a.m.
61. I agree _____ you.
62. I agree _____ your opinion
63. I am annoyed _____ him.
64. I am annoyed _____ the mismanagement.
65. We must avail ourselves _____ the opportunity.
66. She was angry _____ her children.
67. She was angry _____ his callousness.
68. Fishes are adapted _____ life in water.
69. His bungalow is adjacent _____ mine.
70. This serum is an antidote _____ snake's poison.
71. I apologize _____ you _____ my mistake.
72. I have no appetite _____ sweets.
73. We were not apprised _____ his demise.
74. We were astonished _____ his audacity.
75. I am averse _____ smoking.
76. The management did not accede _____ the workers' demand.
77. I am acquainted _____ all the places of Delhi.
78. We must abide _____ the rules of the college.
36. on 37. to
38. With 39. for
40. by
41. of
42. to
43. under, on
44. in
45. to
46. from
47. into
48. to
49. with
50. to
51. to
52. with
53. to
54. no preposition required
55. to
56. to
57. no preposition required
58. at
59. no preposition required
60. for
61. with
62. to
63. with
64. at
65. of
66. with
67. at
68. to
69. to
70. to
71. to, for
72. for
73. of
74. at
75. to
76. to
77. with
78. by

79. We must comply _____ the rules of the college.
80. We are answerable _____ God _____ all our deeds.
81. He was bereft _____ all possession.
82. The queen bestowed the title of Knighthood _____ him.
83. The queen bestowed him _____ the title of Knighthood.
84. Hearing the news, he became red _____ anger.
85. It is ten minutes five _____ my _____ watch. I will reach there 5 p.m.
86. I will stand _____ you _____ thick and thin.
87. The cliff hangs _____ the sea.
88. This bus plies _____ Delhi and Noida.
89. The money lender charges interest _____ 9 percent per annum.
90. Cloth is sold _____ yard.
91. The man injured in the accident succumbed _____ his injuries.
92. We must immediately dispense _____ the service of the dishonest clerk.
93. Ram married _____ Sita.
94. Ram was married _____ Sita.
95. This climate is conducive _____ health.
96. He is entitled _____ a suitable reward.
97. I prefer tea _____ coffee.
98. There is no exception _____ this rule.
99. I will be obliged _____ you _____ your help.
100. I inquired _____ him about the progress.

Answers

79. with
80. to, for
81. of
82. upon
83. with
84. with
85. to, by
86. by, through
87. over
88. between
89. at
90. by
91. to
92. with
93. no preposition required
94. to
95. to
96. to
97. to
98. to
99. to, for
100. Of

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
36.	on 	Touching the surface of	‘पर’	Eg. He sat on the bench.
37.	To someone's	directly/openly	सीधे-सीधे मुंह पर	Eg. He told the truth to his face.
38.	Fill with (something)	When filled with something.	भरना (किसी वस्तु से)	Eg. He is filled with grief.
39.	Word for word	Exact repetition of the same words/verbatim	शब्दशः	Ex. He translated the whole matter word for word.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
40.	Deprived takes fixed preposition 'of'		'Deprived' (से वंचित होना) के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग होता है।	Eg. He was deprived of even the basic necessities of life.
41.	In my watch/on my watch is wrong.	Note: 'by' one's watch/clock is correct.		Eg. It is half past five by my watch.
42.	'to' the north/south etc (to show direction).			Eg. Sri Lanka is to the south of India.
43.	Under the tree On the cemented plat from			Eg. After getting tired, he sat under the tree on the ground.
44.	In the shade Note: 'Under the shade' is wrong.			Eg. He sat in the shade of the tree.
45.	Adjectives ending in 'ior' take preposition 'to'.		जो Adjectives 'ior' में खत्म होते हैं, उनके बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।	Eg. Superior, inferior, prior, senior, junior etc. take 'to'.
46.	Different from	Be unlike	भिन्न होना	Eg. His nature is different from that of his brother.
47.	Look into (a matter)	To investigate	जाँच होना	Eg. The police will look into the matter.
48.	Talk (Verb) to (a person)	Having a conversation	बात करना	Eg. I talked to him.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
49.	Talk (Noun) with (someone)	Having a conversation	बातचीत का होना	Eg. I had a talk with him on this issue.
50.	Listen	Give someone's attention to a sound.	सुनना (ध्यान से)	Eg. He is listening to the sermon of the priest.
51.	Provide money to him. Direct obj. Indirect obj.			Eg. She has always provided help to her children.
52.	Provide him to with money. Indirect obj. Direct obj.			Eg. We cannot provide you with any information.
S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
53.	Provide and suggest take	Other verbs that 'to' after them when an object follows are- say, suggest, propose, speak, reply, explain, complain, talk, listen, write report, pray and describe.		Eg. I suggested to him to take medicine on time.
54.	'Told' does not take 'to' if followed by an object	Verb that do not take 'to' when followed by an object are- Advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, thank, welcome, warn, forbid, order, compliment, congratulate, remind.		Eg. I warned him to stay alert.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
57.	'Reach' does not take any preposition if followed by the name of the destination.			Eg. 1) reached Delhi. 2) I reached home late.
58.	Reach at an agreement Reach at a conclusion.		किसी समझोते/निष्कर्ष पर पहुँचना	Eg. The committee reached at a conclusion.
59.	'Go'/'come' 'arrive'/'reach' does not take any preposition if followed by 'home'			Eg. I come home at 7 p.m.
60.	'Leave for' some destination	To depart for	के लिए खाना होना	Eg. He left for Delhi at 9 p.m.
61.	Agree with (someone)	To have the same Opinion (with a person)	सहमत होना (किसी व्यक्ति से)	Eg. I come home at 7 p.m.
62.	Agree to (a matter)	To have the same opinion.	सहमत होना (किसी मुद्दे पर)	Eg. He agreed to my suggestion.
63.	Annoyed with (a person)	To disturb or irritate someone	नाराज होना	Eg. We were annoyed with him.
64.	Annoyed at (something)	To get angry	नाराज होना	Eg. I was annoyed at his behaviour.
65.	Avail (verb) of	To be of use or advantage	लाभ उठाना	Eg. I availed myself of the opportunities.
66.	Angry with (someone)		क्रोधित होना (किसी वस्तु से)	Eg. Are you angry with me?

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
67.	Angry at (someone)		क्रोधित होना (किसी वस्तु पर)	Eg. She you angry with me?
68.	Adapted to (circumstances)	To make suitable to or fit for a specific use.	परिस्थिति के अनुकूल होना	Eg. They adapted themselves to the changes quickly.
69.	Adjacent to	Lying near, close	समीप	Eg. The temple is adjacent to my house.
70.	Antidote to (some poison)	To lessen the effect of poison.	विषनाशक	Eg. There is no antidote to my house.
71.	Apologize to (someone) Apologize for (something)	To regret for doing wrong. To regret for doing wrong.	क्षमा मांगना (यक्ति से) क्षमा मांगना (कोई कार्य के लिए)	Eg. He apologized to me. Eg. He apologized to me.
72.	Appetite for (something)	A strong wish or urge	इच्छा/भूख	Eg. I have no appetite for food.
73.	Apprised of	To inform about something	सूचित करना	Eg. The reporter was apprised of the new developments.
74.	Astonish at (one's misconduct)	To fill with wonder	अचम्भित होना	Eg. We were astonished at his behaviour.
75.	Averse to	Having a feeling of opposition or dislike	प्रतिकूल होना	Eg. Javed is averse to drinking.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
77.	Accede to	Agree to a demand or request	को स्वीकार करना/मान जाना	Eg. He graciously acceded to our request.
78.	Acquainted with	To make familiar	से वाकिफ होना	Eg. We got acquainted with each other.
79.	Abide by	To follow a rule	पालन करना	Eg. They promised to abide by the rules of the contest.
80.	Comply with	To act in accordance with rule, wishes etc	के अनुसार चलना/का अनुसरण करना	Eg. You are obliged to comply with the order of the court.
81.	Answerable to (somebody) Answerable for	To explain one's actions To be responsible for something	को जवाबदेह होना	Eg. The Delhi Police is department answerable to the Central Govt. Eg. Customers are answerable for the damage they cause.
81.	Bereft of	Deprived of something	से वंचित होना	Eg. They are bereft of their life with dignity.
82.	Bestow (something) upon (a person)	to present as a gift	प्रदान करना /नवाशना	Eg. The trophy was bestowed upon the winner.
83.	Bestow (someone) with (some thing)			Eg. He was bestowed with the trophy.
84.	Red with anger	A feeling of great annoyance.	बहुत गुस्से में होना/गुस्से से लाल होना	Eg. He became red with anger at her attitude.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
85.	Ten minutes to five – 4:55 Ten minutes past five - 05:05	‘At’ is used to express exact time.		Eg. It is 5pm by watch. Eg. I will reach at 5 pm.
86.	Stand by	Support or remain loyal to someone.	समर्थन करना	Eg. Her relatives always stand by her.
87.	Over Higher in position  but not in touch			Eg. The helicopter hovered over my house.
88.	Ply between	To go or travel regularly	नियमित यात्रा करना	Eg. This train plies between Delhi and Panipat.
90.	Sold by yard/dozen etc.			Eg. Oranges are sold by dozen.
91.	Succumb to	To give up	झुक जाना/दम तोड़ देना	Eg. He succumbed to his injuries.
92.	Dispense with	To get rid of	से छुटकारा पाना	Eg. Let’s dispense with the formalities.
95.	Married (Passive voice) is followed by ‘to’			Eg. He married her. Eg. He was married to her.
96.	Conducive to	Making a certain	लाभकारी होना	Eg. A positive attitude is conducive to good health.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
97.	Entitled to	To give (a person) a title, right or claim to something	का अधिकार प्राप्त होना/के लायक होना	Eg. He is entitled to a suitable reward.
98.	Prefer to	Like one thing more than other.	से श्रेयस्कर	Eg. I prefer diamond to gold.
99.	Exception to	A case where a rule does not apply	से छूट प्राप्त होना	Eg. I take strong exception to your assessment of his singing ability.
100.	'Inquired' is followed' by of			Eg. I inquired of the clerk about the departure time of the train.

Exercise-3

101. He insisted _____ going abroad.
102. He was born _____ a poor family.
103. He was born _____ poor parents.
104. Great men are indifferent _____ pleasure or pain.
105. I am suspicious _____ some illegal activities.
106. Junk food is deficient _____ vitamins and minerals.
107. He is not ashamed _____ his misconduct.
108. I could not assent _____ his proposal.
109. We must aim _____ excellence in whatever we do.
110. Wrongdoings beset our path _____ difficulties.
111. Tea is preferable _____ coffee.
112. He invited me _____ tea.
113. He is addicted _____ drinking.
114. A well balanced diet is beneficial _____ health.
115. The example given by you is not relevant _____ the topic of discussion.
116. He is endowed _____ great humour.
117. Working in a carpet factory is detrimental _____ health.
118. You are not eligible _____ this post.
119. He scoffed _____ the idea of indefinite strike.
120. They jeered _____ him and his idea.

Answers

101. on
102. in
103. to
104. to
105. Of
106. in
107. of
108. to
109. at
110. with
111. to
112. to
113. to
114. to
115. to
116. with
117. To
118. for
119. at
120. at

121. Your agreement is tantamount _____ your confession to the conspiracy.
122. I cannot confide _____ you.
123. The atmosphere comprises _____ many gases.
124. Ignorance _____ law is no excuse.
125. This place is infested _____ pests.
126. I am sick _____ the whole matter.
127. Akbar became an heir _____ the throne at a very early age.
128. I am indebted _____ you _____ your generous act.
129. I have no liking _____ such novels.
130. He succeeded _____ the throne.
131. He succeeded _____ his motive.
132. Do you have a pen to write _____ ?
133. They have no chair to sit _____ .
134. He passed the exam with flying colours by _____ hard work.
135. Where had you been _____ ?
136. We must desist _____ doing anything wrong.
136. We must desist _____ doing anything wrong.
137. I am tired _____ waiting .
138. I intend _____ visit my uncle's house.
139. I prevented him _____ choosing difficult subjects.
140. If you persist _____ disobeying my orders, you will be punished.
141. He is fond _____ rice.
142. She excels _____ painting.
143. He has a knack _____ painting.
144. I admitted him _____ a reputed school.
145. He cannot distinguish good _____ evil as he is very innocent.
146. Death does not distinguish _____ the rich and the poor.
147. He is blind _____ one eye.
148. The train arrived _____ the station.
149. We arrived _____ India after our summer vacation.
150. Only the results will tell us who is going to succeed _____ the current Prime Minister.

Answers

121. to
122. In
123. No preposition
124. of
125. with needed
126. of
127. to
128. to, for
129. for
130. to
131. in
132. with
133. on
134. The dint of
135. to
136. from
137. of
138. to
139. from
140. in
141. of
142. in
143. for
144. to
145. from
146. between
148. at
149. in
150. No Prep.
needed

	suitable preposition	English	n in Hindi	
101.	Insist on	to say something in a way that is very forceful	पर जोर देना	Eg. I don't know why you insist on talking about it.
102.	Born in (a family place)	-	पैदा होना	Eg. (1) He was born in India.
103.	Born to (parents)	brought into life by birth	पैदा होना	Eg. He was born to noble parents.
104.	Indifferent to	not interested in or concerned about something	उदासीन होना	Eg. He was indifferent to my problems.
105.	Suspicious of	causing a feeling that something is wrong	का संदेही होना	Eg. People are often suspicious of strangers.
106.	Deficient in	not enough	अपूर्ण/कमी होना	Eg. A diet deficient in calcium can lead to weak bones.
107.	Ashamed of	feeling of shame or guilt	के लिए लज्जित होना	Eg. You should be ashamed of yourself.
108.	Assent to	to agree to or approve of something	की स्वीकृति देना	Eg. He assented to the proposal.
109.	Aim' is followed by 'at'	to target some goal etc.	के लिए प्रयत्न करना	Eg. You must aim at giving your best performance.
109.	Beset with	to cause problems or difficulties for someone	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. Her marital life was beset with difficulties.
110.	Beset with	to cause problems or difficulties for someone	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. Her marital life was beset with difficulties.
112.	Invited to	to ask someone to go somewhere	आमंत्रित करना	Eg. Employees are invited to apply for the new position.
113.	Addicted to	devoted to something obsessively	की लत होना	Eg. He is addicted to gambling.

	suitable preposition	English	n in Hindi	
114.	Beneficial to	producing good or helpful results	के लिए लाभकारी होना	Eg. The new drug will be beneficial to many people.
115.	Relevant to	relating to some subject in	के लिए प्रासंगिक	Eg. This topic is relevant to my subject.
116.	Endowed with	to freely provide someone with something.	संपन्न होना/लैस होना	Eg. Some people are endowed with both brain and beauty.
117.	Detrimental to	causing damage or injury.	हानिकारक होना	Eg. Hot and humid weather is detrimental to health.
118.	Eligible for (appointment/election etc)	able to be chosen for something.	के योग्य होना	Eg. She is not eligible for this competition.
119.	Scoffed at	an expression of scorn, derision or contempt.	ताना मारना/उपहास या	Eg. The critics scoffed at his painting.
120.	Jeered at	to laugh at or criticize someone.	उपहास या मजाक उड़ाना/ताना मारना	Eg. The people at the back of the hall jeered at the speaker.
121.	Tantamount to	equal to something in value, meaning or effect.	के समान होना	Eg. His angry speech was tantamount to a declaration of revolt.
122.	Confide in (a person)	to tell something to someone you trust.	को राज बताना	Eg. I only confide in my closest friends.
123.	'Comprise' is not followed by any preposition in Active voice but by 'of' in Passive voice	to be made up of	से बना होना	Eg. This chapter comprises many questions.

	suitable preposition	English	n in Hindi	
124.	Ignorance of	lack of knowledge	अनभिज्ञता होना	Eg. My ignorance of their native language caused problems in our communication.
125.	Infested with	to be in or over some-thing in large number	से ग्रस्त (काफी संख्या में)	Eg. The house is infested with cockroaches.
126.	Sick of	having a strong dislike	से ग्रस्त होना	Eg. His soul is sick of solitude.
127.	Heir to (throne/property etc.)	One who inherits	का उत्तराधिकारी होना	Eg. He is the only heir to his father's property.
128.	Indebted to	owing gratitude to another	के प्रति कृतज्ञ	Eg. He was indebted to him for his kindness.
129.	Liking for	Fondess	के पसंद का	Eg. He has no liking for chocolates.
130.	Succeeded	to come after (something) in a series	के अनुक्रम में होना	Eg. Akbar succeeded Humayun.
131.	Succeeded in	to achieve the desired result	कामयाब होना	Eg. He succeeded in his endeavour.
132.	A pen to write with	when a noun (for eg.-pen) is followed by (an infinitive (to+v1), a suitable preposition follows	—	Eg. The poor have no bed to sleep in.
133.	Chair to sit on	Same as above	—	—
134.	By dint of	By force of	—	Eg. Sandeep passed the exam by the dint of hard work.
136.	Desist from	To stop doing something	परहेज करना	Eg. He advised me to desist from trusting flatterers.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
137.	Tired of	—	से थक जाना	Eg. I am tired of his allegations.
138.	Intend to	to plan or want to do something	इरादा करना	Eg. Harshit is intending to visit Paris.
139.	Prevented from	to stop something from happening	रोक लगाना	Eg. The vaccine prevented the disease from spreading.
140.	Persist in	to continue to do something even though when other people want to stop.	कायम रहना	Eg. Praveen persisted in continuing his studies.
142.	Fond of	To be better than order	श्रेष्ठ होना	Eg. Mansi is fond of playing Chess.
143.	Knack for	an ability, talent needed to do something	दक्षता	Eg. He has a knack for playing football.
144.	Admitted to	to allow entry	दखिल होना	After getting injured, he was admitted to hospital.
145.	Distinguish x from y	to differentiate one from another	फर्क बताना	Eg. I could not distinguish pure silk from mixed silk.
146.	Distinguish between x any y	to make someone different in some way	फर्क बताना	Eg. Rama does not distinguish between the good and bad.
147.	Blind in (an eye)	unable to see	आँख से अंध होना	Eg. He is blind in one eye.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
148.	Arrived at	to reach a place	पहुँचना (जगह पर)	Eg. Passengers arrived at the station on time.
149.	Arrived in	to reach a country after travelling	किसी देश में पहुँचना	Eg. Suresh had already arrived in London by that time.
150.	Succeed (to come after/as an heir) is not followed by any preposition	—	जब 'Succeed' का अर्थ उत्तराधिकारी के रूप में विराजमान होना हो, तो कोई 'preposition' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।	Eg. He succeeded his father and inherited fortune worth millions.

Exercise-4

151. Can you please ___ my website before I publish it?
 (A) find out (B) go through
 (C) set out (D) look up
152. His service has been dispensed ____.
 (A) with (B) of
 (C) for (D) in
153. Jane is annoyed ___ me.
 (A) with (B) on
 (C) against (D) over
154. I am not angry ___ you, Paul.
 (A) with (B) on
 (C) at (D) over
155. The youth should believe ___ God.
 (A) upon (B) in
 (C) on (D) of
156. He was born _____ India.
 (A) of (B) in
 (C) of (D) through

Answers

151. (B) go through
 152. (A) with
 153. (A) with
 154. (A) with
 155. (B) in
 156. (B) in
 156. (B) in

157. The convict tried his level best to justify himself but the judge looked _____ him and found him guilty.
 (A) around (B) at
 (C) through (D) to
158. There is nobody _____ home.
 (A) at (B) in
 (C) on (D) inside
159. I do not agree _____ you.
 (A) for (B) with
 (C) against (D) in
160. He switched the lights _____ and we could see much better.
 (A) off (B) on
 (C) out (D) above
161. Though she is very much interested _____ singing, she is not good _____ it.
 (A) in, at (B) about, in
 (C) on, in (D) of, about
162. We have decided _____ moving to London.
 (A) to (B) against
 (C) towards (D) from
163. My father lives _____ Kondapur, a small village _____ Andhra Pradesh.
 (A) in, in (B) at, in
 (C) at, at (D) in, at
164. The mother was anxious _____ the safety of her son.
 (A) on (B) about
 (C) at (D) upon
165. Have you ever dressed _____ black ?
 (A) up (B) in
 (C) on (D) with
166. Our ancestors had immense difficulty _____ procuring books.
 (A) for (B) of
 (C) in (D) on
167. Why do we always have to submit _____ his authority?
 (A) under (B) with
 (C) for (D) to
168. The master assured her _____ success in the examination.
 (A) of (B) in
 (C) for (D) with

Answers

157. (C) through
 158. (A) at
 159. (B) with
 160. (B) on
 161. (A) in, at
 162. (B) against
 163. (B) at, in
 164. (B) about
 165. (B) in
 166. (C) in
 167. (D) to
 168. (A) of

169. There is still a need ____ further discussion.

- (A) of (B) in
(C) for (D) with

170. I was surprised ____ his result and it came as a pleasant surprise for the whole family.

- (A) by (B) at
(C) for (D) with

Answers

169. (C) for

170. (A) by

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
151.	Go through	to examine methodically	सिलसिलेवार तरीके से जाँच करना	E.g: Please go through this book.
152.	Dispensed with	to go rid of	से छुटकारा पाना	E.g: Let us dispense with the formalities.
153.	Annoyed with someone Annoyed at something		किसी व्यक्ति से विद्व जाना किसी बात/घटना से विद्व जाना	E.g: I am annoyed with him. E.g: I am annoyed mismanagement.
154.	Angry with someone Angry at something		किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा होना, किसी बात पर गुस्सा होना	E.g: I am angry with my cousin. E.g: I am angry at the unpleasant development.
157.	Look through	to examine	जाँच करना	E.g: He looked through my notes and appreciated my efforts.
159.	Agree with someone Agree to something		किसी से सहमत होना किसी बात से सहमत होना	Eg. I agree with my cousin. E.g: I agree to the new proposal.

S.No.	Word with suitable preposition	Explanation in English	Explanation in Hindi	Examples
161.	Interested in something Good at something		में दिलचस्पी होना में अच्छा होना	E.g: I am interested in music. E.g: He is good at singing.
162.	Decide to move to some place Decide against moving to some place		कहीं Shift करने का निर्णय लेना कहीं Shift ना करने का निर्णय लेना	E.g: I decided to move to Mumbai as the climate of Delhi didn't suit me. E.g: I decided against moving to Mumbai as it is a congested city.
163.	When two places are mentioned, 'at' is used with relatively small place and 'in' with relatively big place.		अगर दो स्थानों का उल्लेख हो तो सापेक्ष रूप से छोटे स्थान के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग होगा और सापेक्ष रूप से बड़े स्थान के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होगा।	E.g: I live at Mukherjee Nagar in Delhi.
169.	Need of Need for	Lacking Requirement of more	की कमी होना कुछ ज्यादा की जरूरत होना	E.g : He is in need of some warm clothes. E.g: There is a need for further explanations.
170.	Surprised by someone/something Surprised at someone/something (when opposite was expected)			E.g: I am surprised by your result. E.g.: I am surprised at his brazenness.

Exercise-5 (DETECTING ERROR)

1. (A) The teacher /(B)said the class to open/(C) their books at page 40./(D) no error.
2. (A) Mother Teresa asked a building/(B) where she and her workers /(C)could care for the poor people./(D)no error.
3. (A) "Can you cope up/(B)with all this work?"/(C)he asked./(D)no error.
4. (A) Shelley is/ (B) superior than Byron/(C) in his vision of Democracy./(D) no error.
5. (A) Several prominent figures/(B)involved in the scandal are required to /(C)appear to the investigation committee./(D) no error.
6. (A) Due to heavy work /(B)in the office,/(C) I was unable to catch the five-thirty train./(D) no error.
7. (A) (A)The board will /(B)appoint her as/(C) additional director./(D)no error.
8. (A) The child /(B)was run over/(C) with a private bus./(D)no error.
9. (A) The heavy rains/(B)prevented us/(C) against going out./(D)no error.
10. (A) I/(B)met Jane /(C) in the way./(D) no error.
11. (A) The children were quarrelling between themselves /(B)when all of a sudden it occurred to them that their teacher/(C)was watching them./(D)no error.
12. (A) The teacher told to/(B)the students that/(C)they must attend school regularly./(D) no error.
13. (A) I am extremely surprised /(B)and pleased with/(C)his result./(D)no error.
14. (A) By whom/(B)is he /(C)known?/(D)no error.
15. (A) These tribesmen live within/(B)the customs of /(C)their tribe./(D)no error.

Explanations

1. (B); Add 'to' after 'said' or change 'said' into 'asked'. 'Say' is followed by 'to' if an object (me, him etc) follows.
2. (A); Change 'asked' (पूछना बताना) into 'asked for' [माँग करना (to demand)].
3. (A); Change 'Cope up with' into 'cope with'. 'Cope with' means 'to handle'.
4. (B); Change 'than' into to. Adjectives that end in 'ior' take 'to' and not 'than'.
5. (C); Change 'to' into 'before'. Also change ' investigation' into 'investigating'. We need an adjective to qualify noun 'Committee'.
6. (A); Change 'Due to heavy work' into 'Owing to heavy workload'. A sentence starts with 'Owing to' and not 'due to' though in modern English 'due to' is also acceptable. SSC too has given several sentences starting with 'due to' and then marked the option D i.e. answer was 'no error'.
7. (B); Remove 'as'. 'Appoint' is not followed by 'as'.
8. (C); Change 'with' into 'by'.

9. (C); Change 'against' into 'from'.
10. (C); Change 'in' into 'on'.
11. (A); Change 'between' into 'among'. For 'more than two' 'among' is used.
12. (A); Remove 'to'. 'Tell' is not followed by 'to'.
13. (A); Add 'by' after 'surprised'. When two prepositions are needed with two different words, both prepositions must be used.
14. (A); Change 'by' into 'to'. 'Known' takes preposition 'to' in passive voice.
15. (A); Change 'within' into 'by'. 'Live by something' means 'to behave according to a particular set of beliefs or principles'.

Preposition (Practice Set)

1. I thought that I would die _____ mental pressure.
2. He died _____ exhaustion.
3. A nine-years-old child died _____ Rabies.
4. Soldiers die _____ their motherland, some of us die _____ over-eating.
5. He died _____ harness.
6. Paul Walker was killed _____ a road accident.
7. I differ _____ you _____ this issue.
8. The two theories differ _____ each other in many ways.
9. Go _____ my books.
10. I saw _____ your tricks.
11. The train passed _____ the tunnel.
12. In poems, a girl's hair is compared _____ black cloud.
13. Compare the contents of this grammar book _____ those of that one.
14. Life is compared _____ a journey.
15. Do only one work _____ a time.
16. The exam started _____ time but the light went off _____ the nick of time. Such things happen _____ times but I managed to solve all the questions _____ the allotted hours.
17. I will pay _____ cash and not _____ cheque.
18. I do have a taste _____ music but I am not a musician so I don't have a great taste _____ music.
19. They go _____ school _____ Shanks' mare and not _____ bike or _____ car.

Answers

1. from
2. from
3. of
4. for, from
5. in
6. in
7. with, on
8. from
9. through
10. through
11. through
12. to
13. with
14. to
15. at
16. on, in, at, within
17. in, by
18. for, in
19. to, on, on, by

20. He was awarded _____ Param Vir Chakra Posthumously.
21. He will marry his daughter _____ a government servant.
22. He married _____ her.
23. He was married _____ her.
24. (i) I cannot explain you this. (Improve the Sentence)
(ii) She gave the dog biscuits. (Improve the Sentence)
25. I will approach _____ him in this matter.
26. My approach _____ life is optimistic.
27. China is _____ the North-east of India.
28. Shahdara is _____ the East of Delhi.
29. Africa is _____ the south of Europe.
30. Everything started falling _____ line _____ a few years.
31. _____ I joined the Army, I haven't taken any leave.
32. Promises were long _____ forgotten.
33. They have not talked ever _____ they fought.
34. We have been friends _____ childhood.
35. Civilization flourished _____ the Ganga.
36. There is no love lost _____ you _____ her.
37. Nothing went amiss _____ between.
38. Madhya Pradesh is _____ Gujarat, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh and Chattisgarh.
39. This agreement will strengthen the relation _____ India, America and The United Kingdom.
40. There is a little difference _____ infatuation and attraction.
41. He _____ a lot of work on that article.
(i) Put in (ii) Put on
(iii) Put over (iv) Put out
42. I was mad _____ him because of his idiocy.
43. He was madly _____ love _____ her.
44. I thought _____ write an autobiography. (Note: my autobiography is superfluous)
45. I gave _____ Sana the keys
46. I gave keys _____ Sana.
47. You soon get tired _____ those monotonous activities.
48. I am sick _____ his careless attitude.
49. Shoes are lying _____ the floor.
50. He threw the jar _____ the sneaking shadow.
51. The Sun is exactly _____ us _____ noon.

Answers

20. with
21. to
22. ×
23. to
24. (i) I cannot explain this to you.
(ii) She gave biscuits to the dog.
25. ×
26. towards
27. to
28. in
29. to
30. in, in/within
31. since
32. since
33. since
34. since
35. along
36. between, and
37. in
38. in between
39. between
40. between
41. Put in
42. at
43. in, with
44. to
45. ×
46. to
47. of
48. of
49. on
50. at
51. over, at

52. The cheque was signed _____ him _____ a gold pen _____ black ink.
53. The thief jumped _____ the wall.
54. There was restlessness all _____ the country.
55. The dog was run _____ by a car.
56. Put a cloth _____ the table.
57. _____ ten thousand Yazidis were killed in Iraq.
58. You can find them home alone _____ night.
59. I came across a cruel robber _____ the night.
60. He stood _____ the table.
61. He was jumping _____ the table.
62. The roads were closed _____ account of heavy rain.
63. It is _____ 200 kms from Delhi.
64. It is _____ finish.
65. I know _____ him.
66. I am _____ evil practices.
67. Put the ladder _____ the wall.
68. He was born _____ a rich family.
69. With a strength born _____ desperation, he forcefully opened the door.
70. (i) Misery is born _____ poverty.
(ii) He was born _____ a poor mother.
71. He has knack _____ painting.
72. I admit _____ my mistake.
73. I was admitted _____ a good school.
74. _____ the time of inauguration, I gave him some discount.
75. _____ dusk, cattle return from pasteur.
76. _____ all his wealth he is a miser.
77. I am all _____ selling my old SUV and buying a new sedan.
78. The police are _____ our safety.
79. I bought four oranges _____ Rs 20.
80. I trust you _____ I know you well.
81. We reached _____ a conclusion.
82. We reached _____ Delhi _____ 4pm.
83. I met _____ him.
84. He met _____ an accident.
85. She attended _____ the class.
86. The nurse attended _____ the patient.
87. Delhi is situated _____ the bank of Yamuna.
88. She was cured _____ cancer.
89. There is no cure _____ AIDS.
90. Please count _____ the eggs.
91. You can count _____ me at the time of need.
92. I got this mug free _____ cost.

Answers

52. by, with, in
53. over/across
54. over
55. over
56. over
57. over/about/around
58. at
59. in
60. on
61. upon / from
62. on
63. about, around, over
64. about to
65. about or No prep
66. against
67. against
68. in
69. of
70. (i) of (ii) to
71. for
72. ×
73. to
74. at
75. at
76. for
77. for
78. for
79. for
80. for
81. at
82. ×, at
83. ×
84. with
85. ×
86. to
87. on
88. of
89. for
90. ×
91. on
92. of

93. We are not free _____ vices.
94. This place is infested _____ pests.
95. Lack _____ experience ruined her career.
96. She lacks _____ experience.
97. The village is devoid _____ basic faculties.
98. The Iraqis are bereft _____ their fundamental rights and even deprived _____ Right to Life.
99. This fruit is deficient _____ vitamin C.
100. I was taken _____ when I saw his brazenness.
101. The charge _____ robbery is too serious.
102. He was charged _____ robbery.
103. India takes _____ Pakistan _____ Mohali _____ tonight.
104. I am not concerned _____ such useless day to day activities.
105. He is concerned _____ his health.
106. My manager congratulated/ complimented my sister _____ her success.
107. I congratulated/complimented him _____ his new house.
108. He was filled _____ despair.
109. He was full _____ sorrow.
110. Ten jars are contained _____ this box.
111. This box comprises _____ ten jars.
112. Light consists _____ seven colours.
113. Morality consists _____ your character.
114. The streets were thronged _____ revolutionaries.
115. The monument was engulfed _____ thick cloud of smoke.
116. The suitcase was crammed _____ clothes.
117. The court summoned _____ him prior _____ the fixed date.
118. Moderate climate is conducive/favourable/salubrious/ beneficial _____ health.
119. Moderate climate is good _____ health.
120. I am good _____ English.
121. I am confident _____ success.
122. I have confidence _____ you.
123. He is lame _____ one leg.
124. Fate smiled _____ him.
125. He laughed _____ me.
126. Laugh _____ your pain.
127. He flew _____ a rage.

Answers

94. with
95. of
96. in
97. of
98. of, of
99. in
100. aback
101. of
102. with
103. on, at, ×
104. with
105. about
106. at
107. for
108. with
109. of
110. in
111. ×
112. of
113. in
114. with
115. in
116. with
117. ×, to
118. to
119. for
120. at
121. of
122. in
123. of
124. on
125. at
126. away
127. into

128. Please get _____ work now. You have had enough of fun.
129. I inquired _____ him _____ his health.
130. I availed myself _____ the golden chance.
131. We adapt ourselves _____ the changing climate.
132. I acceded _____ his proposal.
133. We caved _____ to their demand.
134. I yielded _____ his demands.
135. He succumbed _____ the injuries.
136. He asked _____ a decent pay package.
137. He demanded _____ his dues.
138. He has qualified _____ tier-II which will be held on 22nd Jan.
139. He has qualified _____ tier-II and will prepare _____ tier-III now.
140. He didn't emphasize/stress _____ the matter.
141. He laid great emphasis/stress _____ grammar.
142. I thank _____ God _____ his kindness.
143. We wrote _____ a letter every day.
144. He wrote _____ me every day.
145. He is busy and engrossed in his work. (Correct the sentence)
146. I find this problem hard to deal _____ .
147. He finds sugar quite profitable to deal _____ .
148. He dealt _____ the pamphlets advertising great offers.
149. He has a beautiful house _____ live _____ .
150. The poor have no bed to sleep _____ .
151. They have no place to go _____ .
152. He presented a beautiful watch _____ me.
153. He presented _____ me _____ a beautiful watch.
154. His parents are sorry and ashamed of his conduct. (Correct the sentence)
155. God has provided/ bestowed/ entrusted/ endowed you _____ great power as well as duties.
156. They explained the matter _____ me.
157. This book is good except _____ some typographical mistakes.
158. _____ the end truth wins.
159. _____ the end of the class, I summarize the points.

Answers

128. down to
129. of, about
130. of
131. to
132. to
133. in
134. to
135. to
136. for
137. ×
138. for
139. ×, for
140. ×
141. on
142. ×, for
143. ×
144. to
145. add 'with' after busy
146. with
147. in 'busy'
148. out
149. to, in
150. in
151. ×
152. to
153. ×, with
154. add 'for' after 'sorry'
155. with
156. to
157. for
158. In
159. At

160. _____ the end of the year, we take the final exam.
161. _____ the beginning all girls are sweet but _____ the end you see their true colours.
162. _____ the beginning of every session, we have an orientation programme.
163. He remained an atheist throughout his whole life. (Correct the sentence)
164. You cannot go near _____ the sun.
165. Birds live _____ nests.
166. Birds live _____ fruits.
167. We live _____ customs and traditions.
168. I am suffering _____ fever.
169. They suffered _____ their mistake.
170. He suffered _____ huge loss.
171. He was ill _____ fever.
172. I am sick _____ my native village. I love my village.
173. He divided the money _____ four parts.
174. He divided his property _____ his four sons.
175. She divided the sweets _____ his son and daughter.
176. She will divide her legacy _____ her sons and daughters.
177. I don't agree _____ you.
178. I don't agree _____ your opinion.
179. I don't agree _____ this point.
180. I lived _____ Ooty for two years.
181. He stayed _____ the hotel for two days.
182. I am angry _____ you.
183. I am disgusted _____ my neighbour.
184. I am annoyed _____ my children.
185. I am vexed _____ my arrogant colleagues.
186. She is exasperated _____ her mother-in-law.
187. I am angry _____ the mismanagement.
188. I am annoyed _____ the misuse of electricity.
189. I am vexed _____ the useless talks.
190. I am obliged/thankful/grateful /indebted _____ you _____ your kindness.
191. I complained _____ the police _____ the wrongdoer _____ the misconduct.
192. A complaint _____ him was lodged _____ the police.
193. You are accountable/answerable _____ god _____ your conduct.
194. He supplied/provided _____ the raw material _____ us.
195. He supplied/provided _____ us _____ the raw material.

160. At
161. In, in
162. At
163. Remove 'whole'.
164. ×
165. in
166. on
167. by
168. from
169. for
170. ×
171. with
172. for
173. into
174. among
175. between
176. among
177. with
178. to
179. on
180. in
181. at
182. with
183. with
184. with
185. with
186. with
187. at
188. at
189. at
190. to, for
191. to, against , for
192. against, with
193. to, for
194. ×, to
195. ×, with

196. He entrusted _____ me _____ the responsibility.
197. He entrusted _____ the child _____ me.
198. Unhappiness is the result _____ envy.
199. Envy results _____ unhappiness.
200. Nothing equals _____ mother's milk.
201. Nothing is equal _____ mother's love.
202. He is proud _____ his victory.
203. He prides _____ his position.
204. He takes pride _____ his victory.
205. She is in love _____ and addicted _____ sweets.
206. He copied the essay word _____ word .
207. She arrived _____ the party _____ time.
208. We arrived _____ a conclusion.
209. They arrived _____ India for the celebration.
210. The train will arrive _____ platform number 10.
211. The matter will come _____ this court.
212. Please solve the questions one _____ one and proceed step _____ step.
213. Better solve your issues one _____ one basis. Don't involve anyone.
214. His conduct is not _____ suspicion.
215. May I take leave _____ you?
216. May I take leave _____ the office?
217. Amphibians can live on land and water. (Correct the sentence)
218. Decline _____ air pressure causes bleeding through nose.
219. The decline _____ the British empire started in the early nineteenth century.
220. I am familiar _____ him.
221. I am familiar _____ his habits.
222. He jumped _____ the 4th floor.
223. He jumped _____ the lucrative offer.
224. He jumped _____ conclusion.
225. He jumped _____ hoops and served mankind throughout his life.
226. I believe _____ god.
227. I trust/believe _____ you.
228. I have complete trust/belief _____ you.
229. An opinion opposite _____ his was unacceptable.
230. My house is opposite _____ yours.
231. A well balanced diet is essential _____ health.
232. Inside _____ the box were kept all the bottles.
233. They belong _____ cattle class.

Answers

196. x, with
197. x, to
198. of
199. in
200. x
201. to
202. of
203. on/upon
204. in
205. with, to
206. for
207. at, on/in (arrive takes 'at' when the place is small i.e party)
208. at
209. in (arrive takes in when the place is big i.e India)
210. at
211. before
212. by, by
213. on
214. above
215. of
216. from
217. add 'in' before 'water'.
218. in
219. of
220. to
221. with
222. off/from
223. at
224. to
225. through
226. in
227. x
228. in
229. to
230. x
231. to
232. x
233. to

234. He comes _____ a middle class family.
 235. I want to talk _____ you.
 236. I had a talk _____ him.
 237. This case is _____ the jurisdiction of the District Court.
 238. He didn't approve _____ my opinion.
 239. They are head _____ heels.
 240. Anushka played the lead role opposite _____ Shahrukh in her first movie.
 241. A change _____ climate affects our health.
 242. A change _____ place may improve your health.
 243. We can change this room _____ a better one.
 244. He was let _____ by the court though everyone was convinced _____ his misconduct.
 245. Take the next turn but not the one _____ your left.
 246. He acted _____ my advice.
 247. Heat changes ice _____ water.
 248. I am anxious/ concerned _____ his health.
 249. I am anxious _____ the results.
 250. She is a victim _____ dowry system.
 251. He fell victim _____ Dengue.
 252. The title of Rai bahadur was conferred _____ certain sycophants.
 253. He was restrained/refrained/debarred _____ taking the examination.
 254. I prefer milk _____ tea.
 255. I prefer riding _____ walking.
 256. She prefers to ride _____ to walk.
 257. Please listen _____ me.
 258. This music is worth listening _____ .
 259. We can take jaggery as a substitute _____ sugar.
 260. We can substitute sugar _____ jaggery.
 261. There is no substitute _____ hard work.
 262. He is negligent _____ his duty.
 263. He is neglectful _____ his responsibilities.
 264. He didn't pay heed _____ my warnings.
 265. He drove recklessly heedless _____ the danger.
 266. He is a capable boy of doing anything. (Correct the sentence)
 267. He is an honest businessman in his dealings.(Correct the sentence)
 268. They heard _____ a loud thud.
 269. Have you heard _____ any such miraculous child?
 270. In spite _____ being ill, he attended the class.
 271. Despite _____ being exhausted, he sat from beginning _____ end.

Answers

234. from
 235. to
 236. with
 237. beyond/ within/ under
 238. of
 239. over
 240. x
 241. in
 242. of
 243. for
 244. off, of
 245. on
 246. upon
 247. into
 248. about
 249. for
 250. of
 251. to
 252. on
 253. from
 254. to
 255. to
 256. rather than
 257. to
 258. x
 259. for
 260. with
 261. for
 262. in
 263. of
 264. to
 265. of
 266. He is a boy capable of doing anything.
 267. He is a businessman honest in his dealings.
 268. x
 269. of
 270. of
 271. x, to

272. Heat changes ice ____ water.
273. Milk has turned ____ sour.
274. My servant has run ____ with my money.
275. This book deals ____ the author's love for India.
276. Car industry has come ____ ages.
277. Please write ____ me ____ this address.
278. Please send the letter ____ my address.
279. I am disappointed ____ the exams.
280. You are fortunate ____ having an obedient son.
281. You are fortunate ____ have obedient son.
282. I take pleasure ____ welcoming you.
283. They are required to appear ____ the investigating committee.
284. I had a test ____ mathematics this morning.
285. I wrote a book ____ grammar.
286. Do not write him ____ . I feel he still has the fire smoldering in him.
287. Please go ____ my book.
288. He wrote a book and added another feather ____ his cap.
289. I saw ____ his tricks.
290. He posted some defamatory materials ____ facebook.
291. You can bank ____ us. I will stand ____ you ____ thick and thin.
292. I make both ends meet. I have no one to fall ____ .
293. They broke ____ her house and made ____ with all her jewellery.
294. Do not cut ____ when I speak.
295. The Marathas ultimately gave ____ and the Mughals became the supreme power.
296. They were later ousted ____ the power by the British.
297. He couldn't live ____ his parent's expectations.
298. I look ____ my mother as she is strong.
299. I look forward to meet you. (Correct to Sentence)
300. The government hushed ____ scam.
301. I laid ____ some money for the education of my child.
302. Several employees were laid ____ during recession.
303. Lay your books ____ and lie ____ to rest.
304. The issue of triple talaq came ____ for discussion.

Answers

272. into
273. ×
274. off
275. with
276. through
277. to, at
278. to
279. with
280. in
281. to
282. in
283. before
284. of
285. on
286. off
287. through
288. to
289. through
290. on
291. on,by, through
292. back upon
293. into, away
294. in
295. in/up
296. from
297. upto
298. upto
299. change 'meet' into 'meeting'
300. up
301. aside/in
302. off
303. aside, down
304. up

305. He usually picks _____ fights _____ his neighbours.
306. The meeting was called _____ and it was raining heavily.
307. I called _____ you but you were absent.
308. I called _____ your office but you were in a meeting.
309. You must carry _____ my orders.
310. You must carry _____ with the good work.
311. We will have to do away _____ such evil practices.
312. Cases drag _____ for decades in India.
313. Corruption is eating _____ the system.
314. Call _____ a doctor. He is bleeding.
315. I will call you _____ later.
316. Such rumours usually die _____. Don't worry.
317. I consult him off and _____.
318. He went on and _____ and we were pissed _____.
319. He is out and _____ a rogue.
320. He will understand your value by and _____
321. It was _____ and large a successful event.
322. Turn _____ your right.
323. Move _____. Don't cry _____ spilt milk.
324. Look _____ you leap. Don't jump _____ conclusion without giving a second thought.
325. Please put _____ some make up.
326. Her arrogance puts me _____.
327. Take _____ your shoes before entering the temple.
328. I cannot put _____ the arrogant man anymore.
329. Desirous result didn't come _____ despite my best efforts.
330. The meeting was put _____.
331. The fire was put _____.
332. The bomb went _____ suddenly.
333. He laughed _____ me.
334. He laughed _____ his problems.
335. Hard work pays _____.
336. The government backed _____ at the eleventh hour.
337. I wonder what has become _____ certain film stars of 1970s.
338. The judge has cleared _____ his name and he is no more in problem.
339. He passed _____ last night and his wife is inconsolable.
340. He passed _____ due to excessive heat and remained unconscious for an hour.

Answers

305. ×, with
306. off
307. on
308. at
309. out
310. on
311. with
312. on
313. into
314. in
315. up
316. down
317. on
318. on, off
319. out
320. by
321. by
322. to
323. on, over
324. before, to
325. on
326. off/out
327. off
328. up with
329. off
330. off
331. out
332. off
333. at
334. away
335. off
336. out
337. of
338. of
339. away
340. out

341. He passed himself _____ as a journalist and reached the sensitive area.
342. The polish has worn _____ .
343. We ran short _____ money and we had to borrow to keep the wolf _____ the door.
344. The plane took _____ .
345. We ran _____ petrol and there was no petrol pump nearby.
346. This machine has worn _____ .
347. He is unconscious. Send _____ a doctor.
348. We must stand _____ the right cause.
349. The bomb exploded and the building fell _____ .
350. We cannot do _____ water.
351. Drive the cattle _____ of the field.
352. You must cut _____ the intake of salt.
353. I am cut _____ for the profession of teaching.
354. You look run _____. What happened?
355. Never run _____ your friends in public.
356. I ran _____ my friend in the market yesterday after a long time.
357. What's the time _____ your watch.

Answers

341. off
342. off
343. of, from
344. off
345. out of
346. out
347. for
348. for/by
349. apart/ down
350. without
351. out
352. down
353. out
354. down
355. down
356. into
357. by

Preposition In Idioms & Phrases

1. _____ a stone's throw.
2. Add another feather _____ one's cap.
3. To die _____ harness.
4. _____ sea.
5. _____ home.
6. To take _____ heels.
7. Beat _____ the bush.
8. Give _____ the ghost.
9. _____ lieu _____ .
10. Drink life _____ the lees.
11. _____ fits and starts.
12. _____ cold blood.
13. To talk _____ one's hat.
14. To keep _____ one's appearance.
15. To turn _____ a new leaf.
16. Off and _____ .
17. Pass oneself _____ as.
18. _____ pillar _____ post.
19. Put the cart _____ the horse.
20. Trumped _____ .
21. Gift _____ the gab

Answers

1. within	11. By
2. to	12. In
3. in	13. through
4. At	14. up
5. At	15. over
6. to	16. on
7. about	17. off
8. up	18. From, to
9. in, of	19. before
10. to	20. up
	21. of

22. _____ the brink of.
23. Foam _____ one's mouth.
24. Bring _____ light.
25. To burn candle _____ both ends.
26. Run _____ someone.
27. _____ the spur of the moment.
28. To look _____ one's nose.
29. (i) Take _____ heart. (ii) Take _____ heart.
30. To put up _____ .
31. _____ the nick of time.
32. _____ the cuff.
33. _____ hook or _____ crook.
34. Sit _____ the fence.
35. _____ sixes and sevens.
36. Egg _____ .
37. Haul _____ the coals.
38. To eke _____ .
39. A bird _____ hand is worth two in the bush.
40. _____ hand.
41. Pick _____ fight.

Answers

22. On	32. Off,
23. at	33. By, by
24. to	34. on
25. at	35. At
26. into	36. on
27. On	37. over
28. down	38. out
29. (i)to (ii)×	39. in
30. with	40. off
31. In	41. ×

Meanings

1. very near.	24. reveal.
2. another achievement.	25. to squander, to work hard.
3. to die while in service.	26. to meet suddenly, to come across.
4. confused.	27. suddenly, without planning.
5. comfortable.	28. to hold in contempt.
6. run away.	29. (i) to feel moved or affected by (ii) to receive courage.
7. not to come to the main topic.	30. to tolerate.
8. to die.	31. exactly at the right time.
9. in place of.	32. without preparation.
10. to lead a life of adventure.	33. by any means.
11. irregularly, sporadic.	34. to be impartial
12. bitterly, in anger.	35. in disorder
13. to talk nonsense.	36. to encourage / to instigate.
14. to have an outward show of prosperity.	37. to scold.
15. to change for better.	38. to supplement.
16. occasionally.	39. Better to have a lesser but certain advantage than the possibility of a greater one that may come to nothing.
17. in the guise of.	40. Without preparation.
18. to make a lot of effort.	41. To start a quarrel.
19. doing things in a wrong way.	
20. to cook up	
21. oratory, articulation.	
22. on the verge of	
23. very angry.	

CONJUNCTION

Joining Word

Classes of Conjunction

- 1. CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTION:-** Joins statements or clauses of equal rank. ('Coordinating' means of 'equal rank'.)

(एक ही Rank के वाक्यों एवं clause को जोड़ता है।)

Now what is the meaning of Equal Rank? (Equal Rank का अर्थ क्या है?)

Let us see some examples. (कुछ उदाहरण देखते हैं।)

Examples

1. He is rich but miser. (×)

Adj. Noun

He is rich but miserly. (✓)

Adj. Adj.

2. He is foolish and coward. (×)

Adj. Noun

He is foolish and cowardly. (✓)

Adj. Adj.

3. She ate an apple, an orange and washed her hands. (×)

Noun Noun verb

She ate an apple and an orange and then washed her hands. (✓)

Noun Noun verb

4. It is like doing nothing or be idle. (×)

Gerund V_{b.f}

It is like doing nothing or being idle. (✓)

Gerund Gerund

5. He likes to jog and running when he exercises. (×)

Infinitive Gerund

He likes to jog and to run when he exercises. (✓)

Infinitive Infinitive

6. She works honestly and with sincerity. (×)

Adv. Prep Noun

She works honestly and sincerely. (✓)

Adverb Adverb

'But' is a Co-ordinating Conjunction so both the words joined by a Co-ordinating Conjunction must be of equal rank.

Co-ordinating Conjunctions are of four types

1. Cumulative	2. Adversative	3. Alternative	4. Illative
Merely adds one statement to another. (सिर्फ दो वाक्यों को जोड़ता है) Eg:- She cooks and I clean.	Expresses contrast between two sentences. (दो वाक्यों के बीच का विरोध दर्शाता है) Eg:- He worked hard but he failed.	Expresses a choice between two alternatives. (दो विकल्प के बीच चुनाव दर्शाता है) Eg:- She must work hard or she will fail.	Expresses an Inference. (निष्कर्ष दर्शाता है) Eg:- We must have neglected the instructions for the pandemic spread rapidly. Here 'for' means 'because'.

1. **SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:-** The Conjunction introducing the dependent or subordinate clause is called a Subordinating Conjunction.

Examples

After, Because, If, That, Though, Although, Till, Before, Unless, As, When, While.

Subordinating Conjunction

- If I had seen him, I would have greeted him.

Subordinate Clause Principal Clause
- He ran away because the police were after him.
- Although he worked hard, he failed.
- Kindly wait till I pack my bag.
- You will not succeed unless you work hard.

Subordinating Conjunctions may be classified according to their meanings

TIME

before, till, since, after

Examples

1. I haven't seen him since he left India.
2. Wait till he returns.

CAUSE

because, since, as

Examples

1. Since I was ill, I did not come.
2. As he was a brave heart, he joined the army

PURPOSE

so that, lest

Examples

1. We eat so that we may live.
2. Run fast lest you should miss the bus.

RESULT

so, therefore

Examples

1. He worked hard so he passed.
2. He was severely injured therefore he died.

CONDITION

If, unless

Examples

1. If you work hard, you will pass.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to party.

CONCESSION

though, although

Examples

1. Though he cheated on me yet I love him.
2. A book is a book although it has nothing new.

COMPARISON

than, rather than, whether, as much as, whereas

Example

1. He is stronger than I.
2. He loves me as much as she.
3. He will take tea rather than coffee.
4. He is happy whereas others are sad.

In the following sentences use suitable Conjunction.

(निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में उपयुक्त **Conjunction** का प्रयोग करें)

1. He is rich _____ happy.
2. She is rich _____ unhappy.
3. _____ he worked hard, he passed.
4. He worked hard _____ he passed.
5. _____ he worked hard, he failed.
6. He worked hard _____ he failed.
7. Take care _____ you will fall.
8. Take care _____ you should fall.
9. I will not come _____ it rains.

10. I will come _____ it rains.
11. She is intelligent _____ her brother is foolish.
12. _____ there is will, there is a way.
13. _____ he returns home, no one will go to bed.
14. _____ the train gets the signal, it will not leave the platform.
15. _____ he invites you, you should not go.
16. We eat _____ we may live.
17. A lie is a lie _____ it saves one's life.
18. Smartphone cameras can now take pictures of near-professional quality, so they also have limitations.
 (1) pictures of (2) so they also have limitations
 (3) can now take (4) near-professional quality
19. Cyclone Idai killed at least (1)/17 people in Zimbabwe and Mozambique although (2)/ it tore across Southern Africa (3)/ No error (4).
 SSC (CPO) Pre-2018 15 March, 2019 Evening
20. Our nation can make significant growth but if we all work collectively.
 (1) but if we all (2) make significant growth
 (3) Our nation can (4) work collectively
 SSC PRE – 2018, 4th June, 2019 Morning
21. I was surprised to see as Avika could write such good poems in Hindi.
 (1) to see as Avika (2) I was surprised
 (3) could write (4) such good poems in Hindi
 CHSL-2018, 11 July, 2019, Evening
22. He was rejected because he was too young.
 (1) so (2) hence
 (3) though (4) No improvement
 (SSC Tax Assistant (IncomeTax & Central Excise) Exam. 12.11.2006)
23. Strenuous as it was, they went on with their task.
 (1) since it was (2) because it was
 (3) although it was (4) No improvement
 (SSC Statistical Investigators Grade-IV Exam. 12.09.2010)
24. Since he worked hard he failed to secure good grades.
 (1) As (2) When
 (3) Though (4) No improvement
 (FCI Assistant Grade-III Exam. 05.02.2012 (1st Sitting))
25. Mary wondered if the other girls were as excited as she was.
 (1) that (2) whether
 (3) that if (4) No improvement
 (SSC Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)
26. The man ate an apple, an orange, and washed his hands.
 (1) an apple and an orange, and washed his hands
 (2) an apple, an orange, washed his hands
 (3) an apple, an orange and his washed hands
 (4) No improvement
 (SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)
27. The actor is out of jail, and not exactly a free man, since he will be under house arrest for an additional 90 days.
 (1) if not exactly a free man (2) but not exactly a free man
 (3) though exactly a free man (4) No improvement
 (SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)

28. Rice is to the Japanese while potatoes are to many Europeans

(1) which

(2) that

(3) what

(4) No improvement.

(SSC Section Officer (Commercial
Audit) Exam. 26.11.2006)

Answers

1.

<u>rich</u>	<u>happy</u>
desirable	desirable
Adj	Adj

both 'desirable' Adjectives
Conjunction — and (और) & as well as (साथ ही साथ)

2.

<u>rich</u>	<u>unhappy</u>
desirable	undesirable
Adj	Adj

Contrast
Conjunction — but (लेकिन), yet, still (फिर भी)

3. As, Since, Because
(चूंकि, क्योंकि)
4. and, so, therefore. that's why, hence
5. Though, although
6. but, yet, still
7. or, else, otherwise
8. 'lest ... should' is a pair of conjunction
9. if, in case
10. even if
11. but (note : here we cannot use 'yet' or 'still')
12. Where
13. Until. This sentence is time- oriented
14. Until
15. Unless. The sentence is action- oriented.
16. so that/ in order that — ताकि
17. even if
18. (2) Replace 'so' with 'but'. 'Limitations' introduce something contradictory hence use 'but'.
19. (2) Replace 'although' with 'when'.
20. (1) Remove but or add 'only' after 'but'. We can also replace 'but' with 'only if'.
21. (1) Replace 'as' with 'that'.

22. (4) No improvement
23. (3) Here 'strenuous although it has' should be used ...
Although (के बावजूद) means in spite of the fact that.
24. (3) Replace 'since' with 'though'.
'Though' means 'inspite of the fact that' (के बावजूद). When the result is contrary to what was expected of the action though'.
25. (4) No improvement
26. (1) Here 'an apple and an orange and washed his' should be used.
27. (2) Here contrast is evident so conjunction 'but' will be used here.
hence replace 'and not exactly a free man' with 'but not exactly a free man'.
28. (3) Replace 'while' with 'what'.

- Some Conjunctions are in pairs. They are called 'Correlative Conjunctions' or merely 'Correlatives'. (कुछ Conjunctions pairs में होते हैं वे Correlative Conjunctions या सिर्फ Correlatives कहलाते हैं)

Correct Pairs are absolutely mandatory. (Pair सही होना चाहिए ये अत्यन्त जरूरी हैं)

जैसे:

Though	Yet/,	(हालांकि फिर भी)
Although	Yet/,	(हालांकि फिर भी)
No sooner	than	(जैसे ही ... वैसे ही)
Hardly/Scarcely	when	(मुश्किल से ... कि)
As	as	(तुलना करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है)
So	as	(तुलना करने के लिए नकारात्मक वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त होता है)
Lest	should + v _{b.f.}	(ऐसा न हो कि, वरना)
Too	to	(इतना ... कि)
So	that	(इतना ... कि)
Between	and	(के बीच)
From	to	(... से ...)
Whether	or	
Both	and	(दोनों ही)
Not only	but also	(न ही सिर्फ ... बल्कि)

Doubt ... if (In positive sentences)

Doubt ... that (In negative and interrogative sentences)

The same ... that (When followed by a verb)

The same ... as (When not followed by a verb)

Either ... or

Neither ... nor

Else ... but

Other ... than

- There are certain wrong pairs which we wrongly use because we are habitual of translating from Hindi. (कुछ ऐसे Pairs हम बना लेते हैं जो गलत होते हैं क्योंकि हमें Translation करने की आदत होती है)

If ... then (×) As (क्योंकि) ... so (इसलिए) (×)

If ... , (✓) As ... , (✓)

When ... then (×) As (जैसा) ... so (वैसा) (✓)

When ... , (✓) **Eg.:** 1. As I was ill so, I ~~did not~~ come.
2. As you sow so shall you reap.

As/ Since/ because therefore/ that's why/ so/ hence (×)

As/ Since/ because , (✓)

If ... or (×)

- You must either (1)/ be regular with your studies (2)/ and study for longer period before the examination. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 1997)

- The period (1)/ between 1980 to 1990 (2)/ was very significant in my life. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 25.11.2007)

- It is (1)/ nothing else (2)/ than pride. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. Paper-II 04.08.2011)

- We had scarcely (1)/ reached the place (2) than it started to rain heavily. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

- We had (1)/ hardly reached the (2)/ platform than the train came in. (3)/ No error (4).

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014 (TF No. 482 RN 5))

- I will have (1)/ both the blue (2)/ or the black pen. (3)/ No error. (4)

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (1st Sitting) TF No. 6636838)

- Write down the address lest you may forget.

(1) you may not forget (2) you cannot forget

(3) you will forget (4) you should forget

(SSC Tax Assistant (Income Tax & Central Excise) Exam. 05.12.2004)

- No sooner had the teacher entered the room and the boys rushed to their seats.

(1) when

(2) than

(3) but

(4) No improvement

(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 30.10.2008)

- He is not only a good teacher but a good man.

(1) instead also

(2) but seldom

(3) but also

(4) No improvement

(SSC Delhi Police Sub-Inspector (SI) Exam. 19.08.2012)

- As I am suffering from fever so grant me leave for two days.

(1) and grant me

(2) please grant me

(3) grant myself

(4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

11. He asked me if I was comfortable or not.
12. He is so ill to walk.
13. He was such a versatile actor that he played every role exceptionally well.
14. He is such a player as team India always wished to have.
15. He is such a fool _____ he understands nothing.
16. He is such a fool _____ I have never seen.
17. He is not such a clever boy that you are.
 (1) clever boy (2) such a
 (3) that you are (4) He is not
18. I doubt _____ he will help you.
19. I don't doubt _____ you will succeed in life.
20. Did he doubt _____ I wouldn't succeed in life?
21. This is the same dress _____ I had bought.
22. This is the same suit _____ mine.
23. As soon as I get the tickets then I will inform you.
24. Trying to please both his boss and wife puts him _____ the devil
 _____ the deep blue sea.
25. He worked _____ dawn _____ dusk.

SSC (CPO) Pre- 2018, 14 March, 2019 Morning

Answers

1. (3) Replace 'and' with 'or' because correct pair of conjunction is either ... or
2. (2) Replace 'between' with 'from' because the correct pair needed here is 'from.... to.
3. (3) Replace 'than' with 'but' because the correct pair 'nothing else ... but'.
4. (3) Replace 'than' with 'when' because the correct pair is 'scarcely ... when'.
5. (3) Replace 'than' with 'when'.
6. (3) Replace 'or' with 'and'.
7. (4) Replace 'you may forget' with 'you should forget'.
8. (2) Replace 'and' with 'than' because the correct pair is 'no sooner ... than'.
9. (3) Replace 'but' with 'but also'. The correct pair is 'not only ... but also'.
10. (2) 'As' is not followed by 'so' (Exception 'As you sow so shall you reap')

Whether ... or'. (✓)

Change 'if' into 'whether'.

12. 'so ... to'. (×)

'too ... to'. (✓)

Change 'so' into 'too'.

13. 'such (इतना) ... that (कि)'

When 2nd part substantiates the 1st part.

(जब 2nd part, 1st part का सबूत देता है)

14. 'such (ऐसा) ... as (जैसा)'

When the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part. (जब 2nd, part 1st part के श्रेणी/ वर्ग दर्शाता है)

15. 'such ... that'.

Here the 2nd part gives a proof.

16. 'such ... as'.

Here the 2nd part categorizes the 1st part.

17. (3) Replace 'that' with 'as'. 'Such ...as' is used to categorize.

18. 'Doubt ... if'.

The sentence is positive.

19. 'Doubt ... that'.

The sentence is negative.

20. 'Doubt that'

21. 'The same' is followed by 'that' is a verb follows.

22. 'The same' is followed by 'as' if no verb follows.

23. 'As soon as' is not followed by 'then'.

Remove 'then'.

24. 'Between ... and'.

'Between the devil and the deep blue sea' means 'between two equally difficult choices.' (दो समान कठीन परिस्थितियों के बीच)

25. 'from ... to'.

Some examples that take 'from ... to'.

(1) 'From dawn to dusk' → सुबह से शाम तक

(2) 'From pillar to post' → दर - दर

(3) From top to bottom

(4) From beginning to end

(5) From morning to evening

• 'As ... as' and 'So ... as' take Positive Degree of Adjective/ Adverb.

Examples

1. She ran as faster as she could. (×)

Comparative
Degree of Adverb

She ran as fast as she could. (✓)

Positive
Degree

2. He is as wiser as Solomon. (×)

Comparative Degree
of Adjective

He is as wise as Solomon. (✓)

Positive
Degree

As ... as (In +ve and -ve sentence)

So ... as (In -ve sentences)

(Both are used to make a comparison (दोनों का प्रयोग तुलना करने के लिए होता है))

- The Comparison is always with the perfect example that can be chosen for the given situation. (तुलना हमेशा सबसे अच्छे उदाहरण के साथ किया जाता है जिसका प्रयोग उस हालात में सबसे सटीक हो।)**

- ❖ **As red as a rose**
- ❖ **As soft as fur**
- ❖ **As white as snow**
- ❖ **As fast as a deer**
- ❖ **As blind as a bat**
- ❖ **As busy as a bee**
- ❖ **As cunning as a fox**
- ❖ **As drunk as a lord**
- ❖ **As fat as a pig**
- ❖ **As fit as a fiddle**
- ❖ **As gentle as a lamb**
- ❖ **As green as grass**

- ❖ As hard as a nail
- ❖ As heavy as lead
- ❖ As hungry as a wolf
- ❖ As light as a feather
- ❖ As mean as a snake
- ❖ As poor as a church mouse
- ❖ As steady as a rock
- ❖ As good as gold
- ❖ As sweet as honey
- ❖ As bald as an egg
- ❖ As cool as a cucumber

- ❖ As swift as a hare/ an arrow/ lightning
- ❖ As alike as two peas
- ❖ As proud vain as a peacock
- ❖ As hot as a furnace
- ❖ As slow as a turtle/ snail
- ❖ As fluffy as a cotton candy
- ❖ Sleep like a baby
- ❖ Eat like a pig

- (i) may fall (ii) fall (iii) falls

'Lest should' is a pair of conjunction but here we do not have any option comprising 'should'. ('Lest should' Conjunction का एक pair है पर यहाँ should किसी option में नहीं है)

We have two options (हमारे पास 2 विकल्प हैं) —

- (1) Lest ... should + $V_{b.f}$**

Or

- (2) Lest ... $V_{b,f}$

Ans. → (ii) As 'should + V_{b.f}' is missing here, V_{b.f} is the only option available that is correct.

Superfluous Pair

'The reason why due to/ because'. (×)

'The reason why' and 'because' / 'due to' mean the same.

They make a superfluous pair.

'The reason why ... that'. (✓) ('that' is not always needed. See Ex-2)

1. The reason why (1)/he was rejected (2)/was because he was too young. (3)/No Error. (4).
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 05.06.2005)
2. The reason for (1)/ my absence is (2)/ due to ill health (3)/ No Error (4)
(SSC CGL-2016 (8th September, Evening))
3. The reason Janet came dressed (1) / as Lady Gaga was because she'd been told (2) / it was a costume party (3) / No error (4) .
(SSC CGL-2016 (2nd September, Evening))
4. The reason why I was late was because I boarded the wrong bus.

Answers

1. (3) Replace 'because' with 'that' because the 'reason why' becomes superfluous with 'because'.
2. (3) Presence of both 'reason' and 'due to' in a sentence makes it superfluous. Hence remove 'due to' from part (3).
3. (2) The correct pair is the reason ----- that. 'Reason' with 'because' becomes superfluous. Hence replace 'because' with 'that'.
4. Change because into 'that'.

- 'Would rather ... than'
or
'prefer ... to'

Examples

1. I would rather take tea than coffee.
2. I prefer tea to coffee.

'Prefer' takes preposition 'to'. 'Would rather' takes 'than'.

Examples

1. Not only he bakes cakes but also sells them.
2. Neither it is useful nor affordable.
3. You must either tell me (1)/ the whole story or, at least (2)/ the first half of it. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Section Officer (Audit) Exam. 09.09.2001)
4. None of the diplomats at the conference (1)/was able either to comprehend (2)/ or solve the problem. (3)/No error (4)
(SSC Stenographer (Grade 'C' & 'D') Exam. 26.09.2010)
5. He is anxious not only (1)/ to acquire knowledge (2)/ but also eager to display it. (3)/ No error. (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I Exam. 19.05.2013)
6. The college library is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ very good books but also with the latest journals. (3)/No error (4)
(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 22.06.2014)
7. We will pack not only (1)/ the material properly (2)/ but will also deliver it to your valued customers. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016)
8. This laboratory of physicists is (1)/ not only equipped with (2)/ all state-of-the-art instruments but also with outstanding physicists. (3)/ No error (4)
(SSC (CPO) MAINS- 2016)

ENGLISH



Useful for:-

SSC

BANK

NDA

CDS

AIRFORCE

DSSSB

BATCH 17

VOD

By Neetu Singh



& All Objective Exams

Download Now



Email: online@kdcampus.org

Contact: 9555108888, 9555208888

Answers

1. (i) If we use Inversion to correct the sentence, Ans. is → Not only does he bake cakes but also sells them.

If the M.V is $V_1 + s/es$, the H.V is 'does'.

- (ii) If we go by misplaced Conjunction,

He not only bakes cakes

Verb

but also sells them.

Verb

2. Neither will come after 'it is'. It is neither useful nor affordable.

Adjective

Adjective

3. (1) 'Either' should come after 'tell me' because after 'or' at least is given.
Co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

7. (2) Remove 'either' or put 'either' after 'to'.

5. (1) First part of the sentence should read as 'he is not only anxious' ... because while using a co-relative conjunction both clauses should be parallel. Anxious and eager (both adjectives) balance each other.

6. (2) Replace 'not only equipped' with 'equipped not only' because co-relative conjunction always connects two equal grammatical items.

7. (1) Put 'not only' before 'pack'. This is a case of misplaced conjunction.

8. (3) Use 'not only' after 'equipped'. Conjunction must be at the appropriate place.

Too ... to & So ... that

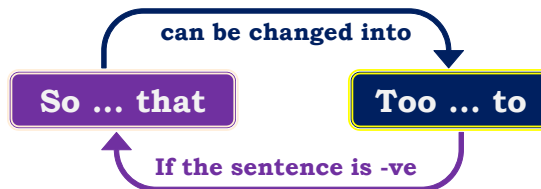
SUPERFLUOUS CASE—

Examples

- The coffee is too hot to drink it.
- This watch is too expensive for me to afford it.

Answers

- Remove 'it'. 'Coffee' (Noun) and 'it' (Pronoun) cannot come together.
- 'Watch' (Noun) and it (Pronoun) cannot come together. Remove it.



Examples

- He is so weak that he cannot walk.
He is too weak to walk.
- She is so intelligent that she can pass any exam.

Note:-

Sentence 2 cannot be changed into 'too ... to' as the sentence is not negative. 'Too ... to' includes 'not' in it.

Remove 'so' from the following sentences:-

Examples

1. She is so ill that she cannot work.
2. The watch is so expensive that I cannot afford it.
3. She is so innocent that she cannot understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is so old that he cannot get any job.
5. The problem was so complicated that no one could solve it.
6. The process was too simple and easy to understand that it hardly took five minutes for us to grasp it.

(1) No Error

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015)

(2) and easy to understand that it hardly

(3) took five minutes for us to grasp it

(4) The process was too simple

7. He studied (1)/ so hardly (2)/ he was sure of passing. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC Multi-Tasking Staff Exam. 10.03.2013)

8. The problem was so complicated to be solved in a day.

(1) too (2) very

(SSC FCI Assist. Grade-III, Main Exam. 07.04.2013)

(3) much (4) No improvement

Answers

1. She is too ill to work.
2. (i) The watch is too expensive for me to afford.
(ii) The watch is too expensive to be afforded by me.
3. She is too innocent to understand his ulterior motives.
4. He is too old to get any job.
5. (i) The problem was too complicated to be solved.
(ii) The problem was too complicated for any one to solve.
6. (4) Replace 'too' with 'so' because the correct pair is 'so ... that'.
7. (2) Add 'that' in the 2nd part of the sentence. Because the correct pair is 'so ... that'. Also change 'hardly' into 'hard'. 'So hard that' is the correct structure.
8. (1) The correct structure should be as follow:
Too + positive degree adjective + to.
Here 'to + complicated + to' should be used.



I am too glad to meet you. (×)

I am very glad to meet you. (✓)

Adv. Adj.

'very' comes with desirable Adj.

Here 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning 'Glad' is a desirable Adjective and hence will take Adverb 'very'.

(यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि इसे 'So that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता। ऐसा करने पर अर्थ गलत निकलेगा 'Glad' desirable Adjective है अतः Adverb 'very' का प्रयोग करें।)



She is too sad to hear this. (✓)

This sentence is correct though 'too ... to' is not a pair of Conjunction here because it cannot be changed into 'so ... that' with the same meaning.

(ये वाक्य सही है हालाँकि यहाँ 'too ... to' Conjunction का जोड़ा नहीं है क्योंकि वह 'so ... that' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता | ऐसा करने से अर्थ गलत निकलता है।)

She is too sad to hear this.

Adv. Adj. Infinitive

'too' comes with undesirable Adjectives.

Conjunction Vis-A-Vis Narration

1

Assertive Sentences → General Statements (कथनात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:- He said _____ he was unwell. (Ans. – that)

We use Conjunction 'that' in Assertive Sentences.

(Assertive Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

2

Interrogative Sentences → Sentences raising questions (प्रश्नात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:- (i) He asked me _____ I was unwell.

We use Conjunction 'if/ whether' in Interrogative Sentences which are not of 'Wh' family.

(जो प्रश्नात्मक वाक्य 'Wh' family का नहीं है उनमें Conjunction 'if/ 'whether' का प्रयोग होता है।)

1. Mary wondered **if** the other girls were as excited as she was.

(1) that (2) whether

(3) that if (4) No improvement

(SSC Stenographer Grade
'C' & 'D' Exam. 16.10.2011)

Ans.- (4)

E.g:- (ii) He asked me _____ what I was doing.

We do not use any Conjunction if the Interrogative Sentences are of 'Wh family'.

(अगर प्रश्नात्मक वाक्य 'Wh family' का हो तो कोई **Conjunction** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा)

1. My elder brother (1)/ asked me (2)/that what I was doing. (3)/No Error (4)
(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (2nd Sitting))
2. He asked me (1)/ that how long (2)/ I would be absent. (3)/ No error (4).
(SSC Higher Secondary Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 28.11.2010 (IInd Sitting))
3. My sister asked me/(1) that how long (2)/ I would stay there. (3)/ No Error. (4)
(SSC Graduate Level Tier-I, Exam. 21.04.2013)

Answers

1. (3) Remove 'that'. If direct speech is of 'Wh family', no conjunction is used when it is converted into Indirect Speech.
2. (2) Remove 'that'.
When questions of 'Wh-family' is changed into indirect speech, Conjunction 'that' is not used.
3. (2) Remove 'that'. See explanation of Q. No. 2.

3 Optative Sentences → Sentences of Wish and Prayer (इच्छासूचक वाक्य)

E.g:- He prayed _____ god might bless me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Optative Sentences.
(इच्छासूचक वाक्यों में **Conjunction 'that'** का प्रयोग होगा)

4 Imperative Sentences → Sentences of Orders, Request etc (आदेशात्मक वाक्य)

E.g:- He requested me _____ help him.

We use 'to' in Imperative Sentences as help ($V_{b.f}$) is preceded by 'to'. (to + $V_{b.f}$ is indefinite) / (आदेशात्मक वाक्यों में 'to' का प्रयोग होता है)

5 Exclamatory Sentences → Sentences that express gush of feelings (विस्मयबोधक वाक्य)

E.g:- He exclaimed with joy _____ they had won the match.

In Exclamatory Sentences we use Conjunction 'that'.
(विस्मयबोधक वाक्यों में **Conjunction 'that'** का प्रयोग होता है)

6

In Conditional Sentences → In Conditional sentences, one action depends on the other (शर्त रखने वाले वाक्य)

E.g:-

He said _____ if he had seen me, he would have greeted me.

We use Conjunction 'that' in Conditional Sentences.

(Conditional Sentences में Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।)

Note:-

Do not get confused on seeing 'that + if' together in conditional sentences.

('that + if' का प्रयोग एक साथ देखकर confuse ना हो।)

Conjunction Vis-A-Vis Adjective

1. As an artist (1)/Raju is as good (2)/, if not better than Ramesh. (3)/ No error (4).
2. He is as efficient if not more labourious than his brother.
3. She is prettier though not as fair as her sister.

When Positive & Comparative degree of Adjective are used, the structure must be as follows.

(अगर Adjective के Positive & Comparative degree का प्रयोग हो, तो निम्नलिखित structure का प्रयोग करें)

Answers

1. (2) The complete form is as + Positive degree adjective + as.
Hence add 'as' after 'good'.
2. Add 'as' after 'efficient'.
3. Add 'than' after 'prettier'.

As/ so + Positive Degree + as ... + Comparative Degree + than/to

Unless

&

Until



'Unless' is action oriented. (Unless कार्य-संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Unless you work hard, you won't succeed.
2. Unless he invites us, we won't go to the party.



Until is time oriented (Until समय संबंधित होता है।)

E.g:-

1. Until the train gets the signal, it won't proceed.
2. Until the red light turns green, we cannot cross the traffic signal.

For detail See Conditional Sentences



'Unless' and 'until' do not take 'will/ shall' and 'not' after them.

1. My friend will not come to attend this marriage unless he is not invited.

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 21.06.2015 IInd Sitting)

- (1) No error (2) My friend will not come
(3) to attend this marriage (4) unless he is not invited.

2. You will not (1)/ succeed unless you (2)/ don't work hard. (3)/ No error (4)

(SSC (10+2) Steno. Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.01.2016 TF No. 3513283)

3. The price cannot be quoted except we are allowed to examine the sample.

- (1) if (2) unless
(3) because (4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 11.12.2011 (IInd Sitting (East Zone))

4. You can't get good marks unless you don't work hard.

- (1) till you don't (2) unless you
(3) until you don't (4) No improvement

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 21.10.2012 (Ist Sitting)

5. You cannot pass as long as you study.

- (1) provided (2) unless
(3) less (4) No improvement

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 29.09.2013)

6. I shall not go until I am invited.

- (1) till (2) whether
(3) unless (4) No improvement

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015 Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

Answers

1. (4) 'not' does not come with 'unless', 'until' and 'lest'.

2. (3) 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.

Remove 'don't' from 3rd part of the sentence.

3. (2) Replace 'except' with 'unless'.

4. (2) Replace 'unless you don't' with 'unless you'. 'Unless' is not followed by any negative word.

5. (2) Replace 'as long as' with 'unless'.

'As long as' means 'during the whole time'.

'Unless' means 'except on the condition that'.

6. (3) Replace 'until' with 'unless'.

'Until' is a time denoting word whereas 'Unless' is a condition denoting word.

Wrong use of 'Which'

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella which caused the delay.
2. She did not show her admit card which led to her rejection.

★ See the sentences. You find 'which' is near 'Umbrella' and 'Admit Card' but these two nouns are not the reason for the action that follows.

(दोनों वाक्यों को देखें। आप 'which' को 'Umbrella' और 'Admit Card' के निकट पाएंगे लेकिन ये दोनों **Nouns** उस **action** का कारण नहीं हैं जो 'which' के बाद हैं।)

★ We need something that can denote the 1st action and so we need a Pronoun 'this' that can denote the nearest action.

(यहाँ कुछ ऐसा चाहिए जो प्रथम वाक्य को सम्बोधित कर सके और **Pronoun 'this'** से हम निकटतम **action** को सम्बोधित कर सकते हैं।)

Correct Sentences

1. I forgot to carry my umbrella and this caused the delay.
2. She did not show her admit card and this led to her rejection.

We need Conjunction 'and' to join both the sentences.

(यहाँ **Conjunction 'and'** का प्रयोग होगा दोनों वाक्यों को जोड़ने के लिए।)



Your End-to-End Exam Preparation

FOR COURSE ENQUIRY
9555108888 / 9555208888

FOR WHATSAPP SUPPORT
8586903756 / 8586903746 / 9899503155

FOR EMAIL SUPPORT
online@kdcampus.org



Parallelism means similarity in value, construction and position. A sentence with parallel structure contains words that are parallel or similar in form and function. In fact sentences with parallel structure are balanced and easy to read as a noun balanced by a noun, a verb by a verb and so on. In other words, we can say, that all must have same grammatical form.

(Parallelism का मतलब है value, construction और position में एक समान। एक वाक्य में parallel structure के words अथवा phrases आते हैं जो form और function में parallel या similar होते हैं। Parallel structure के साथ वाक्य balanced और पढ़ने में आसान होता है। एक noun को एक noun से ही balance किया जाता है और एक verb को एक verb से ही। अन्य शब्दों में हम कह सकते हैं कि सारे grammatical forms एक रखना होगा अगर उन्हें balance करना हो तो।)

A. Words are balanced with words.

Words को words के साथ ही balance किया जाता है।

Examples

- (i) Snakes, Crocodiles and lizards are all reptiles.
- (ii) Traditional methods of food preservation include drying, smoking and pickling.

B. Phrases are balanced with phrases.

Phrases को phrases के साथ ही balance किया जाता है।

Example

- (iii) Like mother, like daughter.
- (i) In Shimla it is colder in January than February. (×)
Change 'February' into 'in February'.

C. Clauses are balanced with clauses.

Clauses को clauses के साथ ही balance किया जाता है।

Example

- (i) Psychologists study how we think and why we act.

3. I wondered what was in the Packet, where it came from and who had sent it.

How to correct faulty Parallelism / Faulty Parallelism को कैसे सही करें-

To correct a sentence containing faulty parallelism. it usually takes only a few moments of thinking and rewriting and of course some knowledge of the parts of speech.

Faulty Parallelism वाले वाक्यों को सही करने के लिए parts of speech का ज्ञान होना और थोड़ी सी समझ जरूरी है।

1. The qualities of a good soldier are loyalty, honesty and being brave. (×)
The qualities of a good soldier are loyalty, honesty and bravery. (✓)
2. A soldier obeys his senior willingly, completely and with speed. (×)
A soldier obeys his senior **willingly, completely and quickly**. (✓)
3. The trainees analyzed, discussed and they raised questions about the new rules. (×)
The trainees **analyzed, discussed and questioned** the new rules. (✓)
4. He is foolish and miser. (×)
(i) He is **foolish** and **miserly**. (✓) ('Miser' is 'Noun' which 'foolish' is 'Adjective')
Adj. Adj.
(ii) He is a **fool** and **miser**. (✓)
N N
5. He acted honestly but miserly. (×)
He acted **honestly** but **in a miserly manner**. (✓) ('Miserly' is an Adjective while we need an Adverb here.)
Adv Adv
6. A woman always finds time for doing her chores, enjoying leisure and talk about her neighbours. (×)
A woman always finds time for **doing** her chores, **enjoying** leisure and **talking** about her neighbours. (✓)
7. They travelled to Delhi, to Agra and visited Shimla. (×)
They travelled to **Delhi, Agra and Shimla**. (✓)
N N N
8. I faced the trial believing in my own innocence and I desired the truth to prevail. (×)
I faced the trial **believing** in my own innocence and **desiring** the truth to prevail. (✓)
Gerund Gerund
9. Our lawyer accepts cases that are worthy and if she thinks she will win. (×)
Our lawyer accepts cases **that** are worthy and **that** she thinks she will win. (✓)
10. My essay received a low grade more for its grammatical mistakes than what was said in it. (×)
My essay received a low grade more **for its grammatical mistakes than for its contents**. (✓)
11. I like television as much as reading books. (×)
I like **watching** television as much as **reading** books. (✓)
Gerund Gerund
12. He likes to go fishing during the day, but my brother prefers catching fish at night. (×)
He likes **to go** fishing during the day but my brother prefers **to catch** fish at night. (✓)
Infinitive Infinitive

13. Eating healthy food, resting and to drink a lot of fluid is advisable. (×)
Eating healthy food, **resting** and **drinking** a lot of fluid is advisable. (✓)
 Gerund Gerund Gerund
14. She is not only an excellent student but also she is a superb singer. (×)
 She is not only an excellent student but also superb singer. (✓)
15. We not only want to visit the Taj Mahal but also the Agra Fort. (×)
 We want to visit not only the Taj Mahal but also the Agra Fort. (✓)
16. Not only **did** he buy flowers for his mother but also **purchased** the same for his wife (verb 'did' balanced by verb purchased).
17. He bought flowers not only **for his wife** but also **for his mother**. ('for his + Noun' balanced by 'for his +Noun')
18. The Climate of Jaipur is more severe than Mumbai. (×)
 Add 'that of' before Mumbai. 'That' is a Pronoun used for climate here. (✓)
19. The streets of Delhi are broader than Patna. (×)
 Add 'those of' before 'Patna'. 'Those' is a Pronoun used for streets here. (✓)
20. He dealt with his customers honestly but niggardly.
 Niggardly is an Adjective. We need an Adverb here. Change 'niggardly' into 'in a niggardly manner'. (✓)
21. To die with honour (A)/ is better than (B)/ live with dishonour. (C)/ No Error. (D)
 Replace 'live' with 'to live'. Comparison should always be between two same grammatical items. Here 'to die' should be compared with 'to live'.

COMPULSORY ENGLISH

FOR IAS/AC/RAS/SSC (TIER 3)

- ➔ Written English
- ➔ Passage Writing
- ➔ Precis Writing
- ➔ Letter Writing
- ➔ Translation

FREE
ZOOM SESSION
FOR PRACTICE

FREE SPOKEN ENGLISH
BY NEETU SINGH



LIVE BATCH

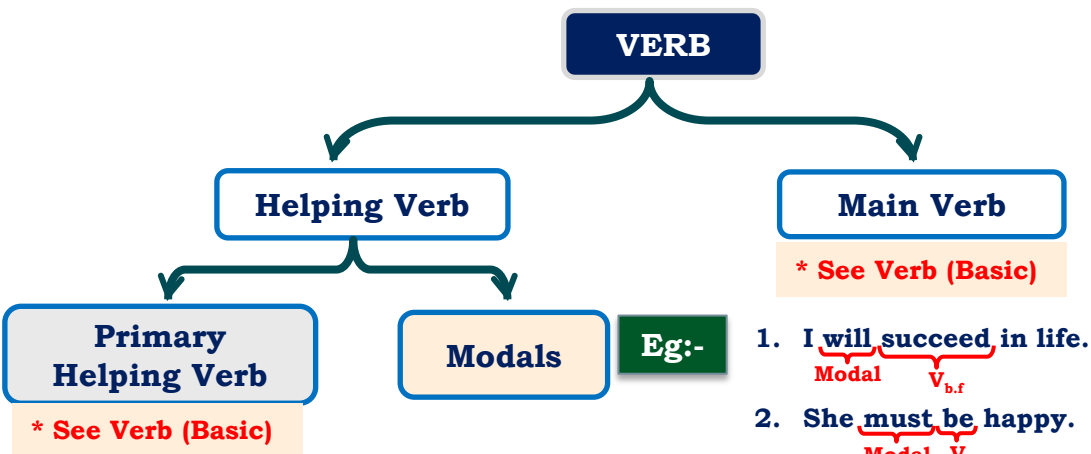


ONLY 3999/-

Buy Now

- Class can be watched offline 📶

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 9555108888 , 9555208888



- Modals are helping verbs/ Auxiliary verbs.
(Modals Helping verbs/ Auxiliary verbs हैं।)
- Modals are such Helping Verbs that cannot work as Main Verb.
(Modals ऐसे Helping verbs हैं जो Main verb का काम नहीं करते हैं।)
- Modals must be followed by a Main verb.
Modals के बाद Main Verb आना चाहिए।
- Modals must be followed by Base form of verb.
(Modals के तुरंत बाद V_{b.f} (Base form of verb) आना चाहिए।)

TYPES OF MODALS

Complete Modals

can, could, should, must, ought to, will, shall, would, may, might

They work only as Pure Modals. (ये सभी pure modals हैं। modals के अलावा ये कोई और काम नहीं करेंगे।)

Partial Modals

Used to { Modal
Adjective
Need & Dare { Modal
Main Verb

They work as Modals and also as some other Part of Speech.
(ये Modals के अलावा अन्य Part of Speech का भी काम करता है।)

Idiomatic Modals

- has to/ have to/ will have to/ had to
- would rather/ had better/ had rather/ had sooner
- 'be' + to/ 'be' + going to/ 'be' + about to

They have a meaning different from that of the words used in them.
(ये शब्दों से भिन्न अर्थ देता है।)

- **Modals help us to express the following feelings:-**

(Modals निम्नलिखित भावनाओं को व्यक्त करता है)

1. Possibility → संभावना	14. Request → निवेदन
2. Necessity → आवश्यकता	15. Authority → प्राधिकरण
3. Capability → क्षमता	16. Permission → अनुमति
4. Suggestion → सुझाव	17. Order → आदेश
5. Certainty → निश्चितता	18. Non-fulfilment → गैर पूर्ति
6. Doubt → संदेह	19. Threat → धमकी
7. Prayer → प्रार्थना	20. Determination → दृढ़ संकल्प
8. Wish → इच्छा	21. Willingness → रजामंदी
9. Habit → आदत	22. Blessing → आशीर्वाद
10. Intention → इरादा	23. Curse → अभिशाप
11. Promise → वादा	24. Offer → प्रस्ताव
12. Urgency → अत्यावश्यक	25. Requirement → आवश्यकता
13. Strong recommendation → दृढ़ अनुशंसा	26. Forced action → बलपूर्वक कार्य

Can & Could

- I can run fast.
 - I could run fast when I was young.
 - I thought that I can do it. (×) I thought that I could do it. (✓)
 - I could not come yesterday.
 - The doctors could not save him. (✓)
 - The doctors were unable to save him. (✓)
 - The night was dark but we _____ (reach) home safely.
 - I was suffering from Jaundice but I could take the exam. (×)
I was suffering from Jaundice but I managed to take the exam. (✓)
 - I can sing well but I am unable to do so now.
- Ability** **Non performance**

Utility

- Present ability** (वर्तमान की क्षमता)
 - Past ability** (भूतकाल की क्षमता)
 - Past form of 'can' is could** (can का 'past' रूप 'could' होता है)
 - 'Could not' → Past inability, past non-performance** (अक्षमता/कार्य का ना कर पाना)
 - could not = was/ were unable to (show non-performance)**
 - 'Could' → Past performance.** (×)
 - was/were + able to → Past performance**
- OR Managed to → Past Performance** (भूतकाल में कार्य करने में समर्थ होना दर्शाना हो, तो 'was' / 'were' / 'able to' अथवा 'managed to' का प्रयोग होता है)
- Ans. (i) managed to reach. (ii) were able to reach.**
 - able to → performance** (कार्य निष्पादन)
unable to → non performance (कार्य निष्पादन में असमर्थ होना)
Can → present ability. (वर्तमान की क्षमता)

10. I am unable to see properly. (×) I can't see properly. (✓)
11. Such a disease can kill the whole mankind.
12. There could be bomb under your seat.
13. The NDA government could take some tough decisions soon.
14. Play this game and you could win a laptop.
15. Do you think you can disobey the order of the court No, you cannot.
16. Could I talk to Mr. Singh?
17. She said to the interviewer, "Could you repeat the question?"
 - (i) If asked the interviews if she could repeat the question.
 - (ii) She requested the interviewer to repeat the question.
 - (iii) She requested me if I could repeat the questions.
18. The judge interrogated the accused in English to see if he would understand the language.
19. I cannot be able to come tomorrow.
20. The boss said to his secretary, "_____ you type this letter for me?"
 - (i) can
 - (ii) could
 - (iii) will
21. Can we be friends?

Utility

10. Do not use 'able to' or 'unable to' with the following verbs (नीचे दिए गये **Verbs** के साथ **able to** या **unable to** का प्रयोग नहीं होता) :-
 See, perceive (महसूस करना), understand, comprehend (समझना), feel, imagine, decide, smell, taste, think, remember, hear.
 These verbs do not need any effort so 'able to' or 'unable to' do not fit with them.
 (इन **Verbs** को करने के लिए कोई बल नहीं लगाना पड़ता। अतः इन **verbs** के साथ 'able to/ unable to' fit नहीं बैठते।)
11. Theoretical possibility (सैद्धांतिक संभावना)
12. Remote possibility (दूर की संभावना)
13. In unsubstantiated or uncorroborated news to show possibility. (not supported by a proof.) (ऐसे समाचार में जिनमें समाचार की प्रमाणिकता सिद्ध ना हो।)
14. In advertisements. (विज्ञापन में)
15. To assert one's authority. (अपने अधिकार पर बलपूर्वक जोर देने के लिए)
16. In formal request (औपचारिक निवेदन में)
17. Ans. (ii)
 In this sentence the Mood of the sentence matters. Hence (i) is a wrong answer though the rules of Narration have been followed properly. Option (iii) is wrong due to superfluous expression. 'Requested' and 'Could' become superfluous together.
 (इन वाक्य में **Mood** मायने रखता है। **Option 1** गलत है हालाँकि **Narration** के सभी नियम का पालन किया गया है। **Option 3** में **request** और **could** मिल कर वाक्य को **Superfluous** बना रहा है।)
18. Change 'would' into 'could'. Here the judge intended to check the ability of the accused. (**Would** को **could** में परिवर्तित करें। यहाँ जज आरोपी की क्षमता की जाँच कर रहा है।)
19. Can/could + able to/ capable of. (×)
 The expression is superfluous.
 Ans.(i) I cannot come tomorrow(ii) I won't be able to come tomorrow.
20. Ans. (ii)
 In formal request, we use 'could'. (औपचारिक निवेदन में हम **could** का प्रयोग करते हैं।)
21. In friendly request we use 'can'. (दोस्ती भरा निवेदन में **can** आता है।)

1. It may rain tonight.
2. He travels by flight and stays in five star-hotels. He must be very rich.
3. We all must die one day.
4. He might pass the exam but seeing his intelligence, I do not have much hope.
5. You must not drink and drive.
6. May god bless you.
7. You may go home now.
8. May I come in Sir?
9. I will help you come what may.
10. We eat so that we may live.
11. Might I lend you some money, father?
12. He thought that he may pass. (×)

He thought that he might pass. (✓)
13. His arm was so badly injured that he must have it amputated. (×)

His arm was so badly injured that he had to have it amputated. (✓)

May

1. In weather forecasting (meteorology), we use may to express possibility. (मौसम पूर्वानुमान में **May** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। **May** का प्रयोग संभावना दर्शाता है।)
6. In Optative sentences (इच्छा सूचक वाक्यों में)
 - Optative sentences are in Inversion form. (Optative वाक्य Inversion form में होते हैं)
 - Optative sentences express a prayer, wish or curse. (प्राथना, इच्छा या शाप व्यक्त करता है।)
7. To give permission. (अनुमति देने के लिए)
8. To make a request with respect/ to seek permission. (सम्मान के साथ निवेदन करने के लिए)
9. 'Come what may' is a phrase which means 'no matter what happens'. ('**Come what may**' का अर्थ है 'चाहे कुछ भी हो जाए')
10. If 'so that' or 'in order that' is preceded by action and followed by reason, the part comprising reason will take 'may'. (अगर '**so that**' या '**in order that**' के पहले **action** का प्रयोग हो, तो '**so that**' या '**in order that**' के बाद **may** का प्रयोग होगा।) **Reason** वाले भाग में **May** आएगा।

Might

4. Low possibility (कम संभावना)
11. To make an offer with hesitation. (हिचकिचाहट के साथ निवेदन करने के लिए)
12. Past form of 'may' is 'might'. ('**Might**' '**May**' का **past form** हो)

Must

2. strong/ high possibility (उच्च संभावना)
3. strong/ high possibility. (उच्च संभावना)
5. strong suggestion. (दृढ़ संभावना)
13. 'Must' is not used in past. 'Must' changes into 'had to' (in case of strong suggestion) (दृढ़ सलाह के वाक्यों में **must** का प्रयोग में नहीं होता। '**Had to**' का प्रयोग होगा।)

Change into Indirect speech.

14. He said, "We all must die one day."
15. He said, "I must leave now."
16. He said, "I must get up early tomorrow."

14. Must → strong possibility **in past** no change.
He said that we all must die one day.
15. Here 'must' should be considered 'have to' because 'said' indicates that we need past in later part of the sentence too and we know we cannot use 'must' in sentences of past. Now according to rules of Narration change 'have to' into 'had to'.
(यहाँ 'Must' को 'have to' माने क्योंकि 'said' से ये ज्ञात होता है कि वाक्य Past का है। हम Past में 'Must' का प्रयोग नहीं कर सकते हैं। Narration के नियम के अनुसार 'have to' को 'had to' में परिवर्तित करें।)
He said that he had to leave then.
16. He said that he would have to get up early the next day.
Must is considered 'will have to' (strong suggestion of future).
Change into 'would have to'.
(Must को 'will have to' माने और 'would have to' में परिवर्तित करें।)

Should, Must & Ought to

1. You should work hard.
2. You ought to respect your parents.
3. Prices ought to come down.
4. Run fast lest you should miss the train.
5. Take care lest he ____
(i) fall
(ii) may fall
(iii) falls
6. Should you need my help, let me know.
7. He ought to not disobey my orders. (×)
He ought not to disobey my orders. (✓)
- Will/ shall — See Tense for complete concept of 'will/ shall'.

1. suggestion (सलाह)
4. **lest ... should + V_{b.f}**
pair of conjunction
5. **Lest ... V_{b.f}**
if 'should' is not present in the sentence.
6. In place of 'if' in conditional sentences ('In open cases' which means that the action may or may not take place) (हो भी सकता है नहीं भी)
2. Moral suggestion. (नैतिक सलाह)
3. to express desirability. (इच्छा दर्शाने के लिए)
7. -ve ought to not V_{b.f} (×)
 ought not to V_{b.f} (✓)

Would

1. He said that he will come. (×)
He said that he would come. (✓)
 2. Would you help me?
 3. If I were a bird, I would fly.
 4. If I had seen you, I would have greeted you.
 5. Would that he were in my shoes!
 6. He said, "I shall come." (change into indirect speech)
He said that he would come.
 7. I would like to meet the manager.
 8. I would rather die than beg.
 9. I would love to see you on television.
 10. (i) I used to go to school by bus.
(ii) I went to school by bus.
(iii) I would go to school by bus. (×)
- For Past Routine option 1 is best. (Past Routine बताने के लिए Option (i) best है।)
(ii) This is our 2nd choice.
(iii) This is not acceptable but if Introductory part is Past, we can use 'would' for Past Routine. (ये उपयुक्त नहीं है लेकिन अगर प्रथम भाग में **Past** हो, तो हम **would** का प्रयोग **Past Routine** व्यक्त करने के लिए कर सकते हैं।)
 - When I was in kindergarten, I would go to school by bus.
11. When I was there, I would know all my neighbours well. (×)
 12. It would be a quiet street. (×)
 13. I would appreciate if readers would write to me.

1. Would is past of 'will'. (**will** का **past 'would'** होता है।)
2. In polite request we use 'would'. (विनम्र निवेदन में **would** का प्रयोग होता है।)
In formal request we use 'could'. (औपचारिक निवेदन में **could** का प्रयोग होता है।)
- 3 & 4. In principal clause,
(i) 'would + V_{b.f}' is used in Present Imagination. (वर्तमान के काल्पनिक वाक्यों में '**would V_{b.f}**' का प्रयोग होता है।)
Would have + V₃ is used in Past unfulfilled action.
5. 'Would that' means 'I wish'.
6. Would is past of shall/ will.
7. Would like → polite way to express one's wish. (विनम्रता के साथ अपनी इच्छा व्यक्त करने के लिए।)
8. 'Would rather ... than' → expresses preference. (वरीयता व्यक्त करने के लिए।)
9. Would love → strong desire (तीव्र इच्छा)
10. (i) Subject + used to + V_{b.f}

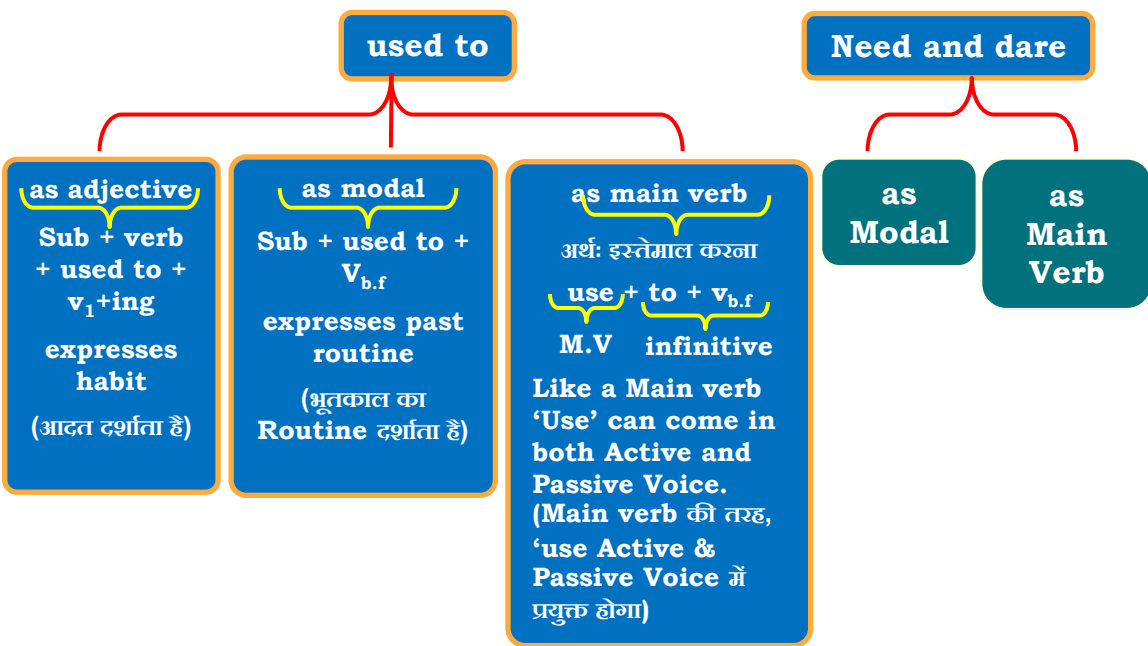
(ii) **Past Indefinite Tense**

Past Action
(भूतकाल का कार्य)

Past Routine
(भूतकाल का **Routine** कार्य)

- 11 & 12. In 11 and 12 we have used **Stative verbs**.
(11 और 12 में **Stative verb** का प्रयोग हो रहा है।)
'Would' will not take 'Stative verb' in case of Past Routine. ('**Would**' का प्रयोग '**Stative verb**' के साथ **Past Routine** व्यक्त करने वाले वाक्य में नहीं होता है।)
Stative verb
Use 'used to' in place of 'would' ('Would' के स्थान पर 'used to' का प्रयोग करें।)
13. If clause does not take will/shall/would.
If वाले भाग में will/ shall/ would नहीं आता है।
Normal sense → वाक्य **past** है तो आगे भी **past** होगा।
Ans → If readers wrote to me.

Partial Modals



1. He got used _____ on the right when he was in London

(i) to drive (ii) to driving

2. He is used to drink coffee with his meals. (×)

He is/ got/ will get used to drinking coffee with his meals. accustomed to

addicted to

given to

habitual of

Note.:-

Subject + V + used to + Noun/ Gerund

fixed
preposition

Ans. 1 (ii),

Ans. 2 change 'drink' into 'drinking'.

1 & 2 → Here 'used to' expresses habit because here 'used to' has taken a verb before it. When 'used to' is preceded by a verb, it is followed by Gerund. (यहाँ 'Used to' आदत दर्शा रहा है क्योंकि 'used to' के पहले एक verb मौजूद है। जब 'used to' के पहले verb हो, तो 'used to' के बाद 'Gerund' आता है।)

As Modals

- I used to meet him everyday when I was in Mumbai.
- He uses to study till 10 pm and then goes to bed. (×)
He studies till 10 pm and then goes to bed. (✓)
- He said, "It used to be a lovely quiet street" (Change into Indirect Speech)
He said that it used to be a lovely quiet.

- If there is no verb before 'used to', it means 'used to' is a Modal and hence base form of verb follows.
(अगर **used to** के पहले **verb** नहीं आ रहा तो **used to** का **verb** के **base form** आयेगा क्योंकि यहाँ '**Used to**' Modal है और Modal के बाद **verb** का **Base form** आता है)
Subject + **used to** + V_{b.f.}
- As a Modal **'used to'** expresses Past routine. For 'Present Routine' we use Present Indefinite Tense.
(Modals के रूप में '**used to**' **past routine** दर्शाता है। **Present routine** के लिए **Simple Present Tense** आता है।)
- Modal **'used to'** has no Past Perfect form. Past Routine cannot have any past perfect form (Modal **used to** का कोई **Past perfect form** नहीं है। **Past Routine** का कोई **Past Perfect form** नहीं हो सकता है।)

As Main Verb

- Oxen are used to plough** the fields.
Obj. H.V M.V Infinitive
- Placebo **is used to give** medicine like effect.
M.V Infinitive
- He **did used to work** hard. (×)
V₂
He did use to work hard. (✓)
- I **used to not come** late. (×)
I used not to come late. (✓)

- The sentences are in Passive Voice and 'used' is V₃ (वाक्य Passive Voice में है और 'Used V₃ from है)
- Two V₂ do not come together. Hence 'Did' takes 'V₁' (दो V₂ एक साथ नहीं आते। अतः Did के बाद V₁ आता है।)
- Used to V_{b.f.} — In positive sentences
Used not to V_{b.f.} — In negative sentences

Need & Dare Shows: Necessity Audacity

- You **need to hurry** now. (×)
Modal Infinitive
- You **need to hurry** now. (✓)
M.V Infinitive
- You **need not to worry** now. (×)
Modal
You need not worry now. (✓)
- He **doesn't need to take** the exam.
H.V M.V Infinitive
- He **needs to work** hard.
M.V Infinitive
- He **needs to go** there.
M.V Infinitive
- Dare he to trespass again? (×)
Dare he trespass again? (✓)
- She **needs not worry**. (×)
She need not worry. (✓)

1. As Modal need & dare do not come in positive sentences Modal के रूप में need & dare positive sentences से नहीं आते।
2. As Modals needs & dare come in Negative & Interrogative sentences (Modals के रूप में need & dare नकारात्मक एवं प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में आते हैं।)
7. Unlike Main Verb, Modals do not take s/es form. (Modals s/es नहीं लेता।)

Perfect Modals

Modal + have + V₃

1. You should had come yesterday. (×)
You should have come yesterday. (✓)
2. The streets are flooded. It must have rained last night.
3. He may grow old since we last saw him. (×)
He may have grown old since we last saw him. (✓)
4. I need not have watered the plants because as soon as I finished, it started raining.
5. He returned the purse though he could have kept it.

1. For past suggestion used 'should/must + have + V₃' (भूतकाल सलाह के लिए should/must + have + V₃ का प्रयोग करें)

All Modals take base form of Verb. Hence we need 'Have' in place of 'had'. (सभी Modals के साथ Verb का Base form आता है। अतः 'Had' के स्थान 'have' पर आएगा।)

Explanations

1. Modals are followed by V_{b.f}. If we use 'Modal have V₃' in a sentence, there is a hidden meaning in the sentence but in exams, we have sentences with hidden meaning stated in a connected sentence. (See sentences 4 & 5).

Modals के बाद V_{b.f} आता है। अगर हम modal + have + V₃ को प्रयोग करते हैं, तो वाक्य में एक छुपा हुआ अर्थ होता जो वाक्य के अर्थ के विपरीत होता है लेकिन exams में स्पष्ट रूप में hidden meaning दिए होते हैं (See sentences 4 & 5)

2. If Modals denoting possibility come in Perfect form, there is no hidden meaning.

अगर संभावना वाले Modals Perfect form में आते हो तो इनका कोई छिपा हुआ अर्थ नहीं होता।

Eg.: Some thief might have broken the lock.

3. If 'since' is followed by Past Indefinite, 'since' is preceded by Present Perfect but if possibility is expressed in the sentence, we use 'Modal Perfect'. Change 'may grow' into 'may have grown'.

अगर 'Since' के बाद Past Indefinite हो तो 'since' के पहले Present Perfect आएगा। लेकिन अगर संभावना दर्शाना हो, तो संभावना दर्शाने वाले Modals 'Perfect form' में आएगा है। 'May grow' को 'May have grown' में परिवर्तित करें।

Idiomatic Modals

Denotes forced action

- **Have to + V_{b.f}**

दबाव के अंतर्गत किया गया कार्य दर्शाता है। (see Verb Basic)

- 'be' + going to + V_{b.f}
- 'be' + about to + V_{b.f}
- be + to + V_{b.f}

Denotes planned action of near future.
(निकट भविष्य के planned action दर्शाता है) (see Verb Basic)

- **would rather ... Than**

Shows preference (वरीयता दर्शाता है) See 'Mood'.
Eg.: I would rather take tea than coffee

- had rather
- had better
- had sooner

+ V_{b.f}

to express strong suggestion or strong recommendation
See chapter 'Mood'

1. You had sooner see a specialist.
2. I had rather stay at home.
3. You had rather pay by cheque.
4. I would rather you paid by cheque.

2nd Sub V₂

KD Campus

STARS OF KD CAMPUS

SSC (CGL) 2015

Ravi Shankar Singh
Roll No. 3206138660



NPCIL 2015

Swadesh Kumar
Scientific Assist.



CDS 2016

ANKIT SAROHA
Roll No.: 0067070



SSC (Steno.) 2016

Aman Verma
Roll No.: 2201017982



DMRC 2015

Madhur
Roll No - 1030101955



CPO 2017

Nancy Mann
Roll. 2201006498



CPO 2017

Krishan Singh
Roll No: 2201160398



SSC (CGL) 2016

Ayush Vats
Roll No: 2201034549



DELHI HIGH COURT 2015

Yatin Jain
Roll No: 162170446



CPO 2017

Sunny
Roll No: 2201016475



SSC- (JE) 2015

Chetan Sharma
Roll No: 2201012767



SSC (CGL) 2015

Moha Vashishtha
Roll No. 2002003845



SSC (CGL) 2016

Purushottam Kr Salu
Roll No.: 4205056268



CPO 2017

Anshul Kumar
Roll No.: 2201076775



SUPERFLUOUS EXPRESSION

28

Superfluous means more than what is needed.

Synonym ➤ Redundant

See the following common expressions but the word given in bracket makes the following superfluous.

1. Toll (tax)
2. Family (member)
3. (Respected) Sir/Madam
4. (Usual) custom/tradition/practice
5. (Hidden/Sudden) ambush.
6. Visible (to the eyes)
7. Audible (to the ears)
8. (12 O'clock) noon/midnight.
9. 6 pm (in the evening)
10. Sole/toe (of the feet)
11. Short/Tall (in height)
12. Fair/dark (in complexion)
13. Few/many (in number)
14. Little/much (in quantity)
15. Green/red etc (in colour)
16. Weather (condition)
17. (total/complete) catastrophe.
18. (Unexpected) surprise/ shock
19. (Small) Iota/Speck
20. (Sudden) impulse
21. (Still) remain/persist.
22. (Safe) haven
23. 'The reason why.....because' (replace 'because' with 'that')
24. Round (in shape) (applicable to all shapes)
25. (Pre) Recorded
26. Twins (sisters/brothers)
27. (Past) experience/history/record
28. Mutual friend (Replace mutual with common)
29. PAN/PIN (Number)
30. HIV (virus)
31. ATM (machine)
32. EVM (machine)
33. Cousin (Brother/Sister)

Ambush	- the act of hiding and waiting and then suddenly attacking. (घात लगा कर हमला करना)
Catastrophe	- complete destruction (सर्वनाश)
Iota	- very small in quantity (बहुत थोड़ा सा)
Speck	- Very small in size (बहुत छोटा)
Impulse	- sudden strong desire (आवेश)
Persist	- continue to do (अड़े रहना)
Haven	- a safe place where one is protected from danger. (सुरक्षित स्थान)

34. (Old) adage/cliche/ tradition/ proverb.
 35. (Overused) Platitude/cliche.
 36. (Past) nostalgia.
 37. Meet (each other/ one another)
 38. Mix/Join (together)
 39. (Original) native
 40. (Local) resident
 41. Retrospect (the past) (Major/Big) feat/breakthrough.
 43. Introspect (myself/yourself etc.)
 44. (Big) Blunder (mistake)
 45. Lag (behind)
 46. (Free) gift.
 47. (Unpleasant) shock
 48. Bold (headed)
 49. (Final) conclusion / outcome / Judgement
 50. (End) result.
 51. abolish / eradicate / uproot (completely)
 52. Drop (down)
 53. Earlier/later (in time)
 54. Circulate (around)
 55. Commute (to and fro)
 56. (Own) autobiography
 57. (Brief) moment/summary
 58. (special) expertise
 59. (Real/ Actual) facts
 60. (close) proximity/intimacy
 61. (Exact) replica/facsimile
 62. Merge (together)
 63. Exceed (more than)
 64. (Angry) mob
 65. 'More' and 'Most' cannot come with: Everlasting¹, Forever¹, Eternal¹, Ubiquitous², Universal², Unique³, Prime⁴, Fatal⁵, Deadly⁵, Lethal⁵, Minor⁶, Major, Final, Triangular, Parallel, Oval, Square, Rectangular, Round, Perfect, Free, Empty, Supreme⁷, Paramount⁷, Excellent⁸, Ulterior⁹, Complete¹⁰, Mortal¹¹
 66. Do not use 'again' with the given words : repeat, recapitulate¹², recall¹³ reborn, rebuilt, revise.
 67. Do not use 'back' with the following words: Recall, retreat¹⁴, return¹⁴, recede, reimburse¹⁵.

Cliche/platitude — a phrase used for so long that it is no longer effective. (धिसी पिटी कहावत)
Adage — old and famous saying. (पुरानी कहावत) **Eg- Honesty is the best polity**
Nostalgia — pleasure and sadness caused by remembering something from past.
Native — Original (मूल)
Retrospect — A review of the past course of events (बीती घटना का अवलोकन)
Breakthrough — First important success. (प्रथम महत्वपूर्ण सफलता)
Feat — Remarkable achievement. (शानदार/बड़ी उपलब्धि)
Lag — Fail to keep up with others. (पीछे रह जाना)
Abolish - उन्मूलन करना
Eradicate - जड़ से खत्म करना
Uproot - जड़ से उखाड़ देना
Commute — To travel regularly to and from a place.
Proximity/Intimacy — Closeness नजदीकी)
Replica/facsimile — Exact copy
Brief — क्षणिक
Moment — क्षण
Mob — गुरसाई भीड़

1. हमेशा के लिए
2. सार्वभौमिक
3. अपने जैसा सिर्फ एक
4. सबसे ज्यादा महत्त्वपूर्ण
5. घातक
6. छोटा
7. सबसे ऊपर
8. उत्कृष्ट
9. छिपा हुआ
10. पूर्ण
11. नश्वर
12. Revise
13. वापस बुलाना
14. पीछे हटना
15. फिर से पूर्ति कर देना

Correct the following sentences if needed-

1. Suppose if you see a tiger, what will you do?
2. Despite of being ill, he came to take the test.
3. The result is being awaited for.
4. It was a mutual agreement between the two parties.
5. The dress what I wanted to buy is not available here.
6. The thief has fled away.
7. The job wasn't interesting but on contrary it was well paid.
8. He said to me "Could you repeat the question?"
 - (a) He asked me to please repeat the question.
 - (b) He requested me if I could repeat the question
 - (c) He requested me to repeat the question.
 - (d) He asked me to if I could repeat the question.
9. Unless he will not mend his ways, I will not help him.
10. He denied that he had not stolen my watch.
11. He did not deny that he had stolen my watch.
12. I suddenly came across with my friend.
13. I came across with my childhood friend.
14. When I approached near the counter, the clerk frowned.
15. He is a family member.
16. He kept vomiting throughout the whole night.
17. I attended a reception party last night.
18. This book comprises of ten chapters.
19. If I will see him, I will talk to him.
20. Let me recapitulate the main points again.
21. Run fast lest we should not miss the train.
22. The politicians keep retracting back from their statements.
23. He is more faster than the other runner.
24. A strong breeze blew away my cap.
25. Before doing anything, think first.
26. This is beyond of the jurisdiction of the court.
27. He left India with bag and baggage.
28. It was raining like cats and dogs.
29. I fought with tooth and nail.
30. I entered into the room.
31. They cannot be able to do this.
32. The reason why I did not come was because I was unwell.

Answers

1. Remove 'if'.
2. Remove 'of'.
3. Remove 'for'.
4. Remove 'mutual' and change 'a' into 'an'.
5. Remove 'the dress' or change 'what' into 'that'.
6. Remove 'away'.
7. Remove 'on contrary'.
8. (C)
9. Omit 'will not'. Change 'mend' into 'mends'.
10. Remove 'not'.
11. No error
12. Remove 'suddenly' and 'with'.
13. Remove 'with'.
14. Remove 'near'.
15. Remove 'a' and 'member'.
16. Remove 'whole'.
17. Remove 'party'.
18. Remove 'of'.
19. Remove 'will'.
20. Remove 'again'.
21. Remove 'not'.
22. Remove 'back'.
23. Remove 'more'.
24. Change 'breeze' into 'wind'.
25. Remove 'first'.
26. Remove 'of'.
27. Remove 'with'.
28. Remove 'like'.
29. Remove 'with'.
30. Remove 'into'.
31. Remove 'be able to'.
32. Change 'because' into 'that'.



ENGLISH SPL.



NEETU SINGH

**ONLY
3499/-**

BEST BATCH FOR ALL OBJECTIVE EXAMS.

FREE

60+ TEST PAPERS OF

**SSC (CHSL), CGL (TIER-I & II),
BANK (PO, CLERK)**

Download Now!



Subscribe Now

KD CAMPUS YOUTUBE CHANNEL

SSC

BANK

NDA

CDS

**& All Objective
Exams**

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 9555108888 / 9555208888

Introduction

English is an 'unphonetic' language. Owing to this, we are made to learn spellings in our childhood and regular dictations are conducted in schools. We have to learn spellings but there are certain rules that help us remember or form the spellings easily.

English एक 'unphonetic' भाषा है। इस वजह से हमें बचपन से ही spelling रटाया जाता है एवं dictation के नाम से पर Regular Tests स्कूल में कराये जाते हैं। spellings याद करना जरूरी है परन्तु कुछ नियम से हमें कई spellings स्वतः बनाना या याद रखना आसान हो जाता है।

Rule / नियम (1)

If 'y' comes after a consonant, we need to change 'y' into 'i' before adding 'es', 'ed' or 'er'. This rule is applicable to 'verb', 'noun' and 'adjective'.

अगर 'y' का प्रयोग consonant के बाद हो तो es, ed, er 'y' का परिवर्तन 'i' में किया जाता है। ये नियम verb, noun एवं adjective में प्रयुक्त होता है।

Cry _(Verb)	cried (V ₂ , V ₃)
Fry _(Verb)	fried (V ₂ , V ₃)
Dry _(Verb)	dried (V ₂ , V ₃)
Dry _(Adj.)	drier, driest
City _(Noun)	cities (Pl. Noun)

Country _(Noun)	countries (Pl. Noun)
Happy _(Adj)	happily (Adverb)
Marry + age	Marriage _(Noun)
Carry + ed	Carried (V ₂)

Rule / नियम (2)

If 'y' comes after a vowel 'y' is not changed into 'i'.

अगर 'y' का प्रयोग vowel के बाद हो तो 'y' को 'i' में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जाता है।

Boy (Noun)	Boys (Pl. Noun)
Pray (Verb)	Prayed (V ₂ , V ₃)
Grey (Adj.)	Greyer, Greyest

Exceptions / अपवाद

Pay (verb)	Paid (V ₂ , V ₃)
Say (verb)	Said (V ₂ , V ₃)
Lay (verb)	Laid (V ₂ , V ₃)

Rule / नियम (3)

A famous saying is 'i' before 'e' except 'c'. This means 'i' comes before 'e' but this rule is not applicable when they come after 'c'. 'c' is not followed by 'i,e'. 'C' is followed by (e,i.) This rule is applicable only when the pronunciation of 'ie' and 'ei' is 'ee' as in jeep.

एक प्रचलित वाक्य है 'i' before 'e' except 'c' यानि 'i' का प्रयोग 'e' के पहले होता है पर ये नियम तब लागू नहीं होता जब 'c' के बाद इनका प्रयोग हो। यानि 'c' के बाद 'ie' नहीं बल्कि 'ei' का प्रयोग होता है। परन्तु इस नियम का प्रयोग तभी होता जब 'ie' या 'ei' का उच्चारण 'ee' हो जैसे 'jeep' में होता है।

Examples / उदाहरण

ie

achieve

belief_(N) (विश्वास)

believe_(V) (विश्वास करना)

chief

thief

grief_(N) (तकलीफ/ दुःख)

grieve_(V) (मातम मनाना)

ei

ceiling

conceit_(N) (घमंड)

receive

deceit_(N) (धोखा)

perceive (महसूस करना)

receipt

conceive (धारण करना)

Rule / नियम (4)

Science, efficient, their, beige (खाकी रंग), foreign, height, neighbour, vein, weight do not follow this rule because here the pronunciation is not 'ee'.

science, efficient, their, beige, foreign, height, neighbour, vein, weight में ये नियम लागू नहीं होता है क्योंकि यहाँ शब्द के उच्चारण में 'ee' नहीं है।

Exceptions / अपवाद

In the following words the rule is not applicable though the pronunciation is 'ee'. / नीचे दिए गए शब्दों में 'ee' के उच्चारण के बावजूद नियम लागू नहीं होता।

Seize (जब्त करना)

Surfeit (अति)

Counterfeit (जाली, नकली)

Protein (प्रोटीन)

Plebeian (आम जनता)

Rule / नियम (5)

The verbs that end in 'ie' take 'ing' only when 'ie' changes into 'y'.

जिन शब्दों में 'ie' अंत में आता है उनमें 'ing' लगाने से पहले 'ie' को 'y' में परिवर्तित किया जाता है।

die (verb)

tie (verb)

lie (verb)

Vie (verb)

(प्रतिस्पर्धा करना)

dying

tying

lying

vying

Rule / नियम (6)

Those words that end in silent 'e' take suffix starting with a vowel only after the 'e' is removed.

जिन शब्दों के अंत में silent 'e' आता है उन में suffix लगाने से पहले 'e' हटा दिया जाता है।

Examples / उदाहरण

live + ing	→ living	Sensible + ly	→ sensibly
hope + ing	→ hoping	Forcible + ly	→ forcibly
move + ing/ed	→ moving, moved	Gentle + ly	→ gently
drive + ing/er	→ driving, driver	Subtle + ly	→ subtly
become + ing	→ becoming	Rove + ing	→ roving
Shape + ing	→ Shaping	Subtle	→ not
Argue + ment	→ argument	noticeable	
Nine + th	→ ninth	Rove	→ to wander
Note + able	→ notable	(भटकना)	
Advise + able	→ advisable	Fame + ous	→ famous
Imagine + ary	→ imaginary	Pore (छेद) + ous	→ porous
Desire + ous	→ desirous	Value + able	→ valuable
Value + able	→ valuable	Stone + y	→ stony
Age + ing	→ aging	Noise + y	→ noisy
True + ly	→ truly	Whole + ly	→ wholly
		Taste + y	→ tasty
		Ice + y	→ icy

Exceptions / अपवाद

Note

Awful
Awesome

Hope + full/less	→ Hopeful/ hopeless
Awe + full	→ Awful (बहुत गन्दा)
Awe + some	→ Awesome
Acknowledge + ment	→ Acknowledgement
Judge + ment	→ Judgement
Home + less	→ Homeless
Manage + able	→ Manageable
Charge + able	→ Chargeable
Courage + ous	→ Courageous

Rule / नियम (7)

See the following words. Here 'e' changes into 'i' and then suffix 'ous' is added.

निम्नलिखित शब्दों को देखें। यहाँ 'e', 'i' में परिवर्तित होता है तब suffix 'ous' लगाया जाता है।

Examples / उदाहरण

Space + ous = spacious

Vice (बुराई) + ous = vicious (बुराई से भरा हुआ)

Malice (इच्छा कि दूसरो का बुरा हो) + ous = Malicious

Grace (दया) + ous = Gracious (दयालु)

Rule / नियम (8)

The words that end in a short vowel and a consonant take a suffix starting with a vowel only after the last consonant is doubled.

जो शब्द एक short vowel + एक consonant में खत्म हो तो vowel से शुरू होने वाले suffix जोड़ने से पहले अंतिम consonant को double किया जाता है।

Examples / उदाहरण

beg + ed

begged

run + ing

running

rob + er

robber

sad + er/est

sadder, saddest

fit + er/est

fitter, fittest

begin + ing

beginning

occur + ed

occurring

kidnap + er

kidnapper

Exceptions / अपवाद

When a suffix starting with a consonant is added, this rule is not applicable.

जब consonant से शुरू होने वाले suffix को जोड़ा जाता है तो इस नियम का प्रयोग नहीं होता।

bag + ed = bagged ('g' doubled)
vowel

bag + ful = bagful ('g' not doubled)
consonant

If Consonant is preceded by a long vowel, the Consonant is doubled.

अगर Consonant के पहले long vowel आए तो Consonant double नहीं होगा।

Examples / उदाहरण

Heat + ing

→

Heating

Beat + en

→

Beaten

Rule / नियम (9)

When suffix 'full' is added to a word, an 'l' is removed.

अगर suffix 'full' को किसी शब्द से जोड़ा जाता है तो 'full' से एक 'l' हट जाता है।

Examples / उदाहरण

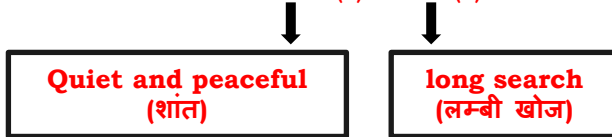
		(UK)	(US)
		↓	↓
Skill + full	→	skilful	skillful
Hand + full	→	handful	
Mouth + full	→	mouthful	
Spoon + full	→	spoonful	
Beauty + full	→	Beautiful	

Rule / नियम (10)

'q' is followed by 'u' for all words of English language.

अंग्रेजी के शब्दों में 'q' के बाद 'u' का प्रयोग होता है। ये नियम अंग्रेजी के सभी शब्दों में प्रयुक्त होता है।

queue, quiz, queen, tranquil_(A), quest_(N), quarrel



• Some words take double 'uu'. / कुछ अंग्रेजी के शब्दों में दो 'uu' एक साथ आते हैं।

Examples / उदाहरण

Vacuum _(N)	—	space that is completely empty
Continuum _(N)	—	a continuous series of things
Residuum _(N)	—	the remaining part (word used in Chemistry)

Rule / नियम (11)

Many spellings of British English are different from American English. We must use spellings as per British English.

British English में कई spellings American English से अलग होते हैं। ऐसे में हमें British English के अनुसार Spelling का प्रयोग करना चाहिए क्योंकि भारत में हमने English British से सिखा है। ऐसे कुछ उदाहरण नीचे दिए गए हैं।

Examples / उदाहरण

U.K.	U.S.
Meagre (बहुत थोड़ा)	Meager
Colour	Color
Favour	Favor
Foetus (भ्रूण)	Fetus
Organisation	Organization
Mileage	Milage

Rule / नियम (12)

It two words ending in double 'l' and joined, one 'l' is dropped.

अगर दो शब्द 'll' पर खत्म हों और दोनों को जोड़ना हो, तो दोनों शब्दों में से एक-एक 'l' हट जाएगा।

Examples / उदाहरण

		(UK)		(US)
Will + full	→	wilful	/	willful
Full + fill	→	fulfil	/	fulfill

Rule / नियम (13)

If All, well, till, still come as 'prefix' or 'suffix' then one 'l' will be removed.

अगर All, well, till, still → 'prefix' और 'suffix' में आए तो एक 'l' हट जाएगा।

Examples / उदाहरण

All+together	→	Altogether		(UK)		(US)
All+most	→	Almost		↓	↓	
Un+till	→	Until		In+still	→	Instil/ Instill
				Dis+till	→	Distil/ distill

to put gradually into the mind and feelings.

To make a liquid stronger or purer (A Chemical process distillation)

Exceptions / अपवाद

Wellbeing (अच्छा, स्वस्थ हालत)
Farewell (विदाई)

Rule / नियम (14)

It 'ness' is added to a word ending in 'n' then both 'n' remain in the word.

अगर 'ness' किसी ऐसे शब्द के साथ जोड़ा जाए तो खुद 'n' पर खत्म हो, तो दोनों 'n' रह जाते हैं।

Examples / उदाहरण

Keen	}	+ ness	→	keenness (Enthusiasm - उत्सुकता)
Clean			→	cleanness or cleanliness
Mean			→	meanness (संकुचित मनोवृत्ति)

Rule / नियम (15)

Look at the following words. They end in 'c' and if they are to take a 'suffix', then change 'c' into 'ck'.

निम्नलिखित शब्दों को देखें। ये 'c' पर खत्म होते हैं और अगर इनमें suffix लगाना हो, तो 'c', 'ck' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।

Examples / उदाहरण

Panic + ed	→	panicked
Traffic + ing	→	trafficking
Picnic + er	→	picnicker

SILENT LETTERS

• 'h' is silent in

Daughter, draught (a game, a flow of cold air that comes in the room), sight (दृष्टि), right, bright, height, honour, hour, honest, rhythm (लय), honorary (without salary), exhaust (खत्म करना / थका देना), haemorrhage

• 'l' is silent in

Balm, palm (हथेली), talk, walk, alms (दान), chalk, calm (शांत)

• 'k' is silent in

Knife, know, knee, knight (a person given a title or honour by a king)

• 'n' is silent in

Solemn (serious), autumn, hymn (मंत्र), column

• 't' is silent in

Whistle (सिटी बजाना), fasten (बांधना), hasten (हड़बड़ाना), often, hustle and bustle (a large amount of activity in noisy surroundings), debut (first performance), depot (a place where a large number of vehicles are kept)

• 'd' is silent in

Adjective, adjourn (to postpone), grudge (unfriendly feeling)

• 'w' is silent in

Write, wrath (great anger), wring (निचोड़ना), wrong, wrap (लपेटना)

• 'b' is silent in

Subtle (not very noticeable), debt (कर्ज), debtor, doubt

• 'r' is silent in

Summer, winter, mother, father, sister, brother

• 'g' is silent in

Malign (harmful to say something disrespectful about others publicly in an unfair manner), benign (kind), assign (to allocate- कोई कार्यभार सौंपना), sign, campaign

See how spellings change even when the words are of same origin.
निम्नलिखित शब्दों को देखें। एक ही root से बने शब्दों के spellings भी अलग-अलग हो सकते हैं।

Examples / उदाहरण

Enemy (दुश्मन)	→ enmity (दुश्मनी)
Maintain	→ Maintenance
Repeat	→ Repetition
Dexterous (निपूण)	→ Ambidextrous (जो दोनों हाथों से बराबर सक्षम हो)
Odour (गंध)	→ Malodorous (दुर्गन्ध भरा)
Continue	→ Continuous
Humour (हास्य)	→ Humorous (मजाक से भरा)

See the difference / अंतर देखे

Tomb	→ कब्र
Tome	→ किताब
Epitome	→ perfect example

Note/ नोट:

'c' never comes in place of 's' in the words given below. / नीचे दिए गये शब्दों में 's' के जगह 'c' कभी ना लगाये।

Supersede, Idiosyncrasy, Abstruse

(निरस्त करके
उसकी
जगह लेना)

(विचित्र व्यवहार)

difficult

See the difference / अंतर देखे

Condemn	→ deplore/ criticize (निंदा करना)
Commend	→ Praise, Applaud, laud, extol (तारीफ करना)
Comment	→ टिप्पणी, टिप्पणी करना

- Colonel does not take 'r'
कर्नल में 'r' नहीं होता - Colonel
- Lieutenant does not take 'f'
लेफ्टिनेंट में 'f' नहीं होता - Lieutenant
- Superintendent - Super+in+ten+dent
सुपरिटेण्डेंट - Super+in+ten+dent
- Cigar + ette - Cigarette
सिगरेट - Cigar + rette - Cigarette
- Etiquette - Manners (शिष्टाचार)
एटिकेट - Etiquette
- Omelette
ऑमलेट - Omelette

See carefully:- Tuition, Omniscient, Occasion, Millionaire, Liaison, Queue. 'i'

(One who knows all)

(सांठ-गांठ)

comes after 'u' in Tuition. 'c' is in Omniscient. Occasion does not take 'ss'.
Millionaire takes 'aire' not 'er' and Liaison takes 'i' after and before 'a'.

Tuition, Omniscient, Occasion, Millionaire, Liaison, Queue को ध्यान से देखें। Tuition में 'u' के बाद 'i' है। Omniscient में 'c' है। Occasion में 'ss' नहीं होता। Millionaire में 'naire' होता है ना कि 'er' एवं Liaison में 'a' के बाद 'i' आता है।

Commonly Misspelt Words

Assassination, Calendar, Cemetery, Chauffeur, Committee, Ecstasy,

(murder of
a politician)

(कब्रिस्तान)

(Private
driver)

(joy)

Four, Fourth, Forty, Nine, Ninth, Ninety, Twelve, Twelfth, Harass, Embarrass,

(प्रताड़ित
करना)

(शर्मिंदा करना)

Forthcoming, Champagne, Lollipop, Millennium, Millennial, Separate, Plebiscite

(Period of
1000 years)

(a person reaching
young adulthood
in the early 21st
century)

(Referendum-
जनमत संग्रह)

Exercise -1 (Correctly Spelt)

Directions : In questions given below, groups of four words are given. In each group, one word is correctly spelt. Find the correctly spelt word and mark your answer in the Answer-Sheet.

1. (A) Emancipation	(B) Emancipasion	(C) Emencipation	(D) Emansipation
2. (A) Prejudice	(B) Prejudise	(C) Predjudice	(D) Prejudis
3. (A) Surgeon	(B) Surjon	(C) Surgen	(D) Surjun
4. (A) Potatos	(B) Potatoes	(C) Potatose	(D) None of the above
5. (A) Ireversible	(B) Irreversible	(C) Irrevarsible	(D) Irravarsible
6. (A) Independance	(B) Independence	(C) Independens	(D) Indepandance
7. (A) Hypocrisy	(B) Hypocresy	(C) Hipocrisy	(D) Hipocrecy
8. (A) Aeroplane	(B) Airopplane	(C) Aeroplain	(D) Airopplain
9. (A) Loanly	(B) Lonly	(C) Loneli	(D) Lonely
10. (A) Cerimony	(B) Ceremoney	(C) Ceremony	(D) Cerimoney
11. (A) Deceive	(B) Decieve	(C) Diceive	(D) Dicieve
12. (A) Argumeant	(B) Argument	(C) Arguement	(D) Argumant

13.	(A) Toom	(B) Tuom	(C) Tumb	(D) Tomb
14.	(A) Perusal	(B) Perusel	(C) Perusil	(D) Perucil
15.	(A) Diversion	(B) Divertion	(C) Dieversion	(D) Divartion
16.	(A) Gestelt	(B) Imbrolios	(C) Ampasse	(D) Recondite
17.	(A) Hindrance	(B) Correspondence	(C) Insurence	(D) Assurance
18.	(A) adversery	(B) adultery	(C) Advisory	(D) Arbitrary
19.	(A) Rogeu	(B) Colleague	(C) Diluge	(D) Algea
20.	(A) Malignant	(B) Impertinant	(C) Independant	(D) Negligant
21.	(A) Supercede	(B) Superceed	(C) Supersede	(D) Superseed
22.	(A) Abandant	(B) Abendant	(C) Abundent	(D) Abundant
23.	(A) Asassin	(B) Assassin	(C) Assasin	(D) Assassen
24.	(A) Foyere	(B) Foayer	(C) Foyer	(D) Fouyer
25.	(A) Seperately	(B) Separately	(C) Seperatley	(D) Separatly
26.	(A) Pidistrian	(B) Pedistrian	(C) Pedestrian	(D) Pidestrian
27.	(A) Budgetery	(B) Bugetary	(C) Budgetary	(D) Budgetry
28.	(A) Embarrassed	(B) Embarassed	(C) Embarrassed	(D) Embarased
29.	(A) Occurence	(B) Occurrence	(C) Ocurence	(D) Occurance
30.	(A) Livelihood	(B) Livelyhood	(C) Livlihood	(D) Livelyhud
31.	(A) Volumenous	(B) Voluptous	(C) Voceferous	(D) Virtuous
32.	(A) Lision	(B) Benine	(C) Aqueous	(D) Bavine
33.	(A) Prolifirate	(B) Propitiate	(C) Apropritate	(D) Apreciate
34.	(A) Fragrent	(B) Fragmant	(C) Flurocent	(D) Flamboyant
35.	(A) Mammal	(B) Mammale	(C) Mammath	(D) Mambrane
36.	(A) Collaborate	(B) Comemorate	(C) Colate	(D) Chocolate
37.	(A) Circuiteous	(B) Clairvoyant	(C) Chivelery	(D) Cavelcade
38.	(A) Severety	(B) Sovereignty	(C) Superiorty	(D) Serenity
39.	(A) Cummulative (C) Accumulative		(B) Comemorative (D) Accommodative	
40.	(A) Benidiction	(B) Besmerch	(C) Beneficient	(D) Benevolence
41.	(A) Parapharnelia	(B) Parsimonious	(C) Peccadilo	(D) Peadiatrics
42.	(A) Measureable	(B) Manageable	(C) Marriagable	(D) Manoevrable
43.	(A) Tussel	(B) Tunnle	(C) Tumble	(D) Trable
44.	(A) Populus	(B) Pompuous	(C) Prelious	(D) Presumptuous
45.	(A) Impromptue	(B) Illustrious	(C) Illusery	(D) Impetous
46.	(A) Irrelevant	(B) Irrelavent	(C) Irelevant	(D) Irrelevant
47.	(A) Seismic	(B) Siesmic	(C) Seissmic	(D) Seismik
48.	(A) Choas	(B) Chaos	(C) Chaaos	(D) Chaoss
49.	(A) Surreptitious	(B) Surreptitous	(C) Surreptetious	(D) Sureptitious
50.	(A) Stealthily	(B) Stealthely	(C) Steelthily	(D) Stealthilly
51.	(A) Acknowledge	(B) Acknoledge	(C) Aknowledge	(D) Acknowledge
52.	(A) Cirtificate	(B) Certificate	(C) Cirtifikate	(D) Certeficate
53.	(A) Mischievous	(B) Mischievous	(C) Mischeivous	(D) Mischeivious
54.	(A) Ordinannce	(B) Ordinannce	(C) Ordinance	(D) Ordinnence

55.	(A) Incidantly	(B) Incidantelly	(C) Incidentally	(D) Incidentelly
56.	(A) Mandatary	(B) Circulatory	(C) Temporery	(D) Regulatory
57.	(A) Convinience	(B) Initative	(C) Concesional	(D) Exaggerate
58.	(A) Dialogue	(B) Giraffe	(C) Scissor	(D) Humourous
59.	(A) Asiduous	(B) Nefarious	(C) Macaber	(D) Loqacious
60.	(A) Cortage	(B) Damege	(C) Milege	(D) Plumage
61.	(A) Onvelope	(B) Envelope	(C) Envalope	(D) Envelap
62.	(A) Character	(B) Charecter	(C) Charactar	(D) Chaerector
63.	(A) Drunkenness	(B) Drunkenness	(C) Dunnkness	(D) Drunkennes
64.	(A) Surprise	(B) Supprise	(C) Suprise	(D) Surprize
65.	(A) Comitee	(B) Commitee	(C) Committie	(D) Committee
66.	(A) Secretariel	(B) Secreterel	(C) Secreterial	(D) Secretarial
67.	(A) Aquisition	(B) Acquizition	(C) Acquisition	(D) Acquisision
68.	(A) Vaccation	(B) Vocation	(C) Vecation	(D) Vecasion
69.	(A) Gaurd	(B) Gard	(C) Guard	(D) Garad
70.	(A) Coreigible	(B) Coraegible	(C) Correigible	(D) Corrigible
71.	(A) Aromatic	(B) Aurobatic	(C) Antartic	(D) Altrustic
72.	(A) Misoginist	(B) Momentery	(C) Monotheeism	(D) Moratorium
73.	(A) Assessment	(B) Rudiement	(C) Retrenchement	(D) Bereavment
74.	(A) Tinker	(B) Plumeber	(C) Despacher	(D) Sailar
75.	(A) Psychiotrist	(B) Punctillious	(C) Pursuanse	(D) Pseudonym
76.	(A) Precarius	(B) Precede	(C) Premier	(D) Preperation
77.	(A) Corespondent	(B) Commandent	(C) Superintendent	(D) Attendent
78.	(A) Imaginery	(B) Dictionary	(C) Itinerery	(D) Stationerry
79.	(A) Pronounciation	(B) Repercution	(C) Rehabilitation	(D) Tution
80.	(A) Columen	(B) Autumn	(C) Condamm	(D) Symptem
81.	(A) Relinquish	(B) Relenquish	(C) Relinqeush	(D) Relinquesh
82.	(A) Ecspectation	(B) Expactation	(C) Expectation	(D) Expectasion
83.	(A) Assimilation	(B) Asimillation	(C) Assimillation	(D) Assimilation
84.	(A) Lassivous	(B) Lacivoius	(C) Lascivious	(D) Lasivious
85.	(A) Enemyty	(B) Enemity	(C) Enmity	(D) Enraety
86.	(A) Occasion	(B) Occation	(C) Ocasion	(D) Occassion
87.	(A) Intermitent	(B) Intermittant	(C) Intermittent	(D) Intermitant
88.	(A) Acommodation	(B) Accommodation	(C) Accomodation	(D) Acomodation
89.	(A) Sovereignty	(B) Soveriegnty	(C) Sovereignty	(D) Soveriegnty
90.	(A) Greivance	(B) Grievance	(C) Griveance	(D) Grievance
91.	(A) Enterpreneur	(B) Entreprenure	(C) Entrepreneur	(D) Enterprenure
92.	(A) Promiscuous	(B) Promescuous	(C) Promiscuos	(D) Promiscuous
93.	(A) Onomatopoeia	(B) Onomotopoei	(C) Onomatopoeia	(D) Onamotipoei
94.	(A) Bureacracy	(B) Bereaucracy	(C) Buereacracy	(D) Bureaucracy
95.	(A) Millionair	(B) Millionaire	(C) Millionare	(D) Millionair
96.	(A) Rumble	(B) Rumbble	(C) Stummbble	(D) Jumbble

97.	(A) Nigardlely	(B) Niggardly	(C) Nigerdly	(D) Nigardly
98.	(A) Grammatical	(B) Gremmatical	(C) Gramatical	(D) Grematical
99.	(A) Omitted	(B) Ommitted	(C) Ommited	(D) Oमित
100.	(A) Priveeige	(B) Familier	(C) Usualy	(D) Nuisance
101.	(A) Fascimile	(B) Facsimile	(C) Facsimele	(D) Facksimile
102.	(A) Haemorrhage	(B) Hemorrhage	(C) Hemmorage	(D) Haemorrhage
103.	(A) Hoseire	(B) Hosier	(C) Hosair	(D) Hasier
104.	(A) Punctileous	(B) Punctilious	(C) Punktilious	(D) Punctileus
105.	(A) Clientele	(B) Clientale	(C) Cleintele	(D) Clientelle
106.	(A) Definitely	(B) Definately	(C) Definitley	(D) Definitly
107.	(A) Cemetary	(B) Semetary	(C) Cemetery	(D) Cemetry
108.	(A) Recesion	(B) Reccesion	(C) Reccession	(D) Recession
109.	(A) Desiccation	(B) Dessication	(C) Desiccasion	(D) Deziccation
110.	(A) Inconvenienced	(B) Inconveniensed	(C) Inconvineinced	(D) Inconvenneinced
111.	(A) Misdemenour	(B) Manoeuvre	(C) Begining	(D) Chameloon
112.	(A) Irrepairable	(B) Irreparable	(C) Irreparabel	(D) Ireparable
113.	(A) Superfluous	(B) Superflous	(C) Superfluos	(D) Supperflous
114.	(A) Capracious	(B) Auspicious	(C) Fallicious	(D) Dalicious
115.	(A) Inefable	(B) Inaccessible	(C) Infallible	(D) Invinscible
116.	(A) Concomitant	(B) Concommitant	(C) Concommittant	(D) Concommitent
117.	(A) Fluorescent	(B) Floorescent	(C) Floorascent	(D) Flourascent
118.	(A) Travelling	(B) Remittance	(C) Kidnaping	(D) Equiteble
119.	(A) Neccessary	(B) Temparary	(C) Itinerary	(D) Sanguinery
120.	(A) Tomorrow	(B) Tommorrow	(C) Tommorrow	(D) Tomorrow
121.	(A) Superintendent	(B) Superentendent	(C) Suprintendent	(D) Supirentendent
122.	(A) Symatry	(B) Symmetry	(C) Symetry	(D) Symmitry
123.	(A) Villain	(B) Alleince	(C) Pleintive	(D) Sustein
124.	(A) Commisioner	(B) Commissioner	(C) Comissioner	(D) Commissionar
125.	(A) Asassin	(B) Assassin	(C) Assasin	(D) Assassen
126.	(A) Magnificient	(B) Magnifecent	(C) Magnifiscient	(D) Magnificent
127.	(A) Eccumenikal	(B) Ecumenical	(C) Ecuemenicel	(D) Ekumanical
128.	(A) Aprentice	(B) Advertise	(C) Treatice	(D) Sencitive
129.	(A) Misile	(B) Missile	(C) Misille	(D) Missiel
130.	(A) Abandant	(B) Abendent	(C) Abundent	(D) Abundant
131.	(A) Beneficil	(B) Beneficial	(C) Benifical	(D) Beneficial
132.	(A) Avericious	(B) Avaricious	(C) Avarisious	(D) Averisious
133.	(A) Internaly	(B) Coldlly	(C) Fortunetely	(D) Uniquely
134.	(A) Affectionately	(B) AfECTIONately	(C) Affectionnality	(D) Affactionately
135.	(A) Aprehension	(B) Apprihension	(C) Aprihension	(D) Apprehension
136.	(A) Acquisision	(B) Acquisision	(C) Aquisition	(D) Acquisition
137.	(A) Demanstrative	(B) Attractive	(C) Repesantative	(D) Adminestrative
138.	(A) Monarchy	(B) Discrapancy	(C) Hieararchy	(D) Anorchy
139.	(A) Refference	(B) Relliance	(C) Occurence	(D) Recurrence

140. (A) Descriptive	(B) Recepttive	(C) Cooperative	(D) Competitive
141. (A) Veterinerian	(B) Vaterinerian	(C) Veterinarian	(D) Vetarinerian
142. (A) Equilibrium	(B) Equalibirium	(C) Ecquilibrium	(D) Equilibriam
143. (A) Meritime	(B) Marrytime	(C) Marytime	(D) Maritime
144. (A) Degression	(B) Digresion	(C) Digrestion	(D) Digression
145. (A) Presomptous	(B) Presumpchous	(C) Presumtous	(D) Presumptuous
146. (A) Anathemaa	(B) Anathima	(C) Anathema	(D) Annathema
147. (A) Quiant	(B) Quaaaint	(C) Quaint	(D) Qauint
148. (A) Effervescent	(B) Efferescent	(C) Effervesent	(D) Efervescent
149. (A) Persuesive	(B) Persuasieve	(C) Pursuasive	(D) Persuasive
150. (A) Ascendancy	(B) Ascendensy	(C) Asscendency	(D) Ascenndency
151. (A) Holocaust	(B) Holocast	(C) Holocost	(D) Halocaust
152. (A) Reverantial	(B) Reverential	(C) Revarential	(D) Reverentiel
153. (A) Meteculous	(B) Meticulous	(C) Metikyulus	(D) Meticulus
154. (A) Souvenir	(B) Suvenire	(C) Suvenir	(D) Souviener
155. (A) Flabergast	(B) Flabergust	(C) Flabbergast	(D) Fiabbergust

Exercise -1 (Answer)

1. (A) emancipation	(B) correspondence	24. (C) Foyer
2. (A) prejudice	(C) insurance	25. (B) Separately
3. (A) surgeon	(D) assurance	26. (C) Pedestrian
4. (B) potatoes	18. (C) advisory	27. (C) Budgetary
5. (B) irreversible	Correct spellings of remaining words:	28. (A) Embarrassed
6. (B) independence	(A) adversary	29. (B) Occurrence
7. (A) hypocrisy	(B) adultery	30. (A) Livelihood
8. (A) aeroplane	(D) arbitrary	31. (D) Virtuous
9. (D) lonely	19. (B) colleague	32. (C) Aqueous
10. (C) ceremony	Correct spellings of remaining words:	33. (B) Propitiate
11. (A) deceive	(A) rogue	34. (D) Flamboyant
12. (B) Argument	(C) deluge	35. (A) Mammal
13. (D) tomb	(D) algae	36. (A) Collaborate
14. (A) perusal	20. (A) malignant	Correct spellings of remaining words:
15. (A) diversion	Correct spellings of remaining words:	(B) Commemorate
16. (D) recondite	(B) impertinent	(C) Collate
Correct spellings of remaining words:	(C) independent	(D) Chocolate
(A) gestalt	(D) negligent	37. (B) Clairvoyant
(B) imbroglios	21. (C) Supersede	(A) Circuitous
(C) impasse	22. (D) Abundant	(C) Chivalry
17. (A) hindrance	23. (B) Assassin	(D) Cavalcade
Correct spellings of remaining words:		

38. (D) Serenity
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Severity
(B) Sovereignty
(C) Superiority
39. (D) Accommodative
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Cumulative
(B) Commemorative
(C) Accumulative
40. (D) Benevolence
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Benediction
(B) Besmirch
(C) Beneficent
41. (B) Parsimonious
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Paraphernalia
(C) Peccadillo
(D) Pediatrics
42. (B) Manageable
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Measurable
(C) Marriageable
(D) Maneuverable
43. (C) Tumble
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Tussle
(B) Tunnel
(D) Treble
44. (D) Presumptuous
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Populous
(B) Pompous
(C) Perilous
45. (B) Illustrious
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Impromptu
(C) Illusory
(D) Impetuous
46. (D) Irrelevant
47. (A) Seismic
48. (B) Chaos
49. (A) Surreptitious
50. (A) Stealthily
51. (D) Acknowledge
52. (B) Certificate
53. (A) Mischievous
54. (C) Ordinance
55. (C) Incidentally
56. (B) Circulatory
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Mandatory
(C) Temporary
(D) Regulatory
57. (D) Exaggerate
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Convenience
(B) Initiative
(C) Concessional
58. (B) Giraffe
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Dialogue
(C) Scissors
(D) Humorous
59. (B) Nefarious
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Assiduous
(C) Macabre
(D) Loquacious
60. (D) Plumage
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Cortage
(B) Damage
(C) Mileage
61. (B) Envelope
62. (A) Character
63. (B) Drunkenness
64. (A) Surprise
65. (D) Committee
66. (D) Secretarial
67. (C) Acquisition
68. (B) Vocation
69. (C) Guard
70. (D) Corrigible
71. (A) Aromatic
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(B) Aerobic
(C) Antarctic
(D) Altruistic
72. (D) Moratorium
(A) Misogynist
(B) Momentary
(C) Monotheism
73. (A) Assessment
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(B) Rudiment
(C) Retrenchment
(D) Bereavement
74. (A) Tinker
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(B) Plumber
(C) Dispatcher
(D) Sailor
75. (D) Pseudonym
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Psychiatrist
(B) Punctilious
(C) Pursuance

76. (C) Premier
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Precarious
(B) Precede
(C) Preparation
77. (C) Superintendent
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Correspondent
(B) Commandant
(D) Attendant
78. (B) Dictionary
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Imaginary
(C) Itinerary
(D) Stationery
79. (C) Rehabilitation
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Pronunciation
(B) Repercussion
(D) Tuition
80. (B) Autumn
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Column
(C) Condemn
(D) Symptom
81. (A) Relinquish
82. (C) Expectation
83. (A) Assimilation
84. (C) Lascivious
85. (C) Enmity
86. (A) Occasion
87. (C) Intermittent
88. (B) Accommodation
89. (A) Sovereignty
90. (B) Grievance
91. (C) Entrepreneur
92. (A) Promiscuous
93. (A) Onomatopoeia
94. (D) Bureaucracy
95. (B) Millionaire
96. (A) Rumble
97. (B) Niggardly
98. (A) Grammatical
99. (A) Omitted
100. (D) Nuisance
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Privilege
(B) Familiar
(C) Usually
101. (B) Facsimile
102. (D) Haemorrhage
103. (B) Hosier
104. (B) Punctilious
105. (A) Clientele
106. (A) Definitely
107. (C) Cemetery
108. (D) Recession
109. (A) Desiccation
110. (A) Inconvenienced
111. (B) Manoeuvre
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Misdemeanour
(C) Beginning
(D) Chameleon
112. (B) Irreparable
113. (A) Superfluous
114. (B) Auspicious
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Capricious
(C) Fallacious
(D) Delicious
115. (C) Infallible
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Ineffable
(B) Inaccessible
(D) Invincible
116. (A) Concomitant
117. (A) Fluorescent
118. (A) Travelling
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(B) Remittance
(C) Kidnapping
(D) Equitable
119. (C) Itinerary
(A) Necessary
(B) Temporary
(D) Sanguinary
120. (D) Tomorrow
121. (A) Superintendent
122. (B) Symmetry
123. (A) Villain
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(B) Alliance
(C) Plaintive
(D) Sustain
124. (B) Commissioner
125. (B) Assassin
126. (D) Magnificent
127. (B) Ecumenical
128. (B) Advertise
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Apprentice
(C) Treatise
(D) Sensitive
129. (B) Missile
130. (D) Abundant
131. (B) Beneficial
132. (B) Avaricious
133. (D) Uniquely
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Internally
(B) Coldly
(C) Fortunately
134. (A) Affectionately
135. (D) Apprehension
136. (D) Acquisition

137. (B) Attractive
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Demonstrative
(C) Representative
(D) Administrative
138. (A) Monarchy
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(B) Discrepancy
(C) Hierarchy
(D) Anarchy
139. (D) Recurrence
140. (D) Competitive
Correct spellings of remaining words:
(A) Descriptive
(B) Receptive
(C) Cooperative
141. (C) Veterinarian
142. (A) Equilibrium
143. (D) Maritime
144. (D) Digression
145. (D) Presumptuous
146. (C) Anathema
147. (C) Quaint
148. (A) Effervescent
149. (D) Persuasive
150. (A) Ascendancy
151. (A) Holocaust
152. (B) Reverential
153. (B) Meticulous
154. (A) Souvenir
155. (C) Flabbergast

Exercise -2 (Wrongly Spelt)

Directions : In Questions given below, four word are given in each question, out of which only one word is wrongly spelt. Find the word and indicate it in the Answer Sheet by blackening the appropriate rectangle.

1. (A) Poignant	(B) Relevent	(C) Prevalent	(D) Malignant
2. (A) Seize	(B) Achieve	(C) Wierd	(D) Leisure
3. (A) Repent	(B) Serpent	(C) Flagrent	(D) Reverent
4. (A) Dining	(B) Shining	(C) Determining	(D) Begining
5. (A) Vendetta	(B) Verisimilitude	(C) Vicarious	(D) Vociferate
6. (A) Embankment	(B) Deliberately	(C) Preceding	(D) Proleferous
7. (A) Inexplicable	(B) Inevitable	(C) Inextinguishable	(D) Inexpressable
8. (A) Representation	(B) Verification	(C) Amplification	(D) Liberalisetion
9. (A) Reference	(B) Preference	(C) Difference	(D) Performence
10. (A) Agreebly	(B) Cruelly	(C) Doubtfully	(D) Fatally
11. (A) Nomenclature	(B) Non-interference	(C) Nonchalant	(D) Commisioned
12. (A) Insolvency	(B) Legitimacy	(C) Hypocrisy	(D) Idiosyncracy
13. (A) Anniversary	(B) Bureaucracy	(C) Heresy	(D) Secresy
14. (A) Malignity	(B) Malodorus	(C) Malfeasance	(D) Malevolent
15. (A) Unaccompanied	(B) Unaccusstomed	(C) Unadopted	(D) Unalloyed
16. (A) Boutique	(B) Physique	(C) Opaque	(D) Obleeque
17. (A) Admitting	(B) Budgetting	(C) Preferring	(D) Travelling
18. (A) Torpedoes	(B) Mosquitoes	(C) Pianos	(D) Tomatoes
19. (A) Oscillate	(B) Deliberate	(C) Ennumerate	(D) Narrate
20. (A) Hurdle	(B) Cuddel	(C) Puddle	(D) Meddle
21. (A) Composition	(B) Grammer	(C) Literature	(D) Poetry
22. (A) Pneumonia	(B) Diarrheoa	(C) Xenophobia	(D) Amnesia
23. (A) Commission	(B) Omission	(C) Possession	(D) Occassion
24. (A) Pronunciation	(B) Vaccum	(C) Troublesome	(D) Vacuum
25. (A) Successor	(B) Marriage	(C) Auctioner	(D) Enthusiastic

Exercise -1 (Answer)

1. (B) Relevant	10. (A) Agreeably	19. (C) Enumerate
2. (C) Weird	11. (D) Commissioned	20. (B) Cuddle
3. (C) Flagrant	12. (D) Idiosyncrasy	21. (B) Grammar
4. (D) Beginning	13. (D) Secrecy	22. (B) Diarrhoea
5. (D) Vociferate	14. (B) Malodorous	23. (D) Occasion
6. (D) Proliferate	15. (B) Unaccustomed	24. (B) Vacuum
7. (D) Inexpressible	16. (D) Oblique	25. (C) Auctioneer
8. (D) Liberalization	17. (B) Budgeting	
9. (D) Performance	18. (C) Pianos	

MEANING OF SOME WORDS GIVEN IN THE ASSIGNMENT

SL	WORDS	MEANING IN HINDI	MEANING IN ENGLISH
1	Abundant	प्रचुरता में	Plentiful
2	Accommodative	समाविष्ट करने वाला	Adjusting
3	Accumulative	संचयी	The act of collecting
4	Acknowledge	स्वीकार करना (कि जानकारी है)	To admit the knowledge of
5	Acquisition	प्राप्त/कब्जे में करना	To get hold of
6	Adultery	विवाहेतर संबंध	Extra-marital affairs
7	Adversary	प्रतिद्वंदी	Opponent
8	Alliance	गठबंधन	Association
9	Altruistic	परोपकारी	Unselfish devotion towards welfare of others
10	Anarchy	अराजकता	Lawlessness
11	Anathema	नफरत	Abhorrence, hatred
12	Apprehension	आशंका	Suspicion
13	Apprentice	जो किसी दक्ष व्यक्ति 'मार्गदर्शन में कार्य' रता है	Helper, Trainee
14	Aqueous	तरल/जलीय	Watery
15	Arbitrary	मनमाना	As per one's will or caprice
16	Aromatic	खुशबुदार	Perfumed
17	Ascendancy	अधिपत्य	Governing/Controlling
18	Assassin	राजनैतिक कारणों से हत्या करने वाला	One who kills for political reason

SL	WORDS	MEANING IN HINDI	MEANING IN ENGLISH
19	Assessment	आकलन	Evaluation
20	Assiduous	मेहनती	Diligent/hard-working
21	Assimilation	आत्मसाव	To absorb into system
22	Auspicious	शुभ	That brings good luck
23	Avaricious	लालची	Greedy
24	Benediction	आशीर्वाद	Blessings
25	Benevolence	दया	Kindness
26	Bereavement	मातम	Mourning
27	Besmirch	बदनाम करना	To defame
28	Bureaucracy	नौकरशाही	Ruled by Government officials
29	Capricious	सनकी	Fickle-minded
30	Cavalcade	काफिला	A procession of vehicles, ships etc
31	Cemetery	कब्रिस्तान	Burial ground
32	Chivalry	वीर या सभ्य	Gallant and courteous
33	Circuitous	घुमावदार	Round-about
34	Clairvoyant	दूरदर्शी	Able to see beyond the range of ordinary perception
35	Clientele	उपभोगताओं का समूह	A body of clients
36	Collaborate	साथ-साथ काम करना	The act of working together
37	Collate	जमा करना	To collect
38	Commemorate	के याद में मनाना	To celebrate in the memory of
39	Concomitant	सहयोगी	Attendant
40	Condemn	निन्दा करना	Criticize
41	Convenience	सुविधा	Facility
42	Corrigible	जो सुधारा जा सकता है	That can be corrected
43	Cortege	नौकर-चाकर का समूह/जूलूस (विशेषकर अंतिम संस्कार के लिए ले जाने वाली)	Retinue/Procession
44	Cuddle	आलिंगन करना	Hug, embrace

SL	WORDS	MEANING IN HINDI	MEANING IN ENGLISH
45	Cumulative	बढ़ाने वाला	Increasing by successive addition
46	Deceive	धोखा देना	To cheat
47	Delicious	स्वादिष्ट	Pleasant to taste
48	Deluge	बाढ़	Flood
49	Desiccation	सुखा कर देने वाला	The act of drying up/ dehydration
50	Digression	भटक जाना	Departure from the subject
51	Discrepancy	असमानता	Difference
52	Diversion	मोड़/घुमाव	Distraction
53	Ecumenical	वृहत प्रभाव डालने वाला	World wide in effect
54	Effervescent	बुलबुलो से भरा/उल्लासपूर्ण	Fizzy/vibrant
55	Emancipation	मुक्ति	Liberation/freedom
56	Enmity	दुश्मनी	Hostility
57	Entrepreneur	व्यापारी	Business man/capitalist
58	Enumerate	सूचीबद्ध करना	To specify one after the other
59	Equitable	निष्पक्ष	Fair/reasonable
60	Exaggerate	बढ़ा-चढ़ा कर पेश करना	To overstate
61	Expectation	उम्मीद	Hope
62	Facsimile	हू-ब-हू	Exact copy
63	Fallacious	झूठ/भ्रामक	Untrue, misleading
64	Flabbergasted	हक्का-बक्का	Extremely surprised
65	Flagrant	अत्यन्त शर्मनाक	Blatant, brazen
66	Flamboyant	दिखावा करने वाला	Showy
67	Fluorescent	चम दार	Shining, glowing
68	Foyer	हॉल के बाहर की खुली जगह	An entrance, hallway
69	Gestalt	कार्यकारी यूनिट	Functional unit
70	Grievance	शिकायत	Complaint
71	Hierarchy	पदानुक्रम	Chain of people in authority according to their post

SL	WORDS	MEANING IN HINDI	MEANING IN ENGLISH
72	Hindrance	रूकावट	Obstruction
73	Holocaust	सर्वनाश	Devastation
74	Humorous	विनोदी	Entertaining, amusing
75	Hypocrisy	पाखंड	Showing the character that is fake
76	Idiosyncrasy	सनक	Eccentricity, weird behaviour
77	Illusory	भ्रामक	Deceptive
78	Illustrious	प्रसिद्ध	Well-known
79	Imbroglios	लज्जाजनक हालात	Embarrassing situation
80	Impasse	गतिरोध/रूकावट	Deadlock
81	Impertinent	अप्रासंगिक/धृष्ट	Irrelevant/Rude
82	Impetuous	लापरवाह/आवेगशील	Rash, Impulsive
83	Impromptu	बिना तैयारी के	Without preparation
84	Inaccessible	जहाँ पहुँचा ना जा सके	Where one cannot reach
85	Incidentally	गैर-इरादतन	Without intention
86	Inconvenienced	तकलीफ होना	Troubled
87	Ineffable	अवर्णणीय	That cannot be described
88	Inexpressible	अवर्णणीय	That cannot be described or expressed
89	Infallible	जो गलती ना रें	One who cannot make mistakes
90	Initiative	पहल	Starting
91	Intermittent	रुक-रुक कर	Irregular
92	Invincible	अजय	That cannot be defeated
93	Irrelevant	अप्रासंगिक	Not related to
94	Irreparable	जो मरम्मत ना किया जा सके	That cannot be repaired
95	Irreversible	जो परिवर्तित ना किया जा सके	That cannot be altered
96	Mischievous	शरारती	Naughty
97	Itinerary	यात्रा कार्यक्रम	Schedule of a tour

SL	WORDS	MEANING IN HINDI	MEANING IN ENGLISH
98	Lascivious	अश्लील	Obscene
99	Liberalization	आजादी	Freedom
100	Loquacious	बातूनी	Talkative/Garrulous
101	Macabre	भयावह	Gruesome/horrible
102	Magnificent	भव्य	Splendid
103	Malignant	अहितकर	Evil, wicked
104	Malodorous	बदबूदार	Of bad odour
105	Mandatory	अनिवार्य	Compulsory
106	Maneuverable	जो चतुराई/दक्षता से संभाल लिया जा सकता है	That can be managed with skill or tactics
107	Maritime	समुद्र संबंधित	Relating to sea
108	Meticulous	अतिसावधान	Careful
109	Millionaire	लखपति	Very rich
110	Misdemeanour	दुव्यवहार	Misbehaviour
111	Misogynist	महिलाओं से नफरत करने वाला	One who hates women
112	Momentary	क्षणिक	Short-lived
113	Monarchy	राजतंत्र	King's rule
114	Monotheism	एकेश्वरवाद	Belief in one god
115	Moratorium	विलम्ब जो आदेश के तहत हो	An authorized period of delay
116	Nefarious	दुष्ट	Evil, wicked
117	Niggardly	कंजूस	Miserly
118	Nuisance	समस्या	Problem
119	Omitted	मिटा हुआ	Removed
120	Onomatopoeia	ध्वनि पर आधारित शब्द	A word formed from the sound that it produces. Eg- hiss, pop etc.
121	Ordinance	कानून	Statute
122	Paraphernalia	औजार	Miscellaneous equipment

SL	WORDS	MEANING IN HINDI	MEANING IN ENGLISH
123	Parsimonious	कंजूस	Miser
124	Peccadillo	गुनाह	Sin
125	Pedestrian	पैदल यात्री	One who is on foot
126	Pediatrics	बच्चों का डाक्टर	Doctor of children
127	Perilous	खतरनाक	Dangerous
128	Persuasive	राजी कर लेने वाला	Convincing
129	Perusal	निरीक्षण	Careful examination
130	Plaintive	याचक	One who has filed legal plaint
131	Plumage	पंख	Feathers of a bird
132	Pompous	दिखावा करने वाला	Showy
133	Populous	भीड़ भरा	Crowded
134	Precarious	अस्थिर	Unstable
135	Precede	के पहले आना	To come before
136	Prejudice	पक्षपातपूर्ण	Partiality
137	Presumptuous	धृष्ट	Self assuming/too bold
138	Privilege	विशेषाधिकार	Special right
139	Proliferate	संख्या म बढ़ जाना	Multiply
140	Promiscuous	अनैति	Immoral
141	Propitiate	तुष्टी करना	Appease
142	Pseudonym	जो नाम सिर्फ लेखन के लिए लेखक ने रखा हो	Assumed named taken by an author
143	Punctilious	सावधानी से भरा	Careful
144	Pursuance	अनुसरण	Follow
145	Quaint	विचित्र पर सुन्दर	Unusual but pretty
146	Recession	मंदी	Slump/decline
147	Recondite	छिपा हुआ	Concealed
148	Recurrence	दुबारा होना	To occur again
149	Rehabilitation	पुनः स्थापन	Restoration to the former state
150	Relevant	प्रसंगिक	Related to

SL	WORDS	MEANING IN HINDI	MEANING IN ENGLISH
151	Relinquish	त्याग देना	Forsake
152	Remittance	भुगतान	Payment/allowance
153	Repercussion	नतीजा	Consequence
154	Retrenchment	खर्च में कटौती	Reduction of expenditure
155	Reverential	सम्माननीय	Respectful
156	Rogue	बदमाश	Scoundrel
157	Rudiment	प्रारंभिक	Undeveloped
158	Rumble	घड़घड़ाना	To make a low, heavy continuous sound
159	Sanguinary	रक्तपातपूर्ण	Murderous
160	Serenity	शांति	Calmness
161	Severity	तीव्रता	Harshness, strictness
162	Souvenir	याद दिलाने वाला	That reminds
163	Sovereignty	प्रभुत्व संपन्नता	Freedom from external control
164	Superfluous	जरूरत से ज्यादा	More than what is needed
165	Supersede	निरस्त कर उसकी जगह लेना	To nullify and take its place
156	Sustain	टिकना	To uphold, survive
167	Symmetry	एक सा	Similarity of structure
168	Tinker	ठठेरा	One who mends household utensils
169	Tomb	कब्र	Burial chamber
170	Treble	उच्च ध्वनि	Shrill voice
171	Tumble	लुढ़कना	To roll over
172	Tunnel	सुरंग	Passageway
173	Tussle	द्वंद	Scuffle
174	Uniquely	अलग हट कर	Of different kind, unmatched
175	Virtuous	अच्छाई	Good quality
176	Vocation	रोजगार	Occupation
177	Vociferous	शोरगुलपूर्ण	Marked by an insistent outcry
178	Weird	विचित्र	Strange

Questions related to legal terms are asked in Sentence Improvement and One Word Substitution. Here I have tried to collect all such questions asked from legal glossary to form questions based on the pattern in which questions are asked in different competitive exams.

Eg.

1. He was hanged to death.
(A) hanged till death (B) No Improvement
(C) hanged for death (D) Hung till death
2. The agreement is valid as our law has always prohibited such a trade in India.
(A) invalid (B) null and void
(C) Illegitimate (D) Illicit
3. He refused having stolen my watch.
(A) denied (B) declined
(C) No Improvement (D) rebutted

Answers

1. (A)
2. (B)
3. (A)

Explanations:-

1. Sentence is grammatically right. (वाक्य व्याकरण के अनुसार सही है।)

Eg:-

- (1) He bled to death. (अत्यधिक खून बहने से वह मर गया।)
- (2) He starved to death. (वह भूख से मर गया।)
- (3) He was smothered to death. (साँस घोंट कर उसे मार दिया गया।)
- (4) He was strangled to death. (उसका गला घोट कर उसे मार दिया गया।)
- (5) He was beaten to death. (पीट-पीट कर उसकी हत्या कर दी गई।)
- (6) He was bludgeoned to death. (भारी वस्तु से पीट कर उसकी हत्या कर दी गई।)

In the given sentence the judge has to be precise that the convict must be hanged till the time he is dead so use of 'till' is necessary. (इस वाक्य में जज को ये स्पष्ट करना जरूरी होता है कि दोषी को तब तक फाँसी पर लटकाया जाए जब तक कि वो मर न जाए।)

Explanations:-

2. Valid	→	वैध (having a legal force)
Invalid	→	अवैध (without a legal foundation)
Null and void	→	कानूनी रूप से अमान्य (amounting to nothing)
Illegitimate	→	नाजायज (औलाद/ माँग इत्यादि)
3. Refused	→	मना करना
Deny	→	किसी बात की सच्चाई का खंडन करना
Decline	→	अस्वीकार करना, पतन होना
Rebut	→	किसी बात की सच्चाई का खंडन सबूत सहित करना

4. The marriage was void from the beginning.
 (A) Ab initio (B) since inception
 (C) since its setting up (D) No Improvement
5. He ran with the loot
 (A) fled away (B) absconded
 (C) No Improvement (D) flee
6. He was booked for helping to suicide.
 (A) abetment (B) assisting
 (C) persuading (D) coaxing
7. The misuse of power is the root cause of corruption.
 (A) abuse (B) No Improvement
 (C) absence (D) loops

Answers

4. (A)
 5. (B)
 6. (A)
 7. (A)

Explanations:-

4. Ab initio means from the beginning. ('Ab initio' का अर्थ है 'शुरू से')
5. Ran away = fled = absconded = भाग जाना/ फरार हो जाना
 'fled away' is superfluous.
6. Abetment → The act of helping or encouraging someone to do something wrong or illegal.
 (किसी अपराध के लिए उकसाना या उसमें सहयोग देना)
 Assist → साथ देना/ सहयोग देना
 Persuade/ Coax → राजी करना/ मनाना
7. Misuse → to use something in the wrong way. (दुरुपयोग करना)
 Abuse → to say rude things to someone (गाली देना)
 → to use something in a bad or dishonest way. (अपने लाभ के लिए गलत इस्तेमाल करना)
- Loop → a round-shaped thing (छल्ला)

8. His partner in crime has surrendered.
 (A) accomplice (B) No Improvement
 (C) friend (D) gang
9. The guilty was acquitted.
 (A) convict (B) acquit
 (C) accused (D) No Improvement
10. The case was given a date as the defence counsel was unwell.
 (A) postponed (B) advanced
 (C) adjourned (D) prepone
 (E) called off (F) put off
11. The matters has been preponed from 30th July to 15th July.
 (A) advanced (B) No Improvement
 (C) postponed (D) called off

Answers

8. (A)
 9. (C)
 10. (C)
 11. (A)

Explanations:-

8. **Accomplice** → Partner in crime (गुनाह का साथी)
Gang → Group of criminals (गुण्डों का समूह)
→ Group of labourers (मजदूरों का समूह)
9. **Guilty** → दोषी
Convict → दोषी/ दोषी साबित होना
Acquit → जो बरी हो जाए/ बरी करना
Accused → A person who has been blamed for something wrong (आरोपी)
10. **Postpone** → to put off (स्थगित करना)
Advance → to give a prior date (पहले की तारीख देना)
Call off → to cancel
11. **Prepone** is misunderstood as the antonym of postpone.
(Prepone को postpone का antonym मान लिया जाता है जो गलत है।)
Although now prepone has come in dictionary due to repeated use yet it is better to use antedate or advance.
(हालाँकि बार-बार के प्रयोग से Prepone dictionary में आ गया है लेकिन antedate या advance शब्द का प्रयोग बेहतर होता है।)

12. The husband wanted to live with his wife and pleaded the court to restore his marriage rights.
(A) conjugal (B) No Improvement
(C) marital (D) matrimonial
13. His marriage life is at sixes and sevens.
(A) marital (B) conjugal
(C) No Improvement (D) Matrimonial
14. He was booked for adulteration as he had extra-marital affairs.
(A) adultery (B) No Improvement
(C) perjury (D) misconduct
15. His excuse of being out of India does not hold water.
(A) alibi (B) No Improvement
(C) absence (D) condone

Answers

12. (A)

13. (A)

14. (A)

15. (A)

Explanations:-

12. **Conjugal/ Marital / Matrimonial** → Connected with marriage but usage is different.
Eg. Conjugal right, marital status or marital life and matrimonial home or matrimonial advertisements.
13. See 12.
14. **Adulteration** → the action of making something poorer in quality by adding something of poorer quality (मिलावट करना)
Adultery → extramarital affairs (विवाहोत्तर संबंध)
Perjury → the act of lying in the court (कोर्ट में सपथ के तहत झूठ बोलना)
Misconduct → wrong doing (गलत कार्य)

15. **Excuse** → reason given for certain behaviour (बहाना)
Alibi → a statement by someone that says that he is at a different place at the time of crime. (अपराध के समय कहीं और उपस्थित होने का कथन)
Condone → accept or agree to something that is considered wrong (किसी गलत कार्य को स्वीकार कर के माफ कर देना)
Quantum of punishment → the quantum of punishment is the calculation of how much punishment should be given by the court. (न्यायालय द्वारा तय की गयी सजा की अवधि)

16. Death resulting from burning a house is murder.
 (A) arson (B) No Improvement
 (C) arsenal (D) inciting
 17. _____ of contract is an offence.
 (A) Breach (B) Breaking
 (C) Disrespecting (D) Disregarding
 18. Marrying twice is a punishable offence.
 (A) bigamy (B) monogamy
 (C) polygamy (D) No Improvement
 19. A crime for which the police is empowered to arrest without a warrant —
 (A) Cognizable offence (B) Non cognizable offence
 (C) Criminal offence (D) Anticipatory

Answers

16. (A)

17. (A)

18. (A)

19. (A)

Explanations:-

16. **Arson** → the crime of setting things on fire (आगजनी)
Arsenal → a collection of weapons (युद्ध सामग्री का भंडार)
Incite → to provoke (उकसाना)
 17. **Breach** → to do something that goes against an agreement, a law etc.
Disregard → to treat something as unimportant (उपेक्षा करना)
 18. **Monogamy** → practice of marrying once (एक विवाह)
Bigamy → Practice of marrying twice (दो विवाह)
Polygamy → practice of marrying many times (बहु विवाह)
 19. **Cognizable offence** → an offence in which a police officer has the authority to make an arrest without a warrant (वह अपराध जिसमें बिना वारंट के पुलिस गिरफ्तार कर सकती है।)
Non-cognizable offence → an offence in which the police cannot arrest the accused without a warrant (जिन अपराधों में बिना वारंट के पुलिस गिरफ्तार नहीं कर सकती।)
Anticipatory → of or relating to a prior action that takes into account or forestalls a later action (अग्रिम)

20. To live together under the same roof
21. Compensation done with the sense of moral obligation rather than because of any legal compulsion
22. Born/awarded/occurring after the death of the originator
23. A blanket abolition of an offence
24. Growing or adding to (such as interest) on a debt
25. Payment due
26. New to a country or place

- 20 Cohabit
- 21 Ex-gratia
- 22 Posthumous
- 23 Amnesty
- 24 Accrue
- 25 Arrears
- 26 Alien

Explanations:-

20. Co-habit → living together
Co → together
habitat → निवास
21. Ex-gratia → given or done as a gift or favour not because there is a legal duty but out of moral obligation (किसी वैधिक बाध्यता के बिना दिया जाने वाला मुआवजा)
22. Posthumous → given to happening after somebody has died (मरणोपरांत)
23. Amnesty → a time when a government forgives political crime (सरकार द्वारा दिया गया क्षमादान)
24. Accrue → to increase over a period of time (वृद्धि होना)
25. Arrears → Money that somebody owes and that he/she should have paid earlier (बकाया)
26. Alien → Belonging to another place or thing (अजनबी)

27. One who is unable to pay one's debt
28. The act of leaving legacy/ property after death
29. Without a will
30. Infact/ in reality
31. Any judgement must be read in ———
32. In good faith
33. Statement (written/ oral) to defame a person

- 27 Bankrupt/ Insolvent
- 28 Bequeath
- 29 Intestate
- 30 De facto
- 31 toto
- 32 Bonafide
- 33 • Libel (written),
• Slander (oral)

Explanations:-

27. Pauper → a very poor person (कंगाल)
Bankrupt/ Insolvent → Not having enough money to pay your debt (दिवालिया)
28. Bequeath → to arrange for something to be given to somebody after death. (वसीयत में देना)
29. Intestate → Without a will (बिना वसीयत के)
30. De facto → In reality (वास्तव में)
31. Toto → As a total or whole (सम्पूर्ण)
32. Bonafide → Real or genuine (असली, सच्चा)
33. Libel → The act of printing a statement about somebody that is not true and would give people a bad opinion of him/ her (कुछ छपा हुआ किसी को बदनाम करने के लिए)
- Slander → A spoken statement about someone that is not true and is intended to defame someone (किसी को बदनाम करने के लिए कही गयी बात)

34. Permanent residence
35. Mercy killing
36. Transfer of an accused from one country to another
37. Crime against one's own country
38. A person who lives in a particular place
39. Done in the interest of only one side in a case
40. Officially accusing someone of a crime

- 34 Domicile
- 35 Euthanasia
- 36 Extradition
- 37 Treason/ Sedition
- 38 Denizen
- 39 Ex-parte
- 40 Indict

Explanations:-

34. Domicile → the place or country of residence which is legally or officially recognized (निवास स्थान)
35. Euthanasia → mercy killing (दया मृत्यु)
36. Extradition → The act of making someone return from another country for trial (प्रत्यर्पण)
37. Treason → The criminal act of causing harm to your country (देशद्रोह)
Sedition → Instigating people to act against the government (राजद्रोह)
38. Denizen → a person, animal or plant that lives or is found in a particular place (निवासी)
39. Ex-parte → In the interest of one side only (एकपक्षीय / एकतरफा)
40. Indict → officially charge someone with a crime (अभियोग लगाना)

41. Place where arms are kept
42. Telling a lie under oath
43. Following/ watching someone in a threatening way is _____.
44. Crime of living on the street and asking people for money is _____.
45. A piece of unclaimed property is _____.
46. a homeless child or person is _____.
47. Reading / using message / data without one's knowledge
48. You _____ if you plan together to do some offence.

41 Arsenal/ Armoury

42 Perjury

43 Stalking

44 Vagrancy

45 Waif

46 Waif/ Foundling

47 Hacking

48 hatch a conspiracy

Explanations:-

41. Arsenal/Armoury → a collection of weapons such as guns and explosives (युद्ध सामग्री का भंडार)
42. Perjury → the act of telling a lie in the court or when under oath (शपथ भंग या झूठी गवाही)
43. Stalking → to follow a person over a period of time in a frightening or annoying way (किसी का ऐसे पीछा करना कि वह डरे या परेशान हो जाये)
44. Vagrancy → the state of being homeless (बेघर होने की अवस्था)
45. Waif → anything found but not claimed (लावारिस वस्तु, जमीन इत्यादि)
46. Waif/ foundling → a person especially a child who is homeless (बेघर बच्चा)
47. Hacking → to use a computer to get information stored in some other computer without permission (बिना अनुमति के किसी और कम्प्यूटर में संचित सूचना प्राप्त करना)
48. Hatch conspiracy → to make a secret plan to do something that is usually illegal or harmful (ढड़यन्त्र करना)

49. The Judge _____ the verdict in the open court.
50. A legal document in which you state who shall receive your property is _____.
51. A process of settling a disagreement by keeping people from both sides or an independent person to settle the matter is _____.
52. Payment made by husband/wife to his/her spouse after divorce is _____
53. Money given by a man to his wife for her own use/ money spent on inessentials is _____
54. The amount of money or property left to someone in a will is _____

49 pronounced

50 Will

51 Arbitration/Me
diation

52 Alimony

53 Pin money

54 Legacy

Explanations:-

49. Pronounce the verdict → give a judgement (फैसला सुनाना)
50. Will → a legal document mentioning who will inherit the legacy (वसीयत)
51. Arbitration/ Mediation → procedure in which a dispute is submitted by agreement of the parties to one or more impartial individuals (मध्यस्थता)
52. Alimony → money paid to wife/ husband after divorce (तलाक के बाद हर्जाना)
53. Pin money → a small sum of money for spending on inessentiality (छोटे-मोटे खर्चों के लिए दी जाने वाले पैसे)
54. Legacy → money or property that is given to someone after a person dies (विरासत)



ENGLISH SPL.



ONLY 3499/-

Download Now!

Subscribe Now

BEST BATCH FOR ALL OBJECTIVE EXAMS.

FREE

60+ TEST PAPERS OF -

SSC (CHSL), CGL (TIER-I & III), BANK (PO, CLERK)

SSC

BANK

NDA

CDS

& All Objective Exams

NEETU SINGH

KD CAMPUS YOUTUBE CHANNEL

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact : 9555108888 / 9555208888

Identifying Parts of Speech

32

10 Questions from this section comes in CDS

Directions : Each of the following sentences has a word or phrase underlined. Read the sentences carefully and find which part of speech the underlined word belongs to. Indicate your response on the answer sheet accordingly.

1. They wandered around aimlessly.
(a) Verb (b) Adjective
(c) Intensifier (d) Noun
2. We went away after they had left.
(a) Pronoun (b) Adjective
(c) Intensifier (d) Conjunction
3. Public culture is associated with extremely new civil societies.
(a) Adverb (b) Intensifier
(c) Adjective (d) Noun Clause
4. You are paying less attention to your studies these days.
(a) Adverb (b) Adjective
(c) Intensifier (d) Noun
5. Why, is it really Sujata on the phone?
(a) Interjection (b) Adjective
(c) Intensifier (d) Noun
6. Sit down and rest a while.
(a) Adverb (b) Adjective
(c) Intensifier (d) Noun
7. Rakesh is too old to run fast.
(a) Adverb (b) Conjunction
(c) Intensifier (d) Noun
8. For the next generation of interior architects and design graduates, work opportunities are immense.
(a) Adverb (b) Adjective
(c) Noun (d) Pronoun
9. Life is a solo fight, and each person makes his or her own journey.
(a) Noun (b) Adjective
(c) Intensifier (d) Adverb
10. The cat loves comfort.
(a) Indefinite article
(b) Definite article
(c) Intensifier
(d) Subject
11. All the pilgrims rested for a while under the banyan tree.
(a) Adverb (b) Place value
(c) Preposition (d) Verb
12. The wonderful statue of the leader welcomes all people to city."
(a) Object (b) Adjective
(c) Noun phrase (d) Noun
13. This is his pen.
(a) Possessive pronoun
(b) Possessive adjective
(c) Adverb
(d) Verb
14. When people found that the jewel was in records of Rahim, they gave it to him.
(a) Pronoun (b) Nominative
(c) Noun (d) Adverb
15. It is eleven O'clock now and all of us should retire to bed.
(a) Personal pronoun
(b) Relative pronoun
(c) Impersonal pronoun
(d) Verb
16. The flower is very beautiful.
(a) Adjective (b) Adverb
(c) Preposition (d) Conjunction
17. This boy is stronger than Ramesh.
(a) Pronoun (b) Adjective
(c) Article (d) Adverb

18. I hurt myself.
(a) Noun
(b) Pronoun
(c) Demonstrative preposition
(d) Adjective
19. The ants fought the wasps.
(a) Intransitive verb
(b) Transitive verb
(c) Demonstrative verb
(d) Adjective
20. I can hardly believe it.
(a) Adjective (b) Preposition
(c) Adverb (d) Verb
21. The preacher said, "No one is above the all powerful"
(a) Adverb (b) Place value
(c) Preposition (d) Verb
22. The most beautiful seven monkeys of the landlord were taken for a stroll
(a) Object (b) Adjective
(c) Noun phrase (d) Noun
23. Alas! He has been defeated
(a) Adjective (b) Adverb
(c) Interjection (d) Conjunction
24. The man who is in the green shift is the chief of the day
(a) Pronoun
(b) Relative noun
(c) Demonstrative pronouns
(d) Assertive noun
25. He has been living in the jungle for long and he knows all the animals here
(a) Subordinating conjunction
(b) Coordinating conjunction
(c) Preposition
(d) Personal pronoun
26. They have been driving since early morning
(a) Adjective (b) Adverb
(c) Noun (d) Comparison
27. This time we woke up to the virus related diseases
(a) Demonstrative
(b) Article
(c) Adverb
(d) Noun phrase
28. Love your neighbour as thyself
(a) Noun (b) Pronoun
(c) Preposition (d) Adjective
29. Ravi won the match with a huge margin
(a) Intransitive verb
(b) Transitive verb
(c) Demonstrative verb
(d) Adjective
30. There was an exultation in the group
(a) Adjective
(b) Adverb
(c) Adjectival Noun
(d) Noun
31. He has been working in the Department of Foreign Affairs since 2002.
(a) Adverb (b) Adjective
(c) Intensifier (d) Noun
32. The man in dark blue is the one who made us win the match.
(a) Relative clause
(b) Interrogative pronoun
(c) Relative pronoun
(d) Affirmative
33. The most beautiful actor of the industry was awarded today.
(a) Adjective (b) Numeral
(c) Adverb (d) Noun
34. "What is the latest news?" asked the Captain.
(a) Relative pronoun
(b) Adjective
(c) Adverb
(d) Adjectival clause
35. Noticing the change in the behaviour of the officer, the cadets returned to their position.
(a) Participle
(b) Present continuous
(c) Noun phrase
(d) Noun

36. When he reached the department, the officials **had left** for the meeting.
 (a) Past perfect verb
 (b) Past tense
 (c) Dependent clause
 (d) Independent clause
37. He **has offered** her another chance.
 (a) Intransitive verb
 (b) Past tense
 (c) Perfect tense
 (d) Transitive verb
38. The building **is** very ancient.
 (a) Transitive verb
 (b) Intransitive verb
 (c) Phrasal verb
 (d) Auxiliary verb
39. **Hurrah!** What a scintillating beauty the landscape is !
 (a) Conjunction
 (b) Adjective
 (c) Adverb
 (d) Interjection
40. Ravi was declared as the winner in the tie **because** he had hit the most number of fours and sixes.
 (a) Conjunction
 (b) Interjection
 (c) Adverb
 (d) Cause
41. Rita **eats** her dinner quickly.
 (a) Verb (b) Preposition
 (c) Adjective (d) Adverb
42. He thought the movie ended **abruptly**.
 (a) Noun (b) Adverb
 (c) Verb (d) Adjective
43. I will meet you **in** the third week of August.
 (a) Pronoun (b) Verb
 (c) Preposition (d) Noun
44. Jasmines **and** roses are my favourite flowers.
 (a) Verb
 (b) Preposition
 (c) Conjunction
 (d) Interjection
45. She **truthfully** answered the detective's questions.
 (a) Verb (b) Adjective
 (c) Noun (d) Adverb
46. **Hurrah!** We won the game!
 (a) Interjection
 (b) Conjunction
 (c) Noun
 (d) Pronoun
47. The son writes **meaningless** letters to his father.
 (a) Adverb (b) Verb
 (c) Pronoun (d) Adjective
48. The secretary **himself** visited the affected families.
 (a) Verb (b) Noun
 (c) Adverb (d) Pronoun
49. The children were walking **through** the forest.
 (a) Verb (b) Adverb
 (c) Adjective (d) Preposition
50. The Presiding Officer walked **slowly** to the dais.
 (a) Adverb (b) Adjective
 (c) Verb (d) Noun

Answer Key

1. (3)	14. (1)	27. (1)	40. (1)
2. (4)	15. (3)	28. (2)	41. (1)
3. (2)	16. (2)	29. (2)	42. (2)
4. (2)	17. (2)	30. (4)	43. (3)
5. (1)	18. (2)	31. (1)	44. (3)
6. (4)	19. (2)	32. (3)	45. (4)
7. (3)	20. (3)	33. (1)	46. (1)
8. (3)	21. (3)	34. (2)	47. (4)
9. (2)	22. (2)	35. (1)	48. (4)
10. (2)	23. (3)	36. (1)	49. (4)
11. (3)	24. (1)	37. (3)	50. (1)
12. (4)	25. (2)	38. (2)	
13. (2)	26. (2)	39. (4)	



PHRASAL VERBS



Download Now!



Email: online@kdcampus.org

Contact : 8586903756 /8586903746

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
1	Account for (something)	To explain the reason for	जबाब देना (का कारण बताना)	<i>You are accounted for your misdemeanor.</i> <i>(Misbehaviour)</i>
2	Add up	To join or unite so as to increase in size, quantity, quality or scope	में जुड़ जाना जिससे माप/भार में बढ़ोतरी हो जाए	<i>Add up these words to your word bank.</i>
3	Answerable for/ Accountable for	To be responsible for	जवाबदेह होना	<i>I am not answerable for this mistake.</i>
4	Ask after	to make inquiries about the health of (someone)	किसी के सेहत के बारे में पूछताछ करना	<i>I met Alka and she was asking after you.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
5	Ask for (something)	to demand ~~for~~	किसी वस्तु की माँग करना	<i>She was asking for a hike in her salary.</i>
6	Attend on	To serve पूँछे-छाँटा	सेवा करना	<i>Radhika has many servants to attend on her.</i>
7	Back off	To retreat/ to choose not to take action	दावा छोड़ देना/ पीछे हट जाना	<i>Finally she backed off from her claim on the property.</i>
8	Back out	To withdraw from something before completion/to fail to keep promise	कार्य पूरा होने से पहले पीछे हट जाना/ वादे से मुकर जाना	<i>You should not back out now as you had promised to help me.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
9	Back up	To support	सहायता देना	<i>We need back up because the soldiers are getting exhausted”, the commander said.</i>
10	Bank upon/ Count on	To rely on <i>उत्तरदायित्व देना</i>	विश्वास करना या निर्भर होना <i>गुचलना</i>	<i>You cannot bank upon him as he may <u>take</u> you <u>in</u> any time.</i> <i>धोखा देना</i>
11	Bear down	To overthrow or crush by force	परास्त कर देना	<i>We have to bear down our enemies.</i>
12	Bear upon	To be relevant	संबंधित होना/प्रासंगिक होना	<i>Will the new law bear upon the outcome of the case?</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
13	Bear out	To support the truth/substantiate (समर्थित करना)	सही साबित करने में सहायक होना	<i>This document will bear out your claim on this building.</i>
14	Bear up	To withstand stress or difficulty	सहना	<i>Everyone has to bear up some difficulties.</i>
15	Bear with	To tolerate with someone	बर्दाश्त करना	<i>Our server is down. Kindly bear with us.</i>
16	Become of	To happen	घटित होना (किसी व्यक्ति के साथ)	<i>I wonder, what became of my old friends.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
17	Boil down to	To be reduced to its essentials.	सार निकालना/संक्षिप्त करना	<i>Every business boils down to just one thing i.e profit.</i>
18	Branch out	To spread	फैल जाना	<i>We are going to branch out our business soon.</i>
19	Break down (of machine)	To stop working	काम करना बंद कर देना	<i>The bus broke down on the way so I could not reach the station in time.</i>
20	Break down (of person)	To lose control (emotionally or mentally)	हिम्मत/हौसला खो देना	<i>We should not break down in adverse situation.</i>

Not favourable

Anarchy
(अराजक)

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
21	Break forth	To come to view/to appear suddenly	अचानक उजागर होना	<i>Chaos might break forth if the police fail to control the situation.</i>
22	Break in on	To interrupt a conversation or discussion/ to intrude.	खलल डालना	<i>The conversation between Ali and Sona was going on when Rahul broke in on it.</i>
23	Break into	To enter or open a place or vehicle forcibly	जबरदस्ती प्रवेश करना	<i>The thief broke into the house.</i>
24	Break off	To stop suddenly/ to end a relationship.	सहसा रुक जाना/ संबंध खत्म करना	<i>• He broke off in the middle of his lecture yesterday.</i> <i>• They broke off their business relationship</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
25	Break out	To start suddenly (disease, war etc.)	अचानक फैलना	<i>Dengue has broken out in Delhi.</i>
26	Break up	To end/disperse	भंग होना	<i>Seeing the police, the crowd broke up.</i>
27	Break up	To separate (of a relationship etc.)	अलग हो जाना	<i>They have broken up and now marriage is not on the cards.</i>
28	Breakthrough	To discover a secret	रहस्य की खोज करना	<i>There is no breakthrough in the robbery case.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
29	Bring about	To cause to happen	होने का कारण होना	<i>The sound economic policies brought about the revival of the company.</i>
30	Bring along 	To take someone/something	साथ लाना	<i>Bring your son along with you when you come here.</i>
31	Bring down	To overthrow (a government)/to reduce in position	सत्ता से नीचे गिराना/ पद में कम करना	<i>The sting operation, exposing the corrupt ministers, can bring down the government.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
32	Bring forth	To give birth to/produce	उत्पन्न/ पैदा करना	<i>Corruption brings forth poverty.</i>
33	Bring forward	To present	प्रस्तुत करना	<i>The judge asked me to bring forward some proof against him.</i>
34	Bring in	To produce, yield or earn	कमाई कराना/पैदा करना	<i>Our company will bring in huge profit this month.</i>
35	Bring off	To carry to a successful conclusion	करने से सफल होना	<i>The government has brought off changes in the Land Bill.</i>

→ निष्कर्ष

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
36	Bring on	To cause to happen	का कारण बनना	<i>The new law will surely bring on positive changes in the society.</i>
37	Bring out	To present to the public/to make some quality noticeable	प्रस्तुत करना/कुछ विशेष जानकारी में लाना	<i>His ^{साक्ष्य} evidence has brought out several facts before the court.</i>
38	Bring over	To bring someone to one's side	अपने पक्ष में करना	<i>We should not try to bring him over as he is not a reliable person.</i>
39	Bring round	To bring to one's senses/to make one agree to one's opinion	होश में लाना/ अपने अनुकूल बनाना	<i>The Trade Union succeeded in bringing the management round to their point of view.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
40	Bring under	To control	वश में करना	<i>The East India company brought many provinces under its control.</i>
41	Bring up	To raise/ to rear/to increase	उठाना (मुद्दा इत्यादि)/ पालन-पोषण करना/ बढ़ाना	<i>She was brought up in a very poor family.</i>
42	Call on	To visit (a person)	मुलाकात करना (किसी से) घर पर पर्सि	<i>The PM will call on the flood victims tomorrow.</i>
43	Call at	To visit (a place)	मुलाकात करना (किसी के घर/ऑफिस इत्यादि जाकर)	<i>Last Sunday, I called at your home but you were not available.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
44	Call for	To demand (answer, explanation)	मांग करना	<i>This irresponsible behaviour calls for strict actions against her.</i>
45	Call forth	To produce (a reaction) elicit	प्रतिक्रिया पैदा करना	<i>The arbitrary Bill called forth a strong reaction.</i>
46	Call in	To summon/ send for	बुलावा भेजना	<i>She is too ill to call in a doctor.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
47	Call off	To cancel	रद्द करना	<i>The meeting was called off due to rain.</i>
	Put off	To postpone	स्थगित करना	<i>The meeting has been put off and we will let you know the next date.</i>
48	Call up	To recall	याद करना	<i>I will call you up later.</i>
	Call up	To make a telephonic call	फ़ोन करना	<i>The victim tried to call up the actual sequence of the incidents but she couldn't.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
49	Call upon/on	To invite to do something	कूछ करने या बोलने के लिए आमंत्रित करना	<i>I call upon you to furnish the details of your income and expenditure.</i>
50	Carry away	To arouse too much emotion/ zeal <i>भावना उत्साह</i>	भावुक करना/ उत्तेजित करना	<i>I was carried away by the emotional scenes of the movie.</i>
51	Carry off	To execute	कार्यन्वित करना	<i>He carried off the responsibility successfully.</i>
52	Carry out	To complete or fulfill/to execute	किसी कार्य या आदेश को पूरा करना	<i>We must carry out the order of the court.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
53	Come by	To get	मिलना/प्राप्त करना	<i>It is difficult to come by a good job nowadays.</i>
54	Carry on	To continue	जारी रखना	<i>You must carry on with your charitable work.</i>
55	Carry through	To complete something that was planned	कार्यान्वित करना	<i>We carried through the plans though we lacked resources.</i>
56	Catch on	To understand/to become popular	समझना/ लोकप्रिय होना	<i>Work hard if you want to catch on the syllabus.</i> <i>The fashion will soon catch on.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
57	Catch up with	To stop being behind	बराबरी पर आ जाना	<i>Work hard to catch up with them.</i>
58	Chance upon	To meet/get by chance ↳ Come across	अचानक मिल जाना	<i>I chanced upon one of my friends when I was going to market.</i>
59	Clear of	To free from blame	आरोप मुक्त करना	<i>He was cleared of the charges.</i>
60	Close in	To encircle closely	चारों तरफ से घेरना	<i>The police closed in on the suspect.</i> संकोच

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
61	Come about	To happen	घटित होना	<i>How did this huge loss come about?</i>
62	Come across	To find (unexpectedly) or meet by chance	अचानक मिल जाना	<i>~~Suddenly~~ I came across my childhood friend yesterday.</i>
63	Come down	To become lower or cheaper	नीचे आना/सस्ता होना	<i>The price of petrol is supposed to come down soon.</i>
64	Come forward	To offer help	सहायता के लिए आगे आना	<i>Several people came forward to help the flood victims.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
65	Close down	To stop operating	बंद हो जाना	<i>The petrol pumps of Reliance closed down.</i>
66	Come in for	To receive/subjected to	सामना करना	<i>His misdemeanor comes in for harsh criticism.</i>
67	Come of	To originate, to be the result of something	उत्पन्न होना	<i>Nothing came of his efforts though he tried his best.</i>
68	Come off	Happen/succeed	होना/सफल होना	<i>The deal did not come off despite my best efforts.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
69	Come out	To come into public view	बाहर आना/जाहिर होना	<i>The investigating team must come out with the truth soon.</i>
70	Come round	To accept someone's opinion	दूसरे की बात मानकर विचार बदल लेना	<i>He took some time to come round to my side but now he agrees to my opinion.</i>
71	Come through	To do what is needed or expected or to become communicated	जो जरूरी हो वो करना/संप्रेक्षित करना	<i>The message of the PM came through loud and clear.</i>
72	Come down	To fall/ to pass by as tradition	नीचे आना/एक से दूसरे पीढ़ी में जाना	<i>These customs have come down from <u>time immemorial</u>.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
73	Come to senses	To gain consciousness or to recover	होश में आना	<i>He came to his senses after a short while.</i>
74	Come up	raised for discussion	उठाना (मुद्दा)	<i>The issue of safety came up twice during the meeting.</i>
75	Come upon/ across	To meet by chance	अचानक मिलना	<i>I came upon/ across this beautiful piece of art while I was shopping.</i>
76	Count on	To depend on, to rely on	विश्वास करना या निर्भर रहना	<i>I cannot count on them.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
77	Crop up	To happen unexpectedly (usually problem)	अचानक होना	<i>A number of problems cropped up suddenly.</i>
78	Cut across	to pass through the shortest way/ to affect many.	सबसे छोटे मार्ग से गुजरना/ कई को प्रभावित करना	<i>The issue of health care cuts across all the strata of the society.</i> Layers
79	Cut down on	To curtail	कटौती करना	<i>We need to cut down on the intake of salt.</i>
80	Cut in	to interrupt	हस्तक्षेप करना	<i>You should not cut in when your boss speaks.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
81	Cut out for	To be suitable for	किसी कार्य के लिए उपयुक्त होना	<i>I am cut out for the profession of teaching.</i>
82	Dawn upon	To understand	समझ में आना (कोई बात)	<i>It dawned upon me that I had been cheated.</i>
83	Deal in	To have business of something	का व्यवसाय करना	<i>She deals in garments.</i>
84	Deal with	To handle / tackle / cope with	निपटना	<i>I cannot deal with stupid people.</i>
85	Die down	To gradually disappear, to lose strength or power	धीरे-धीरे कम हो जाना, शक्ति क्षीण होना	<i>The rumours will die down.</i>

tackle
Cope with

अपनाह

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
86	Die for	To have a great wish	इच्छा या चाह रखना	<i>We die for those chocolate cakes now</i>
87	Die out	To get extinct	विलुप्त/खत्म हो जाना	<i>Several species died out because of climate change.</i>
88	Dispose of	To sell off/ to get rid of	बेचना/ छुटकारा पाना	<i>I want to dispose of some old furniture.</i>
89	Do away with	To abolish	समाप्त कर देना	<i>We should do away with such evil practices.</i>
90	Do without	To manage without	किसी चीज के बिना काम चलाना	<i>I cannot do without my books.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
91	Drag on	To stretch	लम्बा खींचना	<i>The court cases drag on for years.</i>
92	Drive out	To make someone run away	भगा देना	<i>Drive out the cattle from the field.</i>
93	Drop in	To come suddenly	अचानक पहुँचना	<i>Some guests dropped in yesterday.</i>
94	Dwell on	To keep thinking or talking about or rely on something	किसी बात के बारे में बोलते या सोचते रहना या उसी पर निर्भर रहना	<i>It is no use dwelling on your misfortunes.</i>
95	Eat into	To weaken	खोखला करना	<i>Corruption is eating into our system.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
96	Enter into	To start or get involved in	किसी कार्य में सम्मिलित हो जाना	<i>You are advised not to enter into this agreement.</i>
97	Fall apart	To break into pieces	बिखर जाना	<i>Every part of this movement is falling apart.</i>
98	Fall back	To retreat	पीछे हट जाना	<i>The invading army was forced to fall back due to continuous firing.</i>
99	Fall back on	To use as a last resort	कठिनाई के समय में किसी चीज की सहायता लेना	<i>I have no one to fall back on.</i>
100	Fall flat	Fail to produce any effect	कोई असर पैदा न करना	<i>His advice fell flat on us.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
101	Fall for	To fall in love with, to become a victim of	प्यार होना, शिकार होना	<i>He fell for her simple behaviour.</i>
102	Fall in	To sink inward/ collapse	अंदर धँस जाना	<i>The roof fell in killing five people.</i>
103	Fall in with	To agree with	सहमत होना	<i>I fall in with you on this matter.</i>
104	Fall off	To become less, decrease	कम होना	<i>Stock prices have fallen off.</i>
105	Fall out (with)	To quarrel with, to happen	झगड़ा होना, घटना	<i>We should not fall out with them without any rhyme or reason.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
106	Fall through	To fail	असफल होना	<i>The plans fall through due to your misdemeanor.</i>
107	Feel like	To be excited to do something	किसी काम को करने का इच्छुक होना	<i>I feel like going to school.</i>
108	Figure out	To understand	समझ पाना	<i>I am unable to figure out the meaning of his ambiguous statement.</i>
109	Fish for	To seek something by probing	पाने का प्रयास करना (सूचना इत्यादि)	<i>The reporter tried to fish for some information.</i>
110	Fly open	To open suddenly	अचानक खुल जाना	<i>The doors flew open when the storm came.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
111	Follow up	To pursue	करना (किसी कोर्स/मकसद को पूरा करने हेतु)	<i>You must follow up this routine for better result.</i>
112	Gain on	To come close to someone or something that you are chasing	नजदीक आना (उसके, जिसे पाने के प्रयासरत हो)	<i>I am gaining on them in my business.</i>
113	Get about/ around	Spread, move around or be socially active	फैल जाना, इधर-उधर घूमना या सामाजिक रूप से सजग होना	<i>Good news about upcoming vacancies is getting about.</i>
114	Get at	to understand, to reach successfully	समझ जाना, तक पहुँचना	<i>I am doing my best to get at the truth.</i>
115	Get away with	To do something wrong or illegal without getting caught or punished	कोई गलत काम करना और पकड़े जाने या सजा से बच जाना	<i>The thieves got away with all my belongings.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
116	Get back	To return	लौटना	<i>I will get back to you soon.</i>
117	Get along	have smooth relations	अच्छा संबंध होना	<i>He and his wife are not getting along well these days.</i>
118	Get down	To direct attention towards something	किसी कार्य के तरफ ध्यान लगाना	<i>Please get down to your work.</i>
119	Get off	To leave work with permission	काम से अधिकारिक अवकाश मिलना	<i>You can get an off tomorrow.</i>
120	Get on	To make progress, to be on harmonious terms	प्रगति करना, अच्छा संबंध होना	<i>He gets on well with all his neighbours.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
121	Get over	To overcome	पार पाना/ उबर जाना	<i>Finally I got over the difficulties and court cases.</i>
122	Get rid of	To dispose of/to leave	छुटकारा पाना	<i>I want to get rid of my bad habits.</i>
123	Get round (a problem)	To evade or avoid a problem	किसी समस्या से बचने के लिए रास्ता ढूँढ लेना	<i>He will get round the problems in some way.</i>
124	Get round (someone)	To persuade someone to do what you want	किसी को कुछ करने के लिए मना लेना	<i>You will have to get them round to join your team.</i>
125	Get through	To finish or assist in finishing	कोई कार्य पूरा करना या पूरा कराने में सहायता करना	<i>If you work hard, you will get through this task in a week.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
126	Get up	To wake up	जागना	<i>I get up at 6 am everyday.</i>
127	Give away	To distribute, to reveal, to betray	बाँटना, उजागर करना, धोखा देना	<i>The chief guest gave away the prizes.</i>
128	Give in	To agree, to surrender, to submit	मान जाना, समर्पण कर देना, सौंपना	<i>The daughter-in-law gave in to her in-laws' demands.</i>
129	Give up	To leave, to stop doing something/ to yield	छोड़ देना, त्याग देना, हार मान जाना	<i>She has given up smoking.</i>
130	Go ahead	To start or continue to do something	किसी कार्य को शुरू करना या जारी रखना	<i>Go ahead with your demands.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
131	Go along	To cooperate	सहयोग देना	<i>I will go along with them on this issue.</i>
132	Go at	to attack especially with energy	हमला करना (पूरे उर्जा के साथ)	<i>The bull went at the audience and this led to stampede.</i>
133	Go back on	To break a promise	वादे से मुकर जाना	<i>Why did you go back on your promise?</i>
134	Go by	To work accordingly	नियमानुसार कार्य करना, गुजरना (समय इत्यादि का)	<i>(1) We should go by the traffic rules. (2) Time went by.</i>
135	Go down	To be accepted	विश्वास करना/ स्वीकार करना	<i>The theory of evolution did not go down well initially.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
136	Go down in history	To get registered in history	इतिहास में नाम दर्ज कराना	<i>Ashok went down in History due to his religious work.</i>
137	Go for	To attack, to try to attain, to choose	आक्रमण करना, पाने की कोशिश करना या चुनना	<i>(i) I will go for this dress. (ii) If you want it, go for it.</i>
138	Go off	explode	फटना (बम का)/बन्दूक से गोली छूटना	<i>The bomb went off and people ran helter-skelter.</i>
139	Go on	To continue doing something	जारी रखना	<i>She went on reading the book.</i>
140	Go over	To gain acceptance	स्वीकार होना	<i>The film went over well.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
141	Go through	To pass through a time, to read	किसी दौर से गुजरना, पढ़ना	<i>Let me go through this book.</i>
142	Go up	Increase	बढ़ना	<i>Price of foodgrains went up due to famine.</i>
143	Go with	To select or choose	चुनना	<i>I cannot go with this brand.</i>
144	Hear of	To get the news about	समाचार मिलना	<i>I haven't heard of any such haunted house.</i>
145	Hit on/upon	To come to mind suddenly	अचानक दिमाग में आना	<i>An idea hit upon me when I was reading the story.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
146	Hold back	To retain in one's possession, to restrain oneself	(व्यक्त करने) से रोकना, खुद को रोकना किसी कार्य से	<i>Please hold back your emotions.</i>
147	Hold down	To prevent, to limit	रोकना, नियंत्रित करना	<i>The militants were held down by the Indian army.</i>
148	Hold on	To maintain one's grip, to continue to do something despite difficulties, to wait for something wanted or requested.	पकड़कर रखना, जारी रखना (कठिनाई के बावजूद) इंतजार करना)	<i>Please hold on while we transfer your call to the executive.</i>
149	Hold with	Approve of/agree with	सहमत होना	<i>I cannot hold with them on this matter.</i>
150	Hunt down	To pursue successfully by diligent searching and chasing.	खोज, निकालना	<i>The militants were hunted down at the border.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
151	Hush up	To hide	छिपाना	<i>They hushed up this scam.</i>
152	Impress (idea) on	To convince someone or impart a strong impression in the mind of someone	छाप छोड़ना (कोई बात का किसी व्यक्ति के दिमाग पर)	<i>She can impress upon the clients easily.</i>
153	Iron out	To ease a problem	समस्या की गंभीरता कम करना	<i>We need to iron out our differences.</i>
154	Jump at (conclusion)	To draw conclusion in a hurry	जल्दबाजी में निष्कर्ष निकालना	<i>You should not jump at any conclusion.</i>
155	Keep on	Continue	जारी रखना	<i>He kept on talking.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
156	Keep up	to maintain	कायम रखना	<i>Keep up your confidence in every situation.</i>
157	Kick against	To fight against people in authority	विरोध करना	<i>We cannot kick against the authority as we may be booked for sedition.</i>
158	Knock about/around	To wander about aimlessly	इधर-उधर घूमना बिना किसी मकसद के	<i>He knocked about as he was jobless.</i>
159	Knock someone about /around	To behave violently towards someone	किसी के साथ उग्र तरीके से व्यवहार करना	<i>We cannot knock him about without any rhyme or reason.</i>
160	Knock down	To bring to the ground with a blow	कूचल देना, धक्का मार कर गिरा देना	<i>He was knocked down by a speeding car.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
161	Lap up	To receive very eagerly	अत्यंत उत्सुकता के साथ प्राप्त करना	<i>Let us lap up the victory.</i>
162	Laugh at	To make fun of	मजाक उड़ाना	<i>We should not laugh at others.</i>
163	Laugh off/ away	To make something seem less important or serious	हँसी में किसी गंभीर बात को उड़ा देना	<i>He laughed off/ away his troubles.</i>
164	Lay aside/by	To make savings for future use	बचत करना	<i>Please lay some money aside for the rainy days.</i>
165	Lay down	To give up for future use or surrender	हथियार डाल देना या समर्पण कर देना	<i>There is no alternative but to lay down your weapons.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
166	Lay in	To store for future use	जमा करना (भविष्य के लिए)	<i>The ants lay in food for the winter season.</i>
167	Lay off	To terminate the service of	काम से निकाल देना	<i>The company is going to lay off some workers.</i>
168	Lay out	To arrange according to plans	व्यवस्थित करना	<i>Lay out your plans before investing money.</i>
169	Leave off	To stop, cease	बंद करना	<i>We leave off as soon as the clock strikes five.</i>
170	Leave/let alone	to refrain from disturbing or interfering	दखल देने से बचना	<i>Leave me alone. I am sick of your interference.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
171	Let someone down	To disappoint someone	निराश करना	<i>Trust me, I will not let you down.</i>
172	Let on	Share a secret	गुप्त बात सांझा करना	<i>No one will let on about the surprise party.</i>
173	Let in	Allow to enter	प्रवेश करने देना	<i>We cannot let those people in.</i>
174	Let something off	To make something such a bomb explode or fire a gun	किसी बम को फूटने या गोली को चलने देना	<i>The police cannot let the bomb off, as the place is heavily crowded.</i>
175	Let someone off	To allow to get away without the expected punishment	गलती के लिए दंड दिए बिना छोड़ देना	<i>The court cannot let them off as the crime is serious.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
176	Let out	To allow someone or something to leave a place	बाहर निकालने देना	<i>Who has let the dogs out?</i>
177	Let up	To slow down, to become less severe	कम होना/ तीव्रता कम करना	<i>We will stay here until the storm lets up.</i>
178	Lie behind	To be the hidden cause	छिपा हुआ कारण होना	<i>Every one knows what lies behind this cold-blooded murder.</i>
179	Lie in	Exist in something	किसी चीज में होना	<i>Beauty lies in the eyes of the beholder.</i>
180	Light on/ upon	To think/find something unexpectedly	अचानक सूझना	<i>She lighted upon a new way of solving the problem.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
181	Light up	To brighten/to become cheerful	चमकना/ खुश हो जाना	<i>The good news will light up her face.</i>
182	Live by	Follow manners/means in life	मान्यताओं/सिद्धान्तों को मानना	<i>We should live by principles.</i>
183	Live upto	To live or act in accordance with	उम्मीदों पर खरा उतरना	<i>I couldn't live upto my parents' expectations.</i>
184	Live with	To put up with, resign oneself	सहन करना	<i>She cannot live with this tension for a long time.</i>
185	Live through	To endure, survive	बर्दाश्त करना	<i>He lived through the rainy days and this made him strong.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
186	Look after	Take care of	ध्यान रखना	<i>He looked after his ailing father.</i>
187	Look back on	To think of	बीते समय के किसी अनुभव या बात के बारे में सोचना	<i>I keep looking back on those happy days.</i>
188	Look down on/upon	To regard as inferior	नीची निगाह से देखना	<i>We should not look down upon the poor.</i>
189	Look for	To try to find	खोजना	<i>I am looking for a suitable match for my son.</i>
190	Look forward to	Expect with pleasure	खुशी के साथ इन्तजार करना	<i>I am looking forward to meeting you soon.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
191	Look in on	To visit	किसी से मिलने जाना	<i>I will look in on you soon.</i>
192	Look into	investigate	जाँच पड़ताल करना	<i>The police will look into the matter.</i>
193	Look on/upon	To consider	मानना	<i>She looked on this serious matter as a joke.</i>
194	Look out	beware/ watch out	सावधान होना	<i>Look out, the train is coming.</i>
195	Look something/ someone up	To seek information about	कोई जानकारी खोजना	<i>I looked up the number of the hospital on Google.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
196	Look to	To expect	कोई आशा करना	<i>I look to hearing from her within a week.</i>
197	Look up for	To search	ढूँढ़ना	<i>I am looking up for a job.</i>
198	Look up to	To admire	पसंद करना	<i>I look up to my teachers.</i>
199	Look up	To improve	बेहतर होना	<i>Even after the government has changed, things are not looking up.</i>
200	Make do	To manage with limited means.	काम चलाना/ (जितना हो उसी से)	<i>They had to make do with limited resources.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
201	Make for	To make possible	किसी बात में सहायक होना	<i>Internet makes for better communication.</i>
202	Make of	To understand, to produce or construct from	अभिप्राय को समझना, से बना होना	<i>What do you make of this news?</i>
203	Make off	To run away with	किसी चीज को लेकर भाग निकलना	<i>He made off with all my money.</i>
204	Make out	To understand	समझना	<i>I cannot make out the head or tail of your statement.</i>
205	Make over	convert, redo, renovate	परिवर्तित	<i>This place needs a complete makeover.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
206	Make the most of	To use to the greatest advantage	पूरा-पूरा लाभ उठाना	<i>We will make the most of this opportunity.</i>
207	Make up	Invent something like excuse or story/ to forgive someone become friends again	बनाना/रचना (कहानी/बहाने इत्यादि)/ माफ़ कर के फिर से मित्र बनना	<i>(1) He made up an excuse for coming late., (2) They quarrelled but soon made up as usual.</i>
208	Make up one's mind	Determine	निर्णय कर लेना	<i>You will have to make up your mind whether you want to accept the offer or not.</i>
209	Meet with	To experience or undergo	अनुभव करना	<i>He met with an accident.</i>
210	On the make	In the process of forming	बनने की क्रिया में	<i>Seeing this child artist, I can say that a very good actor is on the make.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
211	Mess around	To spend time without any purpose or plan just in a playful way	समय बिताना (बिना किसी विशेष उद्देश्य के या मजाक में)	<i>They mess around at the park annoying the elderly people.</i>
212	Mess up	to make a mistake	गल्ती करना	<i>They messed up and suffered a huge loss.</i>
	Mess (something) up	To make something disorderly or untidy	अस्त-व्यस्त करना	<i>They messed up my beautiful carpet.</i>
213	Mess with	To alter something improperly, to deceive or confuse someone	अस्त-व्यस्त करना/ उलझा देना	<i>Don't mess with the sitting arrangement.</i> <i>Don't try to mess with me</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
214	Move in	To enter a new house/ place business	नये घर/ ऑफिस में प्रवेश करना	<i>I moved in but found the house not safe.</i>
215	Move on	To concentrate one's emotions or attention on other matter in recovering from a setback or difficulty.	आगे बढ़ना (पुरानी बुरी यादें/ परेशानियों को भूल कर)	<i>Control your emotions and move on in life.</i>
216	Move out	To leave a house	रहने का स्थान छोड़ देना	<i>I moved out of the government allotted flat.</i>
217	Nose out	To defeat by a narrow margin, to move cautiously out of some place	बहुत कम अंतर से हराना, सावधानी से निकलना	• <i>She nosed out her competitor.</i> • <i>She nosed out of her room while the building was shaking.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
218	Note down	To write something so that you don't forget it	लिखना (याद रखने हेतु)	<i>Please note down the important points.</i>
219	Occur to	To come to mind	ध्यान में आना	<i>It suddenly occurred to me that my purse was missing.</i>
220	Part from	To separate from someone.	छोड़ देना (व्यक्ति को)	<i>I cannot part from my son.</i>
221	Part with	To separate from something.	छोड़ देना (वस्तु को)	<i>I cannot part with my books.</i>
222	Pass away	To die	मर जाना	<i>He passed away in sleep.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
223	Pay for	To suffer for making some mistake.	गलती का हर्जाना भरना	<i>We have to pay for our sins.</i>
224	Play at	To do without interest or half-heartedly.	बिना रुचि के कोई काम करना	<i>She is just playing at her husband's business.</i>
225	Play down	To make something appear less important, to belittle	किसी बात के महत्व को कम करके आंकना	<i>He played down my efforts.</i>
226	Play on	To take advantage of	का लाभ उठाना	<i>He played on her emotions.</i>
227	Put aside	To stop using until later/ to disregard.	भविष्य के लिए बचाकर रखना/ उपेक्षा करना	<i>Put aside some money for the rains days.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
228	Put down	To suppress/to criticize	दमन करना/ निंदा करना	<i>Never put down your friends in public.</i>
229	Put off	To postpone/ to repel	स्थगित करना/ विकर्षित करना	<i>The meeting was put off due to heavy rain.</i> <i>The smell of tobacco puts her off.</i>
230	Put on	To add or increase in amount or action/ to clothe oneself	और अधिक होना/ पहनना	<i>She has put on some weight.</i> <i>Put on your sweater.</i>
231	Put out	To extinguish	बुझा देना	<i>Put out the fire.</i>
232	Put through	To make someone experience something unpleasant	किसी को मुसीबत या परेशानी में डालना	<i>He put me through many problems.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
233	Put up	To stay	ठहरना	<i>Where are you putting up in Delhi?</i>
234	Put up	To erect or built	निर्माण करना	<i>We will put up a tent at night.</i>
235	Put together	To construct or create	बनाना	<i>We need to put together the models for our physics assignments.</i>
236	Pay off	to be successful	फलदायक होना	<i>Hard work pays off.</i>
237	Run down	become weak/to criticise	कमजोर होना/हरा देना/ आलोचना करना	<i>(i) Do not run down your spouse in public. (ii) He looks run down.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
238	Run into	To reach a level / to meet by chance	किसी स्तर तक पहुंचना/ अचानक मुलाकात करना	1. The company is in loss running into millions of dollars. 2. I ran into my childhood friend in the market.
239	Run off	To run away	भाग जाना	He ran off with his master's money.
240	Run out	To become used up, be exhausted	खत्म होना	He ran out of money while he was in the U.S.
241	Run over	to crush beneath	कुचल जाना	The old man was run over by a speeding bus.
242	Run short of	exhaust	कम पड़ जाना	We ran short of money at the mall.

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
243	Run through	to look at/ examine especially quickly	सरसरी निगाह डालना	<i>Please run through the important points.</i>
244	See through	To realise the truth	सच्चाई भांप जाना	<i>I saw through his evil intention.</i>
245	See to	To attend	निपटाना	<i>The work has to be completed on time. Please see to it.</i>
246	See off	To take leave of	बिदा लेना	<i>I went to the station to see off my friends.</i>
247	Send for	To call, summon	बुलावा भेजना	<i>Please, send for a doctor.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
248	Set about	To initiate	प्रारंभ करना (किसी कार्य को)	<i>He set about solving the problems one by one.</i>
249	Set apart	To reserve for a specific use	आरक्षित करना	<i>Some fund was set apart for public welfare.</i>
250	Set aside	To reject or discard	रद्द करना	<i>The order of the lower court was set aside by the High Court.</i>
251	Set forth	To present for consideration, to express in words	विचार हेतु रखना, शब्दों में बताना	<i>Set forth your proposal before the committee.</i>
252	Set in	To begin to happen	शुरू होना	<i>Problems soon set in and all felt uneasy.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
253	Set off	To occur, to explode	शुरू करना	(1) The bombs set off ripping apart the bus. (2) We set off for Manali in the morning.
254	Set up	To establish	स्थापित करना	He set up a new business.
255	Set upon	To attack violently	उग्रता के साथ आक्रमण कर देना	Our army set upon the intruders.
256	Shoot down	To defeat, disappoint	हरा देना, निराश करना	He shot down his opponent.
257	Shoot up	To grow rapidly	तेजी से बढ़ना	Prices shoot up during inflation.

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
258	Sit on	To suppress or postpone	दबा देना/ टालते रहना	<i>The court sat on the case for years.</i>
259	Smart under	To be afflicted with	पीड़ित होना	<i>He smarted under the blow of the lash.</i>
260	Smile on	To bless	प्रसन्न होना	<i>Fate smiled on him.</i>
261	Sort out	To find a solution	समस्या को सुलझाना	<i>Please sort out the problems.</i>
262	Stand by	To remain loyal/to be ready	वफादार रहना/के लिए तैयार करना	<i>I will stand by you through thick and thin.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
263	Stand for	To represent or mean/to support	अर्थ होना/किसी विचार को समर्थन देना	(1) While flag stands for surrender. (2) I stand for truth in all circumstances.
264	Stand out	To be noticeable or distinct	तुलनात्मक रूप से विशिष्ट होना	Owing to her efficiency, she stands out among all the employees.
265	Stand up to	To defend or challenge, confront fearlessly	से मुकाबला करना	You will have to stand up to the cause.
266	Stand down	To resign, to withdraw	पद त्याग देना/ दावा छोड़ देना	He stood down and withdrew his candidature.
267	Stand up	To remain valid	सही होना (जैसे दावा करना)	His defence will not stand up in the court.

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
268	Step aside	To resign from a post	पद से इस्तीफा देना	<i>He stepped aside giving way to his subordinate.</i>
269	Step down	To resign from a high post	उच्च पद से नीचे उतरना	<i>He stepped down after being chargesheeted.</i>
270	Step in	To intervene	दखल देना	<i>The boss stepped in when the fight turned ugly.</i>
271	Step out	To quit	छोड़ देना	<i>Step out of my way.</i>
272	Step up	To increase	बढ़ाना	<i>We need to step up the production of our goods.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
273	Stick out	To be prominent	दिखना, ध्यान आकर्षित करना	<i>His funny dress made him stick out of the crowd.</i>
274	Strike down	To nullify	निरस्त करना	<i>The Supreme Court struck down sec 303 of IPC.</i>
275	Taken aback (Used in passive voice only)	To be surprised	अचंभित हो जाना	<i>I was taken aback by his audacity.</i>
276	Take after	To resemble a close or on older relative	(घर के बड़ों की तरह) दिखना या करना	<i>He has taken after his father.</i>
277	Take down	To write down	लिख लेना	<i>Please take down the important points.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
278	Taken in (used in passive voice only)	To deceive	धोखा देना	<i>He was taken in by the crook.</i>
279	Take off	To remove, to leave the ground (of a plane)	निकाल लेना/उड़ना/प्रस्थान करना	<i>(i) Take off your shoes. (ii) The plane took off.</i>
280	Take over	To take responsibility for or control of	पद-भार संभालना	<i>The minister has taken over the key position.</i>
281	Take someone for	Think one to be someone else	किसी को कोई और मान लेना	<i>I took him for my nephew as the room was poorly lit.</i>
282	Take to	To become addicted	लत लगना	<i>He has taken to drinking.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
283	Take up	To begin to pursue	किसी काम को शुरू करना	<i>He has taken up MBA course after graduation.</i>
284	Tone down	To lessen the intensity	तीव्रता में कमी करना	<i>Tone down your voice. I am not your servant.</i>
285	Touch upon/on	To deal with (a topic) in passing	संक्षिप्त में बताते हुए निकल जाना	<i>He touched upon the important aspects of socialism in his speech.</i>
286	Touch up	To improve by making minor correction	सुधारना	<i>The artists touch up their makeup before the camera is switched on.</i>
287	Toy with	To think of (something) briefly and not very seriously	किसी योजना पर अनमने ढंग से विचार करना	<i>You are toying with my dream project.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
288	Try on	To wear something briefly (to check if it fits or not)	पहनकर देखना (सही माप का है या नहीं)	<i>I tried on this new dress but it didn't fit me.</i>
289	Turn down	To refuse or reject	अस्वीकार कर देना (अनुरोध आदि)	<i>He turned down my offer.</i>
290	Turn out to be	To prove to be	साबित होना	<i>He turned out to be a crook.</i>
291	Turn out	To come to a meeting or to form a crowd	किसी कार्यक्रम में शामिल होना	<i>Many party workers turned out for the rally.</i>
292	Turn up	To arrive	कहीं पहुँचना	<i>Many students turned up for the test.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
293	Wait on	To serve the needs of, visit	सेवा करना	<i>The hosts waited on the guests.</i>
294	Wear off	To lose effect	हल्का या कमजोर पड़ जाना	<i>Soon the polish started wearing off.</i>
295	Wear out	To tire greatly/to get damaged	बहुत थका देना, घिस जाना	<i>The labourers started wearing out.</i>
296	Weigh down	To make anxious, to burden	किसी बोझ या निराशा से दब जाना	<i>He was weighed down with added responsibilities.</i>
297	While away	To spend time leisurely	बेफिक्री से समय बिताना	<i>Don't while away your time.</i>

S.No.	Phrasal verbs	Meaning in English	Meaning in Hindi	Examples
298	Work up	To intensify gradually	धीरे-धीरे तीव्रता बढ़ाना	<i>I am slowly working up to 50 sit-ups every day.</i>
299	Write off	To disregard as inconsequential	महत्वहीन करार देना	<i>The critics wrote off the author soon after the release of his first novel.</i>

Campus

1. Go _____ my book.
2. I saw _____ his tricks.
3. Birds live _____ grains and fruits.
4. R.D. Burman is dead but his music lives _____ .
5. We live _____ certain customs.
6. Don't jump _____ any conclusion.
7. He jumped _____ hoops.
8. You should not jump _____ the gun.

9. But _____ your help, the patient would have died.
10. _____ all his wealth, he is a miser.
11. I am all _____ selling my scooter and buying a car.
12. We cannot back _____ from his agreement.
13. Kindly bear _____ us.
14. His car broke _____ on the way to work.
15. When she heard the news of her's brother demise, she broke _____
16. The burglars broke _____ the house.

17. Dengue broke _____ after the rainy season.
18. The BJP wanted to bring _____ the Karnataka Government.
19. She was brought _____ in London.
20. She called _____ you when you were not at home.
21. She called _____ your office yesterday.
22. This misconduct calls _____ a strict action.
23. He called _____ the police but the line was busy.
24. The meeting was called _____ due to incessant rain.

25. Don't get carried _____ by fake promises.
26. You will have to carry _____ the orders of the court.
27. I will join the meeting later. Please carry _____ .
28. I came _____ a very good book/ my childhood friend.
29. This fashion will catch _____ soon.
30. She met _____ any accident.
31. Nothing fruitful came _____ my effort.
32. These customs have come _____ since time immemorial.

33. He came _____ his senses after an hour.
34. This issue came _____ during the zero hour.
35. You can count _____ me.
36. Problems cropped _____ after some years.
37. You need to cut _____ the intake of sugar.
38. Don't cut _____ when I speak.
39. I am cut _____ for this profession.
40. The rumour will die _____ soon.

41. Dispose _____ the old furniture.
42. We must do away _____ evil practices.
43. Living things cannot do _____ water.
44. Cases drag _____ for decades.
45. Some guests dropped _____ last night.
46. Drive _____ the cattle from the field.
47. Anxiety eats _____ your health.
48. The building has fallen _____ .

49. He has no relative to fall back _____ .
50. All his efforts have fallen _____ .
51. The couple fell _____ each other after a fight.
52. I could not figure _____ the question.
53. The CBI is trying to fish _____ some information.
54. They got away _____ all his money.
55. The two actors got _____ well and had no arguments.
56. Get _____ to your work now.

57. He got _____ his problems.
58. The chief guest gave _____ the prizes.
59. The bomb went _____ .
60. In spite of the disturbance, he went _____ with his lecture.
61. I heard _____ his voice.
62. I have heard _____ a miraculous tree.
63. An idea hit _____ me.
64. He held _____ his tears.

65. Please hold _____ while I transfer you call to the executive.
66. The absconders were hunted _____ .
67. They bribed the officers to hush _____ the matter.
68. Iron _____ your differences.
69. He was knocked _____ by a speeding car.
70. She laughed _____ me.
71. We laughed _____ our problems.
72. I laid _____ some amount for the education of my son.

73. They laid _____ their guns.
74. Many workers were laid _____ during recession.
75. Lay _____ your plans.
76. He let _____ his parents by cheating people.
77. The court let them _____ due to insufficient evidence.
78. Her face will light _____ when she hears the news.
79. She looked _____ them as they were poor.
80. I am looking _____ a suitable job.

81. I am looking _____ to meeting you.
82. I have to make _____ within my income.
83. I cannot make _____ the head or tail of it.
84. She needs a make _____ to enhance her looks.
85. I have made _____ my mind.
86. Move _____. Don't live in the past.
87. She nosed _____ her competitors.
88. Note _____ my number.

89. He passed _____ due to excessive heat and regained his senses after hours.
90. He passed _____ at the age of 60.
91. Don't run _____ your friends in public.
92. You look run _____ and pale.
93. We pay _____ our deeds.
94. The government passes _____ our taxes to the poor.
95. Where are you putting _____ ?
96. Hard work pays _____ .

97. I ran _____ my friends in the market.

98. He ran _____ of money.

99. He was run _____ by a speeding car.

100. Please see _____ it.

101. I sent _____ a doctor.

102. I set _____ some money for a rainy days.

103. He will set _____ a factory soon.

104. The courts sit _____ the cases for years.

105. Fate smiled _____ him.
106. He smiled _____ her.
107. Please sort _____ these problems.
108. I will stand _____ you through thick and thin.
109. We stand _____ truth.
110. She stood _____ among all the competitors.
111. He stepped _____ after his defeat.
112. You must step _____ and give him a chance.

113. We need to step _____ the output now.
114. His past conduct sticks _____ like a black spot.
115. I was taken _____ by his sudden demise.
116. The Supreme Court struck _____ the order of the High Court.
117. You have taken _____ your father. It is difficult to tell one from the other.
118. Take _____ the notes.
119. Take _____ your shoes.
120. Put _____ your coat.

121. The new government will soon take _____ .
122. Tone _____ your voice.
123. The teacher did not touch _____ the relevant points.
124. He turned _____ my offer.
125. Only a few students turned _____ for the exam.
126. He turned _____ to be a crook.
127. India takes _____ Pakistan at Mohali next week.
128. The polish has worn _____ .



PHRASAL VERBS

84

Next

129. Don't while _____ your time.

130. They wrote _____ Amitabh Bachchan but he returned to the same glory with KBC.

131. Hand _____ your homework now.

132. Hand _____ the documents.

133. He has taken _____ drinking.

134. This defence will not stand _____ in the court.

135. Step _____ of my way.

136. The plane has taken _____ .

137. She could not live _____ her parents' expectations.
138. Look _____ ! There is a scorpion there.
139. I will get _____ to you after going through the documents.
140. All the issues added _____ and it became a huge issue.
141. Let _____ the officers.
142. He played _____ all my efforts.

1. **Go through** → to read (पढ़ना)
2. **See through** → to understand (समझना)
3. **Live on** → to eat a particular kind of food and survive. (किसी प्रकार की चीज़ खा कर जीना)
4. **Lives on** → to continue to exist (जारी रहना)
5. **Live by** → to follow something such as a set of beliefs (जीवन का नियम मान कर पालन करना)
6. **Jump at** → to accept (an opportunity or offer) with great eagerness. (उत्साह से स्वीकार कर लेना)
7. **Jump through hoops** → go through an elaborate or complicated procedure in order to achieve an objective. (कुछ पाने के लिए जटिल प्रक्रिया से गुजरना)
8. **No preposition needed**
Jump the gun → to do something before the proper time. (समय से पहले कुछ कर जाना)

9. **But for** → without (के बिना)
10. **For all** → In spite of (के बावजूद)
11. **All for** → strongly in support of. (दृढ़ रूप से समर्थन में)
12. **Back out** → to withdraw from something without completion (बिना पुरा किए मुकर जाना)
13. **Bear with** → to tolerate (बर्दाश्त करना)
14. **Break down** → If a machine/ vehicle breaks down, it stops working (गाड़ी/ मशीन का काम करना बंद कर देना)
15. **Break down** → to be unable to control your feelings and to start crying. (अपनी भावनाओं पर काबू नहीं पा सकना और रोने लगना)
16. **Break into** → to enter forcibly. (बलपूर्वक अंदर आना)
17. **Break out** → to start suddenly and spread. (अचानक शुरू हो कर फैल जाना। जैसे- बिमारी)

18. **Bring down** → to over throw. (तख्ता पलट देना/ सत्ता से उतार देना)
19. **Bring up** → to raise (पालन-पोषण करना)
20. **Call on** → to visit someone (किसी से मिलने जाना)
21. **Call at** → to visit some place. (किसी स्थान पर जाना)
22. **Call for** → demand (माँग करना)
23. **Call up** → to make a telephonic call (फोन करना)
24. **Call off** → cancel (निरस्त करना)
25. **Carry away** → to become too much emotional or jealous. (भावना में बह जाना)
26. **Carry out** → to complete/ fulfill/ execute. (कार्यान्वित करना/ पूर्ण करना)
27. **Carry on** → to continue. (जारी रखना)

28. **Come across** → to meet suddenly (अचानक मिलना)
29. **Catch on** → to become popular (प्रचलित होना)
30. **Meet with** → to experience something especially something unpleasant.
(कुछ अप्रिय घटना अनुभव करना)
31. **Come of** → to be the result of (का परिणाम होना)
32. **Come down** → to pass as a tradition (किसी प्रथा के रूप में समय तय करना)
33. **Come to one's senses** → to gain consciousness (होश में आना)
34. **Come up** → raised for discussion. (विचार-विमर्श के लिए उठना)
35. **Count on** → to rely. (निर्भर करना)
36. **Crop up** → to happen unexpectedly. (जो उम्मीद ना हो वो होना)
37. **Cut down** → to reduce. (कम करना)
38. **Cut in** → to interrupt (अवरोध पैदा करना)
39. **Cut out for** → to be suitable for (उपयुक्त होना/ के लिए बना होना)
40. **Die down** → disappear gradually. (धीरे-धीरे खत्म होना)

41. **Dispose of** → to sell off/ to get rid of (बेच देना/ छुटकारा पाना)
42. **Do away with** → to abolish (उन्मूलन करना/ छुटकारा पाना)
43. **Do without** → to manage without (के बिना काम चलाना)
44. **Drag on** → to stretch (लगातार जारी रहना)
45. **Drop in** → to come suddenly. (अचानक आना)
46. **Drive out** → to make someone run away. (भगा देना)
47. **Eat into** → to weaken. (कमजोर करना)
48. **Fall apart** → to break into pieces. (टूकड़े-टूकड़े होना) **Fall down** → (गिर जाना)
49. **Fall back on** → to take the help of as the last resort (की सहायता लेना)
50. **Fall flat** → to produce no effect (कोई प्रभाव ना होना)

51. **Fall out with** → to quarrel. (लड़ना)
52. **Figure out** → to understand (समझना)
53. **Fish for** → to try to get by probing (जाँच करके पता लगाना)
54. **Get away with** → to do something illegal and escape (कुछ अपराध करके भाग निकलना)
55. **Get along** → to have smooth relation (अच्छा संबंध होना)
56. **Get down** → to direct your attention to something (ध्यान देना)
57. **Get over** → to overcome (उबरना)
58. **Give away** → to distribute (बाँटना)
59. **Go off** → to explode (फट जाना)
60. **Go on** → to continue (जारी रखना)

61. NO preposition needed. **Hear** → सुनना
62. **Hear of** → to get information (सूचना होना)
63. **Hit upon** → to occur/ to come in mind (दिमाग में आना)
64. **Hold back** → to restrain/ to control (काबू करना/ रोकना)
65. **Hold on** → to maintain your grip/ to wait (थामे रहना/ इंतजार करना)
66. **Hunt down** → to pursue successfully by chasing (पीछा करके पकड़ना)
67. **Hush up** → to hide (छिपाना)
68. **Iron out** → to ease a problem (समस्या को कम करना या सुलझाना)
69. **Knock down** → to bring to the ground with a blow (टक्कर मार कर गिरा देना)

70. **Laugh at** → to make fun of (मजाक उड़ाना)
71. **Laugh off/ Laugh away** → to make it appear less serious (कम गंभीर प्रतीत कराना)
72. **Lay aside** → to save for future (भविष्य के लिए बचा कर रखना)
73. **Lay down one's weapons** → to surrender (आत्मसमर्पण करना)
74. **Lay off** → to terminate the service (नौकरी से निकालना)
75. **Lay out** → to arrange accordingly (व्यवस्थित करना)
76. **Let down** → to disappoint (निराश करना)
77. **Let off** → to allow to get away without the expected punishment (बिना सजा दिए छोड़ देना)

78. **Light up** → to brighten/ to be cheerful (चमक जाना/खुश हो जाना)
79. **Look down upon** → to consider inferior (नीची नजर से देखना)
80. **Look for** → to search (खोजना)
81. **Look forward to** → to wait with anticipation (इंतजार करना)
82. **Make do** → to manage (काम चलाना)
83. **Make out** → to understand (समझना)
84. **Make over** → to change completely (पूरी तरह से परिवर्तित होना)
85. **Make up** → to decide (तय करना)
86. **Move on** → to recover from a setback (किसी कठिन परिस्थिति से उबरना)

87. **Nose down** → to defeat with a narrow margin (थोड़े से अंतर से हराणा)
88. **Note down** → to write (लिखना)
89. **Pass off** → to become unconscious (बेहोश होना)
90. **Pass away** → to die (मर जाना)
91. **Run down** → to criticize (आलोचना करना)
92. **Run down** → exhausted (थका हुआ)
93. **Pay for** → to suffer for one's misconduct (कर्म का फल भोगना)
94. **Pass on** → to take from one and give to another (एक से ले कर दूसरे को देना)
95. **Put up** → to reside (निवास करना)

96. **Pay off** → to be successful (सफल होना)
97. **Run into** → to meet by chance (संयोग से मिलना)
98. **Run out of** → have shortage of (कमी होना)
99. **Run over** → knock down (कुचल देना)
100. **See to** → to make sure that something is done (सुनिश्चित करना)
101. **Send for** → to call/ summon (बुलाना)
102. **Set apart** → to save for a specific purpose (किसी निश्चित उद्देश्य के लिए बचा कर रखना)
103. **Set up** → establish (स्थापित करना)
104. **Sit on** → linger (मामले को) लटकाये रखना
105. **Smile on** → to bless (खुश होना, आशिष देना)
106. **Smile at** → मुस्कुराना

107. **Sort out** → to find a solution (निवारण करना, सुलझाना)
108. **Stand by** → to support (सहारा देना)
109. **Stand for** → to support or be in favour of (के पक्ष में होना)
110. **Stand out** → to be noticeable (ध्यान खींचने योग्य)
111. **Step down** → to resign from a high post (किसी पद से त्याग पत्र देना)
112. **Step aside** → to resign or withdraw from some important position (किसी पद से हट जाना या त्याग पत्र देना)
113. **Step up** → to increase (बढ़ाना)
114. **Stick out** → to be prominent (स्पष्ट दिखना)
115. **Taken aback** → to be surprised (आश्चर्यचकित होना) . 'Taken aback' is always used in Passive Voice.

116. **Strike down** → to nullify (निरस्त करना)
117. **Take after** → to resemble (की तरह दिखना)
118. **Take down** → to note (लिख लेना)
119. **Take off** → to remove (उतारना)
120. **Put on** → to wear (पहनना)
121. **Take over** → to take the responsibility or control of (पदभार संभालना)
122. **Tone down** → to lessen the intensity (तीव्रता कम करना)
123. **Touch on or touch upon** → to deal with in passing or deal briefly with (सरसरी तौर पर बताना)
124. **Turn down** → to reject (अस्वीकार करना)

125. **Turn up** → to arrive (आना)
126. **Turn out** → to prove to be (साबित होना)
127. **Take on** → to contend (मुकाबला करना)
128. **Wear off** → to lose effect (चमक खोना)
129. **While away** → to spend leisurely (आराम से गुजारना)
130. **Write off** → to regard as incompetent (अक्षम मान बैठना)
131. **Hand in** → Submit (सौंपना)
132. **Hand over** → the act of transferring (हस्तांतरण करना)
133. **Take to/ give to** → to become addicted (लत लगना)
134. **Stand up** → to remain valid (टिकना)

135. **Step out** → हट जाना

136. **Take off** → leave the ground (जमीन से ऊपर उठना (हवाई जहाज का))

137. **Live upto** → to meet one's expectations (अपेक्षा के अनुकूल होना)

138. **Look out** → beware (सावधान होना)

139. **Get back** → (वापस सम्पर्क करना)

140. **add up** → to increase gradually until there is a large amount (इकट्ठा होना तब तक जब तक बहुत अधिक ना हो जाना)

141. **Let in** → allow to enter (अंदर आने देना)

142. **Play down** → to suppress (तुच्छ साबित करना)

1. **Still waters run deep.**

शांत पानी में भी गहराई होती है। शांत दिखने वाला व्यक्ति भावहीन नहीं होता।

2. **To err is human, to forgive divine.**

गलती करना इंसानी फितरत है, माफ करना ईश्वर तुल्य।

3. **Practice makes a man perfect.**

अभ्यास व्यक्ति को निपुण बनाता है।

4. **Prevention is better than cure.**

ईलाज से बेहतर सावधानी होती है।

5. **All is well that ends well.**

अंत भला तो सब भला।

6. All that glitters is not gold.
हर चमकने वाली चीज सोना नहीं होती।
7. All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.
सिर्फ काम करने से और कोई खेल में भाग ना लेने से व्यक्ति सुस्त हो जाता है।
8. Too many cooks spoil the broth.
बहुत सारे लोग लग जाए तो काम खराब हो जाता है।
9. No news is good news.
कोई खबर नहीं हो, तो इसका मतलब सब ठीक है।
10. A bird in hand is worth two in the bush.
जो आप के पास है वह ज्यादा कीमती है उसके मुकाबले जो आप के पास नहीं है।

11. A friend in need is a friend indeed.

जो जरूरत में काम आए वही हकीकत में दोस्त होता है।

12. A man is known by the company he keeps.

आप कैसे है ये आपके संगति से पता चलता है।

13. A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.

थोड़ा सा ज्ञान घातक होता है।

14. A penny saved is a penny earned.

एक-एक पैसा जो आप बचाते हैं वो आपकी कमाई है।

15. A rolling stone gathers no moss.

जो व्यक्ति भ्रमण करता रहता है उसे रिश्तों का मोह नहीं होता।



ENGLISH SPECIAL

3499/- only

17th July

5pm - 7pm

Mon, Wed, Fri

NEETU SINGH

Email: online@kdcampus.org Contact: 9555108888

16. A stitch in time saves nine.

समय से किया गया काम अत्यधिक समय और मेहनत बचाता है।

17. A thing of beauty is a joy forever.

सुंदरता की एक वस्तु खुशी का स्थायी स्रोत होती है।

18. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.

दूरी बढ़ने से प्यार बढ़ता है।

19. Silence precedes the storm.

तूफान के पहले शांति होती है।

20. Familiarity breeds contempt.

करीब आने से तिरस्कार बढ़ता है।



G.S Special
By Renowned Faculty of KD Campus
17th July 2:30 PM - 4:30 PM
@1199/-
Download Now
KD LIVE APP
Email: info@kduniversity.org Contact: 9951104403

21. All is fair in love and war.

प्यार और जंग में सब जायज़ है।

22. An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth./ Tit for tat.

जैसे को तैसा

23. As you sow so shall you reap.

जैसा बोओगे वैसा काटोगे। / जैसी करनी, वैसी भरनी

24. Barking dog seldom bite.

गरजने वाले बरसते नहीं।

25. Beauty lies in the eye of the beholder.

देखने वाले की आँखों में सुंदरता होती है।

26. **Beauty is only skin deep.**

शारीरिक सुंदरता सिर्फ सतही होती है।

27. **Better late than never.**

कभी नहीं आने से बेहतर देर से आना होता है।

28. **Better safe than sorry.**

अफसोस करने से बेहतर सुरक्षित होना होता है।

29. **Birds of a feather flock together.**

चोर-चोर मौसेरे भाई।

30. **Brevity is the soul of wit.**

अल्पता बुद्धि का परिचय देता है। अच्छा लेख संक्षेप में होता है।

31. Charity begins at home.

दान धर से शुरू होता है।

32. Cleanliness is next to godliness.

स्वच्छता का स्थान देवभक्ति के तुरंत बाद है।

33. Cowards die many a time, the brave die but once.

कायर कई बार मरते हैं। वीर सिर्फ एक बार।

34. Do unto others as you would have them do to you.

लोगों के साथ आप वैसा ही व्यवहार करो जैसा आप अपने लिए चाहते हो।

35. Don't count your chickens before they are hatched.

परिणाम आने से पहले अपने लाभ का हिसाब मत कर लो।

SSC ENGLISH
TEST PAPERS VOD
599/-
ALL DISCUSSED BY **NEETU SINGH**
SSC TIER-II 2016, SSC TIER-II 2017, SSC TIER-II 2018
Email: online@pdcampus.org Contact: 8586903756 / 9586903756

PLEASE READ THE SENTENCES

36. Don't keep a dog and bark yourself.

जिस आदमी को जिस काम के लिए रखा है, उसे करने दे, स्वयं ना करें।

37. To let the grass grow under the feet.

बेकार बैठे रहना।

38. All good things come to an end.

जो भी अच्छी चीजे है वो एक ना एक दिन खत्म हो जाती है।

39. A picture is worth a thousand words.

चित्र शब्दों से बेहतर वर्णन करता है।

40. Beggars can't be choosers.

दान की वछिया के दाँत नहीं गिने जाते।

UP SI SPECIAL BATCH

22nd July

BY
EXPERT FACULTY
OF
KD CAMPUS



@ 1499 /-

DAYS: MON - FRI

TIME: 3:30 PM - 7:00 PM

Download Now

Buy Now



Email: online@kdcampus.org

Contact: 9555108888, 9555208888

41. Don't judge the book by its cover.
पहनावे से व्यक्ति के बुद्धिमता का आंकलन ना करें।
42. Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
एक ही व्यवसाय में सारा निवेश ना करें।
43. Don't put too many irons in the fire.
ज्यादा काम को एक समय पर हाथ में मत लो।
44. Easy come, easy go.
आसानी से मिली हुई चीज आसानी से चली जाती है।
45. God helps those who help themselves.
जो खुद की सहायता करता है ईश्वर उसकी सहायता करता है।

COMBO FULL COURSE

₹6700/-

16 July ONLY 5499/-

SSC

REASONING (₹999/-)

MATHS (₹999/-)

ENGLISH SPL (₹3499/-)

GS (₹1199/-)

BUY 3 GET 1 FREE

CHSL CPO CGL Stenographer CDS AIR FORCE GROUP

Email: online@kdcampus.org | Contact: 9555108888 / 9555208888

46. **Honesty is the best policy.**
ईमानदारी सर्वश्रेष्ठ नीति है।
47. **Hope for the best but prepare for the worst.**
सर्वश्रेष्ठ की उम्मीद रखे पर सबसे खराब के लिए तैयार रहें।
48. **If you can't beat them, join them.**
अगर आप उनको हरा नहीं सकते तो उनके साथ हो लें।
49. **You must endure what you cannot cure.**
जो आप सुधार नहीं सकते उसे बर्दाश्त करें।
50. **Keep your friends close, your enemies closer.**
अपने दोस्त को करीब रखें, अपने दुश्मन को और करीब।

51. Like father, like son./ Chip off the old block.

जैसा बाप, वैसा बेटा/ एक औलाद आदत और संस्कार में अपने माता-पिता पर जाता है।

52. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones.

शीशे के घर में रहने वाले दूसरों पर पत्थर नहीं फेंकते।

53. The early bird catches the worm.

पहले निकलने वाला मंजिल हासिल करता है।

54. The grass is always greener on the other side.

हमेशा दूसरे ज्यादा फायदे में दिखते हैं।

55. Home is where the heart is.

जहाँ दिल लग जाए, वही घर होता है।



SSC TIER II
SSC ENGLISH TEST PAPERS FREE
VOD LIVE
ALL DISCUSSED BY NEETU SINGH
ENGLISH 04 @ 3499
 Email: online@kdcampus.org
 Contact: 9855104888

56. The squeaky wheel gets the grease.

जब आप मांग करते हो तभी आपकी शिकायत सुनी जाती है।

57. It takes two to tango. / It takes two to make a quarrel.

ताली दोनों हाथों से बजती है।

58. Do in Rome as the Romans do.

जैसा देश, वैसा भेष।

59. When the going gets tough, the tough get going.

जब जीवन कठिन हो जाता है तो मजबूत लोग ही जारी रख पाते हैं।

60. Where there is smoke, there is fire.

जहाँ आग होती है वही धुआँ उठता है।

61. You can lead a horse to water but you can't make it drink.

किसी भी काम में अंततः कोशीश खुद करनी पड़ती है।

62. Blood is thicker than water.

खून का रिश्ता बाकी रिश्तों से ज्यादा मजबूत होता है।

63. Fools rush where angels fear to tread.

मूर्ख उस काम को कर बैठते हैं जो देवदूत भी करने से डरते हैं।

64. Cut your coat according to your cloth.

उतना ही खर्च करे जितनी हैसियत हो।

65. Don't throw the baby out with the bath water.

बेकार लोगों के साथ-साथ उच्छे लोगों से भी हाथ ना धो बैठे।



ENGLISH SPECIAL

For **3499/-** only

17th July

5pm - 7pm

Mon, Wed, Fri

NEETU SINGH

Download Now

Get the APP

Email: online@kdcampus.org Contact: 9555108888

66. **Don't wash your dirty linen in public.**
सार्वजनिक रूप से अपने बिगड़े रिश्तों का जिक्र कर एक-दूसरे की इज्जत ना उतारें।
67. **First impression is the last impression.**
जो छाप आप पहली मुलाकात में छोड़ते हैं वही अंतिम छाप होता है।
68. **Ignorance is bliss.**
नहीं जानोगे तो खुश रहोगे।
69. **When it rains, it pours.**
भगवान जब देता है तो छप्पर फाड़ कर देता है।
70. **There is no use crying over the spilt milk.**
अब पछताए होत क्या जब चिड़ियाँ चुग गई खेत/ बीती बात पर पछताने से कुछ भी हासिल नहीं होता।
71. **Empty vessels make much noise.**
थोथा चना बाजे घना // मूर्ख ज्यादा शोर मचाते हैं।